DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 224 919   CE 034 660

AUTHOR	Davis, Ronald; Yancey, Bruce
TITLE	Architectural Drafting.
INSTITUTION	Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, Stillwater, Okla.
PUB DATE	82
NOTE	723p.; For related documents see ED 219 633-634.
AVAILABLE FROM	Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, 1515 West Sixth Avenue, Stillwater, OK 74074 (Write for price).
PUB TYPE	Guides - Classroom Use - Materials (For Learner) (051) -- Guides - Classroom Use - Guides (For Teachers) (052)
EDRS PRICE	MF04 Plus Postage. PC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	Air Conditioning; *Architectural Drafting; Behavioral Objectives; Building Design; Building Plans; Competency Based Education; Construction Materials; Criterion Referenced Tests; Electrical Systems; *Engineering Drawing; Guidelines; Heating; Instructional Materials; Job Skills; Learning Activities; Plumbing; Postsecondary Education; Site Analysis; Specifications; Structural Building Systems; Systems Analysis; *Technical Education; *Technical Illustration; Ventilation
IDENTIFIERS	Dimensioning (Mechanical Drawing)

ABSTRACT

Designed to be used as a supplement to a two-book course in basic drafting, these instructional materials consisting of 14 units cover the process of drawing all working drawings necessary for residential buildings. The following topics are covered in the individual units: introduction to architectural drafting, lettering and tools, site conditions, residential design, structural systems and building materials, introduction to working drawings, dimensioning, foundations, details, plumbing, forced air heating/ventilating/air conditioning (HVAC) systems, electrical systems, specifications, and presentation drawings. Included in the individual instructional units are some or all of the following: performance objectives, suggested activities for instructors, information sheets, transparency masters, job sheets, assignment sheets, tests, and test answers. Instructional materials in the publication are written in terms of student performance, using measurable objectives, and are accompanied by criterion-referenced instruments. (MN)

****
*   Reproductions supplied by EDRS are the best that can be made   *
*   from the original document.   *
****

ED224919

5

Architectural Drafting

by

Ronald Davis

and

Bruce Yancey

Developed by the

Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, Inc.

Board of Directors

Merle Rudebusch, Nebraska, Chairman
David Poston, Louisiana, Vice Chairman
Amon Herd, Missouri, Parliamentarian
James Dasher, Arkansas
Bill Barnes, Colorado
Les Abel, Kansas
Pat Lindley, Texas
Dan Elwood, South Dakota
Bob Patton, Oklahoma
Alan Morgan, New Mexico
Larry Barnhardt, North Dakota
Ann Benson, Executive Director

CE 034 660

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

☑ This document has been reproduced as received from the person or organization originating it.
☐ Minor changes have been made to improve reproduction quality.

- Points of view or opinions stated in this document do not necessarily represent official NIE position or policy.

"PERMISSION TO REPRODUCE THIS MATERIAL IN MICROFICHE ONLY HAS BEEN GRANTED BY

S Dean

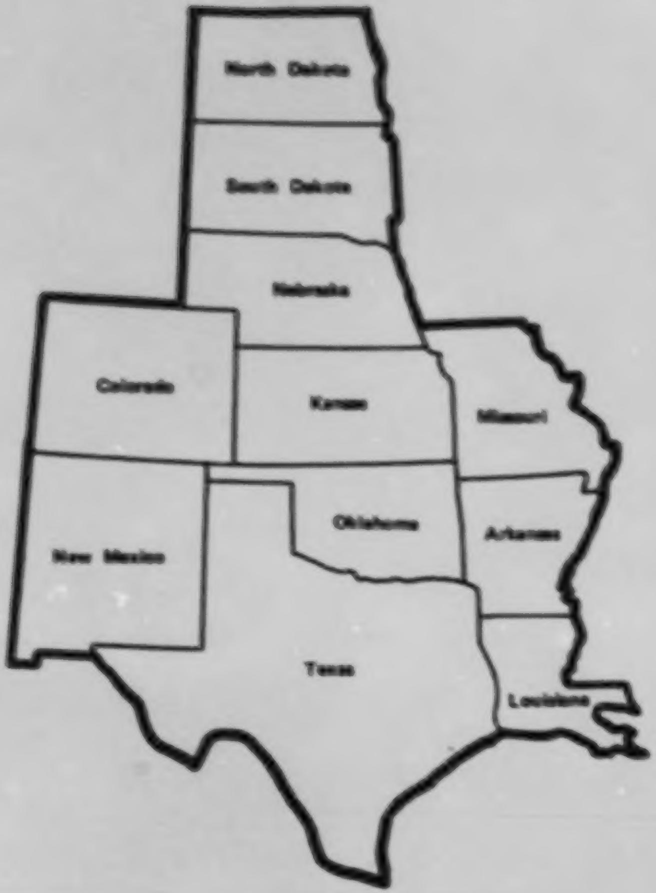
TO THE EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION CENTER (ERIC)."

COPYRIGHT - 1982

Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium, Inc.

Printed by

Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education
Stillwater, Oklahoma 74074


North Dakota
South Dakota
Nebraska
Colorado
Kansas
Missouri
Oklahoma
Arkansas
New Mexico
Texas
Louisiana

ARCHITECTURAL DRAFTING
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Unit I Introduction 1

Unit II Lettering and Tools 35

Unit III Site Conditions 109

Unit IV Residential Design 173

Unit V Structural Systems and Building Materials 227

Unit VI Introduction to Working Drawings 333

Unit VII Dimensioning 413

Unit VIII Foundations 469

Unit IX Details 541

Unit X Plumbing 615

Unit XI Forced Air HVAC Systems 677

Unit XII Electrical 737

Unit XIII Specifications 791

Unit XIV Presentation Drawings 813

FOREWORD

Architectural Drafting is the fourth volume of a series of drafting materials being produced by the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium. *Basic Drafting: Book One* and *Basic Drafting: Book Two* comprise the basics necessary to be employed in a drafting occupation. This book, *Architectural Drafting*, is designed to be used as a supplement to them so that the student can specialize.

Upon completion of this book, the students will have gone through the process of drawing all working drawings necessary for residential buildings such as foundation, floor, elevation, detail, plumbing, and mechanical plans. The student's compiled portfolio will provide numerous examples for prospective employers. The user may also wish to utilize two other MAVCC publications, *Residential Solar Systems* (4 units) and "Light Commercial Drafting" (one unit), which supplement the information and skills learned in *Architectural Drafting*.

The success of this publication is due, in large part, to the capabilities of the personnel who worked with its development. The technical writers have numerous years of industry as well as teaching and writing experience. Assisting them in their efforts were committee representatives who brought with them technical expertise and experience related to the classroom and to the trade. To assure that the materials would parallel the industry environment and be accepted as a transportable basic teaching tool, other organizations and industry representatives were involved in the developmental phases of the manual. Appreciation is extended to them for their valuable contributions to the manual.

Instructional materials in this publication are written in terms of student performance using measurable objectives. This is an innovative approach to teaching that accents and augments the teaching/learning process. Criterion referenced evaluation instruments are provided for uniform measurement of student progress. In addition to evaluating recall information, teachers are encouraged to evaluate the other areas including process and product as indicated at the end of each instructional unit.

It is the sincere belief of the MAVCC personnel and all those members who served on the committee that this publication will allow the students to become better prepared and more effective members of the work force. If there is anything that we can do to help this publication become more useful to you, please let us know.

Merle Rudebusch, Chairman
Board of Directors
Mid-America Vocational
Curriculum Consortium

PREFACE

For many years those responsible for teaching drafting have felt a need for better quality materials to use in this area. To address this need, MAVCC has previously published two texts, *Basic Drafting, Book One* and *Basic Drafting, Book Two*. During the development of these basic materials, an even greater need was established, that being supplemental materials to help the students specialize in various areas of drafting. The team of teachers, industry representatives, teacher educators, and state level supervisors who had produced the original materials accepted this challenge and have now completed two of the supplements, *Mechanical Drafting* and *Architectural Drafting*. They are both designed to be used in addition to the first two publications, and are developed to strengthen students competence in their specialized field of drafting.

This publication is designed to assist teachers in improving instruction. As this publication is used, it is hoped that the student performance will improve so the students will be better able to assume a role in their chosen occupation. Every effort has been made to make this publication basic, readable, and by all means, usable. Three vital parts of instruction have been intentionally omitted: motivation, personalization, and localization. These areas are left to the individual instructors who should capitalize on them. Only then will this publication really become a vital part of the teaching-learning process.

In addition, we would appreciate your help. We check for content quality, spelling, and typographical errors many times in the development of a manual. It is still possible, however, for an error to show up in a publication.

We are trying to provide you with the best possible curriculum materials and will certainly appreciate your help in detecting areas where possible corrections are needed to maintain the quality you want and deserve.

Ann Benson
Executive Director
Mid-America Vocational
Curriculum Consortium, Inc.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Appreciation is extended to those individuals who contributed their time and talents in the development of *Architectural Drafting*.

The contents of this publication were planned and reviewed by the following members of the Mid-America Vocational Curriculum Consortium drafting committee:

Bruce Yancey	Hunter, Oklahoma
W.H. Parkison	Nachitoches, Louisiana
Ronald D. Davis	Wayne, Oklahoma
Karen Schertz	Boulder, Colorado
Rick Roman	Austin, Texas
Gerald R. McClain	Stillwater, Oklahoma
John H. Schmelz	Santa Fe, New Mexico
Milton Moore	St. Joseph, Missouri
Keith Lockard	Lincoln, Nebraska
James Brown	Pine Bluff, Arkansas
Thomas M. Palmer	Devil's Lake, North Dakota
Charles E. Carbonneau	Watertown, South Dakota
Joe Porter	Pittsburg, Kansas

Special appreciation is extended to Jack Hefner and Bill Hill of the Oklahoma State Department staff, representing state level supervision, and to Tom Sutherlin, teacher educator at Cameron University, for their technical assistance with the text.

Special thanks must be given to Larry Don Raney of Larry Don Raney and Associates, Oklahoma City architectural firm, and Glen Summers of Glen A. Summers and Associates, Stillwater, Oklahoma architectural firm, for their contributions of valuable artwork for this book.

Gratitude is expressed to the employees of the Graphics Division of the Oklahoma State Department of Vocational and Technical Education for the typing, artwork, and printing of this text.

Thanks are also extended to Mary Kellum, Supervising Editor, and to Dan Fulkerson and Jane Huston for their assistance with editing and proofreading.

USE OF THIS PUBLICATION

Instructional Units

Architectural Drafting includes fourteen units. Each instructional unit includes some or all of the basic components of a unit of instruction: performance objectives, suggested activities for teachers and students, information sheets, assignment sheets, job sheets, visual aids, tests, and answers to the test. Units are planned for more than one lesson or class period of instruction.

Careful study of each instructional unit by the teacher will help to determine:

A. The amount of material that can be covered in each class period
B. The skills which must be demonstrated
  1. Supplies needed
  2. Equipment needed
  3. Amount of practice needed
  4. Amount of class time needed for demonstrations
C. Supplementary materials such as pamphlets or filmstrips that must be ordered
D. Resource people who must be contacted

Objectives

Each unit of instruction is based on performance objectives. These objectives state the goals of the course, thus providing a sense of direction and accomplishment for the student.

Performance objectives are stated in two forms: unit objectives, stating the subject matter to be covered in a unit of instruction; and specific objectives, stating the student performance necessary to reach the unit objective.

Since the objectives of the unit provide direction for the teaching-learning process, it is important for the teacher and students to have a common understanding of the intent of the objectives. A limited number of performance terms have been used in the objectives for this curriculum to assist in promoting the effectiveness of the communication among all individuals using the materials.

Following is a list of performance terms and their synonyms which may have been used in this material:

Name
Label
List in writing
List orally
Letter
Record
Repeat
Give

Identify
Select
Mark
Point out
Pick out
Choose
Locate
Label

Describe
Define
Discuss in writing
Discuss orally
Interpret
Tell how
Tell what
Explain

Order
Arrange
Sequence
List in order
Classify
Divide
Isolate
Sort

Distinguish
Discriminate
Differentiate

Construct
Draw
Make
Build
Design
Formulate
Reproduce
Transcribe
Reduce
Increase
Figure

Demonstrate
Show your work
Show procedure
Perform an experiment
Perform the steps
Operate
Remove
Replace
Turn off/on
(Dis) assemble
(Dis) connect

Additional Terms Used
Evaluate
Complete
Analyze
Calculate
Estimate
Plan
Observe
Compare
Determine
Perform

Prepare
Make
Read
Tell
Teach
Converse
Lead
State
Write

Reading of the objectives by the student should be followed by a class discussion to answer any questions concerning performance requirements for each instructional unit.

Teachers should feel free to add objectives which will fit the material to the needs of the students and community. When teachers add objectives, they should remember to supply the needed information, assignment and/or job sheets, and criterion tests.

Suggested Activities for the Instructor

Each unit of instruction has a suggested activities sheet outlining steps to follow in accomplishing specific objectives. Duties of instructors will vary according to the particular unit; however, for best use of the material they should include the following: provide students with objective sheet, information sheet, assignment sheets, and job sheets; preview filmstrips, make transparencies, and arrange for resource materials and people; discuss unit and specific objectives and information sheet; give test. Teachers are encouraged to use any additional instructional activities and teaching methods to aid students in accomplishing the objectives.

Information Sheets

Information sheets provide content essential for meeting the cognitive (knowledge) objectives in the unit. The teacher will find that the information sheets serve as an excellent guide for presenting the background knowledge necessary to develop the skill specified in the unit objective.

Students should read the information sheets before the information is discussed in class. Students may take additional notes on the information sheets.

Transparency Masters

Transparency masters provide information in a special way. The students may see as well as hear the material being presented, thus reinforcing the learning process. Transparencies may present new information or they may reinforce information presented in the information sheets. They are particularly effective when identification is necessary.

Transparencies should be made and placed in the notebook where they will be immediately available for use. Transparencies direct the class's attention to the topic of discussion. They should be left on the screen only when topics shown are under discussion.

Job Sheets

Job sheets are an important segment of each unit. The instructor should be able to and in most situations should demonstrate the skills outlined in the job sheets. Procedures outlined in the job sheets give direction to the skill being taught and allow both student and teacher to check student progress toward the accomplishment of the skill. Job sheets provide a ready outline for students to follow if they have missed a demonstration. Job sheets also furnish potential employers with a picture of the skills being taught and the performances which might reasonably be expected from a person who has had this training.

Assignment Sheets

Assignment sheets give direction to study and furnish practice for paper and pencil activities to develop the knowledges which are necessary prerequisites to skill development. These may be given to the student for completion in class or used for homework assignments. Answer sheets are provided which may be used by the student and/or teacher for checking student progress.

Test and Evaluation

Paper-pencil and performance tests have been constructed to measure student achievement of each objective listed in the unit of instruction. Individual test items may be pulled out and used as a short test to determine student achievement of a particular objective. This kind of testing may be used as a daily quiz and will help the teacher spot difficulties being encountered by students in their efforts to accomplish the unit objective. Test items for objectives added by the teacher should be constructed and added to the test.

Test Answers

Test answers are provided for each unit. These may be used by the teacher and/or student for checking student achievement of the objectives.

ARCHITECTURAL DRAFTING
Instructional/Task Analysis

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)	RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)
UNIT I: INTRODUCTION	
	1. Terms and definitions
	2. Fundamental structural systems
	3. Styles
	4. Reference books
	5. Office phases
	6. Job titles and qualifications
7. Use architectural reference materials	
8. Interview an architectural drafter	
UNIT II: LETTERING AND TOOLS	
	1. Styles of lettering
	2. Importance of good lettering
	3. Heights of lettering
	4. Types of lettering guides
	5. Lettering instruments
	6. Tools and materials
7. Sharpen lead correctly	
8. Letter using the Condensed style	
9. Letter using the Extended style	
10. Letter using the Variation style	
11. Letter using the Kabel Modern style	
12. Letter using the Chisel style	
13. Letter using the Triangle style	
14. Letter using the Shadow style	

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)

UNIT III: SITE CONDITIONS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Site considerations
3. Building codes
4. Types of zoning regulations
5. Residential protective covenant
6. Components and symbols of plot plans
7. Procedure for drawing a plot plan
8. Grade marks
9. Compile a list of site considerations
10. Calculate altitude angle and azimuth using interpolation
11. Calculate altitude angle and azimuth using a sun angle calculator
12. Determine the cast of a shadow using altitude and azimuth
13. Revise plans to correct prevailing wind and orientation problems
14. Draw a site plan
15. Draw a plot plan
16. Determine cut and fill needed on a given lot

UNIT IV: RESIDENTIAL DESIGN

1. Planning a residence
2. Characteristics which affect building design
3. Rooms in basic areas of a house
4. Characteristics of rooms

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)	RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)
	5. Traffic flow
	6. Storage facilities
	7. Steps for making a preliminary residential sketch
8. Determine client needs	
9. Plan a kitchen	
10. Plan a sleeping area	
11. Plan a bathroom	
12. Plan traffic patterns	
13. Plan storage facilities	
14. Develop a preliminary residential sketch	

UNIT V: STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS

	1. Terms and definitions
	2. Types of framing systems
	3. Types of wood floor sill constructions
	4. Types of wood floor joist framings
	5. Purpose of bridging
	6. Wall framing members
	7. Methods of frame bracing
	8. Types of sheathing
	9. Types of roofs
	10. Roof framing members
	11. Types of cornices
	12. Types of post and beam framing
	13. Building materials

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)	RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)
	14. Material symbols
	15. Materials in concrete mix
	16. Construction masonry products
	17. Glass products
	18. Uses of plastic
	19. Types of insulation materials
	20. Metal products
	21. Roofing materials
	22. Wood products
	23. Abbreviations
24. Determine sizes of wood floor joists and roof rafters	
25. Determine sizes of wood girders	
26. Determine sizes of steel beams	
27. Determine sizes of exterior or interior wall headers	

UNIT VI: INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS

	1. Terms and definitions
	2. Title blocks
	3. U.S. scales used on working drawings
	4. Order of set of residential working drawings
	5. Abbreviations
	6. Plan symbols
	7. Factors to consider when drawing elevations
	8. Steps in projecting elevations
	9. Types of schedules

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do
(Psychomotor)

10. Sketch a floor plan of your house
11. Draw a floor plan from a preliminary sketch
12. Sketch different roofs on an elevation
13. Resketch an elevation to eliminate the inconsistent use of materials
14. Sketch two different elevations of the same floor plan
15. Draw a front and side elevation
16. Draw a front elevation on an uneven terrain
17. Complete a door and window schedule

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know
(Cognitive)

UNIT VII: DIMENSIONING

1. Terms and definitions
2. Line technique at corners
3. Uses of dimensioning
4. Drawing wall thicknesses
5. General dimensioning rules
6. Site and plot plan dimensioning
7. Elevation dimensioning
8. Detail and wall section dimensioning
9. HVAC plan dimensioning
10. Plumbing plan dimensioning
11. Advantages of modular system
12. Modular dimensioning
13. Metric dimensioning
14. Dimensioning abbreviations

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

15. Identify dimensioning errors
16. Dimension a floor plan
17. Dimension an elevation
18. Prepare and dimension a floor plan according to a modular system
19. Dimension a detail using metric system (optional)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

UNIT VIII: FOUNDATIONS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Abbreviations
3. Types of floor systems
4. Wood foundations
5. Types of footing systems
6. Footing detail drawings
7. Methods of waterproofing
8. Methods of protecting from termites
9. Methods of preventing breakage of foundations
10. Designing and constructing a footing
11. Designing piling and grade beams
12. Designing a slab foundation system
13. Symbols
14. Live and dead loads
15. Steps in drawing a foundation plan

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

16. Calculate the footing requirements for a typical one-story frame house
17. Calculate pier or column footing requirements
18. Draw a foundation plan
19. Detail a foundation section

UNIT IX: DETAILS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Features and types of stairways
3. Stairway formulas
4. Stair slopes
5. Components of a fireplace
6. Types of fireplaces
7. Parts of window and window section drawing
8. Parts of a door section drawing
9. Steps for drawing a wall section detail

10. Construct a stairway layout
11. Draw fireplace construction details
12. Draw typical cabinet details
13. Draw door and window section details
14. Draw a wall section detail

UNIT X: PLUMBING

1. Terms and definitions
2. Types of heating used in plumbing systems
3. Parts of a plumbing system

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

9. Calculate the size of a building sewer line
10. Construct plumbing drawings of a building drain system
11. Construct plumbing drawings for a residential building
12. Design a septic system

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

4. Parts of a waste disposal system and materials used
5. Classification of vents
6. Parts of water system
7. Piping symbols and abbreviations
8. Types of drawings

UNIT XI: FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Steps in HVAC design
3. Types of supply duct systems
4. Climatic zones
5. Locations of registers and grilles
6. Symbols
7. Rules for drawing HVAC plans
8. Sizing pipe and ducts
9. Types of return-air systems
10. Heat loss and heat gain
11. Procedure for drawing an HVAC plan

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

12. Estimate heat loss for a temporary residence
13. Calculate shaded and unshaded glass areas for use in heat gain estimates
14. Estimate heat gain for a temporary residence
15. Evaluate the addition of insulation in relation to heat loss and heat gain
16. Estimate heat loss and heat gain for your design project
17. Draw an HVAC plan for your design project
18. Prepare equipment schedules

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

UNIT XII: ELECTRICAL

1. Terms and definitions
2. Types of lighting dispersement
3. Electrical service entrance installation
4. Types of residential branch circuits
5. Wiring devices
6. Types of cables
7. Conductor letter designations
8. Designing an electrical system
9. Floor plan symbols
10. Circuit safety devices

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

11. Answer questions related to residential wiring practices using the NEC
12. Interpret conduit fill tables using the NEC
13. Locate allowable ampacities for various conductors using the NEC
14. Calculate service size and minimum number of circuits
15. Locate receptacle, switch, and lighting outlets

UNIT XIII: SPECIFICATIONS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Purposes of specifications
3. Information included in specifications
4. Characteristics of specifications
5. Errors to be aware of in specifications
6. Answer questions related to materials used in residential construction using *Sweet's Catalog File*
7. Fill in a VA-FHA "Description of Materials" form

UNIT XIV: PRESENTATION DRAWINGS

1. Terms and definitions
2. Types of perspectives and perspective views
3. Characteristics of perspectives and presentation drawings

JOB TRAINING: What the Worker Should Be Able to Do (Psychomotor)

7. Locate vanishing points
8. Draw a one-point perspective
9. Draw two-point perspectives
10. Shade and shadow various objects
11. Render an elevation
12. Render perspectives

RELATED INFORMATION: What the Worker Should Know (Cognitive)

4. Methods for drawing perspectives
5. Characteristics of shade, shadow, and texture
6. Rendering techniques

TOOLS, MATERIALS, AND EQUIPMENT LIST

I. Items needed by each student

- A. Triangles
  - 1. 45°
  - 2. 30° 60°
- B. Compass
- C. Divider
- D. Protractor
- E. Irregular curve
- F. Flexible curve
- G. One of the following:
  - 1. Drafting machine with scales
  - 2. Parallel bar
  - 3. T-square with adjustable triangle
- H. Drawing media
- I. Drawing surface or table
- J. Drafting tape
- K. Drawing pencils
- L. Pencil pointer
- M. Lead holder
- N. Lead
- O. Lead pointer
- P. Sandpaper pad
- Q. Styrofoam point cleaner
- R. Paper towel or cleaning cloth
- S. Nonabrasive hand eraser
- T. Lettering guide for guidelines
- U. Erasing shield
- V. Technical pens
- W. Ink
- X. Pen cleaning solution
- Y. Grid paper
- Z. Templates
  - 1. General purpose
  - 2. Architectural
- AA. Scales
  - 1. Architectural
  - 2. Metric

II. Items which should be available in the classroom

- A. Miscellaneous templates
- B. Miscellaneous appliques
- C. Other scales
  - 1. Civil engineer
  - 2. Mechanical engineer
- D. *Sweet's Catalog File (Architectural)*
- E. *Architectural Graphic Standards*
- F. *HUD Minimum Property Standards*
- G. Complete set of working drawings and specifications
- H. Various materials for preparing renderings
  Example: Watercolors, felt tip markers, tempera

2

REFERENCES

Arnell, Alvin. *Standard Graphical Symbols.* New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1963.

ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals and Product Directory*, 1977.

Badzinski, Stanley Jr. *Stair Layout.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1974.

Brown, Walter C. *Bluepring Reading for Construction Residential and Commercial.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1980.

Brown, Walter C. *Drafting for Industry.* South Holland, IL: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1978.

Gebert, Kenneth L. *National Electrical Code Blueprint Reading.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1977.

Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. *Architectural Drawing and Planning.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach. *Architecture Drafting and Design.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1977.

Hornung, William J. *Architectural Drafting.* Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1966.

HUD Minimum Property Standards: One and Two Family Dwellings. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. *Architecture Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

Manual of Acceptable Practices to the HUD Minimum Property Standards. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

Manual E, Room Air Distribution Considerations. Washington, D.C. 20036; The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, 1965.

Manual G, Selection of Distribution System. Washington, D.C. 20036: The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, 1963.

Manual J, Load Calculation for Residential Winter and Summer Air Conditioning. Washington, D.C. 20036: The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, 1980.

Manual K, Equipment Selection and System Design Procedures. Washington, D.C. 20036: The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, 1975.

National Electrical Code, Boston: National Fire Protection Association, 1975.

Newman, Morton. *Standard Structural Details for Building Construction.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1968.

Obermeyer, Thomas. *Architectural Technology.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1976.

Ramsey, Charles G. and Harold R. Sleeper. *Architectural Graphic Standards.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1970.

Residential Fireplace and Chimney Details. McLean, VA: Brick Institute of America.

Sleeper, Harold R. *Architectural Specifications.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1967.

Southern Standard Building Code. Birmingham, AL: Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc., 1973.

Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

Stegmen, George K. and Harry J. Stegman. *Architectural Drafting.* Chicago 60637. American Technical Society, 1974.

Sweet's Catalog File. New York: McGraw-Hill Information Systems Co., 1981.

Uniform Plumbing Code. Los Angeles: Western Plumbing Officials Association, 1976.

Wakita, Osamu A. and Richard M. Linde. *The Professional Practice of Architectural Detailing.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1970.

Weidhaas, Ernest R. *Architectural Drafting and Construction.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1974.

Willis, Charles D. *Blueprint Reading for Commercial Construction.* Albany, NY 12205: Delmar Publishers/Litton Educational Publishing, Inc., 1979.

Wyatt, William E. *General Architectural Drawing.* Peoria, IL 61614: Charles A. Bennett Co., Inc., 1969.

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify traditional and contemporary styles. The student should also be able to use reference materials and interview an architectural drafter. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to architectural drafting with the correct definitions.
2. Identify fundamental structural systems.
3. Identify traditional styles.
4. Identify contemporary styles.
5. List architectural reference books.
6. Match architectural office phases with the correct characteristics.
7. Match job titles with the correct qualifications and responsibilities.
8. Demonstrate the ability to:
    a. Use architectural reference materials.
    b. Interview an architectural drafter.

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. View and discuss slides of various types of architecture (residential and commercial), or take a field trip to identify types of architecture in your area.

VII. Discuss in detail the advantages and disadvantages of being an architectural drafter.

VIII. Invite speakers who have experience as architectural drafters, checkers, and designers to speak to the class about their jobs.

IX. Discuss the code of ethics that architectural professionals must follow.

X. Discuss the amount of time usually devoted to each of the architectural phases in Objective VI.

XI. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

  A. Objective sheet

  B. Information sheet

  C. Transparency masters

    1. TM 1--Change Order

    2. TM 2--Structural Systems

    3. TM 3--Traditional Styles

    4. TM 4--Traditional Styles (Continued)

    5. TM 5--Contemporary Styles

D. Assignment sheets

   1. Assignment Sheet #1--Use Architectural Reference Materials

   2. Assignment Sheet #2--Interview an Architectural Drafter

E. Answers to assignment sheets

F. Test

G. Answers to test

II. References:

A. *Sweet's Catalog File.* New York: McGraw-Hill Information Systems Co., 1981.

B. Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach, *Architecture Drafting and Design.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1977.

C. *HUD Minimum Property Standards: One and Two Family Dwellings.* Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

D. Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. *Architecture Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

E. Obermeyer, Thomas. *Architectural Technology.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1976.

F. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design--Engineering--Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

G. Weidhaas, Ernest R. *Architectural Drafting and Construction.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1974.

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

A. Architecture--The art or science of designing building structures, especially habitable buildings

(NOTE: Architectural design is greatly related to the movement of history. Advancements in mathematics and science have improved engineering techniques and materials; yet, skeleton-frame construction and bearing wall construction principles have been known for centuries.)

B. AIA--American Institute of Architects

C. NCARB--National Council of Architectural Registration Boards

D. OSHA--Occupational Safety and Health Administration

E. Working drawings--A set of drawings used to show the type and quantity of material to be used on a job, and how that job is to be completed

F. Revision--Any change to an approved drawing

G. Change order--Document authorizing approved changes to be made to the contract (Transparency 1)

H. Construction documents--Documents composed of all specifications and working drawings

I. Contract documents--A complete package of all working drawings and specifications with preface information and all addenda

J. Specifications--A detailed precise presentation concerning a set of working drawings of a building

K. Addendum--A supplement of all things added to a project

(NOTE: The plural of addendum is addenda.)

L. As builts--Drawing made after construction to reflect changes made during construction

M. Facade--Any face of a building given special architectural treatment

N. Lintel--A horizontal member spanning an opening usually carrying the weight of the load above the opening (post and beam)

(NOTE: See Transparency 2 for examples of lintel and the following terms.)

O. Corbel--A member projecting from within a wall and supporting weight

INFORMATION SHEET

P. Arch--A member usually composed of wedge-shaped blocks spanning an opening, each block supporting a share of the load locked by the keystone in the center

Q. Cohesive--A construction technique which employs materials which are shaped while soft and allowed to harden

(NOTE: Concrete is an application of this technique.)

R. Truss--A construction technique forming a rigid arrangement of comparatively short members used to span a wide space

II. Fundamental structural systems (Transparency 2)

A. Lintel

B. Corbel

C. Arch

D. Cohesive

E. Truss

III. Traditional styles (Transparencies 3 and 4)

A. English

(NOTE: These are asymmetrical with Tudor and Elizabethan variations. Walls are stone, brick, or stucco and are sometimes half-timbered.)

B. Georgian

(NOTE: These are symmetrical with stone or stucco walls. The style was named for English kings of the period from 1714 to 1760.)

C. Regency

(NOTE: This is similar to Georgian with finer lines and details such as long shutters and curved wall extensions. They usually have brick walls which are often painted white. George III was King of England at the time of the American Revolution. He was too old to rule, so his son was appointed "regent" to rule in his father's place. This style was named for that regent.)

D. Colonial

1. New England colonial

(NOTE: This style is a symmetrical, modified Georgian with narrow clapboard siding and vertical boards on corners to eliminate mitering.)

INFORMATION SHEET

2. Garrison

   (NOTE: This is a variation of New England colonial with overhanging second story modeled after blockhouses used in forts.)

3. Southern colonial

   (NOTE: This is two storied, columned, with a large flat porch, and is usually made of brick.)

4. Dutch colonial

   (NOTE: This is stone with steeply pitched roof and slightly curved eaves.)

5. French colonial

   (NOTE: This has a flat facade broken by fancy scrolled iron balconies; plastered fronts are usually tinted pink, yellow, or green.)

   Example: French Quarter of New Orleans

E. Cape Cod

(NOTE: This is a shingled or clapboarded small house with steep gable roof.)

F. Spanish

(NOTE: This has low-pitched and tiled roof with adobe walls built around a patio.)

IV. Contemporary (non-traditional) styles (Transparency 5)

(NOTE: Non-traditional architecture is sometimes called functional or futuristic.)

A. Ranch

(NOTE: This is one floor with a rambling, informal plan.)

B. Split level

(NOTE: This has a half-flight of stairs.)

C. Modern

D. Solar

E. Earth shelter

F. Underground

INFORMATION SHEET

V. Architectural reference books

  A. *Architectural Graphic Standards*

  B. *Standard Graphical Symbols*

  C. *Minimum Property Standards: One and Two Family Dwellings*

  D. *Sweet's Catalog File* (Architectural)

  (NOTE: There are three ways this reference can be used--by looking up the trade name, product, or firm name.)

VI. Characteristics of architectural office phases

  A. Schematic design

    1. Rough site diagram and floor plans

    2. Estimate of possible construction costs

    3. Statement of architect's design concept and engineering demands such as soil conditions, structural support, and HVAC

    (NOTE: An architect tries not to use too much time or expense in this phase since ideas are often rejected.)

  B. Design development

    1. Refinement of ideas from schematic design phase in detail with precise line drawing, elevations, and specifications

    2. Often has elaborate visual aids and color presentations to show clients what they're getting

    3. Refined cost analysis

  C. Construction document

    1. Accurately describes materials including type, quality, and quantity so accurate bids can be submitted and contractor can assemble the building properly

    2. Survey of existing site included in working drawings

    3. Architectural, mechanical, electrical, and structural working drawings included

    4. Bid specifications included which give information to bidder

      a. Where and when to submit bid

      b. Substitutions allowed

      c. Insurance needed

INFORMATION SHEET

- e. Successful completion of an in-company training program

  (NOTE: In some companies this could be as long as one year as a trainee.)

2. Responsibilities
    - a. Prepares pictorial and working drawings
    - b. Makes tracings from architect's or designer's sketches
    - c. Establishes working relationship with other personnel
    - d. Dresses and acts in a manner acceptable to associates

    (NOTE: Responsibilities vary with experience and ability.)

C. Designer

1. Qualifications
    - a. Associate degree in technical area
    - b. Minimum of five years drafting experience in a specialty area
    - c. Good work credentials
2. Responsibilities
    - a. Sketches plans
    - b. Designs
    - c. Details

D. Licensed architectural engineer

1. Qualifications
    - a. Degree in engineering (six years of college)
    - b. Successful completion of engineer in training (EIT) examination
    - c. Successful completion of apprenticeship under licensed engineer
    - d. Successful completion of practicing engineer (PE) examination for engineering specialty area

INFORMATION SHEET

2. Responsibilities

    a. Uses handbooks and reference materials to determine specifications and correct data concerning materials to be used

    b. Makes mathematical computations involving strength of structural materials

E. Licensed architect

1. Qualifications

    a. Degree in architectural area (six years of college)

    b. Successful completion of three year apprenticeship under licensed architect

    c. Successful completion of state examination for architects

        1) Theory

        2) Design problem

        (NOTE: These minimum qualifications may vary for various states and for various drafting positions.)

2. Responsibilities

    a. Uses handbooks and reference materials to determine specifications and correct data concerning materials to be used

    b. Makes job inspections

    c. Supervises subordinates

    (NOTE: Larger firms may have additional job titles such as checker, master or chief drafter, master or chief designer, computer-aided designer or drafter, and spec writer as well as others.)

Change Order

CHANGE ORDER

No. 1
Date 4-5-81

Project:
RIVERSIDE APARTMENTS
425 North Riverside
Anytown, North Dakota

To:
Myers Construction Co.
1600 Industrial Road
Anytown, North Dakota

Revised Contract Amount

Previous contract	$1,650,025.00
Amount of this order ~~(decrease)~~ (increase)	15,100.00
Revised contract	$1,665,125.00

The contract time is hereby (increased) ~~(decreased)~~ ~~(unchanged)~~ by 15 days.

This order covers the contract revision described below:

Install ceramic mosaic floor tile in all kitchens in place of vinyl floor covering specified. Tile shall be standard grade TCA 137.1 set with Dry-Set mortar ANSI A118.1. Installation shall conform to ANSI A108.5 for this method.

The work covered by this order shall be performed under and be part of the original construction contract.

Changes Approved

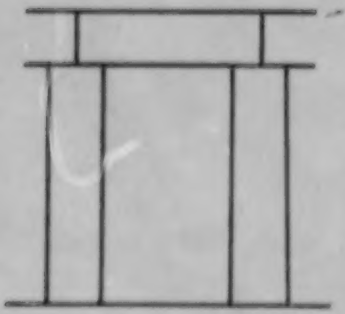
Lyndon Stiles
Owner

by Joe R. Myers
Contractor

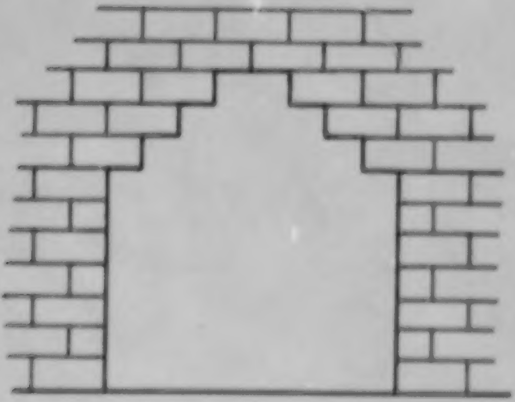
Taylor and Taylor, Architects

by Samuel Matthew Taylor

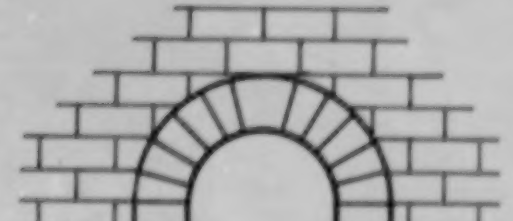
Structural Systems



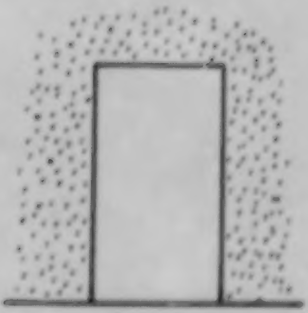
Lintel



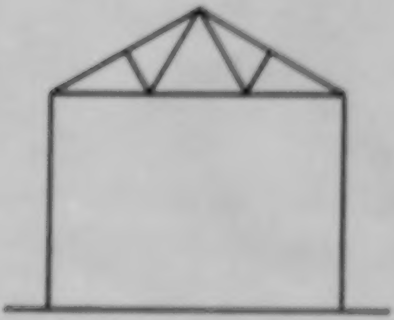
Corbel



Arch

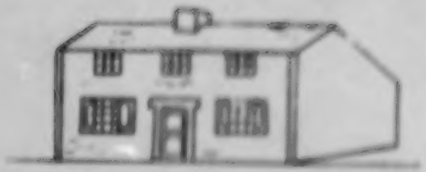


Cohesive

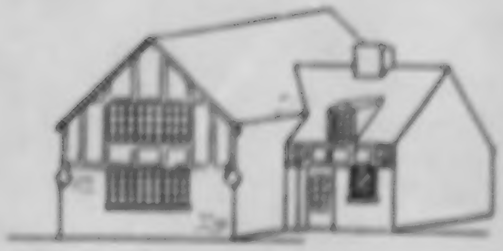


Truss

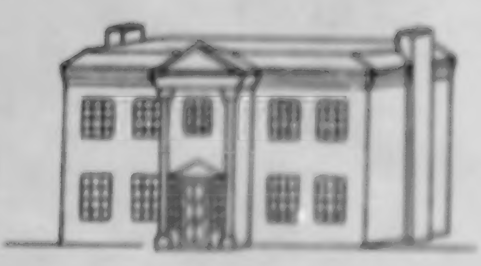
Traditional Styles



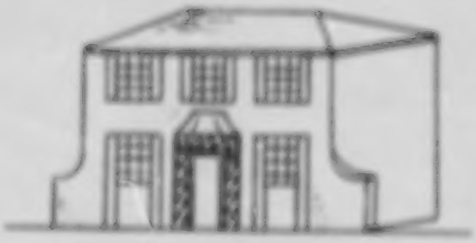
New England Colonial



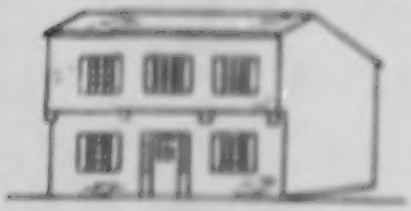
English



Georgian



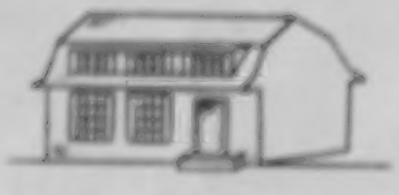
Regency



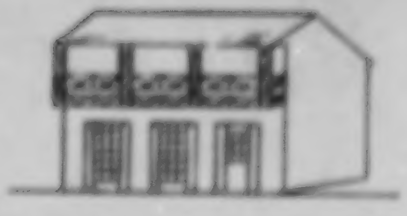
Garrison

Traditional Styles

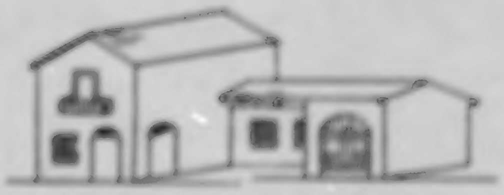
(Continued)



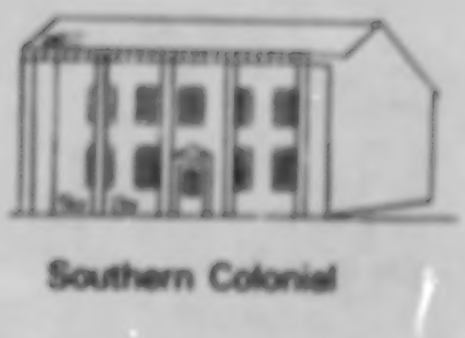
Dutch Colonial



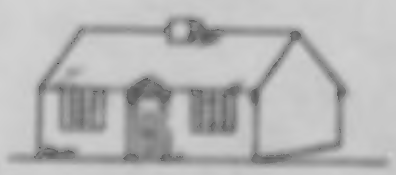
French Colonial



Spanish

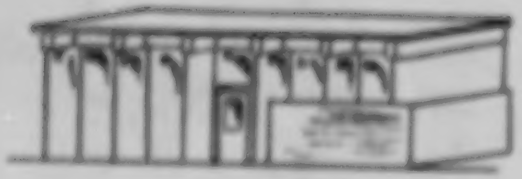


Southern Colonial

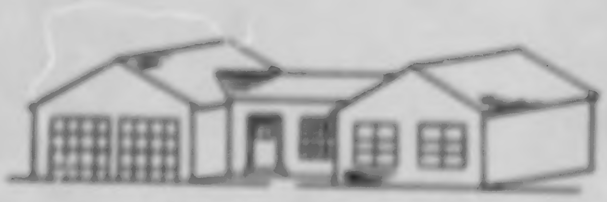


Cape Cod

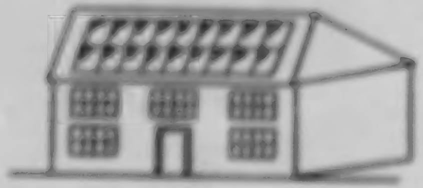
Contemporary Styles



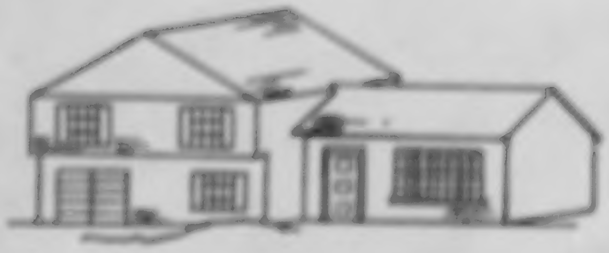
Modern



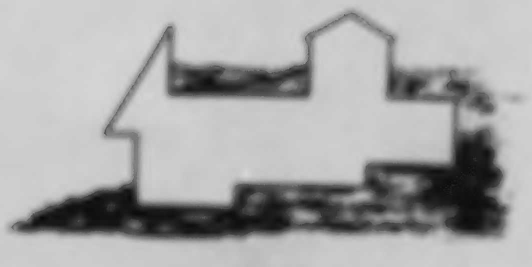
Ranch



Solar



Split Level



Earth Shelter

3.1

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1–USE ARCHITECTURAL REFERENCE MATERIALS

Directions: Use *Architectural Graphic Standards* to determine the sizes for the following items:

1. On spiral stairs with a 66" diameter, what is the size (O.D.) of the center pipe if made of steel or aluminum?

2. What is the minimum and maximum width for a freestanding front-loading automatic dryer?

3. On the termite infestation map of the U.S., in what region is New Mexico?

4. What is the ideal clearance between a kitchen range and the cabinets above it?

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2--INTERVIEW AN ARCHITECTURAL DRAFTER

Directions: Make an appointment with an architectural drafter who is presently employed in that capacity. Ask the following questions and record the answers in the blanks provided.

1. What is your career title? ________________________________

____

2. What tasks do you perform on the job? ________________________

____

____

3. What education and occupational experience is required for this job? ________

____

____

4. What personality traits are most important in your field? ____________

____

____

5. What skills and knowledge are required in this occupation? __________

____

____

6. What is the approximate starting salary of workers in your occupation? ______

____

____

7. What is the employment outlook for the future in this career? __________

____

____

8. What are the possibilities for advancement in this field? ____________

____

____

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

9. What is your favorite part of this job? ______________________________

10. What is your least favorite part of the job? ______________________________

11. What is the dress code in your firm? ______________________________

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #1

(NOTE: *Architectural Graphic Standards,* Sixth Edition, 1970 was used for the following answers.)

1. Pg. 556, 5"
2. Pg. 426, Minimum 26 3/4"; Maximum 31 1/2"
3. Pg. 106, Region 2--Moderate to Heavy
4. Pg. 430, 30"

Assignment Sheet #2–Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

NAME ____________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. The art or science of designing building structures, especially habitable buildings

_____b. American Institute of Architects

_____c. National Council of Architectural Registration Boards

_____d. Occupational Safety and Health Administration

_____e. A set of drawings used to show the type and quantity of material to be used on a job, and how that job is to be completed

_____f. Any change to an approved drawing

_____g. Document authorizing approved changes to be made to the contract

_____h. Documents composed of all specifications and working drawings

_____i. A complete package of all working drawings and specifications with preface information and all addenda

_____j. A detailed precise presentation concerning a set of working drawings of a building

_____k. A supplement of all things added to a project

_____l. Drawing made after construction to reflect changes made during construction

_____m. Any face of a building given special architectural treatment

_____n. A horizontal member spanning an opening usually carrying the weight of the load above the opening (post and beam)

_____o. A member projecting from within a wall and supporting weight

1. Facade
2. Lintel
3. Specifications
4. NCARB
5. Truss
6. AIA
7. Revision
8. Contract documents
9. Architecture
10. Change order
11. Working drawings
12. OSHA
13. Corbel
14. Cohesive
15. Addendum

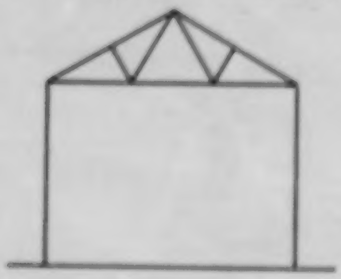
_____p. A member usually composed of wedge-shaped blocks spanning an opening, each block supporting a share of the load locked by the keystone in the center

_____q. A construction technique which employs materials which are shaped while soft and allowed to harden

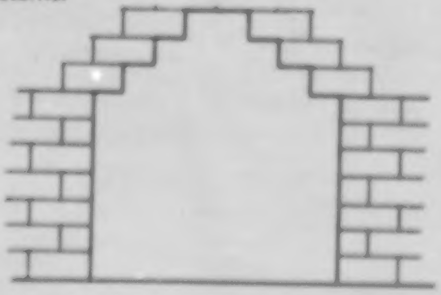
_____r. A construction technique forming a rigid arrangement of comparatively short members used to span a wide space

16. Construction documents
17. Arch
18. As builts

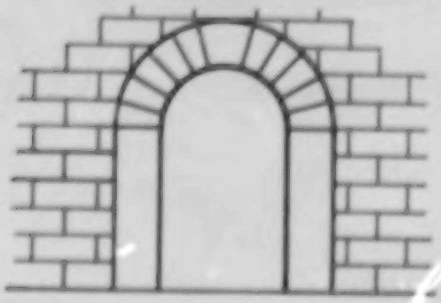
2. Identify the following fundamental structural systems.



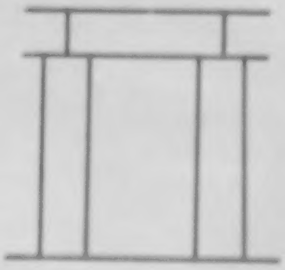
a. ______________________



b. ______________________

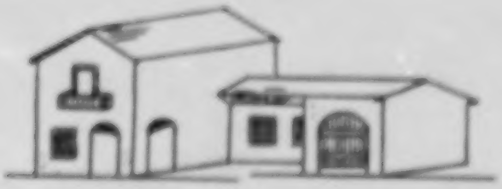


c. ______________________

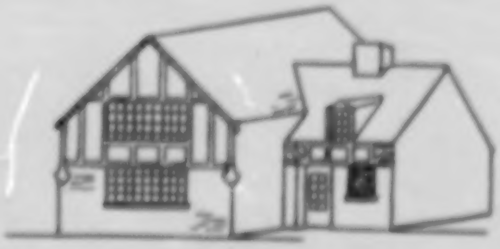


d. ______________________

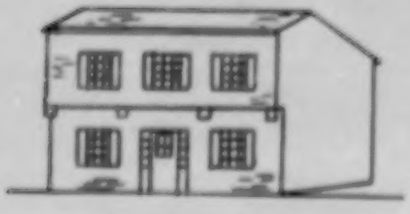
3. Identify the following traditional styles.

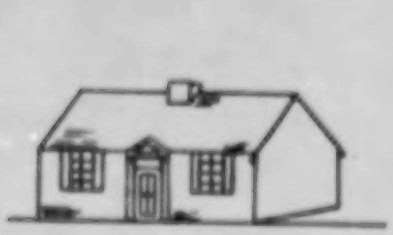


a. ______________________

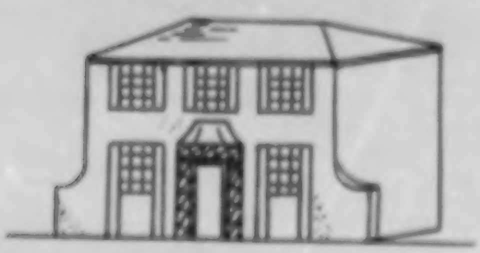


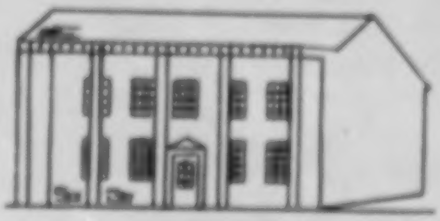
b. ______________________





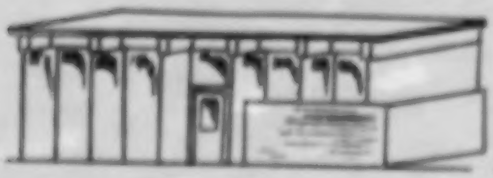
c. ______________________ d. ______________________

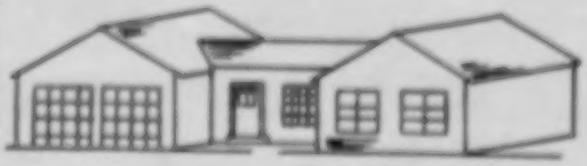




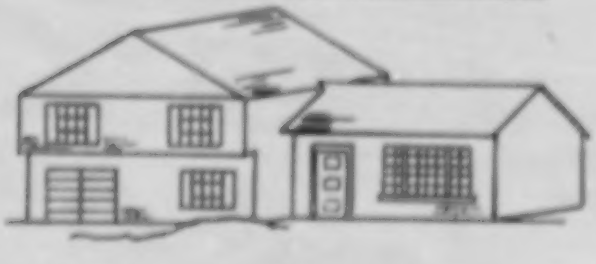
e. ______________________ f. ______________________

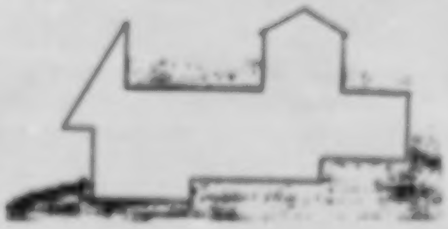
4. Identify the following contemporary styles.





a. ______________________ b. ______________________





c. ______________________ d. ______________________

5. List two architectural reference books.

a. ____

b. ____

6. Match the architectural office phases on the right with the correct characteristics.

_____a. Architect/engineer makes inspections

_____b. In competitive bidding the owner has 30 days to check competency of contractor before signing contract

_____c. Refinement of ideas from schematic design phase in detail with precise line drawing, elevations, and specifications

_____d. Rough site diagram and floor plans

_____e. Contractor/subcontractor conforms to OSHA standards on site

_____f. Accurately describes materials including type, quality, and quantity so accurate bids can be submitted and contractor can assemble the building properly

_____g. Often has elaborate visual aids and color presentations to show clients what they're getting

_____h. Architectural, mechanical, electrical, and structural working drawings included

_____i. Negotiated sum may be more expensive

1. Schematic design
2. Design development
3. Construction document
4. Negotiation or bidding
5. Construction

7. Match the job titles on the right with the correct qualifications and responsibilities.

_____a. Degree in engineering

_____b. Associate degree in technical area and minimum of five years drafting experience in a specialty area

_____c. High school diploma

_____d. Presently entered in the in-company training program

_____e. Makes tracings from architect's or designer's sketches

_____f. Degree in architectural area

1. Drafter trainee
2. Drafter
3. Designer
4. Licensed architectural engineer
5. Licensed architect

8. Demonstrate the ability to:

   a. Use architectural reference materials.

   b. Interview an architectural drafter.

   (NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

INTRODUCTION
UNIT I

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 9
   b. 6
   c. 4
   d. 12
   e. 11
   f. 7
   g. 10
   h. 16
   i. 8
   j. 3
   k. 15
   l. 18
   m. 1
   n. 2
   o. 13
   p. 17
   q. 14
   r. 5

2. a. Truss
   b. Corbel
   c. Arch
   d. Lintel

3. a. Spanish
   b. English
   c. Garrison
   d. Cape Cod
   e. Regency
   f. Southern colonial

4. a. Modern
   b. Ranch
   c. Split level
   d. Earth shelter

5. Any two of the following:

   a. *Architectural Graphic Standards*
   b. *Standard Graphical Symbols*
   c. *Minimum Property Standards: One and Two Family Dwellings*
   d. *Sweet's Catalog File (Architectural)*

6. a. 5
   b. 4
   c. 2
   d. 1
   e. 5
   f. 3
   g. 2
   h. 3
   i. 4

7. a. 4
   b. 3
   c. 1 or 2
   d. 1
   e. 2
   f. 5

8. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify architectural styles of lettering, tools, and materials. The student should also be able to letter using various architectural styles. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Identify architectural styles of lettering.
2. Select true statements concerning the importance of good lettering.
3. Match the heights of architectural lettering with the correct uses.
4. Select true statements concerning architectural lettering hints.
5. Select types of lettering to be avoided.
6. Name types of lettering guides used in laying out lettering guidelines.
7. Match lettering instruments with the correct descriptions.
8. Identify tools and materials.
9. Demonstrate the ability to:
    - a. Sharpen lead correctly.
    - b. Letter using the Condensed style.
    - c. Letter using the Extended style.
    - d. Letter using the Variation style.
    - e. Letter using the Kabel Modern style.
    - f. Letter using the Chisel style.
    - g. Letter using the Triangle style.
    - h. Letter using the Shadow style.

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Use file drawings to demonstrate examples of correct and incorrect lettering.

VII. Provide examples of a local company's drafting standards book.

VIII. Discuss why all lettering styles are not acceptable in architectural drafting.

IX. Demonstrate the use of architectural tools and equipment which may be new to the students, such as burnish plates, overlays, and architectural templates.

X. Have sales representatives give demonstrations on instruments available, such as the Kroy lettering machine.

XI. Discuss which lettering style is most common in your area, and have students spend extra time practicing on this style.

XII. Use unit test as a pre-test.

XIII. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

   A. Objective sheet

   B. Information sheet

   C. Transparency masters

      1. TM 1- Architectural Styles of Lettering

      2. TM 2- Architectural Styles of Lettering (Continued)

      3. TM 3- Lettering Hints

   4. TM 4-Lettering to be Avoided
   5. TM 5-Types of Lettering Instruments
   6. TM 6-Types of Lettering Instruments (Continued)
   7. TM 7-Triangles
   8. TM 8-Compasses
   9. TM 9-Dividers
   10. TM 10-Drafting Pencils
   11. TM 11-Erasers and Cleaning Tools
   12. TM 12-Parallel Bar
   13. TM 13-Drafting Machines
   14. TM 14-Scales
   15. TM 15-Miscellaneous Tools and Equipment
   16. TM 16-Rubber Stamps, Appliqués, and Tape
   17. TM 17-Burnish Plates and Grid Paper
   18. TM 18-Underlays and Overlays
   19. TM 19-Templates

D. Assignment sheets

   1. Assignment Sheet #1-Sharpen Lead Correctly
   2. Assignment Sheet #2-Letter Using the Condensed Style
   3. Assignment Sheet #3-Letter Using the Extended Style
   4. Assignment Sheet #4-Letter Using the Variation Style
   5. Assignment Sheet #5-Letter Using the Kabel Modern Style
   6. Assignment Sheet #6-Letter Using the Ghost Style
   7. Assignment Sheet #7-Letter Using the Triangle Style
   8. Assignment Sheet #8-Letter Using the Shadow Style

E. Test

F. Answers to test

H. References

A. Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. *Architectural Drawing and Planning.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

B. Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach. *Architecture Drafting and Design.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1977.

C. Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. *Architecture Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

D. Obermeyer, Thomas. *Architectural Technology.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1976.

E. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

F. Wakita, Osamu A. and Richard M. Linde. *The Professional Practice of Architectural Detailing.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1976.

G. Weidhaas, Ernest R. *Architectural Drafting and Construction.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1974.

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Architectural styles of lettering (Transparencies 1 and 2)

(NOTE: Lettering is to conform to the office standards used.)

A. Condensed

B. Extended

C. Variation

D. Italic Modern

E. Chisel

F. Triangle

G. Shadow

(NOTE: Shadow is used only to indicate street names on large site plans so names will stand out.)

II. Importance of good lettering

A. Since approximately 20% of a drafter's time is used in lettering, neat lettering conserves time and money for the individual and the company

B. Lettering can greatly affect the overall appearance of a drawing

C. Most drawings are reproduced; therefore, the lettering must be done with neatness, accuracy, speed, legibility, and be a dense black

D. The letters must be formed very carefully and not crowded together or they will run together when reproduced

E. Good lettering and line quality help the student to obtain the first job

(NOTE: Many companies require a separate lettering sample or that their application be lettered as a sample.)

III. Heights of architectural lettering and uses

A. 1/4" Used in title blocks and project name

B. 3/16" Used in titles of plans, elevations, sections, and details

C. 1/8" Used in all notes and other lettering

(NOTE: Sometimes 3/32" is used rather than 1/8" for notes and other lettering.)

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Architectural lettering hints (Transparency 3)

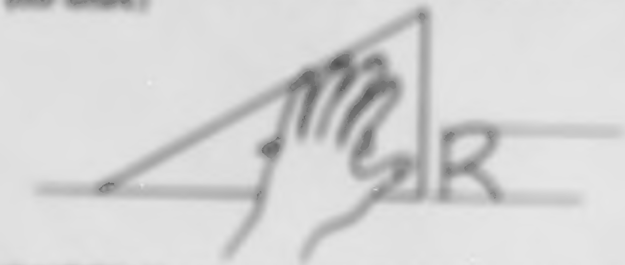
A. It is more difficult to do 1/4" letters than 1/8" because of the area involved

(NOTE: Use 3" x 5" unruled file cards and draw light guidelines 1/4" in height, and practice alphabet, numerals, words, sentences, and paragraphs.)

B. To develop neatness, accuracy, speed, and legibility, print everything when possible, such as class notes and personal letters

C. In order to make the vertical portion of the letter straight, use a triangle as a "crutch"

(NOTE: This is especially important if you have a tendency to incline your letters.)



(CAUTION: Use care not to smudge lettering when using a triangle.)

D. Lettering on a drawing should look like one person did it, regardless of how many people actually did the lettering on the drawing

E. Letters should be in proportion and stable

(NOTE: They should not be top heavy or unstable.)

Example: HANDRAIL (Poor) HANDRAIL (Good)

Proportion

BCE2358 (Poor) BCE2358 (Good)

Stability

F. Gothic lettering should be mastered before even attempting architectural lettering

G. Letter shapes should not be changed

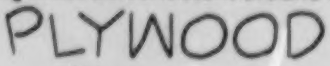
(NOTE: Stylizing lettering must never be interpreted as an excuse to use deviations.)

INFORMATION SHEET

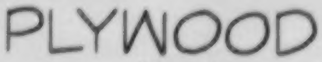
H. The strokes of letters may be emphasized by pointing the terminal portion

I. All lettering must be consistent around a vertical line

Example:



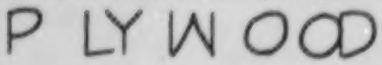
(Poor)



(Good)

J. Practice good spacing because poor spacing will destroy even the best looking lettering; spacing should be visually equal

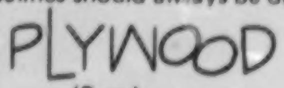
Example:



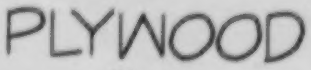
(Poor)

K. Light guidelines should always be drawn and used to the fullest

Example:



(Poor)



(Good)

(NOTE: Unless otherwise instructed, guidelines should be drawn in such a way that they will not print when reproduced; when drawn, they should not be visible when drawing is held at arm's length.)

L. Select one accepted architectural lettering style of your choice and practice it until you have mastered it

M. When making the strokes of a letter, do each stroke quickly instead of slowly, but take your time between each stroke and letter until you have mastered each letter

N. Fractions should be 1 2/3 the height of a whole number; the numerator and denominator should be 2/3 the height of the whole number

(NOTE: Fraction bar can be slanted.)

O. Lettering should be the last thing done to a drawing to avoid smudges

P. Lettering should be dark enough to reproduce properly

Q. If drawings are to be microfilmed, lettering sizes should follow standards

V. Lettering to be avoided (Transparency 4)

A. Uppercase mixed letter sizes

B. Accented letters

C. Lowercase vertical letters

D. Inclined uppercase letters

E. Inclined lowercase letters

INFORMATION SHEET

F. Script uppercase letters

G. Script lowercase letters

H. Thick and thin

VI. Types of lettering guides used in laying out lettering guidelines

A. Braddock Rowe triangle

B. Ames type lettering guide

C. Parallelograph

VII. Lettering instruments and descriptions (Transparencies 5 and 6)

A. Lettering instrument--An instrument consisting of a template, a scriber, and an inking pen or pencil

B. Varigraph--A device for making a wide variety of either single stroke or "built-up" letters

C. Letter guide--An instrument much like the varigraph but simpler which also makes a large variety of styles and sizes of letters

D. VariTyper--An instrument that looks like a typewriter with an open-ended carriage which uses a one-time carbon ribbon

(NOTE: The open-ended carriage allows the use of various size drawings. Hundreds of instantly changeable typefaces are available for the VariTyper.)

E. Template--A thin, flat sheet of plastic with letters cut through the sheet

F. Lettering machine--A machine that produces "type on tape"

(NOTE: The transparent tape can be attached directly to the surface of a drawing.)

G. Appliques (pressure-sensitive transfer sheets)--Prepared lettering sheets which come in many different lettering styles and sizes

(NOTE: These are usually of a wax base, and caution must be used when near heat.)

VIII. Tools and materials

A. Triangles (Transparency 7)

1. 30° 60°
2. 45°
3. Adjustable

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Compasses (Transparency 8)
   1. Friction
   2. Beam
   3. Bow
C. Dividers (Transparency 9)
   1. Friction
   2. Bow
   3. Proportional
D. Pencils (Transparency 10)
   1. Wooden cased drawing pencil
   2. Mechanical pencil (lead holder)
   3. Thin lead mechanical pencil
E. Erasers and cleaning tools (Transparency 11)
   1. Erasers
   2. Erasing shield
   3. Cleaning pad
   4. Dusting brush
   5. Electric eraser
      a. Cord
      b. Cordless
F. Parallel bar (Transparency 12)
G. Drafting machines (Transparency 13)
   1. Elbow drafting machine
   2. Track drafting machine
H. Scales (Transparency 14)
   1. Architect
   2. Civil Engineer

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Metric

4. Decimal

I. Protractor (Transparency 15)

J. Irregular curve (Transparency 15)

K. Lead pointer (Transparency 15)

L. Flexible curve (Transparency 15)

M. Rubber stamps (Transparency 16)

N. Appliques (Transparency 16)

O. Pressure-sensitive tape (Transparency 16)

P. Grid paper (Transparency 17)

Q. Burnish plates (Transparency 17)

(NOTE: This underlay device has raised lines where lines are needed. A pencil is the burnishing tool which transfers the symbol onto the drawing. This is used mostly for roofing, siding, trees, and bricks.)

R. Underlays (Transparency 18)

(NOTE: Parts of a drawing that are used often such as letters, symbols, fixtures, or guidelines are drawn on pieces of media, and then placed under the original and traced.)

S. Overlays (Transparency 18)

(NOTE: These are transparent sheets placed over the drawing. Temporary overlays are used mostly during the design process to achieve the final location of an object. A permanent overlay is permanently secured to the original.)

T. Templates (Transparency 19)

1. Floor plan

(NOTE: These are available in 1/4" and 1/8" scale.)

2. Plumbing

a. Plan view

b. Elevation view

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Furniture
4. Landscape
5. Stair calculator

(NOTE: There are many templates other than the ones listed that you will be using, but you should already be acquainted with general purpose templates.)

Architectural Styles of Lettering

CONDENSED

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRS

TUVWXYZ &1234567890

EXTENDED

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO

PQRSTUVWXYZ &

1234567890 ½ ¾

VARIATION

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR

STUVWXYZ123456789

KABEL MODERN

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRST

UVWXYZ & 1234567890

CHISEL

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQ

RSTUVWXYZ 123456789

Architectural Styles of Lettering

(Continued)

TRIANGLE

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR

STUVWXYZ 1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

1234567890

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

1234567890

SHADOW

ABCDEFGHIJKLM

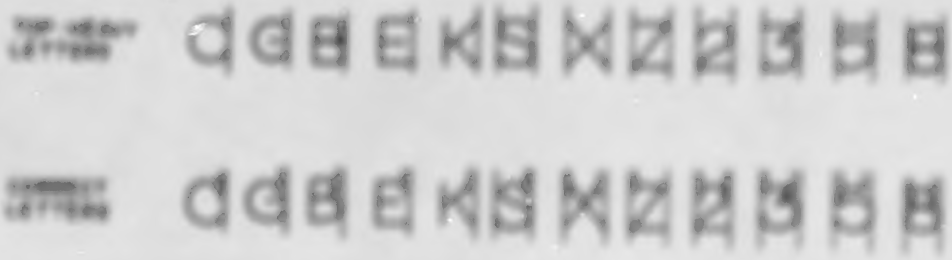
NOPQRSTUVWX

YZ 123456789

Lettering Hints

LETTERS NOT UNIFORM IN HEIGHT	UNiFORM
LETTERS ARE NOT VERTICALLY UNIFORM	UNIFORM
LETTERS NOT UNIFORM IN STROKE THICKNESS	UNIFORM
AREAS ARE NOT UNIFORM BETWEEN LETTERS	UNI FOR M
STYLE OF LETTERS IS NOT UNIFORM	UniFoRm
AREAS ARE NOT UNIFORM BETWEEN WORDS	LET TE RING SHOULD BEUNIFORM
UNIFORM LETTERING	UNIFORM

Lettering Stability


TOP-HEAVY LETTERS
C G B E K S X Z 2 3 5 8
CORRECT LETTERS
C G B E K S X Z 2 3 5 8

Lettering To Be Avoided

MIXED LETTER SIZES

ACCENTED LETTERS

lowercase letters

INCLINED

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR

STUVWXYZ 123456789

Script

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO

PQRSTUVWXYZ 123456

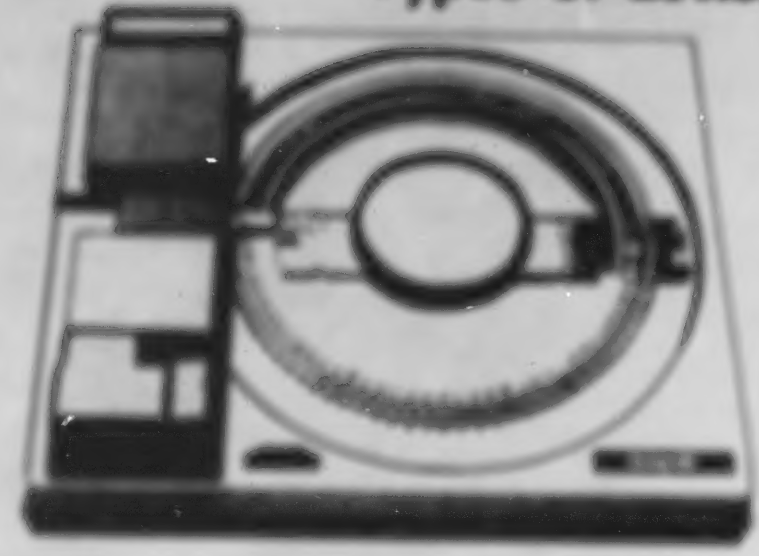
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz

THICK & THIN

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQ

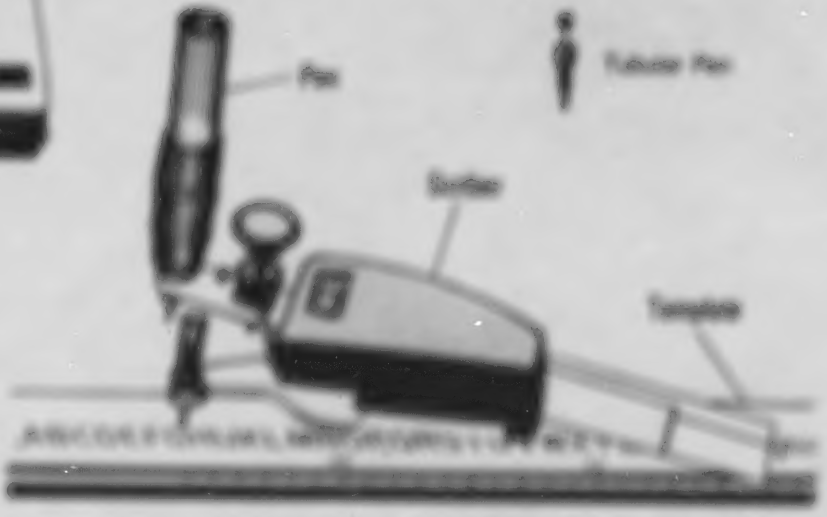
RSTUVWXYZ 123456789

Types of Lettering Instruments



Lettering Machine

(NOTE: This lettering machine is available in either manual or electric.)


Pen
Tubular Pen
Scriber
Template

Lettering Instrument

(NOTE: The Leroy lettering instrument is a common type.)

Types of Lettering Instruments

(Continued)

ngle Alphabet
THEM ALL

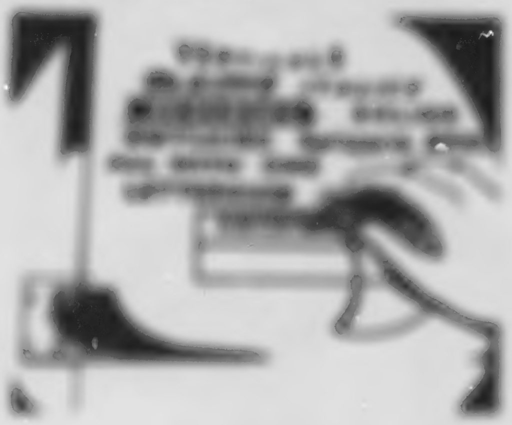
Varigraph, Inc.

Varigraph, Italic Model Headwriter

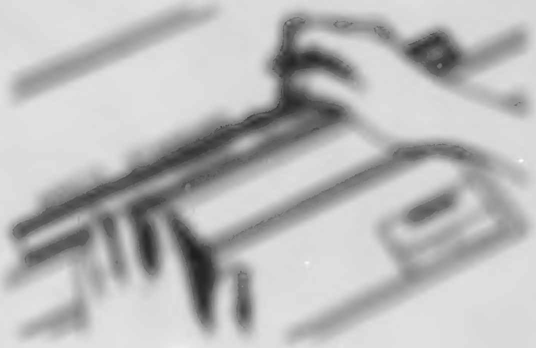
VariTyper Corporation

VariTyper Office Composing Machine, Model 660

Courtesy Letterguide



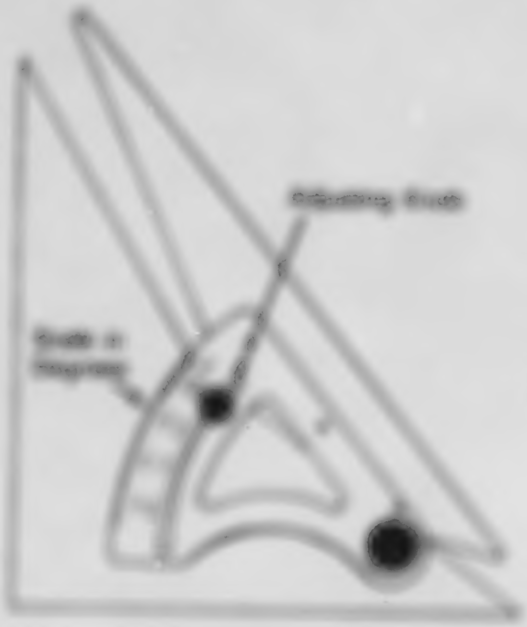
Letterguide



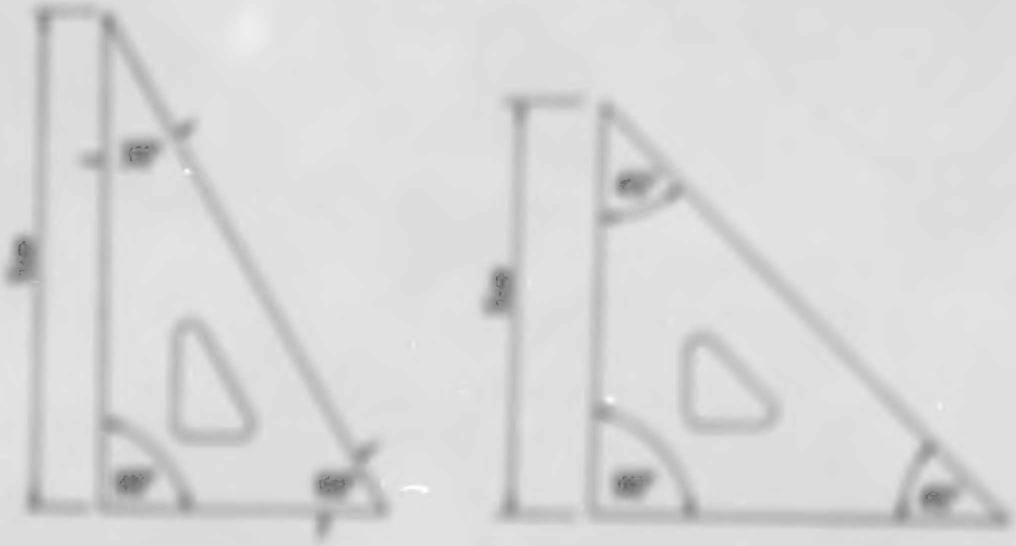
Template

Triangles

Adjustable Triangle

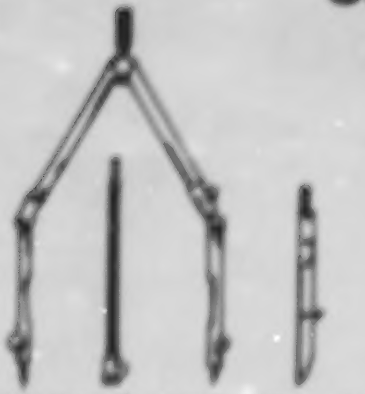

Adjusting Knob
Scale in Degrees

Standard Triangles


30°
90°
60°
45°
90°
45°

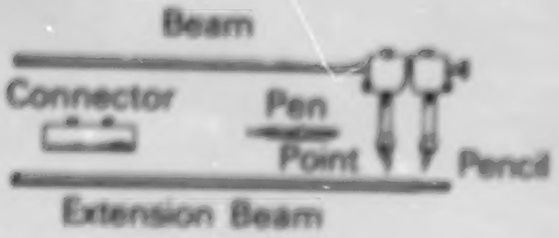
NOTE: In Closed Position
Triangle forms Standard 45° Triangle

Compasses

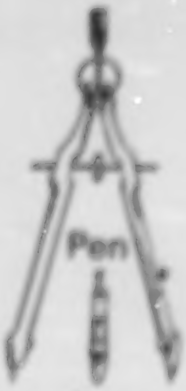


Compass, Lengthening Bar,
Pen Attachment

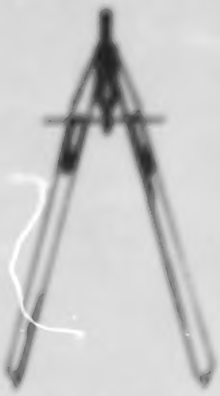
Friction Compass


Beam
Connector
Pen
Point
Pencil
Extension Beam

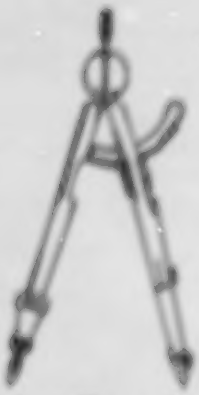
Beam Compass



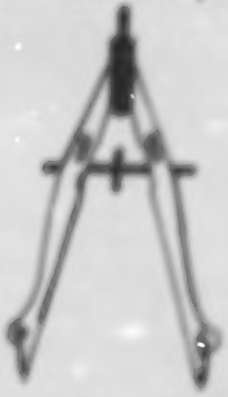
Bow Compass
or Divider



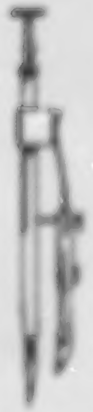
Jet Bow Compass



Ratchet Bow Compass

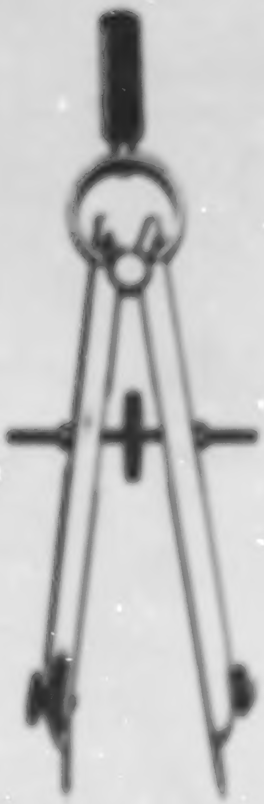


Speed Bow Compass

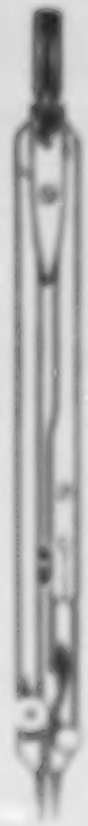


Drop Spring Bow Compass

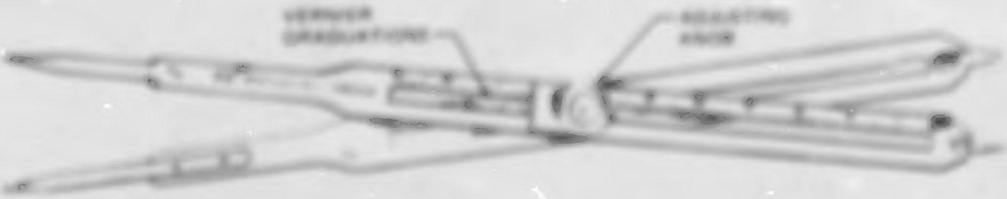
Dividers



Bow Divider



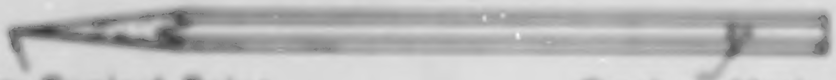
Friction Divider


VERNIER GRADUATIONS
ADJUSTING KNOB

Proportional Divider

Drafting Pencils

Wooden Cased Pencil


Sharp Conical Point
Grade Mark

For General Linework and Lettering

Do Not Sharpen This End

Mechanical Pencil

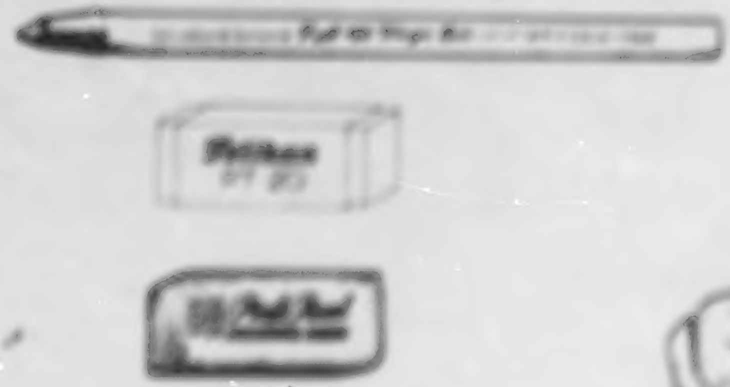
Drafting Pencil Leads

Available in All Grades

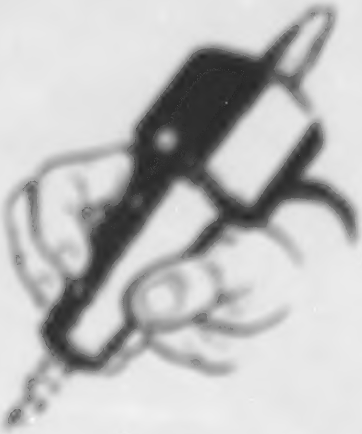
Thin Lead Mechanical Pencil

Thin Leads Require no Sharpening

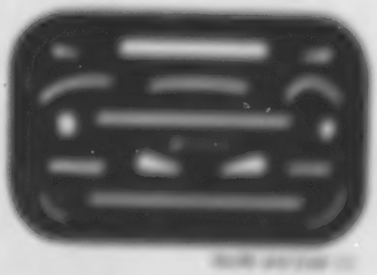
Erasers and Cleaning Tools



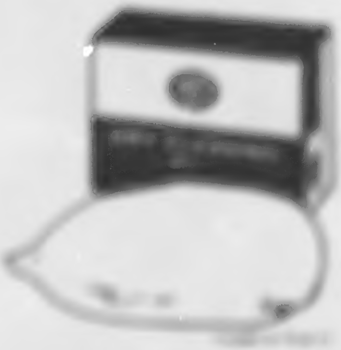
Erasers



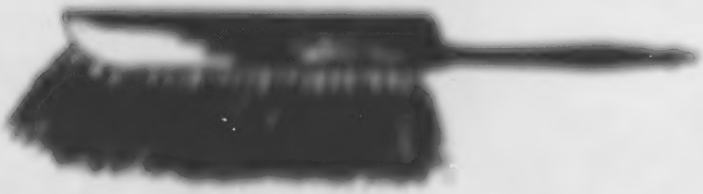
Electric Eraser



Erasing Shield

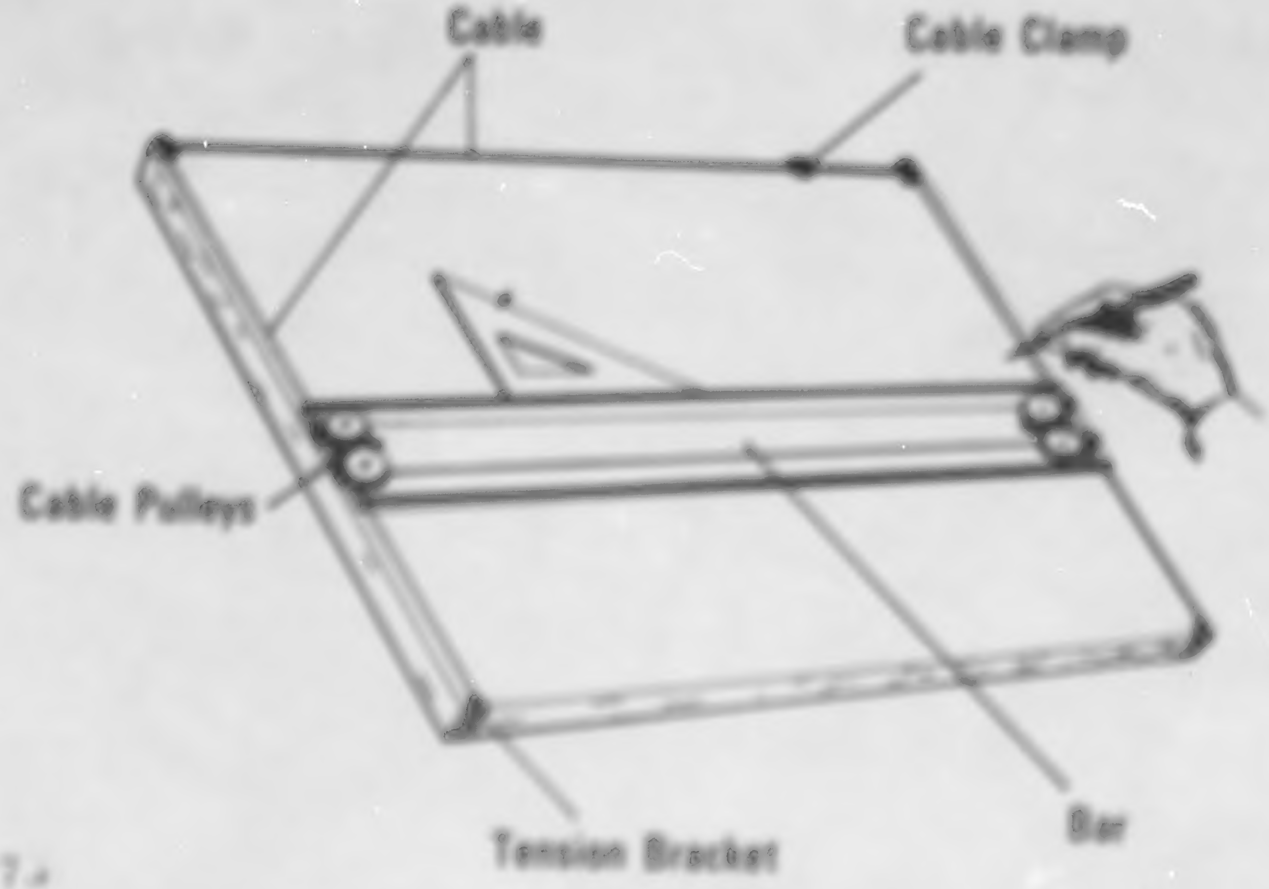


Cleaning Pad



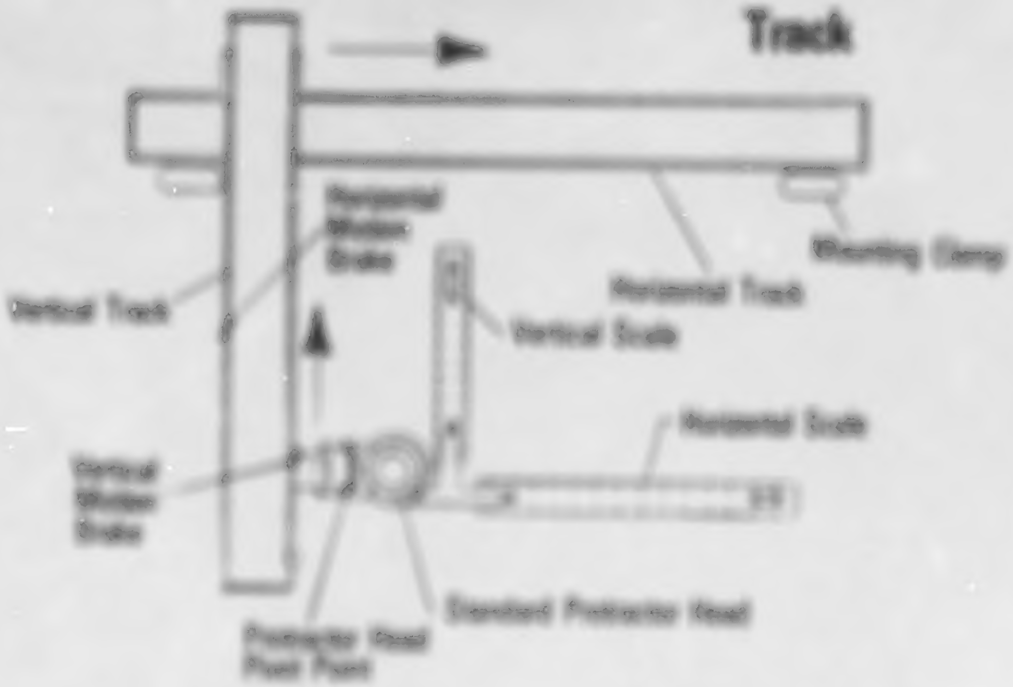
Dusting Brush

Parallel Bar

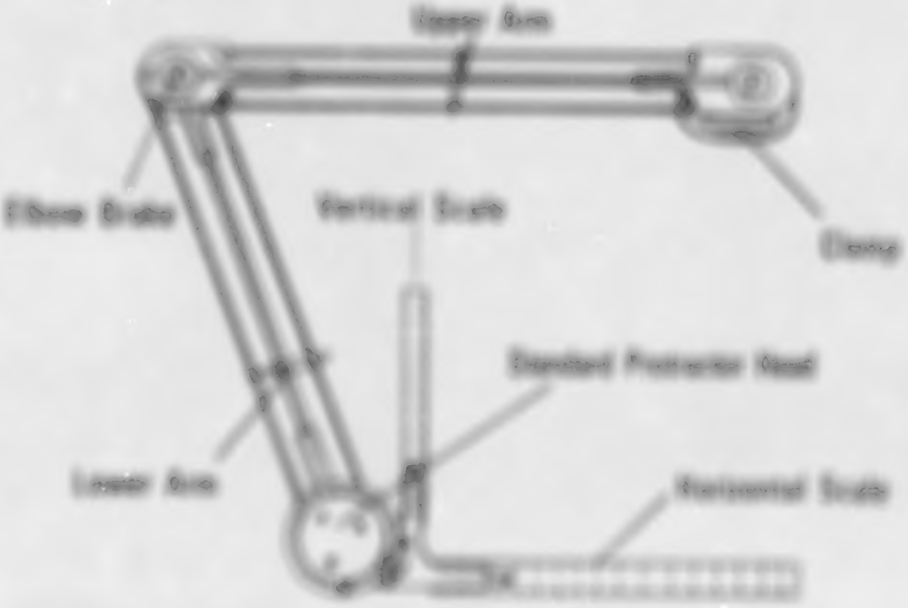

Cable
Cable Clamp
Cable Pulleys
Tension Bracket
Bar

Drafting Machines

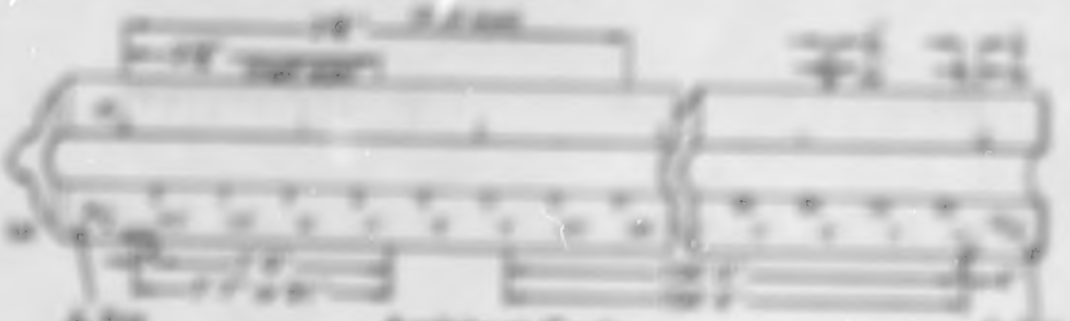
Track


Horizontal Motion Brake
Mounting Clamp
Horizontal Track
Vertical Track
Vertical Scale
Horizontal Scale
Vertical Motion Brake
Standard Protractor Head
Protractor Head Pivot Point

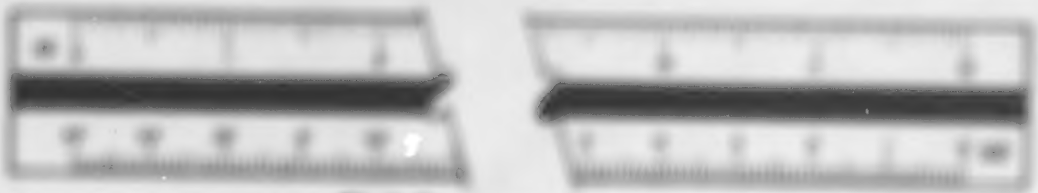
Elbow


Upper Arm
Elbow Brake
Vertical Scale
Clamp
Standard Protractor Head
Lower Arm
Horizontal Scale

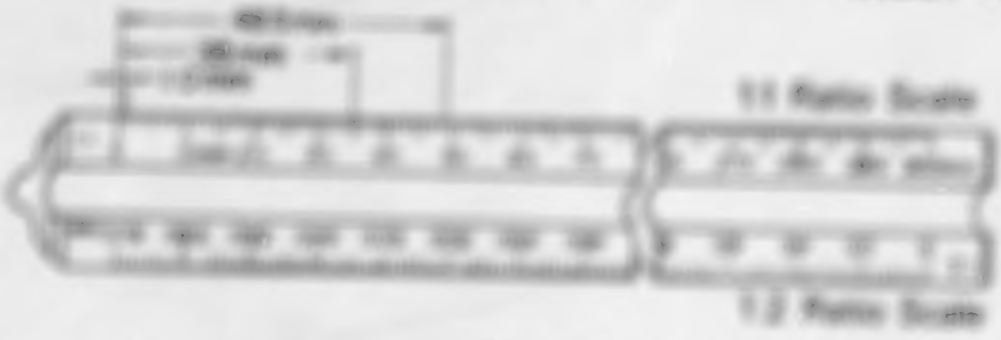
Scales



Architect Scale



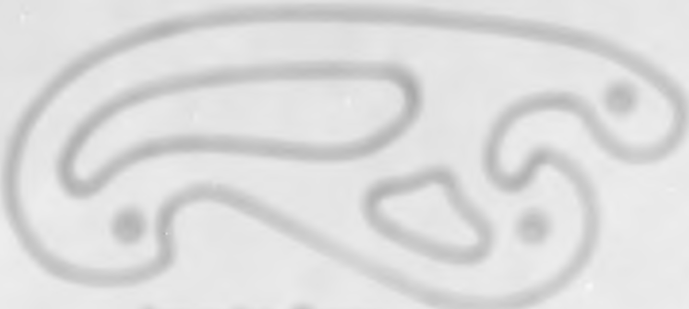
Civil Engineer Scale


1:1 Ratio Scale
1:2 Ratio Scale

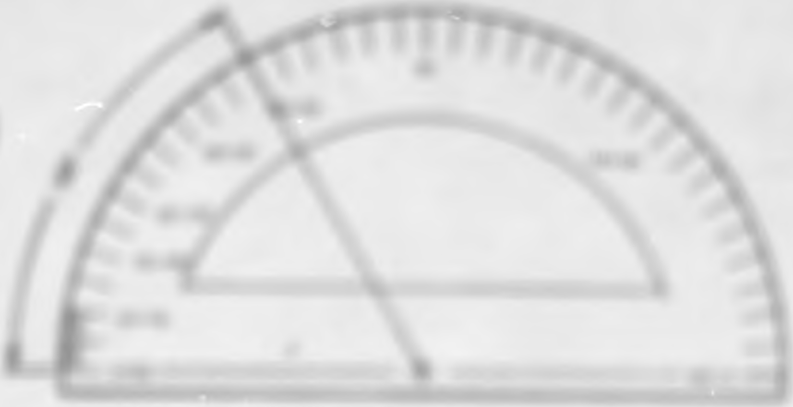
Metric Scale

Scale Clip

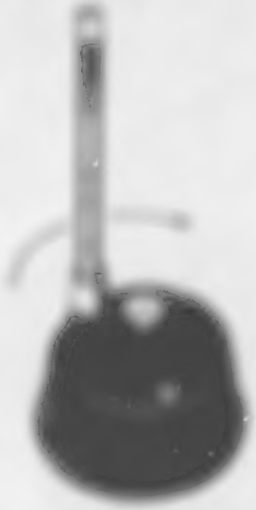
Miscellaneous Tools and Equipment



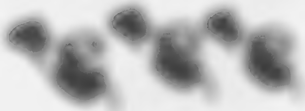
Irregular Curve



Protractor



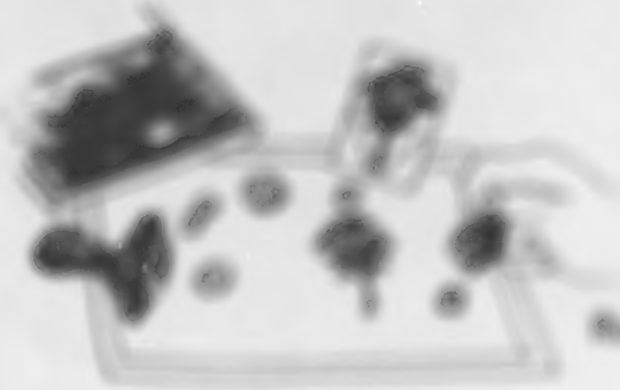
Lead Pointer



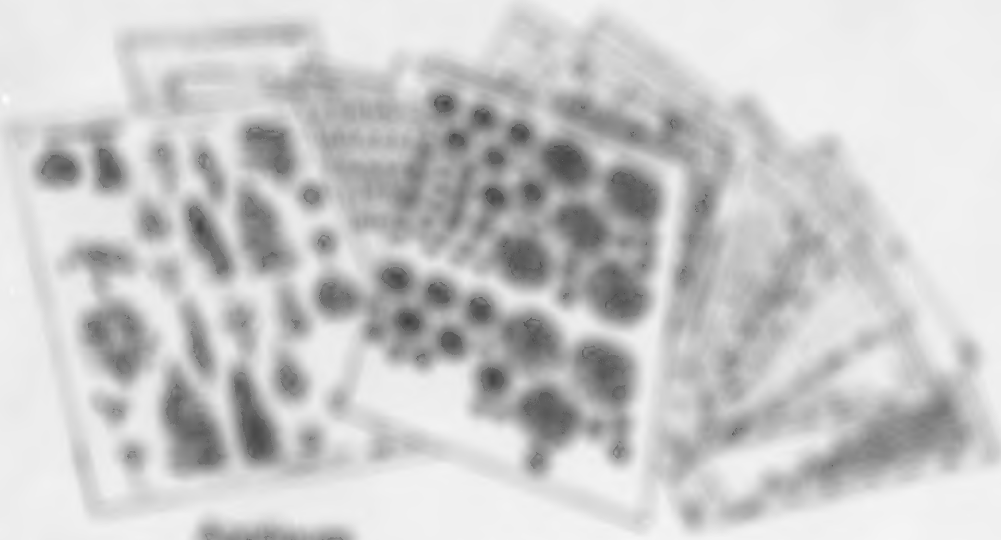
Weights

Flexible Curve

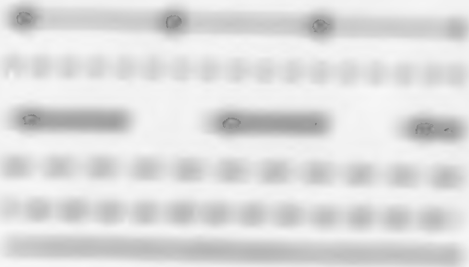
Rubber Stamps, Appliques, and Tape



Rubber Stamps

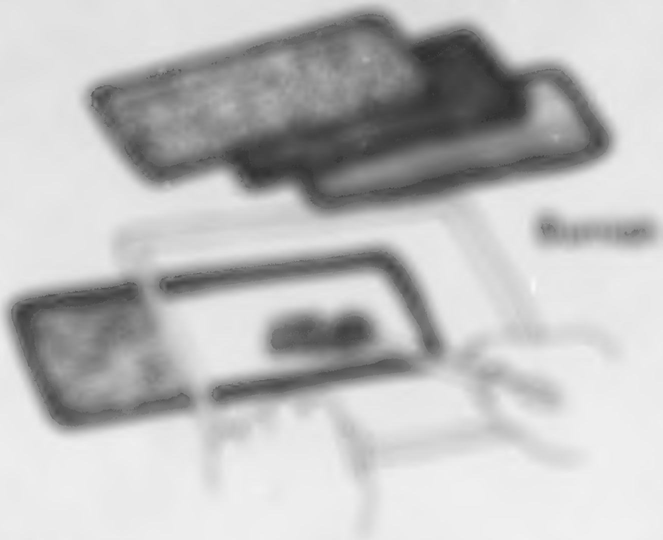


Appliques



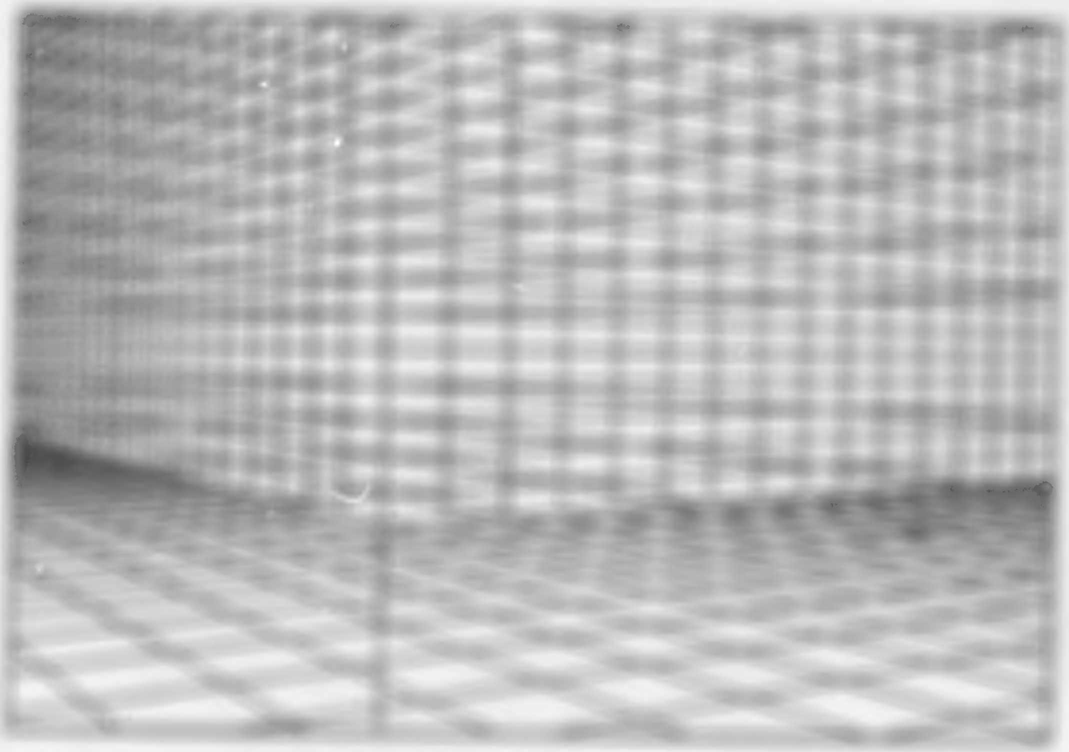
Pressure Sensitive Tape

Burnish Plates and Grid Paper



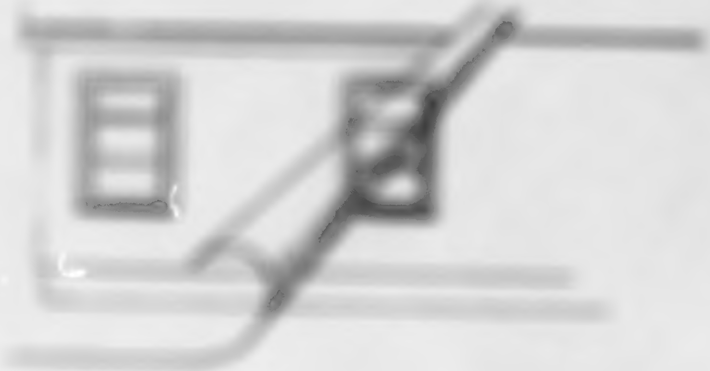
Burnish Plates

Grid Paper

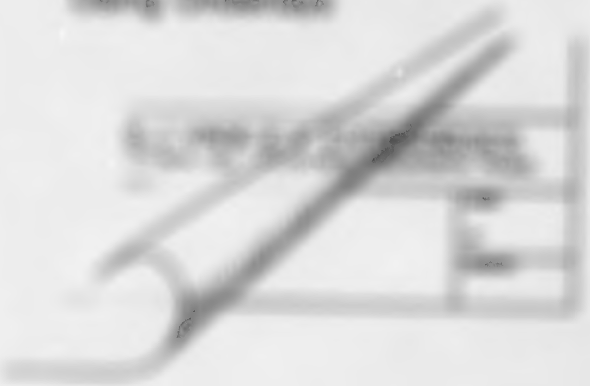


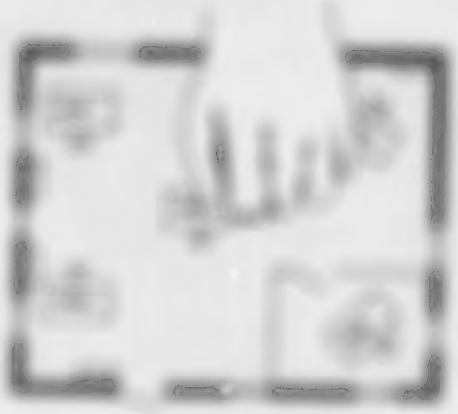
Underlays and Overlays

Commonly Used Underlays



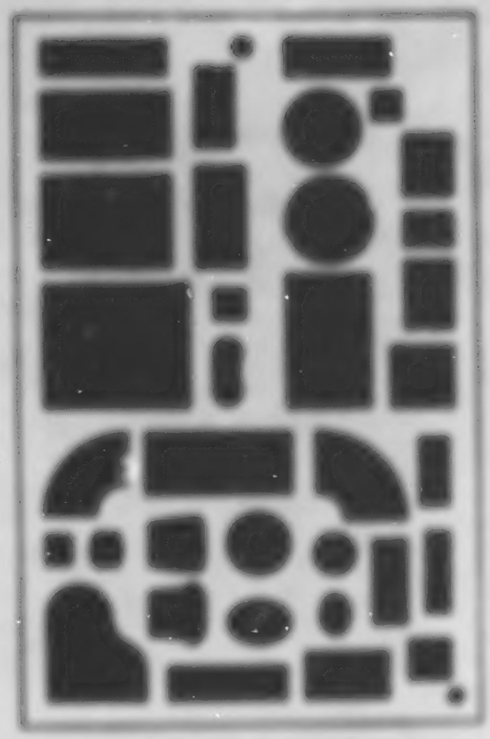
Using Underlays



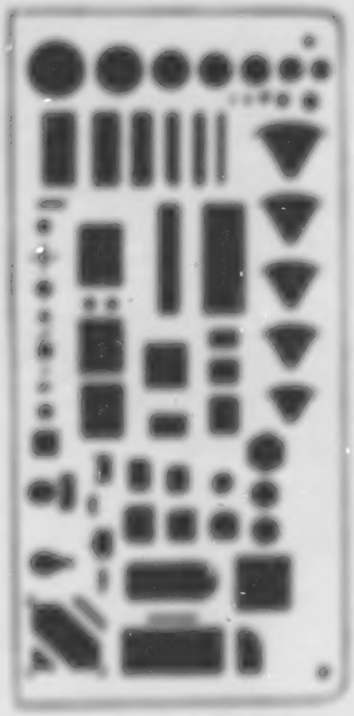


Using Overlays

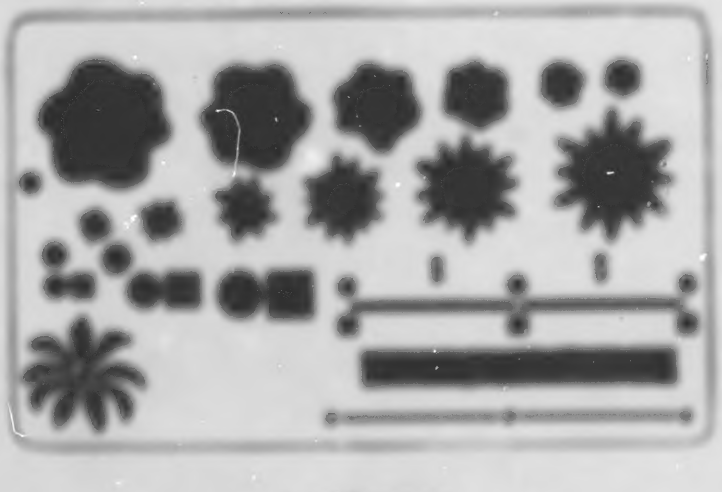
Templates



Home Furnishing



Architectural template



Landscape

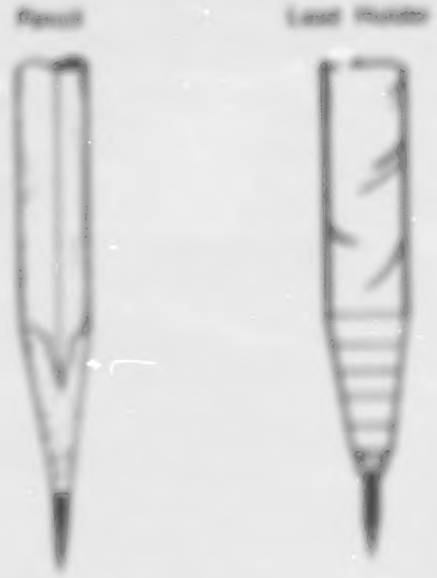
LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1–SHARPEN LEAD CORRECTLY

Directions: Using lead holder and pointer or pencil and pencil pointer, sharpen a lead correctly using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

Example:

1. Select correct lead weight
2. Sharpen lead to correct point



3. Dull point on sandpaper pad

   (NOTE: The pencil point must be kept uniform.)

4. After lead has been sharpened correctly, remove graphite from pencil using styrofoam point cleaner or tissue

   (NOTE: This will help to prevent lead from smudging drawing.)

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2–LETTER USING THE CONDENSED STYLE

Directions: Letter in the Condensed style by using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

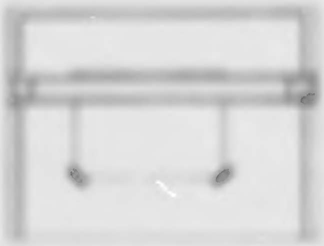
Example:

1. Practice by tracing directly on this sheet of paper the Condensed style letters and numerals below.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRS

TUVWXYZ &1234567890

2. Tape media to drafting surface.



3. Prepare lead point for lettering.
4. Draw guidelines on media.
5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Condensed style.

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3 LETTER USING THE EXTENDED STYLE

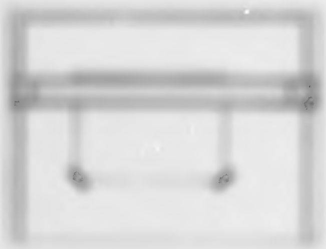
Directions: Letter in the Extended style by using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

Example:

1. Practice by tracing directly on this sheet of paper the Extended style letters and numerals below.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO
PQRSTUVWXYZ &
1234567890 ½ ¾

2. Tape media to drafting surface



3. Prepare lead point for lettering
4. Draw guidelines on media
5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Extended style

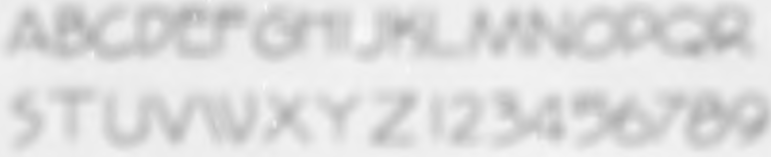
LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #6—LETTER USING THE VARIATION STYLE

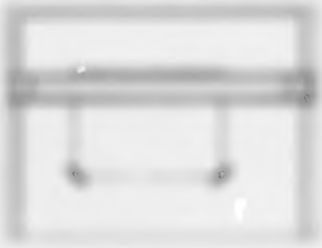
Directions: Letter in the Variation style by using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

Example:

1. Practice by tracing directly on this sheet of paper the Variation style letters and numerals below.



2. Tape media to drafting surface



3. Prepare lead point for lettering

4. Draw guidelines on media

5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Variation style

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #6 LETTER USING THE KABEL MODERN STYLE

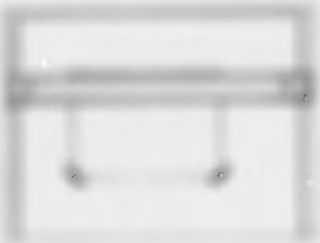
Directions: Letter in the Kabel Modern style by using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

Example:

1. Practice by tracing directly on this sheet of paper the Kabel Modern style letters and numerals below.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRST
UVWXYZ & 1234567890

2. Tape matte to drafting surface.



3. Prepare lead point for lettering.
4. Draw guidelines on matte.
5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Kabel Modern style.

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #8—LETTER USING THE EHRHETT STYLE

Directions: Letter in the Ehrhett style by using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

Example:

1. Practice by tracing directly on this sheet of paper the Ehrhett style letters and numerals below.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQ
RSTUVWXYZ 123456789

2. Tape media to drafting surface.

3. Prepare chisel lead point for lettering as shown in Assignment Sheet #7.
4. Draw guidelines on media.
5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Ehrhett style.

LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #[illegible]—LETTER USING THE TRIANGLE STYLE

Directions: Letter in the Triangle style by using the procedure in the following example as a guideline.

Example:

1. Prepare by copying directly on this sheet of paper the Triangle style letters and numerals.

ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR
STUVWXYZ 1234567890

2. Tape media to drafting surface.

3. Prepare lead point for lettering.

4. Draw guidelines on media.

5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Triangle style.

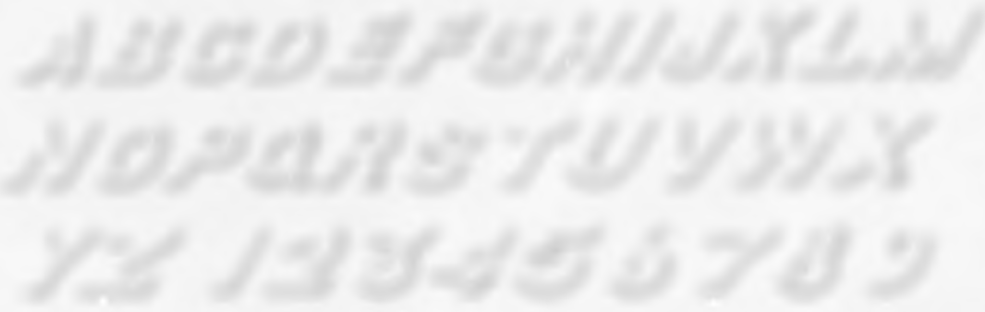
LETTERING AND TOOLS
UNIT II

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #8 — LETTER USING THE SHADOW STYLE

Directions: Letter in the Shadow style by using the procedure in the following example [illegible]

Example:

1. Practice by copying directly on this sheet of paper the Shadow style letters and numerals below.



2. Tape media to drafting surface.

3. Prepare lead point for lettering.
4. Draw guidelines on media.
5. Letter the entire alphabet and numerals in the Shadow style.

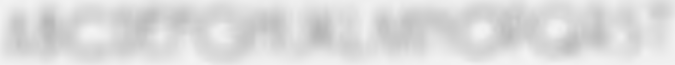
[illegible]

[illegible]

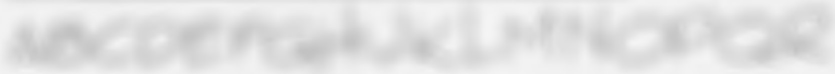
NAME ______________________

TEST

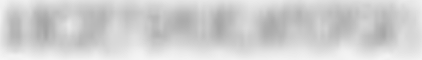
1. Identify the following professional styles of lettering.



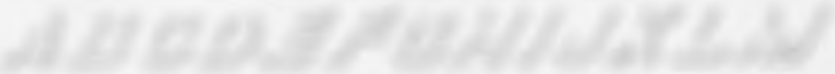
a. ______________________



b. ______________________



c. ______________________



d. ______________________

2. Select true statements concerning the importance of good lettering by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a) Since approximately [illegible] of a draftsman's time is spent in lettering, neat lettering [illegible]

_____b) Lettering can greatly affect the overall appearance of a drawing.

_____c) Most drawings are not reproduced; therefore, the lettering does not need to be first rate.

_____d) The letters must be formed very carefully and not crowded together or they will run together when reproduced.

_____e) Good lettering and line quality help the student to obtain his first job.

3. Match the heights of professional lettering on the right with the correct use.

_____a) Used in dimensions and [illegible] notes — 1. 1/8"

_____b) Used in titles of plans, elevations, sections, and details — 2. 1/4"

_____c) Used in all notes and other lettering — 3. 3/16"

[illegible] [illegible]

_____a. [illegible]

_____b. [illegible]

_____c. [illegible]

_____d. [illegible]

_____e. [illegible]

_____f. [illegible]

_____g. [illegible]

_____h. [illegible]

_____i. [illegible]

_____j. [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

_____a. *abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz*

_____b. ABCDEFGHIJKLMNO

_____c. ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOP

_____d. *ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR*

_____e. ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQR

_____f. *ABCDEFGHIJKLMN*

[illegible] [illegible]

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

[illegible]

_____ [illegible]

_____ [illegible]

_____ [illegible]

_____ [illegible]

_____ [illegible]

_____ [illegible]

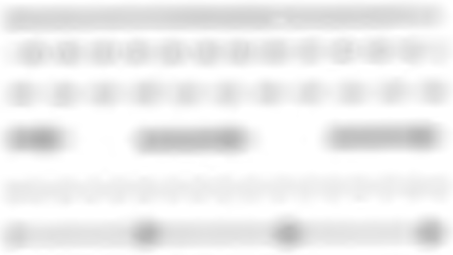
_____ [illegible]

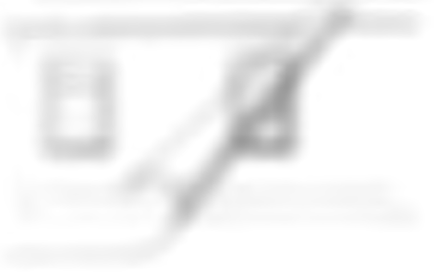
1. [illegible]
2. [illegible]
3. [illegible]
4. [illegible]
5. [illegible]
6. [illegible]
7. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] ______________________

[illegible] ______________________





[illegible] ______________________

[illegible] ______________________

[illegible] ____________________ [illegible] ____________________

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]
    [illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify components and symbols on a plot plan and draw site and plot plans. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to site conditions with the correct definitions.
2. List site considerations.
3. Select true statements concerning building codes.
4. Complete a list of types of zoning regulations.
5. Select items which may be covered in a residential protective covenant.
6. Complete statements concerning prevailing winds.
7. Select true statements concerning orientation.
8. Identify the components of a plot plan.
9. Identify symbols used on a plot plan.
10. Arrange in order the procedure for drawing a plot plan.
11. Distinguish between the need for a cut and a fill from grade marks.
12. Demonstrate the ability to:
    - a. Compile a list of site considerations.
    - b. Calculate altitude angle and azimuth using interpolation.
    - c. Calculate altitude angle and azimuth using a sun angle calculator.
    - d. Determine the cast of a shadow using altitude and azimuth.
    - e. Revise plans to correct prevailing wind and orientation problems.
    - f. Draw a site plan.
    - g. Draw a plot plan.
    - h. Determine cut and fill needed on a given lot.

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Discuss the importance of considering the site (orientation, contours, building codes) before beginning the design of a building.

VII. Have as many of the following as time permits make presentations to the class. They should relate their fields to architectural drafting students.

  A. Utility company representative

  B. City zoning official

  C. City planner

  D. Developer

  E. Surveyor

  F. USDA Soil Conservation Service representative

  (NOTE: This representative should discuss local soil types and the importance of knowing the type before building begins.)

  G. Landscape architect

VIII. Provide site plans with necessary ordinances or have students obtain ordinances from city.

IX. Provide copies of surveyors' field notes and plans available to make plot plans.

X. Discuss why the students need to know altitude and azimuth.

XI. Show students how to read the part in an almanac which deals with time, angles, and latitudes.

XII. Provide examples of landscape plans. Drawing a landscape plan that coordinates with the student's plot plan could be an optional assignment sheet that would tie in well with this unit.

XIII. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

   A. Objective sheet

   B. Information sheet

   C. Transparency masters

      1. TM 1–Plat
      2. TM 2–Prevailing Winds
      3. TM 3–Site Plan
      4. TM 4–Allowable Building Area
      5. TM 5–Plot Plan
      6. TM 6–Plot Plan (Continued)
      7. TM 7–Plot Plan Symbols
      8. TM 8–Plot Plan Symbols (Continued)
      9. TM 9–Azimuth and Altitude

   D. Assignment sheets

      1. Assignment Sheet #1–Compile a List of Site Considerations
      2. Assignment Sheet #2–Calculate Altitude Angle and Azimuth Using Interpolation
      3. Assignment Sheet #3–Calculate Altitude Angle and Azimuth Using a Sun Angle Calculator
      4. Assignment Sheet #4–Determine the Cast of a Shadow Using Altitude and Azimuth
      5. Assignment Sheet #5–Revise Plans to Correct Prevailing Wind and Orientation Problems
      6. Assignment Sheet #6–Draw a Site Plan
      7. Assignment Sheet #7–Draw a Plot Plan
      8. Assignment Sheet #8–Determine Cut and Fill Needed on a Given Lot

   E. Answers to assignment sheets

   F. Test

   G. Answers to test

II. References:

A. Hornung, William J. *Architectural Drafting.* Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1966.

B. Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. *Architecture Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL. 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

C. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

D. *ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals and Product Directory*, 1977.

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

   A. Tract--A defined area of land

   B. Plat--Map of a given tract of land or subdivision (Transparency 1)

   C. Site--The general locality wherein the lot is situated

   D. Lot--The actual plot of ground on which the building is to be built

   E. Property survey--Legal document prepared by surveyor which includes dimensions of lot

   (NOTE: The property survey is usually part of the deed and is on file in the courthouse, but this varies according to state and local codes.)

   F. Topographic survey--Representation of natural and man-made features of the lot such as existing trees, drives, and water

   G. Plot plan--Drawing which contains information from property survey and topographic survey

   (NOTE: It usually contains the lot, block number, and/or a legal description. This is not a legal document.)

   H. Elevation--Vertical distance above or below sea level

   I. Benchmark--Point of known elevation serving as a reference

   J. Contour lines--Lines which connect points having the same elevation to indicate slope

   (NOTE: Widely spaced contour lines indicate a gradual slope, while tightly spaced lines indicate a steep slope.)

   K. Orientation--The direction a given wall faces

   L. Utility easement (U/E)--Right of a company to cross portions of property with utilities and to maintain and service their equipment

   (NOTE: These include water, gas, electric, sewer, and telephone. Railroad is a right of way [R.O.W.].)

   M. Building line (B/L)--A line parallel to the property line determining the allowable building area

INFORMATION SHEET

N. Azimuth--Direction from north or south up to 360° measured in degrees, minutes, and seconds

(NOTE: In the morning, the azimuth is measured in an easterly direction, and in the afternoon, it is measured in a westerly direction. Charts for azimuth for your area [according to latitude] can be found in architectural standards books, or *American Nautical Almanac*.)

O. Bearing--Direction measured from north or south towards east or west up to 90° in degrees, minutes, and seconds

P. Altitude angle--Angle formed by the rays of the sun and the earth's surface

(NOTE: Charts for altitudes for your area [according to latitude] can be found in *Architectural Graphic Standards* and other architectural standards books. This material for both azimuth and altitude can help to save energy in conventional structures, buildings with solar energy, and earth sheltered structures.)

Q. Protective covenant--A written agreement to provide the orderly development of a tract

II. Site considerations

A. Choose a possible lot

B. Check local building codes

(NOTE: Existing codes may restrict the type of building that can be built.)

C. Examine the tax structure

(NOTE: Low taxes in an area may not necessarily be an asset.)

D. Check zoning regulations

E. Look for undesirable factors which will lower the future value of the property

1. Street traffic that is busy and noisy
2. Swamps
3. Dumps
4. Railroads
5. Substandard housing

INFORMATION SHEET

F. Look for desirable conveniences

   1. Churches
   2. Public transportation
   3. Schools
   4. Shopping centers
   5. Hospitals

G. Look for available and adequate utilities

   1. Water supply
   2. Sewage disposal
   3. Gas
   4. Electricity
   5. Telephone service
   6. Fire protection
   7. Street lights and paving
   8. Garbage disposal

H. Take into account the slope of the land

   1. A lot which is flat is easiest to build on, but is difficult to landscape
   2. A slightly sloped lot could make a basement desirable and aids in yard drainage
   3. A lot with a steep slope will probably require a retaining wall and fill may be necessary
   4. A low-lying lot should be avoided because dampness problems usually occur

I. Check to see if the lot is in the flood plain

J. Determine soil conditions and soil types

   1. A layer of topsoil a minimum of 1'-0" thick is excellent
   2. Clay or sand below the topsoil is considered fine

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Use caution with rocks present on site; this could eliminate the possibility of having a basement, footings will be expensive, and septic tanks may be impossible to install

4. Avoid lots that have been recently filled; they will not support a house, and walls will crack due to settling

K. Check water table

L. Have lawyer complete a title search and have the lot surveyed

(NOTE: Accept only a warranty deed. It is advisable to get title guarantee insurance from a guarantee insurance firm. Be sure the insurance protects the owner because some policies only protect the mortgage holder. This type of insurance will guarantee the title to be clear and will pay any liens against it, if they should occur. Be sure you know the policy limits well.)

III. Building codes

A. Building codes deal mostly with health, stability, and safety

B. There are national, state, and local building codes

(NOTE: Before developing a set of drawings, ALWAYS find out which agency (city, county,or state) determines the way the building is to be built.)

C. There are several standardized building codes

1. "Uniform Building Code" published by the International Conference of Building Officials

2. "The Basic Building Code" by the Building Officials and Code Administrators International, Inc.

3. "The National Building Code" published by the American Insurance Association

4. "The Standard Building Code" prepared by the Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc.

D. The federal government can pass a law as to how a structure can be built, and a state can adopt these laws

(NOTE: If a state adopts these laws, they can make them more stringent, but cannot make them more lenient.)

E. Minimum codes are just that--minimum and are not always the most desired solution

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Types of zoning regulations

- A. Industrial
- B. Commercial
- C. Residential
- D. Civic

(NOTE: Regulations may be amended by a governing board or by a vote of the residents in the affected area.)

V. Items which may be included in a residential protective covenant

- A. Legal description of the tract
- B. All structures shall be residential
- C. No lots can be divided or split without being submitted and approved by a committee
- D. The square footage of the garage and number of vehicles it can contain
- E. The minimum square footage of the first floor
- F. Building plans, specifications, and plot plan must be approved by a selected committee within a specified length of time
- G. All plots must be kept free from weeds, trash, rubbish, or other unsightly materials, or the committee can have them removed and charged to the owner of the lot
- H. How vehicles can be parked overnight and for extended periods of time
- I. After construction has started, how long is allowed to finish the project; if an extension is needed, it must be granted by the committee in writing

  (NOTE: There may be a limit on the length of time allowed before starting to build.)
- J. No cesspools can be constructed
- K. Fencing style and materials
- L. Lot square footage
- M. No structures of a temporary character, such as a tent, shack, trailer, garage, barn, or other type of out buildings shall be erected on any lot at any time and used as a residence either temporarily or permanently
- N. Types of materials, placement of materials, and colors of exterior walls of a structure

INFORMATION SHEET

O. Type of roof

P. Roof overhang sizes

Q. Ornamentation

R. If wood burning fireplace is in house, spark guards in the chimneys must be installed and maintained in effective condition

S. Basketball goals are sometimes not permitted in the front yard or on the front of the house

T. Style and material of mailboxes

U. Garbage and trash cans may have to be screened from view in all directions

V. No livestock or poultry can be raised, kept, or bred on a lot

W. Nothing can be built on easements reserved for utilities or drainage

(NOTE: Sometimes these types of covenants can be changed in whole or in part by more than 50% of the landholders in this tract. The covenant should be read and understood, and possibly have a lawyer look it over before papers are signed.)

VI. Prevailing winds (Transparency 2)

A. In the summer months, the winds should come through the living and sleeping area

B. In the winter months, attempts must be made to block the wind

1. The garage and utility room should be placed to take the winter storms

2. Evergreen trees or tall shrubs will help break the force of the wind

C. In areas of high winds, construction must be reinforced to keep damage down

(NOTE: Check with the weather bureau in your area for information concerning local wind peculiarities and direction.)

VII. Orientation

A. Southern exposures are sunny and warm

B. Northern exposures are cooler in both summer and winter

C. Eastern exposures receive the morning sun and are bright and cheerful

D. Western exposures receive the afternoon sun and can be very hot

INFORMATION SHEET

E. In southern areas of the United States, the south and southwest exposures of the house receive the extreme heat and should be protected with shading devices unless it is to be a solar house

F. In northern areas of the United States, the north and northwest exposures of the house receive the extreme cold and should be protected by placing garage/storage areas on these sides, using evergreen trees as wind breaks, or having few or no windows on these sides

VIII. Components of a plot plan (Transparencies 4, 5, and 6)

A. Length and bearing of each property line

B. Location, outline, and size of buildings on site

C. Contour lines

D. Elevations of property corners and contour lines

E. North arrow

F. Building lines

G. Trees, shrubs, streams, and gardens

H. Streets, driveways, sidewalks, and patios

I. Location of utilities

J. Easements for utilities and drainage, if any

K. Well, septic tank, and drain field

(NOTE: The drain field is sometimes called the absorption field or leeching field.)

L. Fences and retaining walls

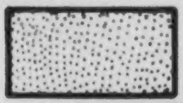
M. Lot number or address of site

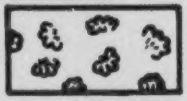
N. Scale of drawing

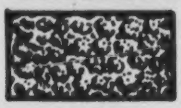
(NOTE: The plot plan is drawn using information from the site plan. The site plan presents information only about the property and utilities. See Transparency 3. The plot plan shows both tha property and proposed construction.)

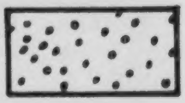
INFORMATION SHEET

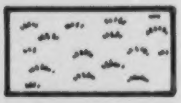
IX. Symbols used on a plot plan (Transparencies 7 and 8)

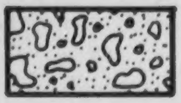
A. Sand 

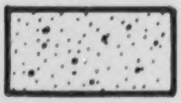
B. Open woodland 

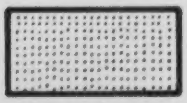
C. Dense forest 

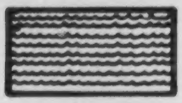
D. Small irregularly spaced trees 

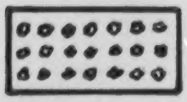
E. Tall grass 

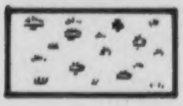
F. Large stones 

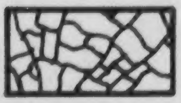
G. Gravel 

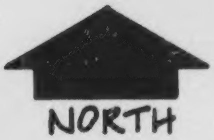
H. Cultivated area 

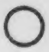
I. Water 

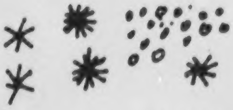
J. Orchard 

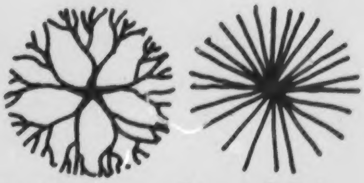
K. Marsh 

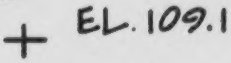
L. Dry cracked clay 

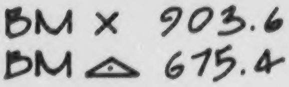
M. North arrow 

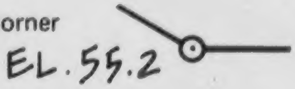
N. Well 

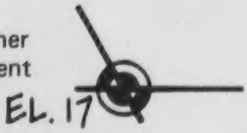
O. Ground cover 

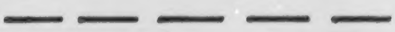
P. Trees 

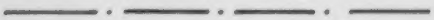
Q. Spot elevation 

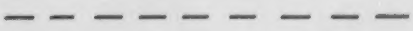
R. Bench marks 

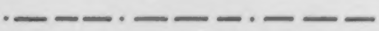
S. Property corner 

T. Property corner with monument 

U. Sanitary sewer 

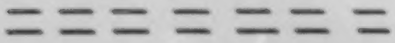
V. Gas line 

W. Water line 

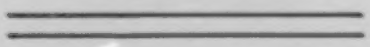
X. Power line 

INFORMATION SHEET

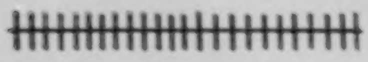
Y. Unpaved road



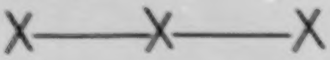
Z. Paved road



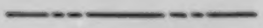
AA. Railroad tracks



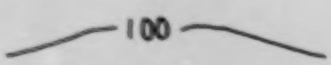
BB. Fence



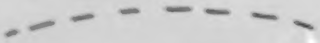
CC. Property line



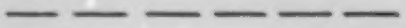
DD. Surveyed contour



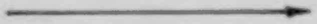
EE. Estimated contour



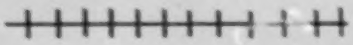
FF. Ridge



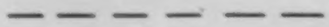
GG. Valley



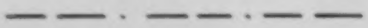
HH. Sewer tile



II. Septic field



JJ. Telephone



X. Procedure for drawing a plot plan (Transparencies 4, 5, and 6)

A. Select a scale which will provide the largest drawing on the chosen size of paper

(NOTE: Check the local code.)

Example: 1/8" = 1' to 1" = 30' and smaller

(NOTE: Property lines should be placed sufficiently inside the border to provide room for adding dimensions, notes, and title block.)

B. Lay out the property lines

(NOTE: Be careful in this step to insure an accurate drawing.)

C. Letter the bearing and length of each line and affix the scale near the bottom of the drawing

Example: N 80° 15' 10" W 187.0 feet

(NOTE: This means that the line proceeds in a direction reckoned from the north, turned 80° (degrees), 15' (minutes), and 10" (seconds) westward and is 187.0 feet. All directions are reckoned either from north or south, whichever yields the least angle.)

D. Locate the north arrow on the drawing

INFORMATION SHEET

E. Select a contour interval which is appropriate for site, and plot the contour lines lightly

F. Letter the elevation of each contour line and property corner

Example: EL 4.6 on property corner, 4.0 on contour line

G. Locate the house on the site

H. Dimension the overall length and width of the house and the distance from the house to the adjacent property lines

(NOTE: The elevation of a reference corner of the house is sometimes given.)

I. Draw surrounding features such as driveway, sidewalks, and patios

(NOTE: The size and elevation may be given for each if they are required.)

J. Determine the center line of the street and location of utilities; draw these features using correct symbols and dimension their location

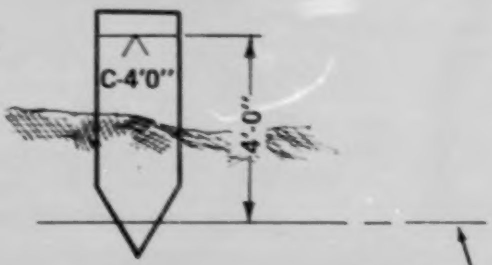
(NOTE: If a well and septic system are required, draw them at this point.)

K. Draw other topographical features such as trees and shrubs, and darken in contour lines

L. Check drawing to be sure you have included all necessary elements

XI. Need for a cut and a fill

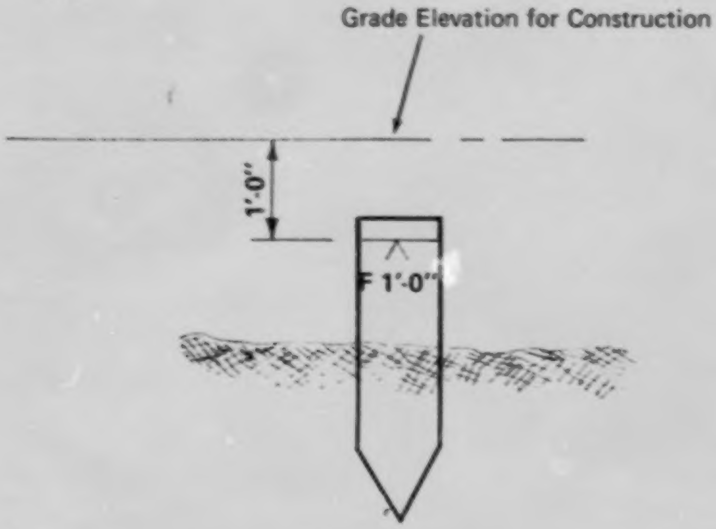
A. If elevation during construction phase is below the grade mark indicated on the stake, a cut is needed (C)



INFORMATION SHEET

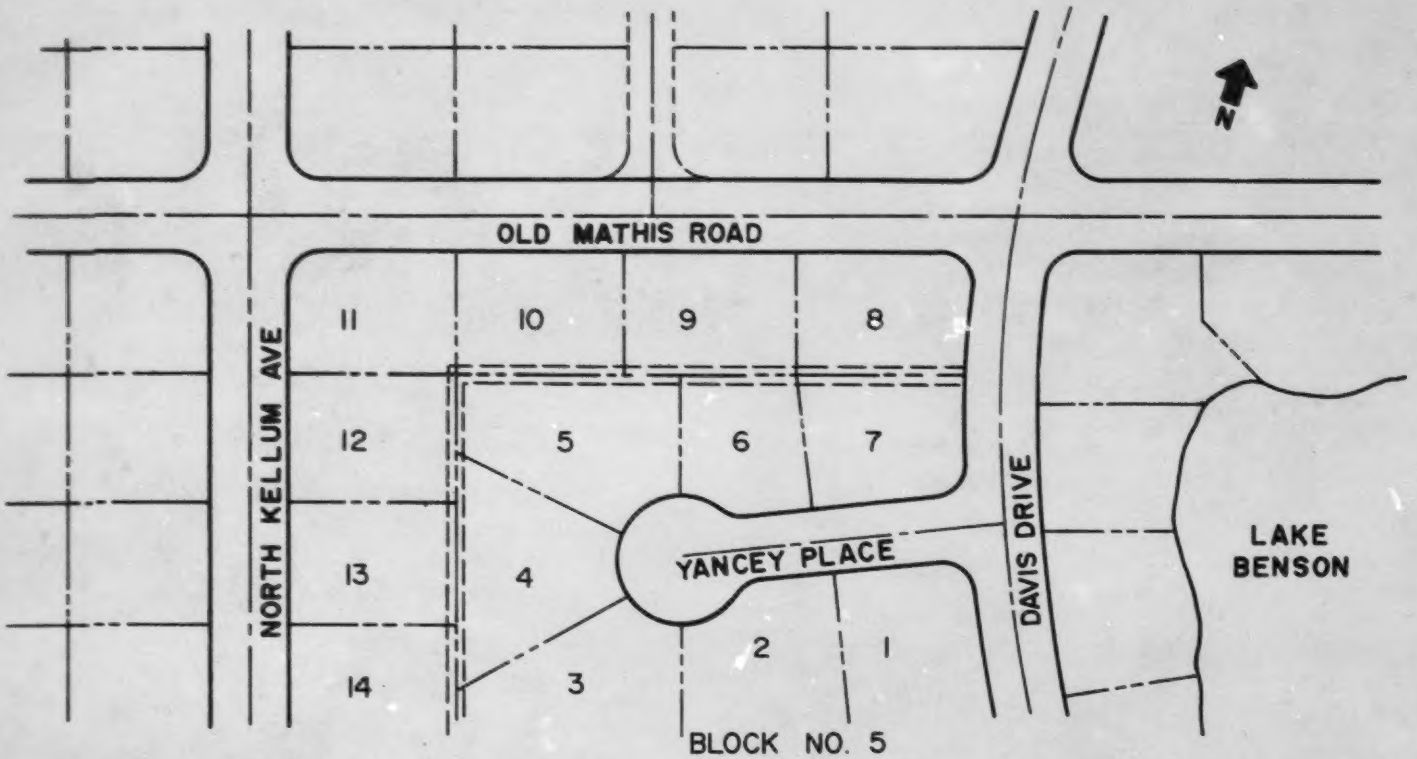
B. If elevation during construction phase is above the grade mark indicated on the stake, a fill is needed (F)

Example:


Grade Elevation for Construction
1'-0"
F 1'-0"

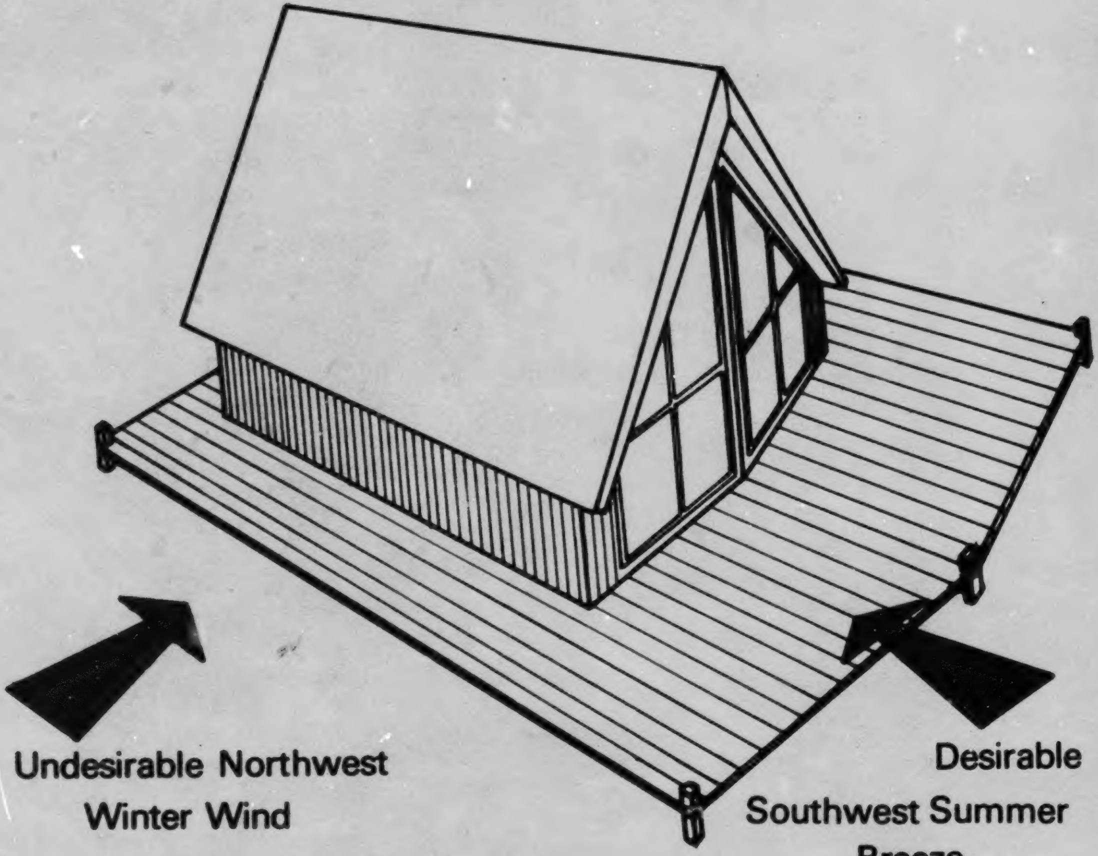
(NOTE: The ∧ mark is sometimes referred to as a keel.)

Plat

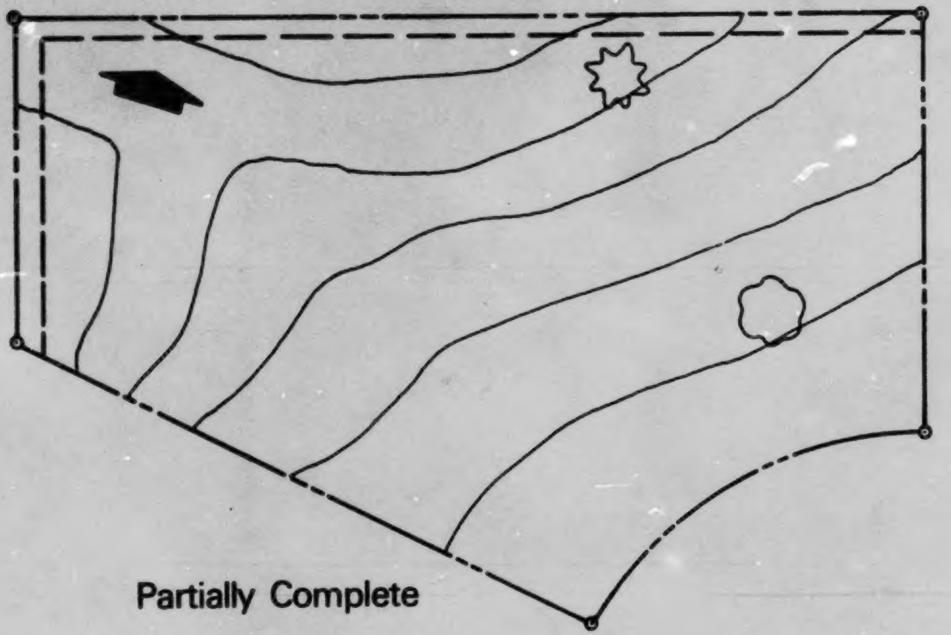

N
OLD MATHIS ROAD
NORTH KELLUM AVE
DAVIS DRIVE
YANCEY PLACE
LAKE BENSON
11
10
9
8
12
5
6
7
13
4
14
3
2
1
BLOCK NO. 5

NOTE: PLAT PLANS OR PLAT MAPS ALSO INDICATE BEARING ANGLES, LOT SIZE, EASEMENTS (DRAINAGE & UTILITY), ALSO SIZE & LOCATION, STREET WIDTH & CURVE DATA, BUILDING LINES, & LEGAL DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY

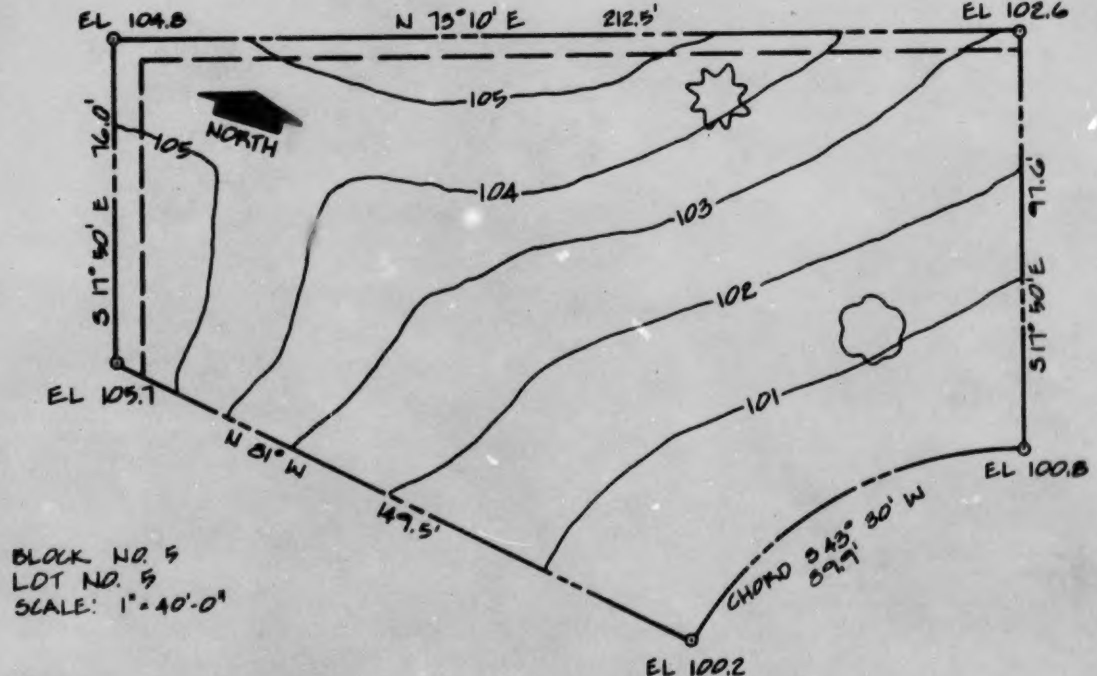
Prevailing Winds


Undesirable Northwest
Winter Wind
Desirable
Southwest Summer
Breeze

Site Plan

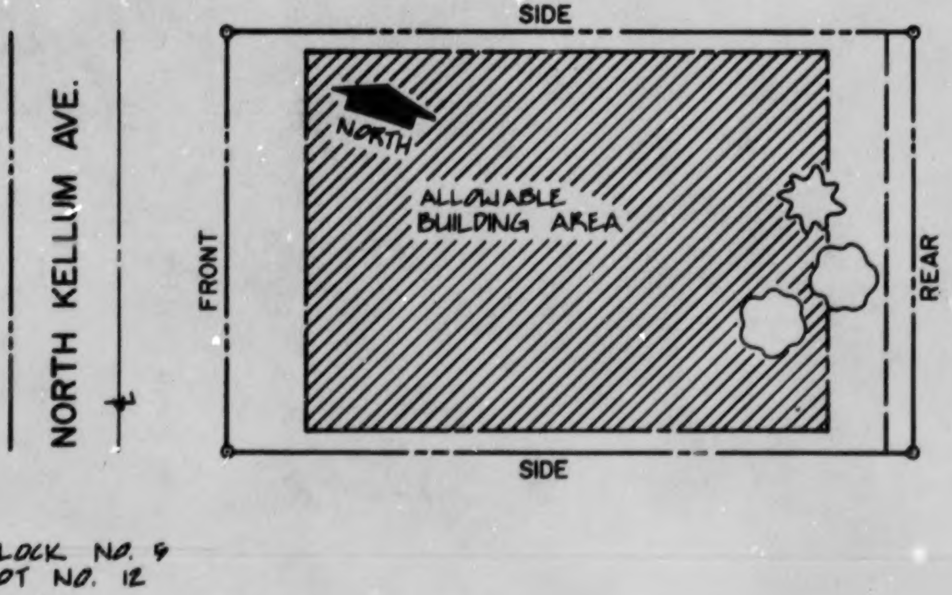


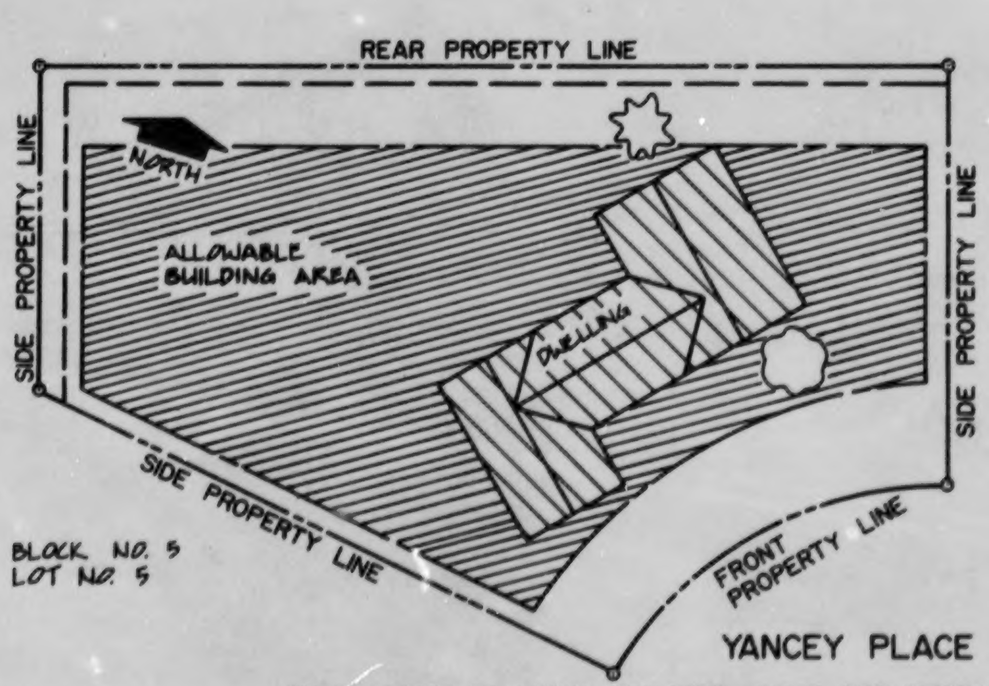
Partially Complete


EL 104.8
N 75°10' E
212.5'
EL 102.6
105
NORTH
105
76.0'
S 17°50' E
104
103
102
101
97.0'
S 17°50' E
EL 105.1
N 81° W
49.5'
EL 100.8
CHORD S 43° 30' W
89.9'
EL 100.2
BLOCK NO. 5
LOT NO. 5
SCALE: 1" = 40'-0"

Complete

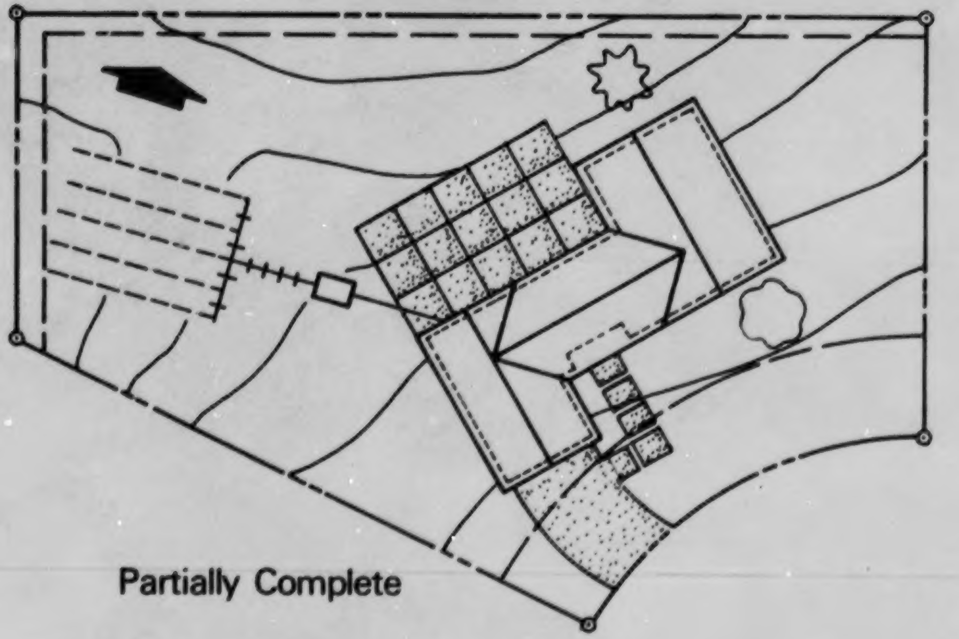
Allowable Building Area


SIDE
NORTH KELLUM AVE.
FRONT
NORTH
ALLOWABLE BUILDING AREA
REAR
SIDE
BLOCK NO. 9
LOT NO. 12

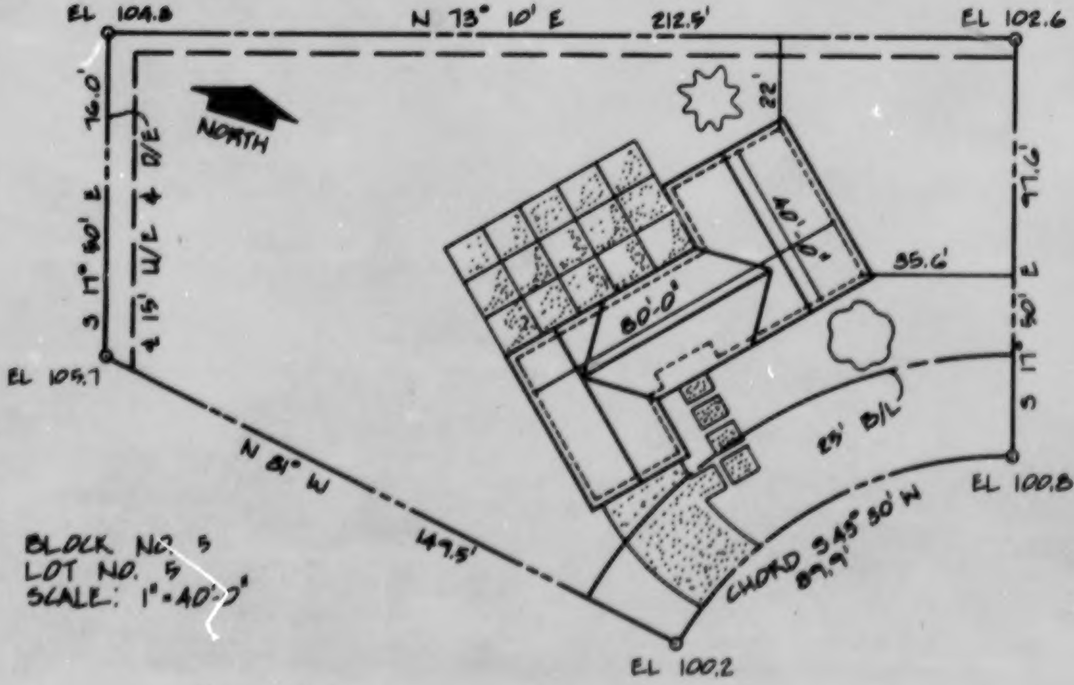

REAR PROPERTY LINE
NORTH
SIDE PROPERTY LINE
ALLOWABLE BUILDING AREA
DWELLING
SIDE PROPERTY LINE
SIDE PROPERTY LINE
FRONT PROPERTY LINE
BLOCK NO. 5
LOT NO. 5
YANCEY PLACE

NOTE: REFER TO LOCAL BUILDING CODES FOR SETBACK FROM PROPERTY LINES TO DETERMINE ALLOWABLE BUILDING AREA

Plot Plan



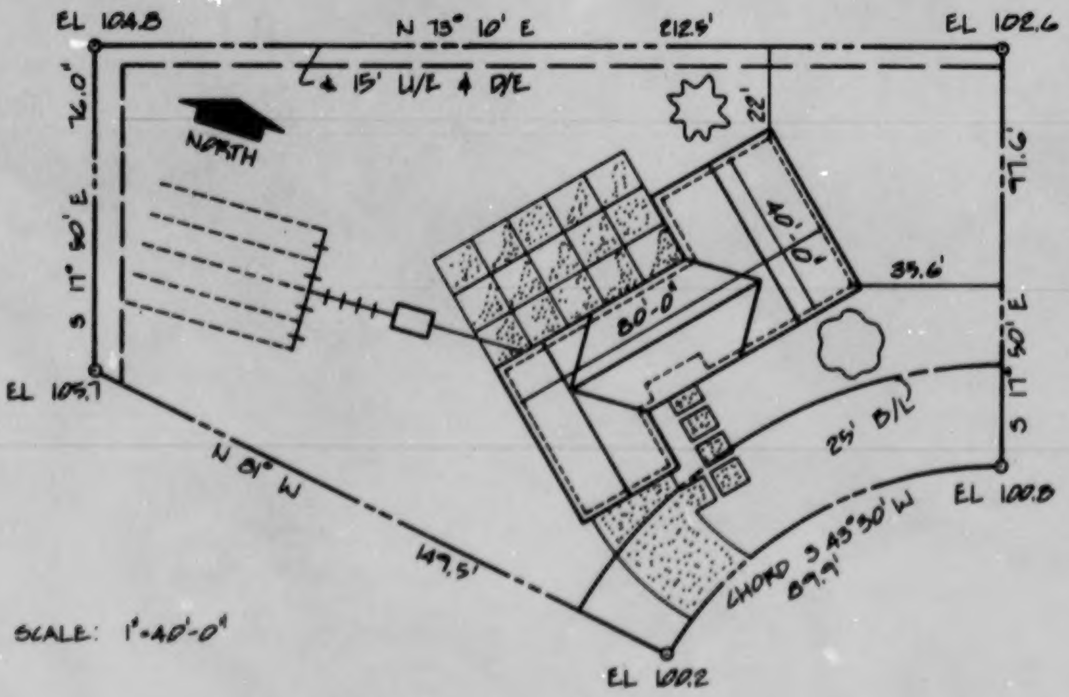
Partially Complete


EL 104.8
N 73° 10' E
212.5'
EL 102.6
76.0'
S 17° 50' E
4 15' W/L & D/E
NORTH
22'
40'-0"
80'-0"
35.6'
77.6'
S 17° 50' E
25' B/L
EL 105.7
N 81° W
147.5'
BLOCK NO. 5
LOT NO. 5
SCALE: 1"=40'-0"
CHORD S 45° 30' W
89.9'
EL 100.8
EL 100.2

Complete

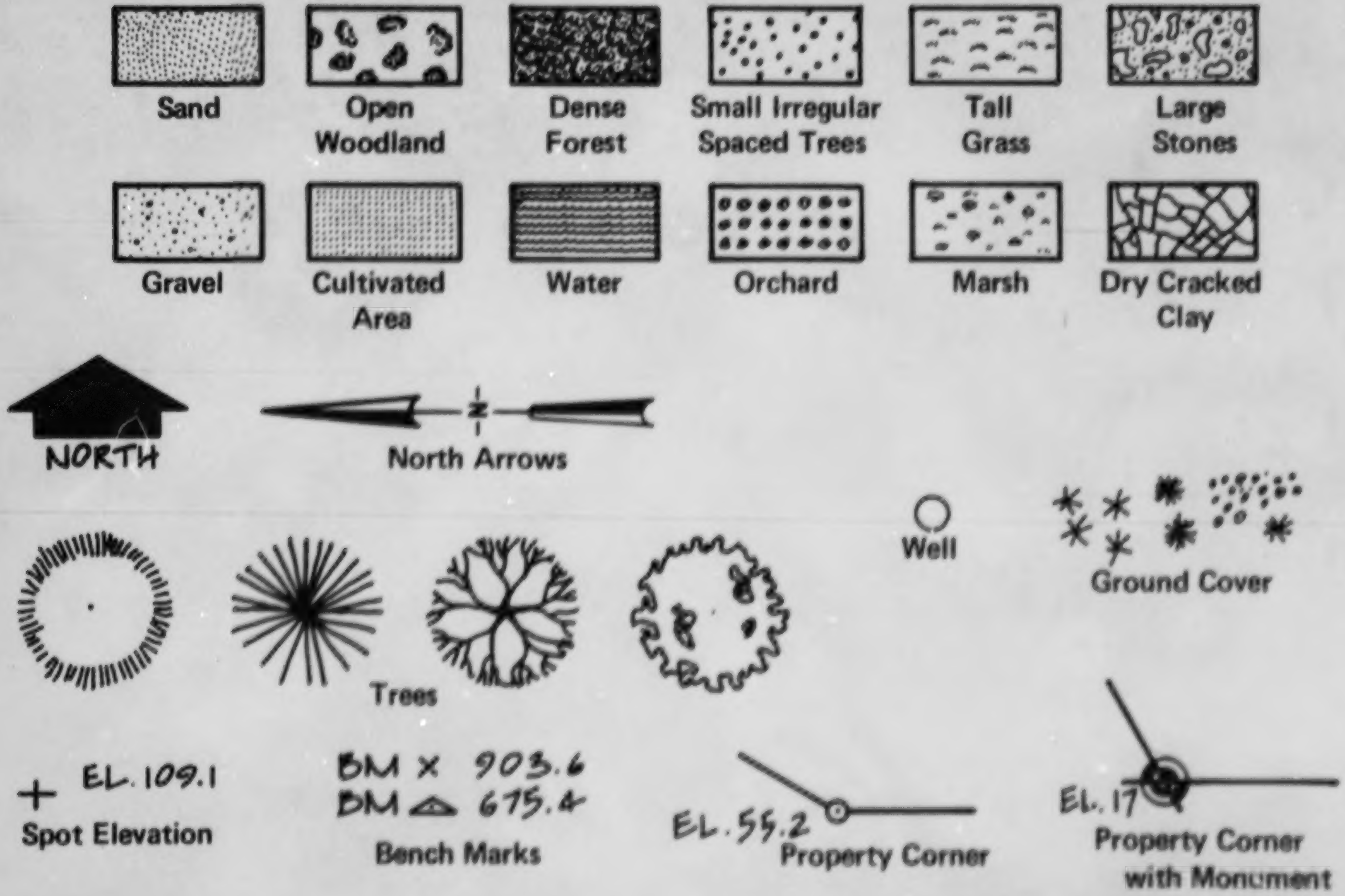
Plot Plan

(Continued)


EL 104.8
N 73° 10' E
212.5'
EL 102.6
& 15' U/E & D/E
76.0'
NORTH
S 11° 50' E
22'
77.6'
40'-0"
80'-0"
35.6'
S 11° 50' E
EL 105.7
N 61° W
25' B/L
EL 100.8
147.5'
CHORD S 45° 30' W
89.9'
SCALE: 1"=40'-0"
EL 100.2

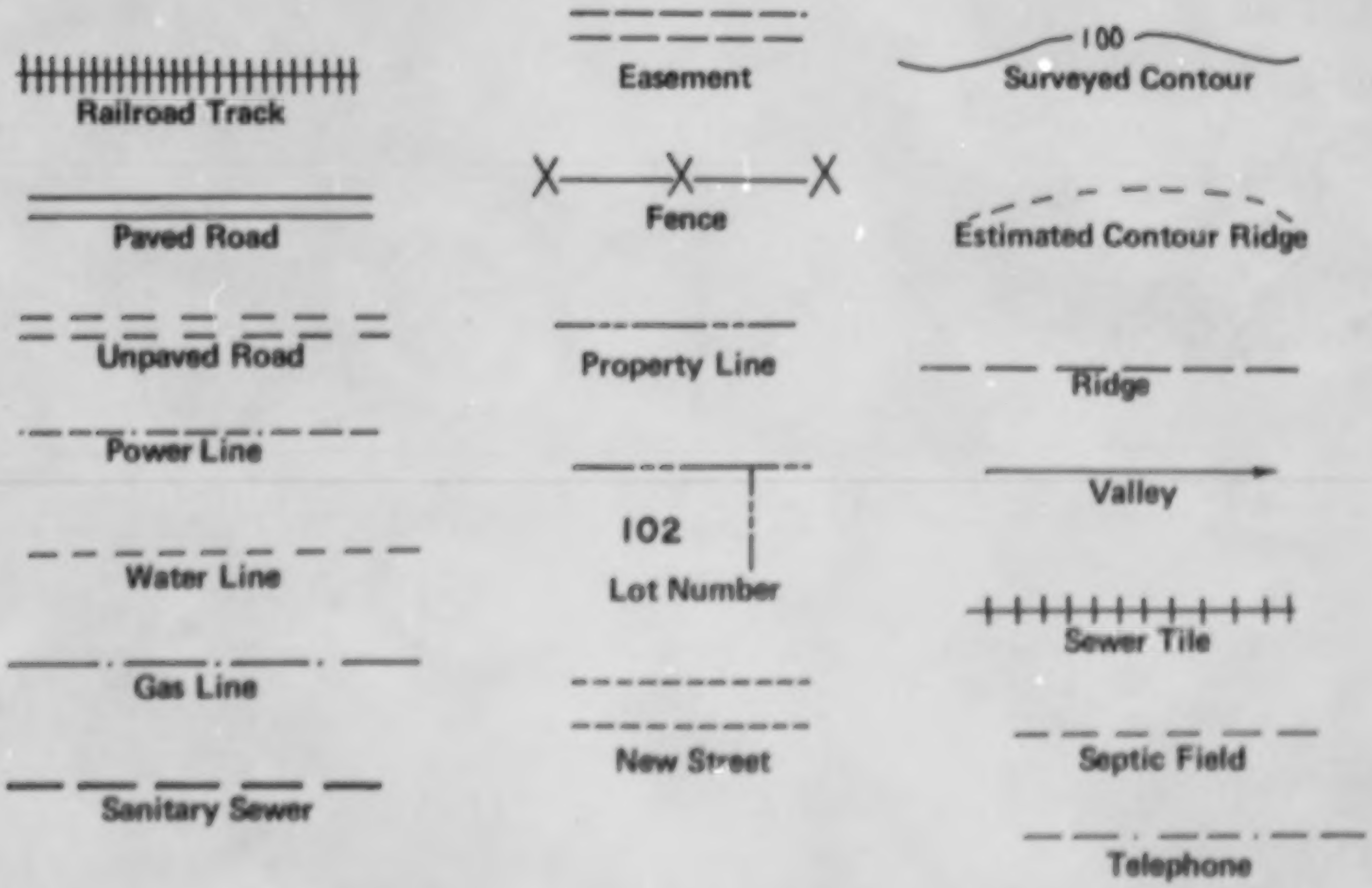
Plot Plan with Septic System (Rural Area)

Plot Plan Symbols

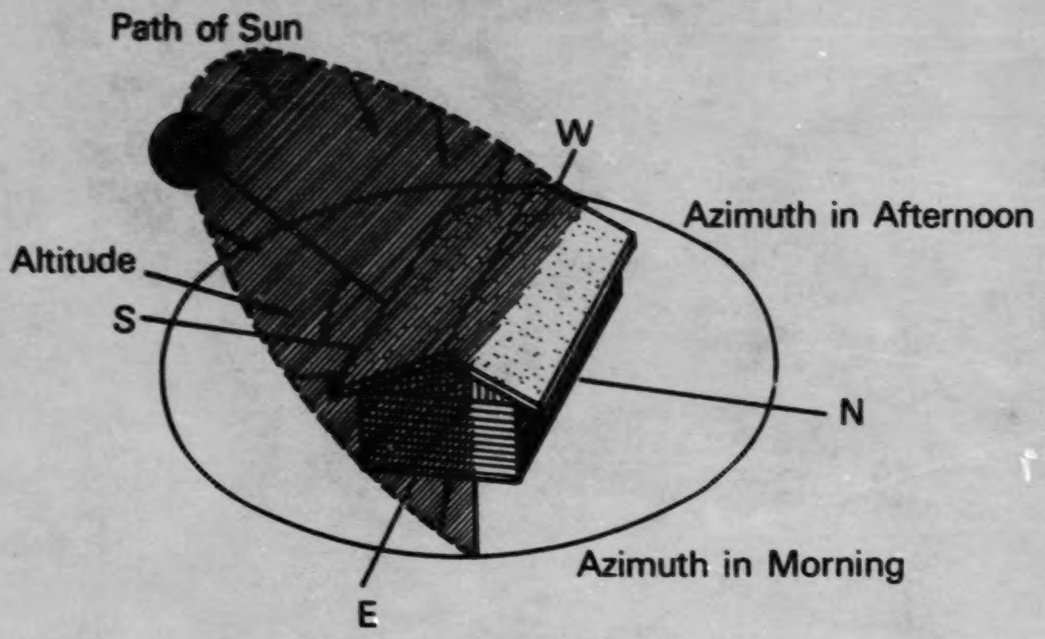

Sand
Open Woodland
Dense Forest
Small Irregular Spaced Trees
Tall Grass
Large Stones
Gravel
Cultivated Area
Water
Orchard
Marsh
Dry Cracked Clay
NORTH
N
North Arrows
Well
Ground Cover
Trees
EL. 109.1
Spot Elevation
BM × 903.6
BM △ 675.4
Bench Marks
EL. 55.2
Property Corner
EL. 17
Property Corner with Monument

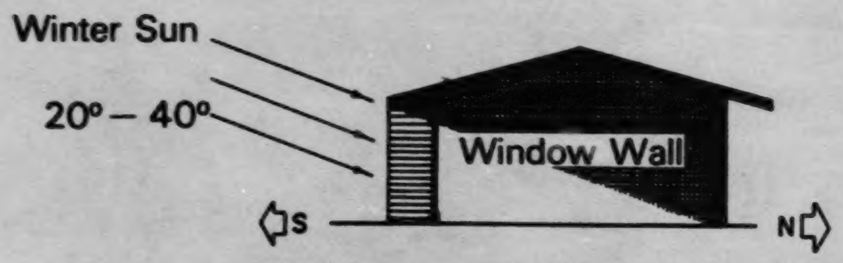
Plot Plan Symbols

(Continued)

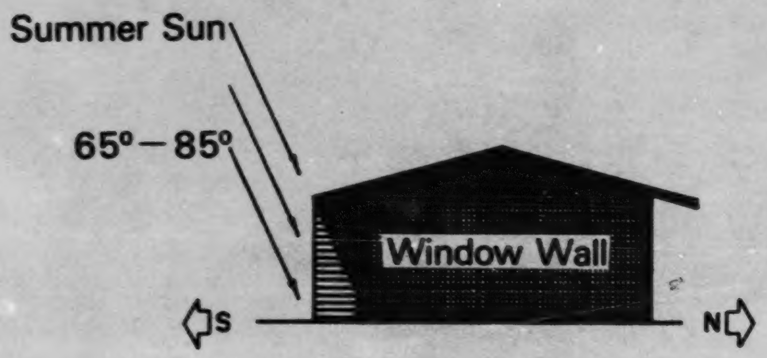

Railroad Track
Paved Road
Unpaved Road
Power Line
Water Line
Gas Line
Sanitary Sewer
Easement
Fence
Property Line
102
Lot Number
New Street
100
Surveyed Contour
Estimated Contour Ridge
Ridge
Valley
Sewer Tile
Septic Field
Telephone

Azimuth and Altitude


Path of Sun
W
Azimuth in Afternoon
Altitude
S
N
Azimuth in Morning
E


Winter Sun
20° – 40°
Window Wall
S
N

Sun's Rays Low Angle Permits Sun to Enter


Summer Sun
65° – 85°
Window Wall
S
N

Sun's Rays Overhang Shades Window

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1--COMPILE A LIST OF SITE CONSIDERATIONS

Directions: Look around your neighborhood for a vacant lot or piece of property. Make a list of site considerations that should be made if a house were to be constructed on this property. Include as many factors as necessary from this unit that would apply to the property.

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2--CALCULATE ALTITUDE ANGLE AND AZIMUTH USING INTERPOLATION

Directions: Calculate the altitude and azimuth for the given towns. Use the following example as a guideline for solving the problems using interpolation.

Example: What is the altitude of Altus, Okla. on June 22 at 2:00 p.m. (local time)? Its N. latitude is 34° 4'.

Given: June 22 @ 2:00 p.m. (Local time)

Enid, Okla. 36° 2' N. latitude
Altitude 61°45'
Azimuth 72°45'

Dallas, Texas 32° 5' N. latitude
Altitude 62°30'
Azimuth 80°0'

1. Calculate the difference between Enid and Dallas

Altitude

$$\begin{array}{r} 62^\circ\,30' \text{ (Dallas)} \\ -61^\circ\,45' \text{ (Enid)} \\ \hline 45' \end{array}$$

2. Calculate the unknown altitude of Altus

a. The altitude for 34° of N. latitude (Altus) is 2/4 or 1/2 the difference between 36° and 32° of N. latitude. The unknown amount is called x.

$$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{x}{45'}$$

$$2x = 45'$$

$$x = \frac{45'}{2}$$

$$x = 0^\circ\,22'\,30''$$

b. Add x to smaller altitude

$$\begin{array}{r} 61^\circ 45' \\ +\ 0^\circ 22' 30'' \\ \hline 61^\circ 67' 30'' \end{array}$$

c. Therefore, Altus, Okla. has an altitude of 62° 7' 30".

(NOTE: Calculating the azimuth is the same procedure.)

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

Problems:

A: What is the azimuth for Altus, Okla. on June 22 at 2:00 p.m. (local time)?

(NOTE: Use information given for Altus in example.)

Answer ____

B: What is the altitude for Bismarck, N.D. on December 10 at 10:00 a.m. (local time)? Bismarck has a 46°5' N. latitude.

Given: December 10 at 10:00 a.m. (local time)

Paterson, N.J. 40° 5' N. latitude
Altitude 20°30'
Azimuth 29°30'

Victoria, British Columbia 48°25' N. latitude
Altitude 12°30'
Azimuth 28°0'

Answer ____

C: What is the azimuth for Bismarck, N.D. on December 10 at 10:00 a.m. (local time)? Bismarck has a 46°5' N. latitude.

(NOTE: Use information given for Bismarck in Problem B.)

Answer ____

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3--CALCULATE ALTITUDE ANGLE AND AZIMUTH USING A SUN ANGLE CALCULATOR

Directions: Calculate altitude angle and azimuth (bearing angle) with a sun angle calculator or from an architectural standards book for the following cities.

(NOTE: The latitude will have to be looked up for problems A, D, and G.)

Problems:

		Altitude	Azimuth
A.	Tampa, Florida April 28 at 7:00 a.m.		
B.	Auburn, Alabama 32° 4' January 28 at 4:00 p.m.		
C.	Blytheville, Arkansas 36° 0' July 20 at 11:00 a.m.		
D.	Greeley, Colorado August 4 at 6:20 p.m.		
E.	Augusta, Maine 44° 2' July 25 at noon		
F.	International Falls, Minnesota 48° 3' January 29 at 7:40 a.m.		
G.	New Orleans, Louisiana August 27 at 6:00 p.m.		

(NOTE: The times listed above are already given in local time.)

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--DETERMINE THE CAST OF A SHADOW USING ALTITUDE AND AZIMUTH

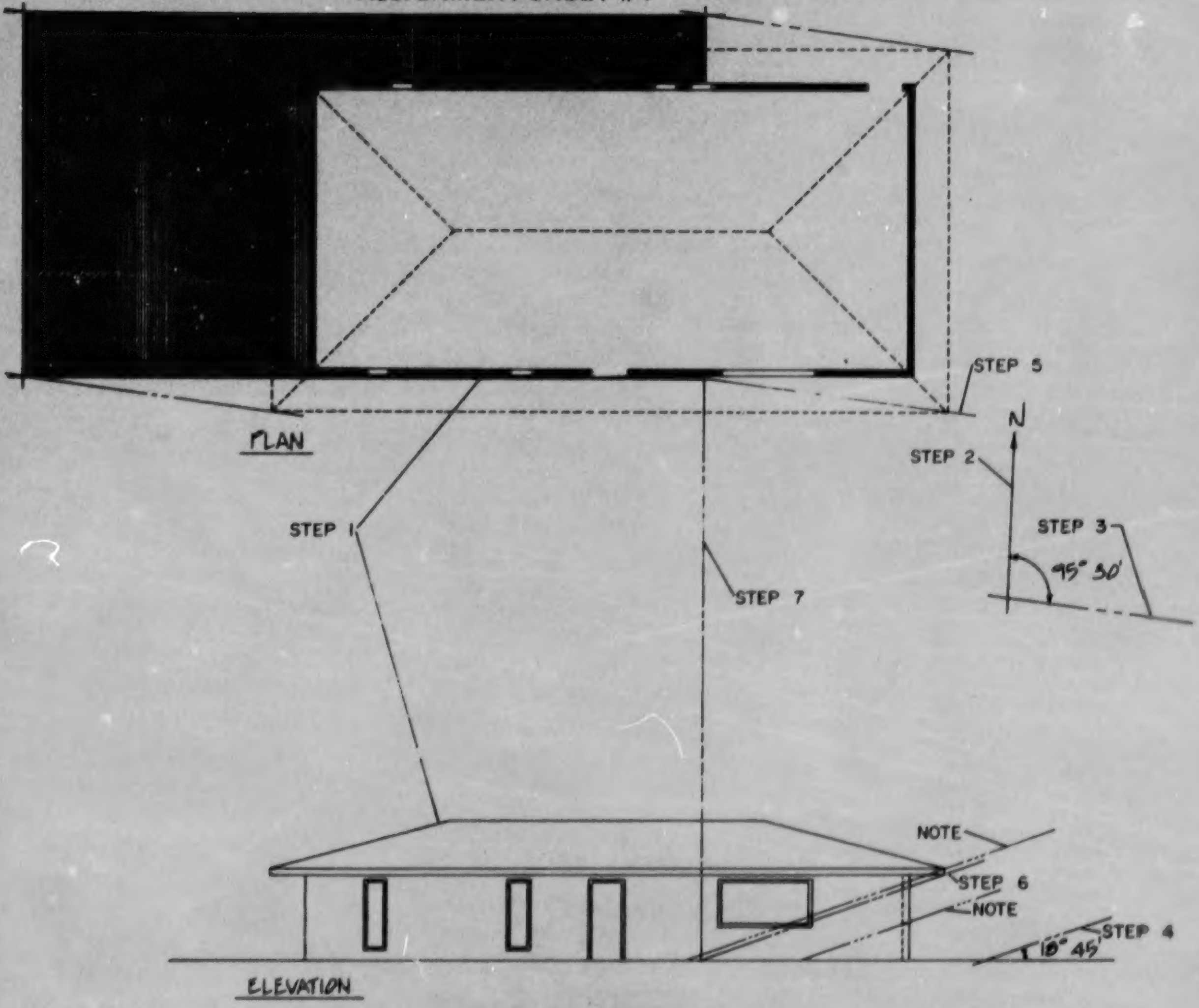
Directions: Refer to the following example for determining the cast of a shadow.

Example:

1. Draw plan of structure and elevation
2. Locate north arrow
3. Determine azimuth and draw (95° 30' for this example)
4. Determine altitude and draw (18° 45' for this example)
5. Draw a line parallel to the azimuth through the corner of the roof on the plan
6. Draw a line parallel to the altitude through the same corner in the elevation
7. Where the altitude line intersects the ground line, draw a line straight up until it intersects with the azimuth line

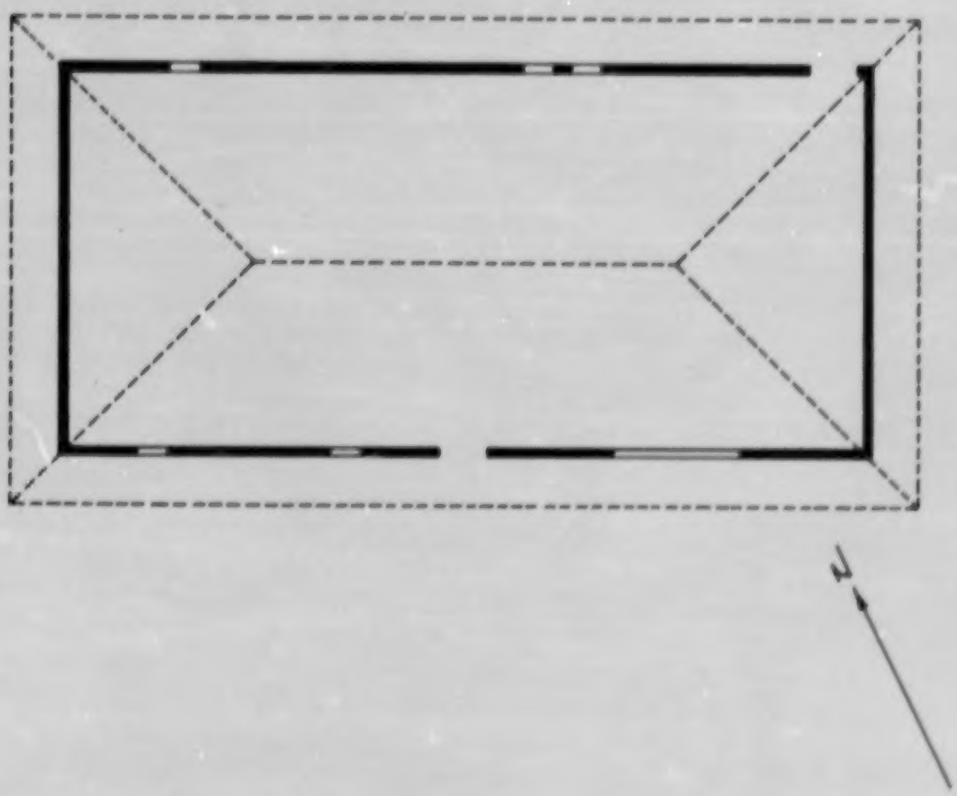
   (NOTE: Follow the same procedure for all corners if desired. If the shadow is only needed for one room, this method can be used with a wall section. All vertical lines form a shadow parallel to the azimuth, and all horizontal lines cast a shadow parallel to themselves.)

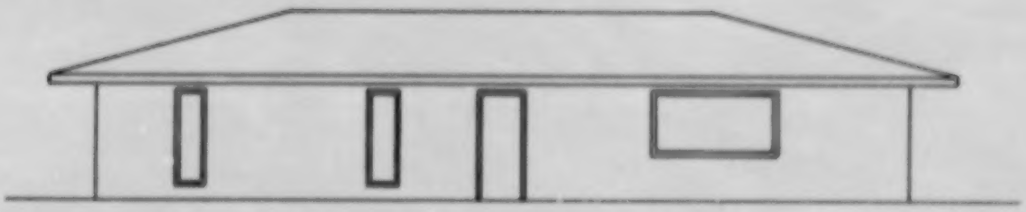
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4


PLAN
STEP 1
STEP 2
N
STEP 3
95° 30'
STEP 5
STEP 7
NOTE
STEP 6
NOTE
STEP 4
10° 45'
ELEVATION

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

Problem: Draw the shadow cast on the following house when the azimuth is 43° 15' and the altitude is 69° 50'. Steps 1 and 2 have been done for you.

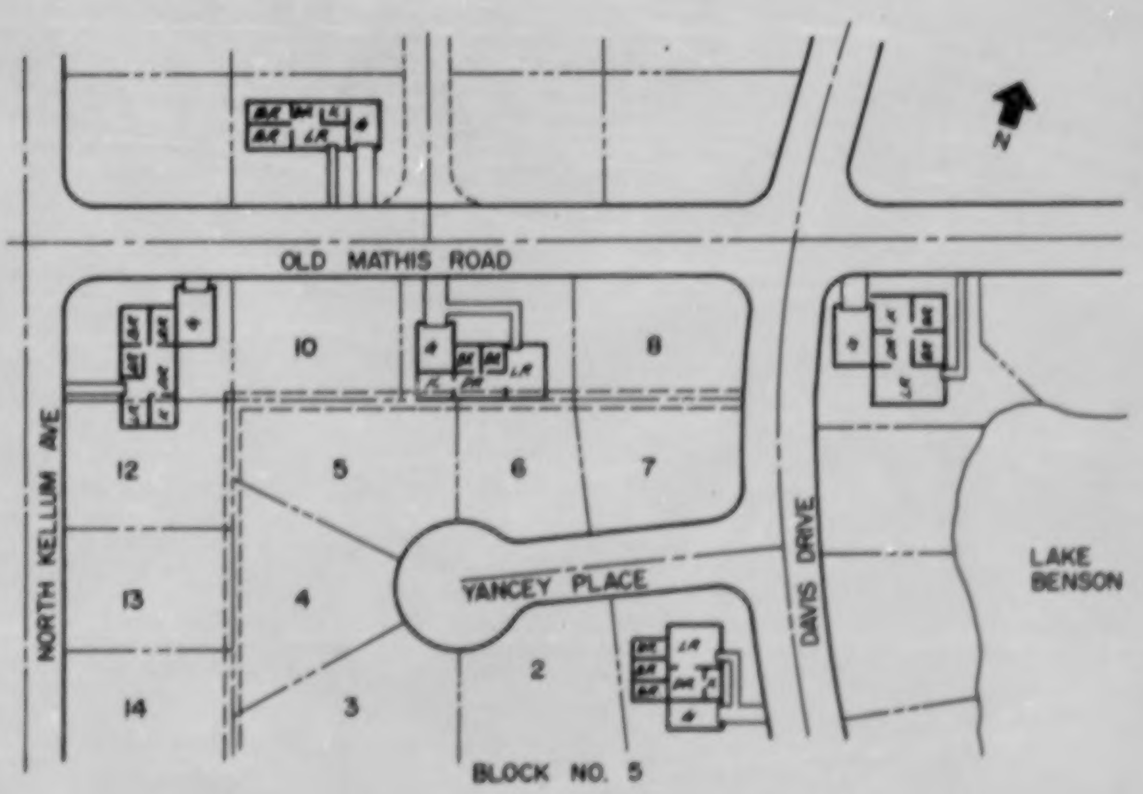




SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5--REVISE PLANS TO CORRECT PREVAILING WIND AND ORIENTATION PROBLEMS

Directions: There is something wrong with each of the floor plans below involving prevailing winds and orientation. Make a list of violations for each plan. Revise, rearrange, or reorient each plan to improve its overall position. Make a pencil drawing of the overall improvements.


N
OLD MATHIS ROAD
NORTH KELLUM AVE
DAVIS DRIVE
YANCEY PLACE
LAKE BENSON
10
8
12
5
6
7
13
4
2
14
3
BLOCK NO. 5
BR
LR
K
G

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #6--DRAW A SITE PLAN

Directions: Select a vacant site in your community which is suitable for a home. Measure the site, determine north with a compass, and draw a site plan of the property to scale. Show any trees or permanent features that may be on the site and indicate approximate contour lines.

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #7–DRAW A PLOT PLAN

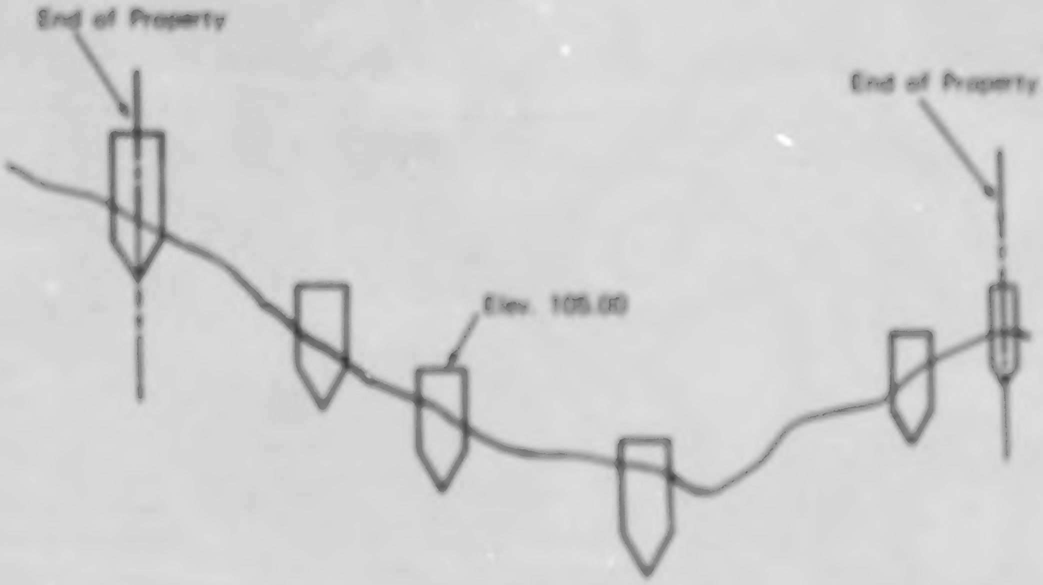
Directions: Select a floor plan of a house from a newspaper, magazine, or instructor which is appropriate for the site you drew in Assignment Sheet #6. Locate the house on the site. Draw a plot plan showing the house and property using all appropriate symbols and templates.

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #8--DETERMINE CUT AND FILL NEEDED ON A GIVEN LOT

Directions: The lot below needs to be made level at an elevation of 107.0. Use given scale and elevation as a reference. Indicate on the stakes whether cut or fill is needed and how much as shown in objective XI of the information sheet. If retaining walls are needed, indicate on the drawing.

Scale: Vertical 1/4" = 1'-0"
Horizontal 1/16" = 1'-0"



SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #2

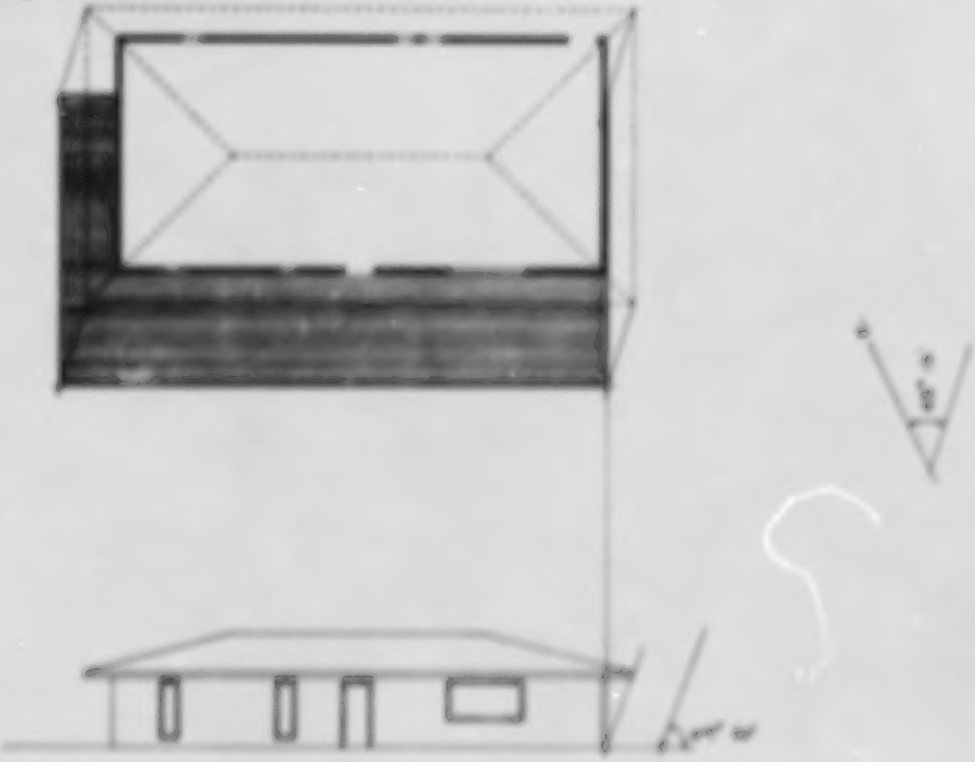
A. 76° 22' 30"
B. 16°30'
C. 29°7'30"

Assignment Sheet #3

	Altitude	Azimuth
A.	18° 45'	95° 30'
B.	13° 15'	57° 45'
C.	68° 50'	43° 15'
D.	7° 0'	106° 0'
E.	64° 45'	0°
F.	2° 30'	59° 30'
G.	5° 0'	98° 30'

(NOTE: When using a sun angle calculator, answers can vary ±2°.)

Assignment Sheet #4



SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. A defined area of land

_____b. Map of a given tract of land or subdivision

_____c. The general locality wherein the lot is situated

_____d. The actual plot of ground on which the building is to be built

_____e. Legal document prepared by surveyor which includes dimensions of lot

_____f. Representation of natural and man-made features of the lot such as existing trees, drives, and water

_____g. Drawing which contains information from property survey and topographic survey

_____h. Vertical distance above or below sea level

_____i. Point of known elevation serving as a reference

_____j. Lines which connect points having the same elevation to indicate slope

_____k. The direction a given wall faces

_____l. Right of a company to cross portions of property with utilities and to maintain and service their equipment

_____m. A line parallel to the property line determining the allowable building area

_____n. Direction from north or south up to 360° measured in degrees, minutes, and seconds

_____o. Direction measured from north or south towards east or west up to 90° in degrees, minutes, and seconds

_____p. Angle formed by the rays of the sun and the earth's surface

_____q. A written agreement to provide the orderly development of a tract

1. Utility easement
2. Benchmark
3. Lot
4. Altitude angle
5. Contour lines
6. Plat
7. Property survey
8. Tract
9. Elevation
10. Orientation
11. Plot plan
12. Azimuth
13. Site
14. Bearing
15. Building line
16. Protective covenant
17. Topographic survey

2. List six site considerations.

   a. ____

   b. ____

   c. ____

   d. ____

   e. ____

   f. ____

3. Select true statements concerning building codes by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

   ______a. Building codes deal mostly with the features of a structure which make it appealing to the eye

   ______b. There are only national building codes

   ______c. The "Uniform Building Code" published by the International Conference of Building Officials is a standardized building code

   ______d. The "Realtors Code" published by the American Realtors Corporation is a standardized building code

   ______e. The federal government can pass a law as to how a structure can be built, and a state can adopt these laws

4. Complete the following list of types of zoning regulations.

   a. Industrial

   b. Civic

   c. ______________________________

   d. ______________________________

5. Select items which may be covered in a residential protective covenant by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

   ______a. Style of bedroom furniture allowed

   ______b. Basketball goals are sometimes not permitted in the front yard or on the front of the house

   ______c. All plots must be kept free from weeds, trash, rubbish, or other unsightly materials

   ______d. How vehicles can be parked overnight and for extended periods of time _____e. Brand of refrigerators to be used

_____f. Occupations of residents

_____g. Fencing style and materials

_____h. No lots can be divided or split without being submitted and approved by a committee

6. Complete the following statements concerning prevailing winds.

   a. In the summer months, the winds should come through ____________________

   ____

   b. In the ____________________ attempts must be made to block the wind

      1) The garage and utility room should be placed to take the storms

      2) ____________________________ will help break the force of the wind

   c. In areas of high winds, construction must be reinforced to keep damage down

7. Select true statements concerning orientation by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Southern exposures are cooler in both summer and winter

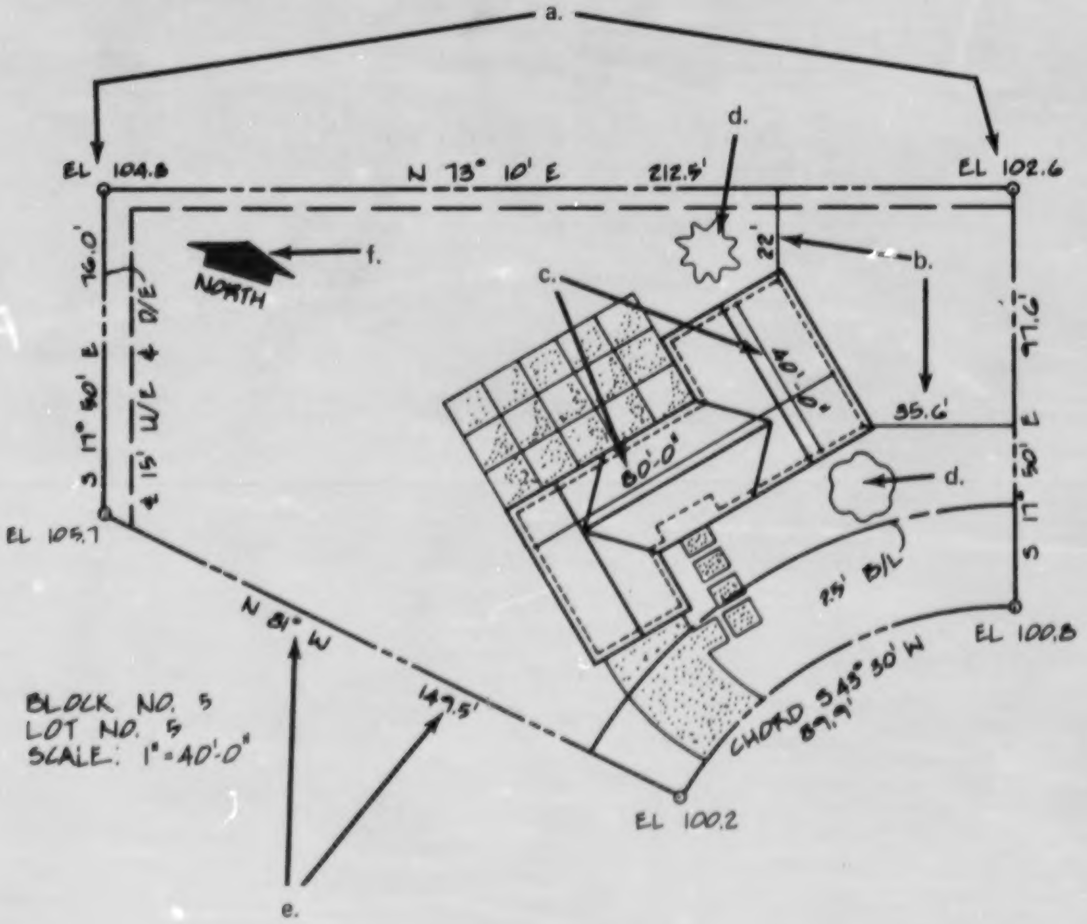
_____b. Northern exposures are sunny and warm

_____c. Western exposures receive the afternoon sun and can be very hot

_____d. In southern areas of the United States, the south and southwest exposures of the house receive the extreme heat and should be protected with shading devices unless it is to be a solar house

_____e. In northern areas of the United States, the south and southwest exposures of the house receive the extreme cold

8. Identify the components of a plot plan.

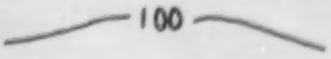

a.
d.
EL 104.8
N 73° 10' E
212.5'
EL 102.6
76.0'
f.
NORTH
22'
b.
c.
40'
S 17° 50' E
4 15' W/L 4 D/E
97.6'
35.6'
60'-0"
d.
S 17° 50' E
EL 105.7
25' B/L
N 81° W
EL 100.8
BLOCK NO. 5
LOT NO. 5
SCALE: 1" = 40'-0"
149.5'
CHORD S 45° 30' W
89.9'
EL 100.2
e.

a. ______________________ b. ______________________

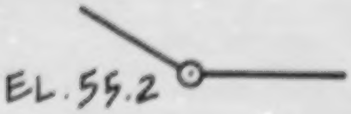
c. ______________________ d. ______________________

e. ______________________ f. ______________________

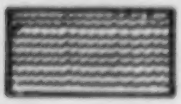
9. Identify symbols used on a plot plan.



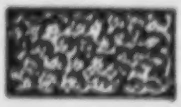
a. ______________________



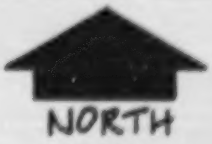
b. ______________________



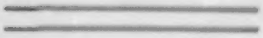
c. ______________



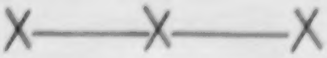
d. ______________



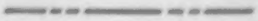
e. ______________



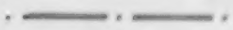
f. ______________



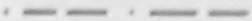
g. ______________



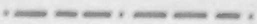
h. ______________



i. ______________



j. ______________



k. ______________

10. Arrange in order the procedure for drawing a plot plan by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

______a. Draw other topographical features such as trees and shrubs, and darken in contour lines

______b. Dimension the overall length and width of the house and the distance from the house to the adjacent property lines

______c. Letter the elevation of each contour line and property corner

______d. Lay out the property lines

______e. Select a contour interval which is appropriate for site, and plot the contour lines lightly

______f. Draw surrounding features such as driveway, sidewalks, and patios

__1__g. Select a scale which will provide the largest drawing on the chosen size of paper

______h. Check drawing to be sure you have included all necessary elements

______i. Locate the house on the site

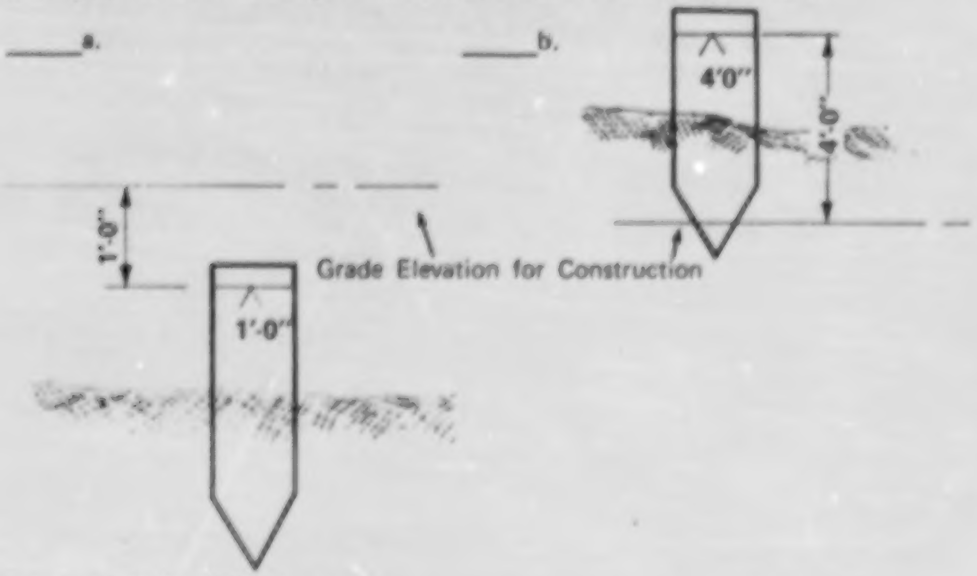
_____j. Letter the bearing and length of each line and affix the scale near the bottom of the drawing

_____k. Locate the north arrow on the drawing

_____l. Determine the center line of the street and location of utilities; draw these features using correct symbols and dimension their location

11. Distinguish between the need for a cut and a fill from the grade marks below by placing an "X" next to the grade mark which indicates the need for a cut.

_____a. _____b.



12. Demonstrate the ability to:

    a. Compile a list of site considerations.

    b. Calculate altitude angle and azimuth using interpolation.

    c. Calculate altitude angle and azimuth using a sun angle calculator.

    d. Determine the case of a shadow using altitude and azimuth.

    e. Revise plans to correct prevailing wind and orientation problems.

    f. Draw a site plan.

    g. Draw a plot plan.

    h. Determine cut and fill needed on a given lot.

    (NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

SITE CONDITIONS
UNIT III

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 8
   b. 6
   c. 13
   d. 3
   e. 7
   f. 17
   g. 11
   h. 9
   i. 2
   j. 5
   k. 10
   l. 1
   m. 15
   n. 12
   o. 14
   p. 4
   q. 16

2. Any six of the following:
   a. Choose a possible lot
   b. Check local building codes
   c. Examine the tax structure
   d. Check zoning regulations
   e. Look for undesirable factors which will lower the future value of the property
      1. Street traffic that is busy and noisy
      2. Swamps
      3. Dumps
      4. Railroads
      5. Substandard housing
   f. Look for desirable conveniences
      1. Churches
      2. Public transportation
      3. Schools
      4. Shopping centers
      5. Hospitals
   g. Look for available and adequate utilities
      1. Water supply
      2. Sewage disposal
      3. Gas
      4. Electricity
      5. Telephone service
      6. Fire protection
      7. Street lights and paving
      8. Garbage disposal
   h. Take into account the slope of the land
      1. A lot which is flat is easiest to build on, but is difficult to landscape
      2. A slightly sloped lot could make a basement desirable and aids in yard drainage
      3. A lot with a steep slope will probably require a retaining wall and fill may be necessary
      4. A low-lying lot should be avoided because dampness problems usually occur
   i. Check to see if the lot is in the flood plain

- j. Determine soil conditions and soil types
    1. A layer of topsoil a minimum of 1'-0" thick is excellent
    2. Clay or sand below the topsoil is considered fine
    3. Use caution with rocks present on site; this could eliminate the possibility of having a basement, footings will be expensive, and septic tanks may be impossible to install
    4. Avoid lots that have been recently filled; they will not support a house, and walls will crack due to settling
- k. Check water table
- l. Have lawyer complete a title search and have the lot surveyed

3. c, e

4. c. Commercial
   d. Residential

5. b, c, d, g, h

6. a. The living and sleeping area
   b. Winter
      2) Evergreen trees or tall shrubs

7. c, d

8. a. Elevation of property corners
   b. Location of building on site
   c. Size of building on site
   d. Trees
   e. Length and bearing of property line
   f. North arrow

9. a. Surveyed contour
   b. Property corner
   c. Water
   d. Dense forest
   e. North arrow
   f. Paved road
   g. Fence
   h. Property line
   i. Gas line
   j. Telephone
   k. Power line

10.

a.	11	g.	1
b.	8	h.	12
c.	6	i.	7
d.	2	j.	3
e.	5	k.	4
f.	9	l.	10

11. b

12. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to plan the various areas of a house and develop a residential sketch. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. List five items needed from a client when planning a residence.
2. Select characteristics of a lot which can affect building design.
3. Distinguish between rooms located in basic areas of a house.
4. Match rooms in the living area with the correct characteristics.
5. Match rooms in the service area with the correct characteristics.
6. Complete a chart of characteristics of rooms in the sleeping area.
7. State the general rule to remember when planning the flow of traffic through a house.
8. Select true statements concerning factors to observe when planning the flow of traffic between rooms.
9. Match categories of storage facilities with the correct descriptions.
10. Sequence the steps for making a preliminary residential sketch.
11. Demonstrate the ability to:
    a. Determine client needs.
    b. Plan a kitchen.
    c. Plan a sleeping area.
    d. Plan a bathroom.
    e. Plan traffic patterns.
    f. Plan storage facilities.
    g. Develop a preliminary residential sketch.

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Have an interior decorator or designer talk to class about architectural styles of furniture and coordinating the interior decor between rooms and between exterior and interior styles.

VII. Take a field trip in your area to see different types of model homes.

VIII. Have a residential contractor talk to class.

IX. Invite a realtor to be a speaker on what most families are looking for in a house and selling features of a house.

X. Obtain specification sheets from appliance dealers so student can determine the space needed in their plans.

(NOTE: The sketch that the students draw in Assignment Sheet #7 will be their design project, and the students will be using this project throughout the course. For example in "Working Drawings," Unit VI, the students will draw the floor plan and elevation for this design. If you feel that the problem in Assignment Sheet #7 will be too large, you may wish to assign an alternate problem.)

XI. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

  A. Objective sheet

  B. Information sheet

  C. Transparency masters

    1. TM 1-Types of Living Rooms

    2. TM 2-Dining Room

   3. TM 3-Kitchen Arrangements
   4. TM 4-Kitchen
   5. TM 5-Utility Room
   6. TM 6-Bedroom
   7. TM 7-Bathroom Clearances
   8. TM 8-Bathroom Sizes
   9. TM 9-Traffic Patterns
   10. TM 10-Storage Areas

D. Assignment Sheets

   1. Assignment Sheet #1-Determine Client Needs
   2. Assignment Sheet #2-Plan a Kitchen
   3. Assignment Sheet #3-Plan a Sleeping Area
   4. Assignment Sheet #4-Plan a Bathroom
   5. Assignment Sheet #5-Plan Traffic Patterns
   6. Assignment Sheet #6-Plan Storage Facilities
   7. Assignment Sheet #7-Develop a Preliminary Residential Sketch

E. Test

F. Answers to test

II. References:

A. Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. *Architectural Drawing and Planning.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

B. Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach. *Architecture Drafting and Design.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1977.

C. Hornung, William J. *Architectural Drafting.* Englewood Cliffs, N. J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1966.

D. Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. *Architecture Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

E. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

F. Stegman, George K. and Harry J. Stegman. *Architectural Drafting.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1974.

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Information needed from client when planning a residence

  A. Financial ability of client

  (NOTE: Relate this to local square footage building costs.)

  B. What the client wants

  C. Minimum requirements of the client (Assignment Sheet #1)

  D. Client's preference in architectural style

  E. Lot size and location

II. Characteristics of a lot which can affect building design

  A. Location of natural and man-made features

  Examples: Natural: Water, trees; man-made: existing structures, sidewalks

  B. Relationship of front elevation and entries to the street

  C. View

  D. Prevailing winds

  E. Direction of lot

  (NOTE: This affects the orientation of a structure.)

  F. Size of lot

  G. Shape of lot

  H. Slope of lot

  I. Building restrictions

III. Rooms located in basic areas of a house

  A. Living

    1. Entrance

    2. Living room

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Dining room

4. Recreation room

5. Family room

6. Den

7. Porch

(NOTE: A patio or an Hawaiian porch (lanai) may be included rather than a porch.)

B. Service

1. Kitchen

2. Laundry

3. Utility

4. Garage or carport

5. Workshop

C. Sleeping

1. Bedroom

2. Bathroom

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Rooms in the living area and characteristics (Transparencies 1 and 2)

Room	Purpose	Minimum Size	Extra Features	Location
Entrance	Area through which people enter the house	Room: 6' x 6' Door: 3' 0" x 6' 8"	Closet, weather resistant flooring	Main part of house, service area, or between indoor and outdoor living areas
Living Room	Primarily used for formal or informal relaxation and recreation; may be used for almost any purpose	Varies according to use and size of family	May include a fireplace; should have focal point such as picture window or fireplace	Adjacent to main entrance
Dining Room	Area used for formal or informal dining	Varies according to use and size of family; usually not less than 10' x 12'	Decor consistent with living room	Near the kitchen and usually near the living room
Recreation Room	Used as a play room or game room for recreational activities	Depends upon use and size of furnishings to be included	Should be easy to maintain; should include storage space	May be located in basement, attic, or main level of house, depending upon available space

INFORMATION SHEET

Room	Purpose	Minimum Sizes	Extra Features	Location
Family Room	Used for family centered activities such as TV, music, or table games	Depends upon use and size of furnishings to be included	Should be easy to maintain; should include storage space	Usually located near the kitchen; may be near living or dining rooms
Den	Use depends on family; usually for quiet activities such as work or study	Depends upon use and size of furnishings to be included Door--2'-8" x 6'-8"	May be designed to serve as a guest bedroom	Near both living and sleeping areas, if possible
Porch	Varies; may be used for entertaining, dining, or to provide shelter for the entrance	Room--6' x 8' Door--3'-0" x 6'-8"	Coverings and furnishings should be weather resistant	Outside near entrance according to occupants' needs/ uses

INFORMATION SHEET

V. Rooms in the service area and characteristics (Transparencies 3, 4, and 5)

Room	Purpose	Minimum Sizes	Extra Features	Location
Kitchen	Wash, store, and cook food; may serve as dining or laundry	Depends upon use and style of kitchen	Storage and mixing area, preparation and cleaning area, and cooking area; adequate ventilation; doors should swing away from work area; sufficient utility outlets	Adjacent to dining room and outside entrance
Laundry	Wash, dry, and care for occupants' clothing and household articles	No minimum size, but ample work space must be provided	Storage for supplies; utility outlets to accommodate appliances	Near service entrance facilities; may be in sleeping area
Utility Room	May serve as laundry in addition to other areas such as storage, sewing, or food preservation	No minimum size; size depends upon use	Storage for supplies; utility outlets to accommodate appliances	Near service entrance and plumbing facilities
Garage or Carport	Provide shelter for one or more vehicles	Depends on size and number of vehicles; single--12' x 20', double--20' x 20'	Storage, driveway, Fireproof wall between garage and living area	Attached, detached, or connected by a breezeway to the other service areas

INFORMATION SHEET

Room	Purpose	Minimum Sizes	Extra Features	Location
Workshop	Depends upon occupant use, such as hobbies or work	Depends upon size or type of tools and use made of the area	Soundproofing and fire protection may be added; workbench; storage for supplies and tools; should be easy to clean and require low maintenance	Located near service area and away from sleeping area

VI. Characteristics of rooms in the sleeping area (Transparencies 6, 7, and 8)

Room	Purpose	Minimum Sizes	Extra Features	Location
Bedroom	Quiet activities such as sleeping, resting, or reading	Room--100 sq. ft. Door--2'-8" x 6'-8"	Closets; windows and/or ventilation	Quiet part of house
Bathroom	Personal hygiene; may provide other functions such as laundry or dressing	Room--5' x 8' Door--2'-0" x 6'-8"	Storage space; ventilation	Near bedrooms or near service area

(NOTE: Door sizes will vary for wheel chair access.)

INFORMATION SHEET

VII. General rule to remember when planning the flow of traffic through a house--People must be able to move from room to room and from one part of the house to another with a minimum of congestion and unnecessary steps

(NOTE: Rooms can be rendered useless by having a main traffic aisle directed through them.)

VIII. Factors to observe when planning the flow of traffic between rooms (Transparency 9)

A. Plan for the heaviest flow of traffic to occur between the kitchen and dining areas, the bedrooms and bath, and the living and dining areas

B. Dining area should be next to the kitchen and easily accessible

C. It should be possible to enter the kitchen without crossing the dining area

D. Have kitchen adjacent to service entrance

(NOTE: An outside door is very desirable in a kitchen.)

E. Locate the garage or carport near the kitchen and have an entrance permitting easy access into it

F. Bedrooms should have easy access to a bath

G. Each bedroom should have access to a hall

(NOTE: It is poor design to have to go through one bedroom to reach another.)

H. Plan to be able to enter a house and go to the bedroom area or bath without crossing through the living area

(NOTE: This will provide privacy, but may not always be possible in every house plan.)

IX. Categories of storage facilities and descriptions (Transparency 10)

A. Wardrobe closets-Shallow clothes closets built into the wall

(NOTE: The minimum inside depth is 24" clear. Doors should expose all parts of the closet for easy access.)

B. Walk-in closets-Closets which are large enough to walk into

(NOTE: The area needed for this type of closet is an area equal to the amount of space needed to hang clothes plus enough space to walk and turn. Only one door is needed.)

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Wall closets-Shallow closets in the wall holding cupboards, shelves, and drawers

(NOTE: Wall closets are normally 18" deep, since this size provides access to all stored items without using an excessive amount of floor area. Swing out doors provide extra storage on the back of the door; however, space must be provided for the swing. For this reason, sliding doors are usually preferred.)

D. Chests and dressers-Free standing pieces of furniture used for storage

(NOTE: The drafter may not have to design these items, but should remember to provide adequate space for their use.)

E. Room dividers-Free standing storage facilities which may be used to divide a large space into smaller areas

(NOTE: Many room dividers include shelves and drawers that open from either side.)

X. Steps for making a preliminary residential sketch

A. Determine client needs

B. Make a list of furniture needed

C. Select an architectural style

D. Determine sizes of furniture

E. Make furniture templates

F. Arrange furniture templates

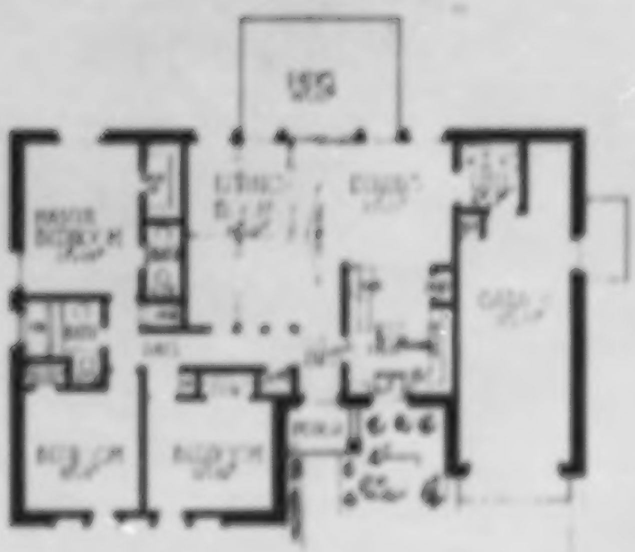
G. Determine room dimensions

H. Combine rooms into areas

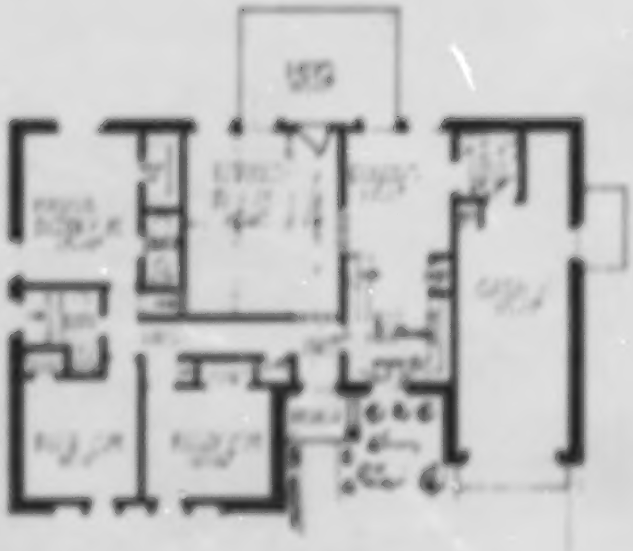
I. Combine areas into floor plan

J. Design outside by projecting elevations

Types of Living Rooms

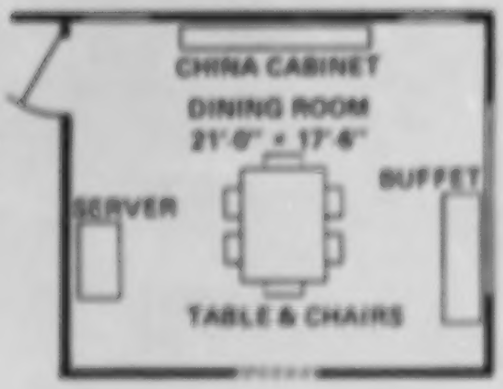


Open Plan

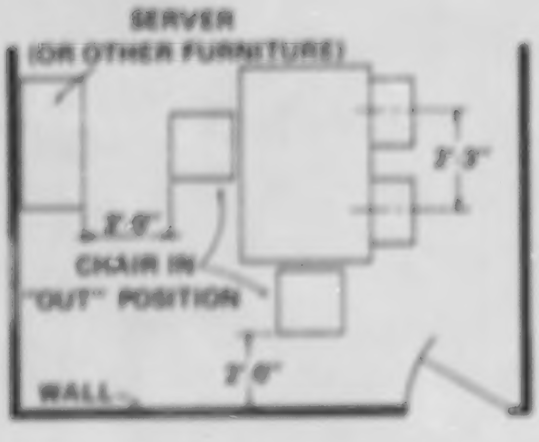


Closed Plan

Dining Room


CHINA CABINET
DINING ROOM
21'-0" × 17'-6"
BUFFET
SERVER
TABLE & CHAIRS

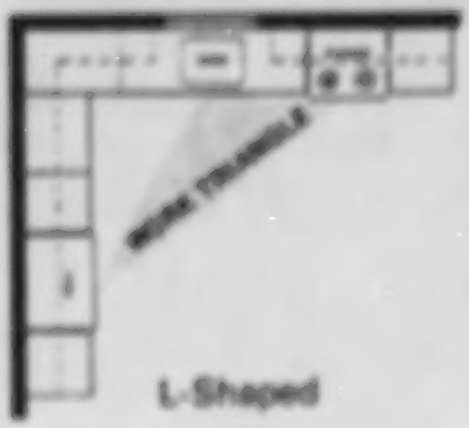
Typical Furniture Arrangement


SERVER
(OR OTHER FURNITURE)
2'-3"
2'-0"
CHAIR IN
"OUT" POSITION
2'-0"
WALL

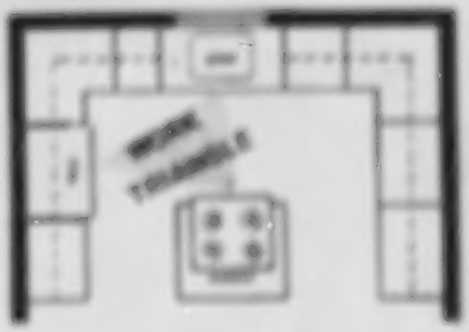
Clearances

15.

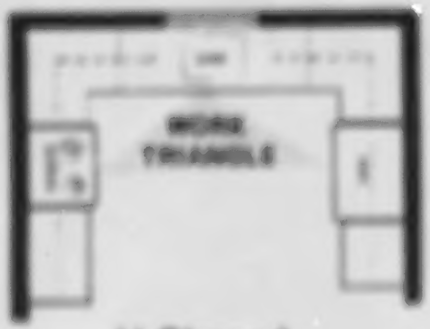
Kitchen Arrangements


WORK TRIANGLE

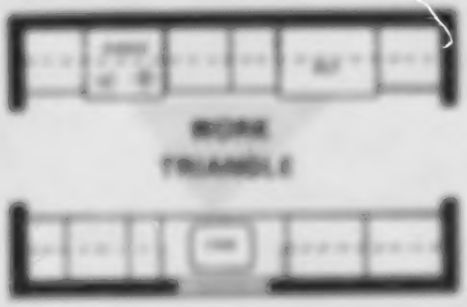
L-Shaped


WORK TRIANGLE

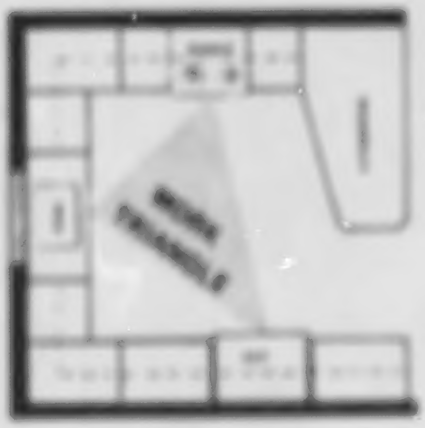
Island


WORK TRIANGLE

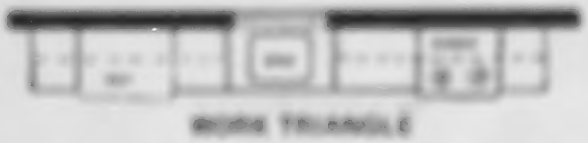
U-Shaped


WORK TRIANGLE

Corridor

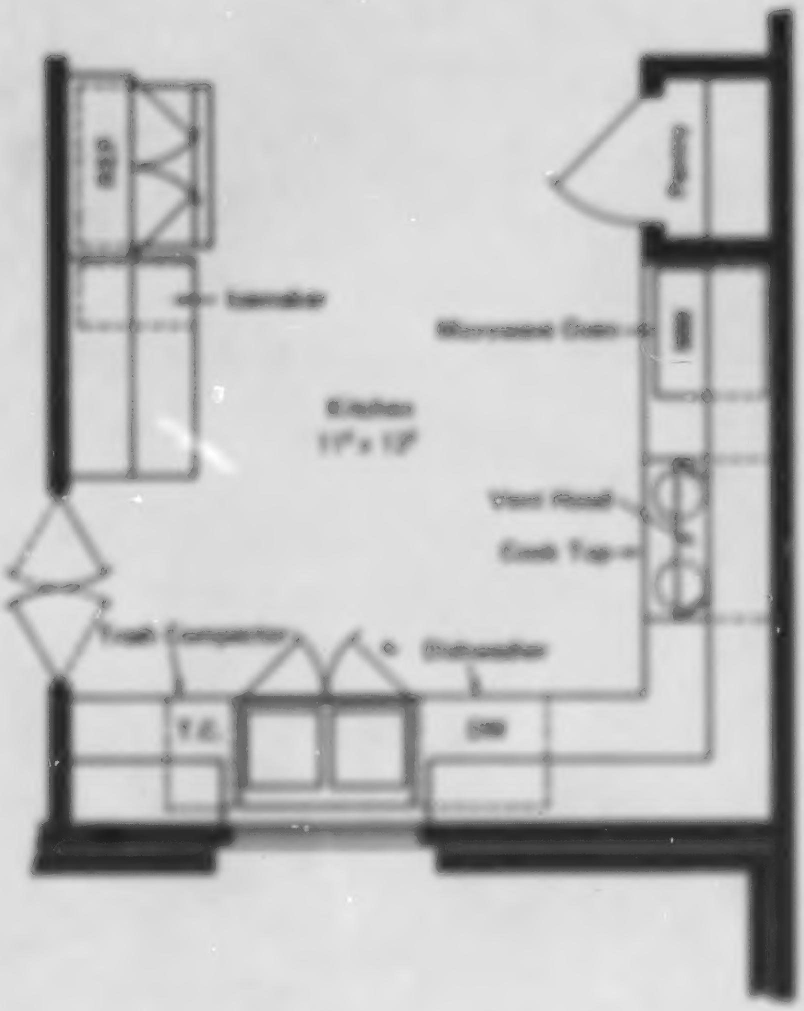

WORK TRIANGLE

Peninsula


WORK TRIANGLE

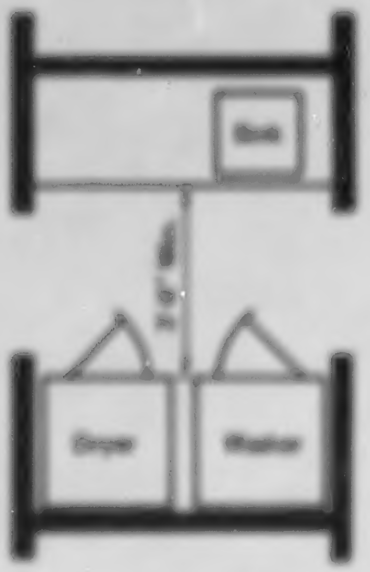
Straight Line (One wall)

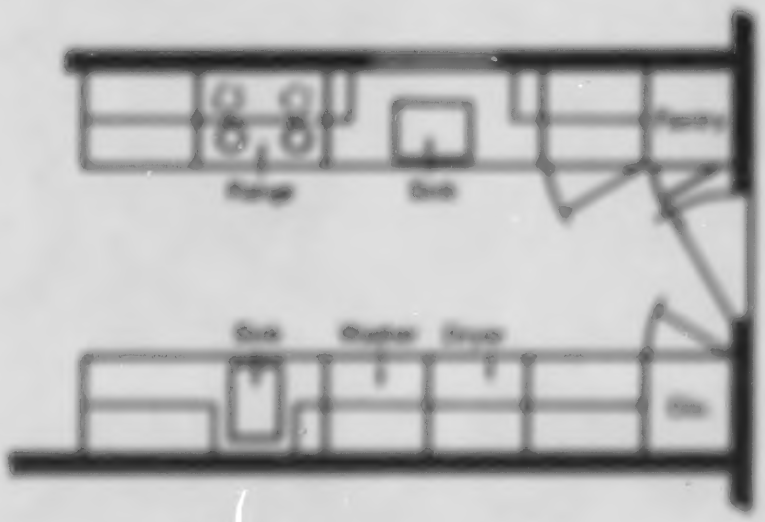
Kitchen


REF
Pantry
Icemaker
Microwave Oven
MO
Kitchen
11' x 12'
Vent Hood
Cook Top
Trash Compactor
Dishwasher
T.C.
DW

Storage is Placed Near Each Appliance

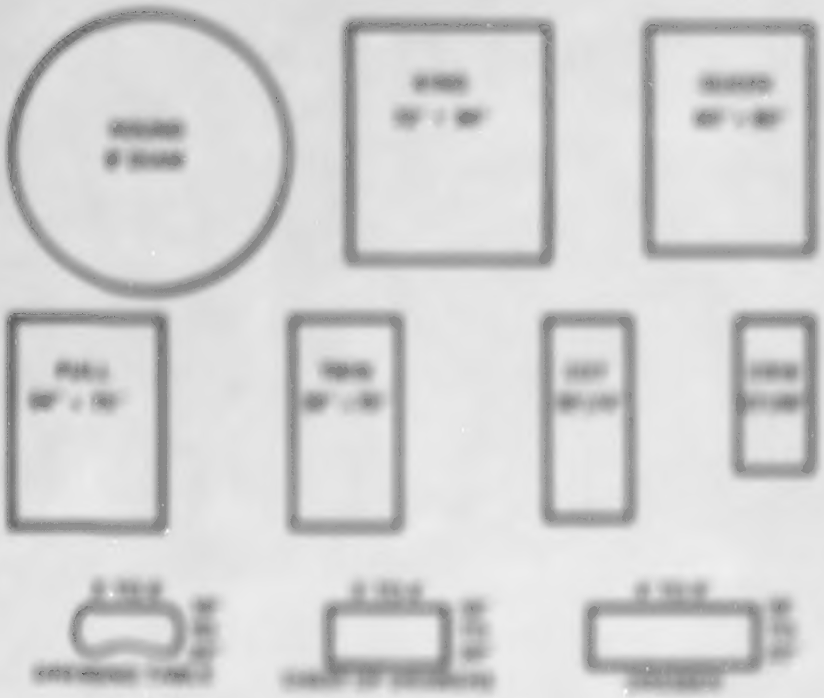
Utility Room


Sink
3'-0" Min.
Dryer
Washer

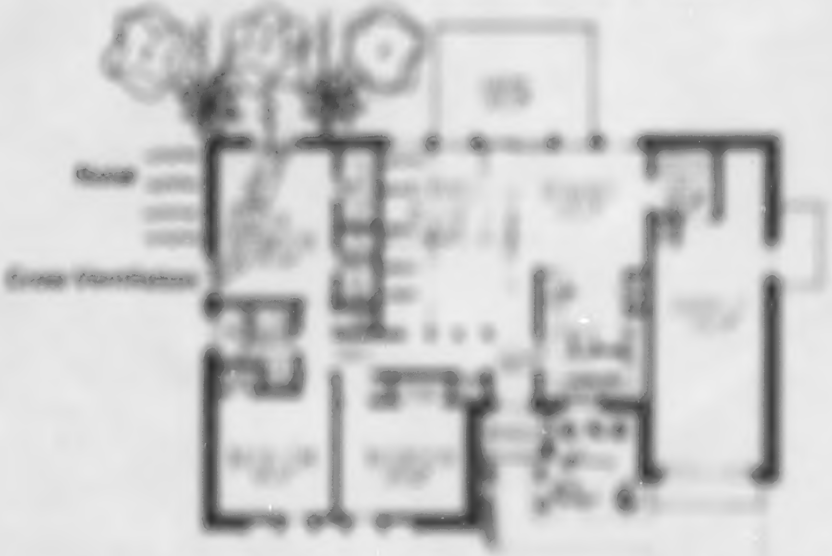

Range
Sink
Pantry
Sink
Washer
Dryer
Clo.

Kitchen/Utility Room Combination

Bedroom

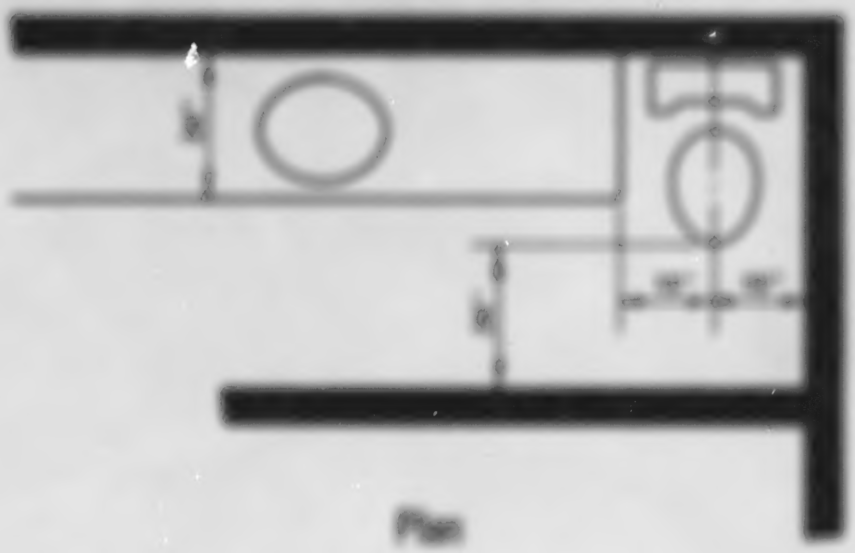


Typical Bedroom Furniture Sizes

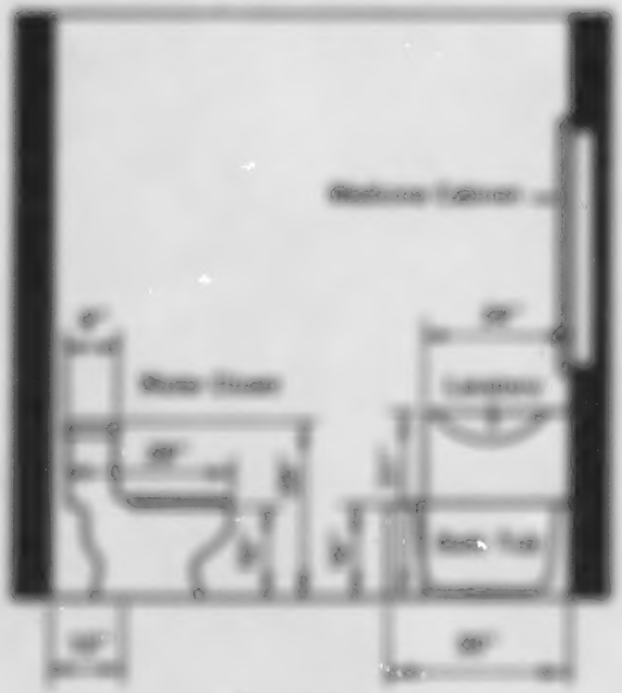

Noise
Cross Ventilation

Noise Prevention and Cross-Ventilation

Bathroom Clearances

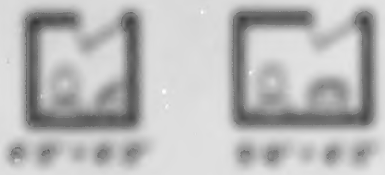


Plan

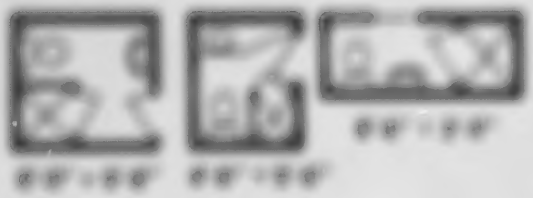

Medicine Cabinet
Water Closet
Lavatory
Bath Tub

Elevation

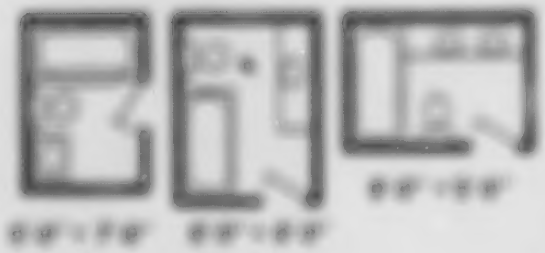
Bathroom Sizes



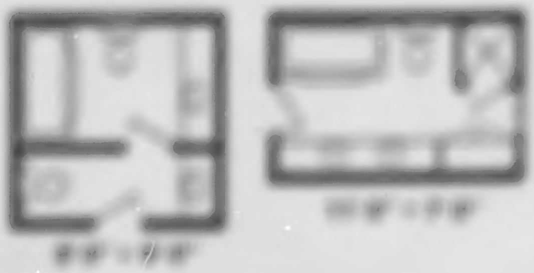
½



¾

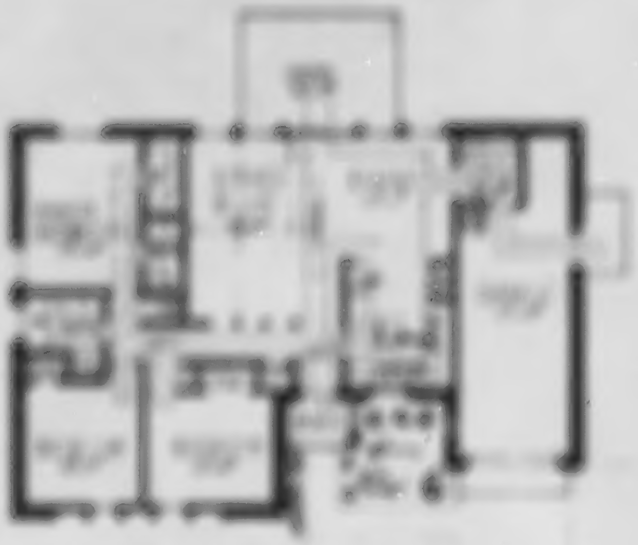


Full

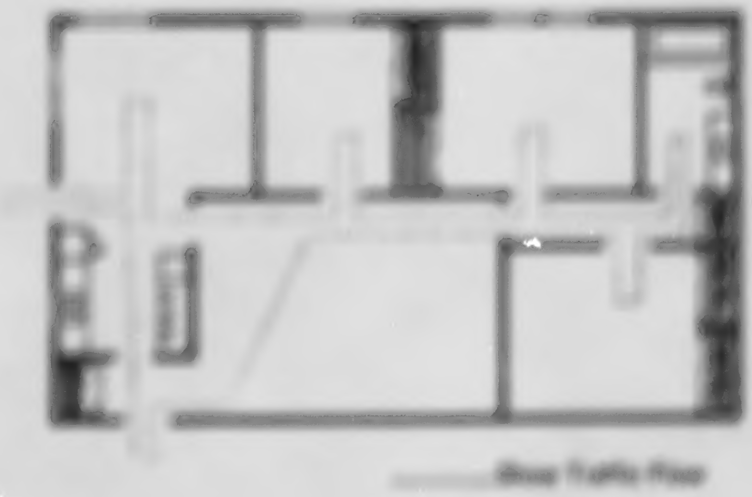


Luxury

Traffic Patterns

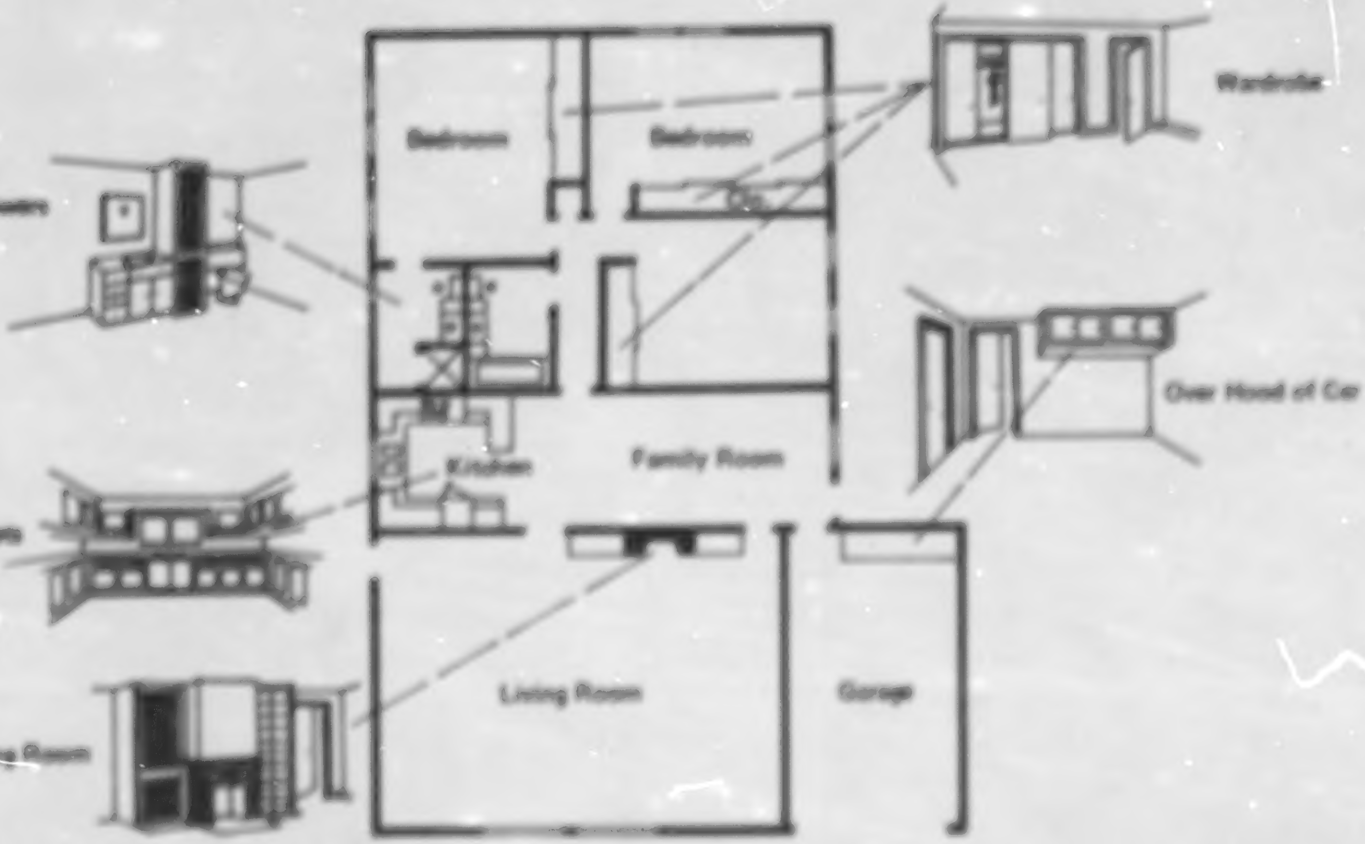


Well Designed


Shows Traffic Flow

Poorly Designed

Storage Areas


Bedroom
Bedroom
Cl.
Wardrobe
Bedroom Drawers & Cabinets
Over Hood of Car
Kitchen
Family Room
Kitchen Cabinets
Living Room
Garage
Living Room

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1-DETERMINE CLIENT NEEDS

Directions: Select a person as a prospective client who is interested in having you design and plan a house. Use the checklist on the following page to determine the specific information needed prior to beginning the plan. After completing the checklist, write short general statements of what the client wants, needs, and can afford. Review these statements and the checklist with the client to clear up any problems.

(NOTE: Often a client wants and needs more than he/she can afford.)

A. What client wants-

B. What client needs-

C. What client can afford-

D. How much square footage client can get for this amount-

(NOTE: Refer to instructor for local building costs per square foot.)

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

PLANNING CHECKLIST FOR ______________________________
(Client)

1. Site

______ Size of lot
______ Shape of lot
______ Contour of lot
______ Utilities available
______ Drainage (good, poor)
______ Type of trees, if any
______ Direction of most desirable view
______ North direction
______ Convenience to schools, shopping, churches, etc.
______ Satisfactory aspect
______ Other

2. Occupants

______ Number and age of adults
______ Number and age of boys
______ Number and age of girls
______ Profession of owner
______ Provision for guests
______ Provision for help, if any
______ Others (in-laws, etc.)
______ Pets

3. Individual Requirements

______ Formal entertaining
______ Separate formal dining area
______ Informal living areas
______ Outdoor living and eating areas
______ Supervised outdoor play area
______ Nursery
______ Recreation areas
______ Hobby areas (music, sewing, woodworking, gardening, etc.)
______ Study or reading areas
______ Laundry area
______ Screened porch or breezeway
______ Other

4. General Design

______ One story
______ Two story
______ Split level
______ Crawl space
______ Concrete slab
______ Basement
______ Traditional exterior
______ Contemporary exterior
______ Type of roof
______ Exterior materials (brick, clapboard, stone, board and batten)
______ Finish floor materials
______ Garage (number of cars)
______ Carport (number of cars)
______ Provision for future expansion
______ Open planning
______ Other

5. Budget Restrictions

______ Size of house in sq. ft. (1000 and under, 1500, 2000, 2500 & over)
______ How house is to be financed
______ Number of bathrooms (tub or shower)
______ Wall and floor material
______ Fireplaces
______ Type of entrance
______ Quality of interior trim
______ Quality of exterior trim

6. Mechanical Equipment

______ Central heating (warm air, hot water, radiant, heat pump, etc.)
______ Air conditioning (central or other)
______ Washer-dryer
______ Dishwasher
______ Garbage disposal
______ Exhaust fans
______ Water softener
______ Size of hot water heater
______ Others

7. Storage Areas

______ Entrance closet
______ Bedroom closets
______ Linen closets
______ Toy storage
______ Outdoor equipment storage
______ Cleaning equipment storage
______ Food storage
______ Utility storage
______ Gardening equipment storage
______ Hobby equipment storage

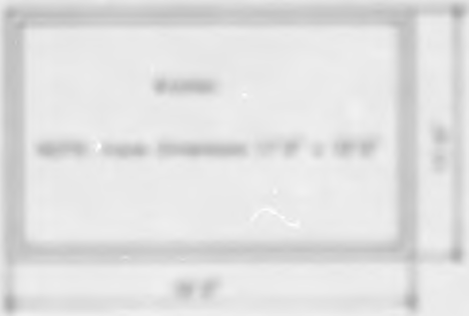
RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2-PLAN A KITCHEN

Directions: Plan a kitchen by using the procedure in the following example.

Example:

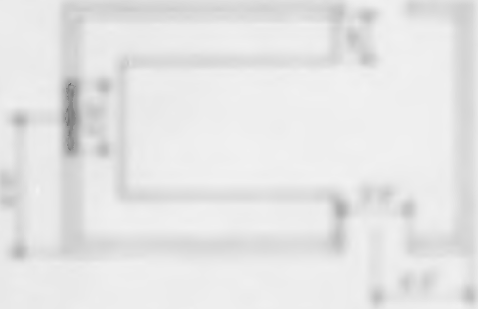
1. Determine overall room size



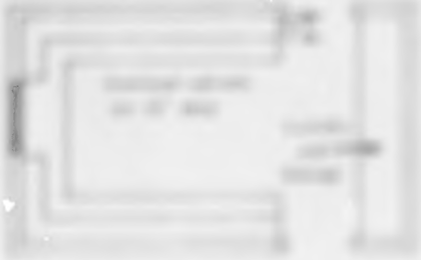
2. Locate and label all openings
3. Determine kitchen arrangement (Transparency 3)

   (NOTE: A U-shaped kitchen is used in this example.)

4. Determine areas for base cabinets and appliances

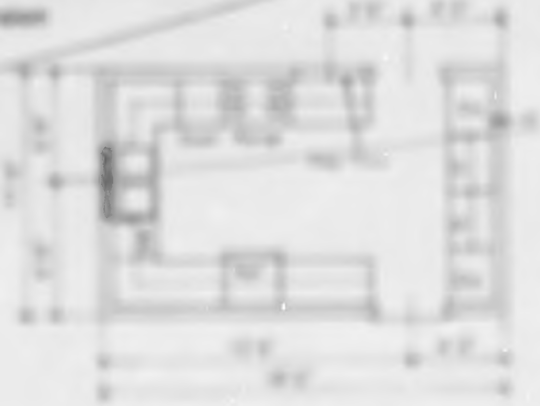


5. Locate overhead cabinets



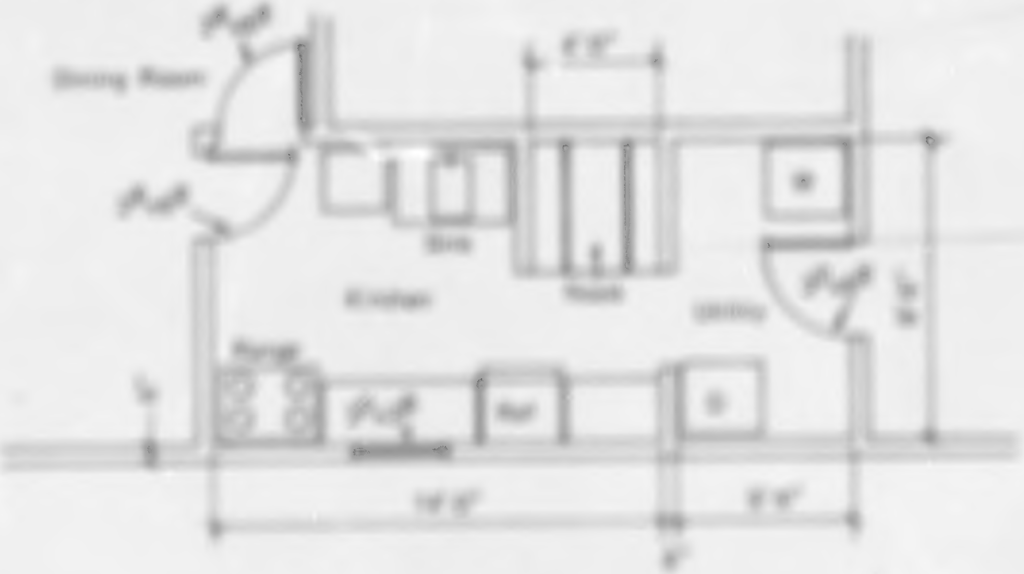
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

6. Arrange the appliances
7. Detail all areas accurately and dimension



Problem: Draw a new plan for the kitchen below including details and dimensions. Outside walls can not be changed. Include a work triangle.

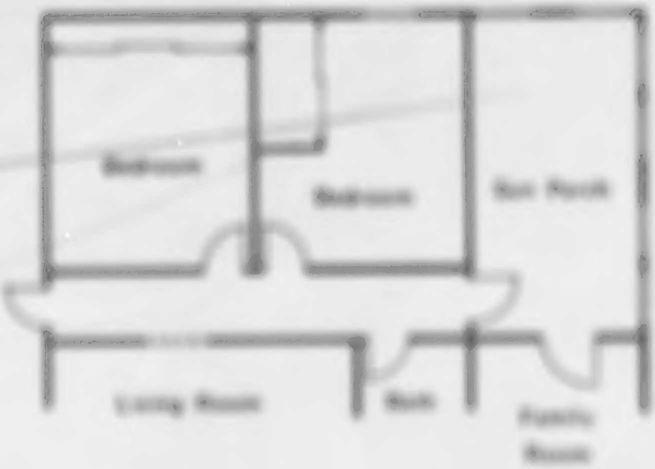
Scale 3/16" = 1'0"


Dining Room
Sink
Kitchen
Utility
Range
Ref
W
D

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3 PLAN A SLEEPING AREA

Directions: Draw a new plan for the sleeping area below which is for a family of four: 2 adults, 1 boy, and 1 girl.

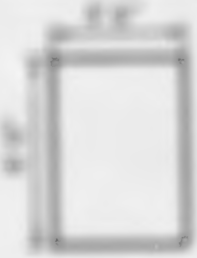

Bedroom
Bedroom
Sun Porch
Living Room
Bath
Family Room

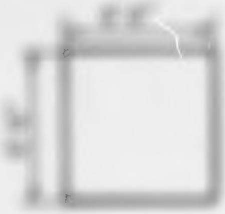
RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

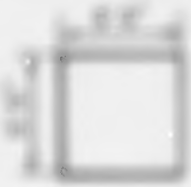
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4: PLAN A BATHROOM

Directions: Plan bathrooms for the following problems.

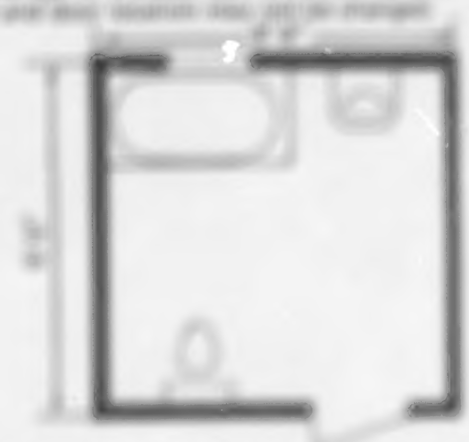
Problem A: Add lavatory, tub, and toilet to these plans; place door in any convenient location.



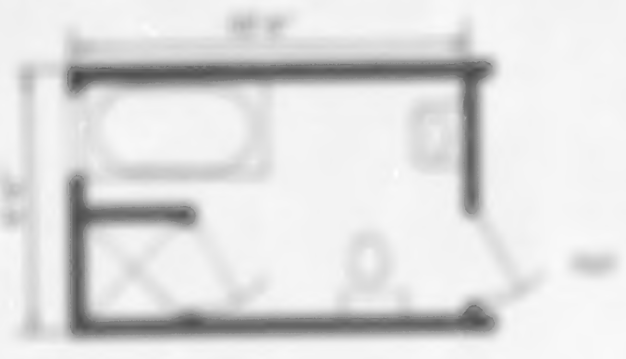




Problem B: Add storage to the bathroom below. You may want to draw a new plan for this bathroom but tub and door locations may not be changed.



Problem C: Draw a new plan for the bathroom below. Add needed storage but do not change tub or door location.



RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT [illegible]

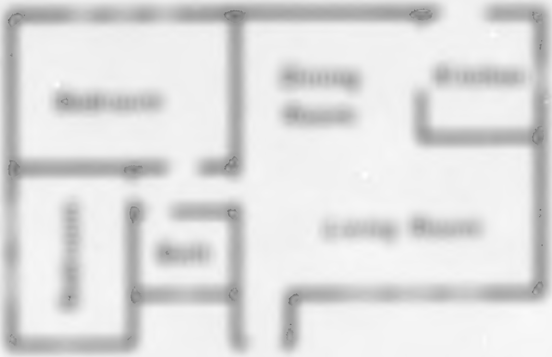
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #[illegible] PLAN TRAFFIC PATTERNS

Directions: Examine the following floor plans to determine the traffic flow. Draw arrows to indicate the traffic patterns. List ways that you would suggest changing the plans to improve the flow of traffic.

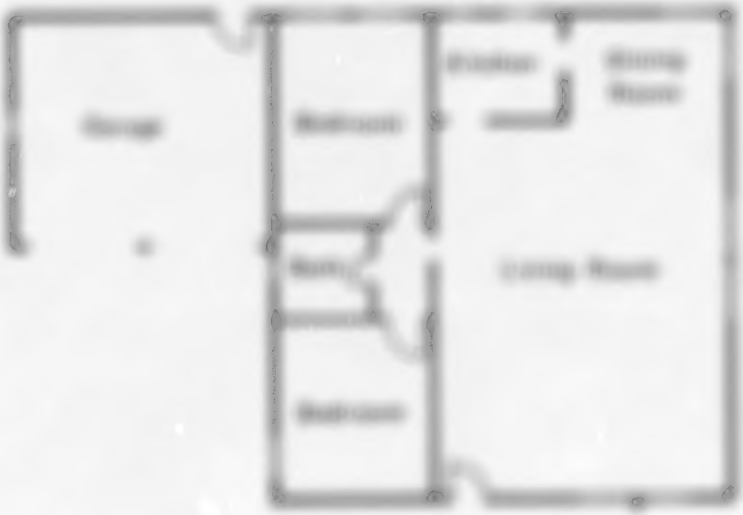
(NOTE: If time permits, you may wish to redraw the plans to show the suggested improvements in the flow of traffic throughout the houses.)

Problems:

A.


Bedroom
Dining Room
Kitchen
Bedroom
Bath
Living Room

B.


Garage
Bedroom
Kitchen
Dining Room
Bath
Living Room
Bedroom

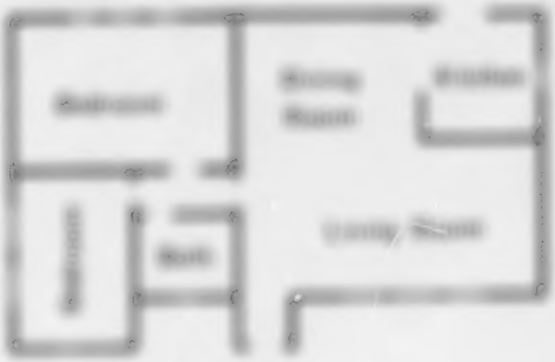
RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT [illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #[illegible]—PLAN STORAGE FACILITIES

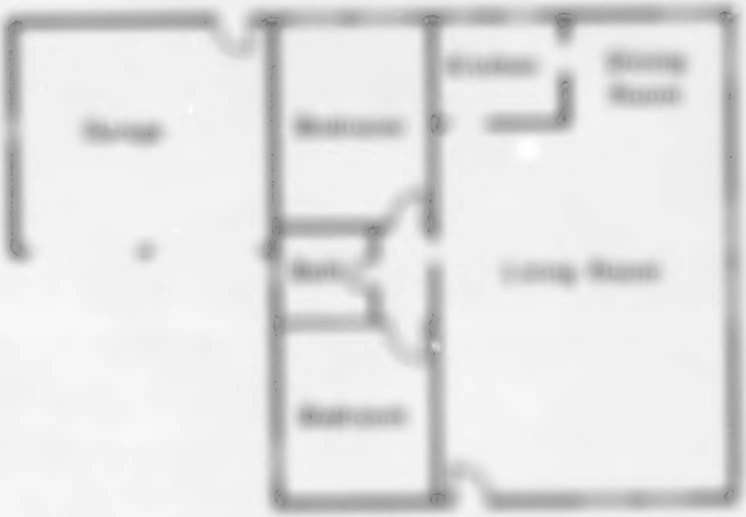
Directions: After carefully studying the following plans, determine what storage space you would recommend adding. Draw the storage space on the plan and label.

Problems:

A.


Bedroom
Dining Room
Kitchen
Bedroom
Bath
Living Room

B.


Garage
Bedroom
Kitchen
Dining Room
Bath
Living Room
Bedroom

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT [illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET [illegible] DEVELOP A PRELIMINARY RESIDENTIAL SKETCH

Directions: Use the following information to develop a preliminary residential sketch.

Problem:

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

1. Small entry [illegible]
2. Living area [illegible]
3. Dining area [illegible]
4. Kitchen [illegible]
5. Powder room [illegible]
6. Landscaped [illegible]

[illegible]

7. [illegible]

8. [illegible]

9. [illegible]

10. [illegible]

11. [illegible]

12. [illegible]

13. [illegible]

14. [illegible]

15. [illegible]

16. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

NAME ______________________

TEST

1. [illegible]

   a) ______________________
   b) ______________________
   c) ______________________
   d) ______________________
   e) ______________________

2. [illegible]

   _____a) [illegible]
   _____b) [illegible]
   _____c) [illegible]
   _____d) [illegible]
   _____e) [illegible]
   _____f) [illegible]
   _____g) [illegible]

3. [illegible]

   _____a) [illegible]
   _____b) [illegible]
   _____c) [illegible]
   _____d) [illegible]
   _____e) [illegible]
   _____f) [illegible]

4. Match the rooms in the living area on the right with the correct characteristics.

_____a. May be designed to serve as a guest bedroom

_____b. Near the kitchen and usually near the living room

_____c. Area through which people enter the house

_____d. Primarily used for formal or informal relaxation and recreation; may be used for almost any purpose

_____e. May be located in basement, attic, or main level of house, depending upon available space; used as a play room or game room

_____f. Outside near entrance according to occupants' needs/uses

_____g. Use depends on family; usually for quiet activities such as work or study

_____h. Used for family centered activities such as TV, music, or table games; usually located near the kitchen

_____i. Used for formal or informal dining

1. Entrance
2. Living room
3. Dining room
4. Recreation room
5. Family room
6. Den
7. Porch

5. Match the rooms in the service area on the right with the correct characteristics.

_____a. Attached, detached, or connected by a breezeway to the other service areas

_____b. Soundproofing and fire protection may be added; workbench; storage for supplies and tools

_____c. Wash, store, and cook food

_____d. May serve as laundry in addition to other areas such as storage, sewing, or food preservation

_____e. Adjacent to dining room and outside entrance

_____f. Provide shelter for one or more vehicles

_____g. Wash, dry, and care for occupants' clothing

1. Kitchen
2. Laundry
3. Utility room
4. Garage or carport
5. Workshop

6. Complete the following chart of characteristics of rooms in the sleeping area.

Room	Purpose	Suggested Minimum Size	Extra Features	Location
________	Quiet activities such as sleeping, resting, or reading	Room- 100 sq. ft. Door- 2' 6" x 6' 8"	________ ________ ________	Quiet part of house
Bathroom	________ ________ ________	Room- ________ Door- 2' 0" x ________	Storage space; ventilation	________ ________ ________

7. State the general rule to remember when planning the flow of traffic through a house.

____

____

8. Select true statements concerning factors to observe when planning the flow of traffic between rooms by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Plan for the heaviest flow of traffic to occur between the kitchen and dining areas, the bedrooms and bath, and the living and dining areas

_____b. A kitchen does not need to be adjacent to service entrance

_____c. Always locate the garage or carport adjacent to the bedrooms and have an entrance permitting easy access into them

_____d. Dining area should be next to the bedrooms and easily accessible

_____e. Each bedroom should have access to kitchen

_____f. Bedrooms should have easy access to a bath

_____g. Plan to be able to enter a house and go the bedroom area or bath without crossing through the living area

9. Match categories of storage facilities on the right with the correct descriptions.

_____a. Shallow closets in the wall holding cupboards, shelves, and drawers

_____b. Shallow clothes closets built into the wall

_____c. Free standing pieces of furniture used for storage

_____d. Free standing storage facilities which may be used to divide a large space into smaller areas

_____e. Closets which are large enough to walk into

1. Wardrobe closets
2. Walk in closets
3. Wall closets
4. Chests and drawers
5. Room dividers

10. Sequence the steps for making a preliminary residential sketch by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Combine rooms into areas

_____b. Make furniture templates

_____c. Make a list of furniture needed

_____d. Determine room dimensions

_____e. Determine client needs

_____f. Combine areas into floor plan

_____g. Design outside by projecting elevations

_____h. Arrange furniture templates

_____i. Select an architectural style

_____j. Determine sizes of furniture

11. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Determine client needs.

b. Plan a kitchen.

c. Plan a sleeping area.

d. Plan a bathroom.

e. Plan traffic patterns.

f. Plan storage facilities.

g. Develop a preliminary residential sketch.

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

RESIDENTIAL DESIGN
UNIT IV

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. Financial ability of client
   b. What the client wants
   c. Minimum requirements of the client
   d. Client's preference in architectural style
   e. Lot size and location

2. b, c, f, g

3. a. SR　　d. SR
   b. L　　e. L
   c. DL　　f. SR

4. a. [illegible]　　f. [illegible]
   b. [illegible]　　g. [illegible]
   c. [illegible]　　h. [illegible]
   d. [illegible]　　i. [illegible]
   e. [illegible]

5. a. [illegible]　　e. [illegible]
   b. [illegible]　　f. [illegible]
   c. [illegible]　　g. [illegible]
   d. [illegible]

6.

Room	Purpose	Suggested Minimum Size	Extra Features	Location
Bedroom	Quiet area; may such as sleeping, resting, or reading	Room: 100 sq. ft. Floor: [illegible]	Closets, windows and/or ventilation	Quiet part of house
Bathroom	Personal hygiene; may provide other functions such as laundry or dressing	Room: [illegible] Floor: [illegible]	Storage space, ventilation	Near bedrooms or near service area

7. People must be able to move from room to room and from one part of the house to another with a minimum of congestion and unnecessary steps.

8. c, f, g

9. a. [illegible]
   b. [illegible]
   c. [illegible]
   d. [illegible]
   e. [illegible]

10. [illegible]

11. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify types of framing systems, framing members, and cornices. The student should also be able to determine the sizes of wood floor joists, roof rafters, wood girders, steel beams, and headers. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to structural systems with the correct definitions.
2. Identify types of two-story framing systems.
3. Select types of wood floor sill constructions.
4. Identify types of wood floor joist framings.
5. State the purpose of bridging.
6. Identify wall framing members.
7. List three methods of frame bracing.
8. Complete a list of types of sheathing.
9. Identify types of roofs.
10. Identify roof framing members for various roofs.
11. Identify types of cornices.
12. Identify types of post and beam framing.
13. Match building materials with the correct definitions.
14. Complete a chart of material symbols used on plan, elevation, and section drawings.
15. Select materials in a concrete mix.
16. Name the physical properties that affect strength of concrete.
17. Match construction masonry products with the correct use.

18. Match glass products with the correct uses.
19. Complete a list of the uses of plastic in building construction.
20. Match types of insulation materials with the correct characteristics.
21. Match metal products with the correct uses.
22. Select materials commonly used to cover a roof.
23. List wood products used in construction.
24. Complete a chart of nominal and actual sizes for dimension lumber.
25. List information which must be given to a truss manufacturer.
26. Match structural design terms with the correct definitions.
27. Match structural design terms with the correct formulas.
28. Complete a chart of abbreviations.
29. Demonstrate the ability to:
    a. Determine sizes of wood floor joists and roof rafters.
    b. Determine sizes of wood girders.
    c. Determine sizes of steel beams.
    d. Determine sizes of exterior or interior wall headers.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT D

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Make or have made a model of framing members showing wall construction and typical roof members.

VII. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of each type of wood floor and framing.

VIII. Show examples of the types of sheathing and discuss the use of each.

IX. Discuss the factors which affect concrete and the accompanying Transparency [illegible].

X. Visit a lumber yard so students can see the difference between actual and nominal size lumber and types of lumber members.

XI. Have copies of Architectural Graphic Standards available to the students for use in Assignment Sheets [illegible] and [illegible].

XII. Obtain and provide copies of the Manual of Steel Construction for use in Assignment Sheet [illegible].

XIII. Give test.

(NOTE: You may wish to give this test in two parts since it is long.)

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

A. Objective sheet

B. Information sheet

C. Transparency masters

1. TM 1 Platform Framing
2. TM 2 Balloon Framing
3. TM 3 Typical Sill Construction

4. TM 4 Types of Wood Floor Joist Framing

5. TM 5 Bridging

6. TM 6 Wall Framing Members

7. TM 7 Frame Bracing

8. TM 8 Basic Types of Roofs

9. TM 9 Roof Framing Members

10. TM 10 Roof Framing Members (Continued)

11. TM 11 Types of Girders

12. TM 12 Types of Girders (Continued)

13. TM 13 Types of Girders (Continued)

14. TM 14 Types of Beams

15. TM 15 Gypsum Wallboard

16. TM 16 Concrete Materials and Testing

17. TM 17 Water Temperature Effect on Concrete

18. TM 18 Masonry Products

19. TM 19 Masonry Products (Continued)

20. TM 20 Insulation "R" Values

21. TM 21 Structural Steel Shapes

22. TM 22 Standard Lumber Sizes

23. TM 23 Trusses

24. TM 24 Structural Design Terms

25. TM 25 Structural Design Terms (Continued)

II. Assignment Sheets

1. Assignment Sheet #1 Determine Sizes of Wood Floor Joists and Roof Rafters

2. Assignment Sheet #2 Determine Sizes of Wood Girders

3. Assignment Sheet #3 Determine Sizes of Steel Beams

4. Assignment Sheet #4 Determine Sizes of Exterior or Interior Wall Footings

E. [illegible]

F. Tape

G. [illegible]

II. References

A. [illegible] Architectural Drawing: [illegible] & [illegible] Co., Inc., [illegible]

B. [illegible] Standard Graphical Symbols. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Co., [illegible]

C. Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. Architectural Drawing and Planning. St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., [illegible]

D. Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach. Architecture: Drafting and Design. St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., [illegible]

E. [illegible] Architectural Drafting. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., [illegible]

F. HUD Minimum Property Standards. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, [illegible]

G. Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. Architecture: Residential Drafting and Design. South Holland, IL: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., [illegible]

H. Manual of Acceptable Practices to the HUD Minimum Property Standards. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, [illegible]

I. [illegible] Standard Structural Details for Building Construction. St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., [illegible]

J. [illegible] Architectural Technology. St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., [illegible]

K. Ramsey, Charles G. and Harold R. Sleeper. Architectural Graphic Standards. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., [illegible]

L. [illegible] Architectural Specifications. New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., [illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

- [illegible]
  [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]

[illegible]

- [illegible]
- [illegible]

[illegible]

- [illegible]
- [illegible]

[illegible]

- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]
- [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Shed

   1. Common rafter
   2. Double plate
   3. Stud

C. Hip

   1. Ridge
   2. Common rafter
   3. Hip rafter
   4. Hip jack rafter
   5. Plate
   6. Valley rafter
   7. Valley jack rafter

D. Gable

   1. Collar beam
   2. Common rafter
   3. Ceiling joist
   4. Double plate
   5. Stud

XI. Types of cornices (Transparencies 11, 12, and 13)

   A. Open

   B. Close box

   C. Wide box with lookouts

   (NOTE: These may be square cut or plumb cut.)

   D. Swept eave

   E. Wide box without lookouts

XII. Types of post and beam framing (Transparency 14)

   A. Solid

   B. Spaced

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Cased

D. False

XIII. Building materials and definitions

A. Cement–A powder of alumina, silica, lime, iron oxide, and magnesia burned together in a kiln to be used as a binding agent in mortar or concrete

(NOTE: This is commonly called Portland cement.)

B. Concrete–A ratio mixture of cement, sand, and aggregate with water; when mixed and cast, it reaches a load bearing design strength in 28 days

C. Aggregate–Clean gravel or crushed rock from 1/4" to 1 1/2" in diameter

D. Admixture–Chemicals used to make the concrete mix more workable, slower or faster in hardening, freeze resistant, or other desired quality

E. Prestressed concrete–Casting concrete used around steel cables or rods which are under tension to counteract stresses caused by external loading

F. Post-tensioned concrete–Concrete used for steel rods in tubes which are placed under tension after concrete has hardened

G. Adobe–Natural sun-dried clays or earth and a binder

H. Kiln-burned brick–Natural clays with chemicals sometimes added for color which are molded to shape, dried, and fired for hardness

I. Sand lime brick–A mixture of sand and lime, molded and hardened under steam pressure

J. Concrete brick–A mixture of cement and fine aggregates, molded into solid or core units and hardened chemically

K. Mortar–Cement, hydrated lime, sand, and water

(NOTE: A typical mortar mixture would be 1 part cement, 1/4 part lime, and 3 parts of sand by volume.)

L. Concrete block–Cement, sand, aggregate, or other lightweight aggregate materials molded and hardened under steam pressure

M. Terra cotta–A type of structural clay tile used for non-load bearing ornamental effects in construction

INFORMATION SHEET

N. Gypsum wallboard--A core of air-entrained gypsum between two layers of treated paper (Transparency 15)

O. Structural clay tile--A product made of materials that are similar to those used in making brick, but it is a larger building unit

P. Glass blocks--Two sections of glass, fused together, creating a partial vacuum

Q. Lumber--Wood cut into pieces of uniform thickness, width, and length

R. Plywood--A wood product consisting of several layers of lumber with the grain at right angles in each successive layer

(NOTE: Exterior plywood is bonded with a waterproof adhesive.)

S. Glue laminated timber--Kiln-dried lumber bonded together in layers with an adhesive to form beams, arches, and other structural members

(NOTE: Standards are controlled by American Institute of Timber Construction.)

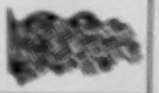
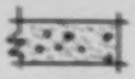
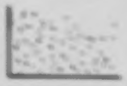
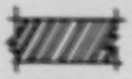
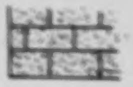
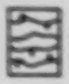
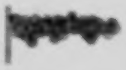
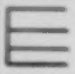
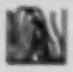
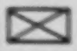
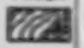
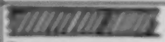
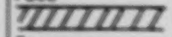
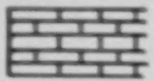
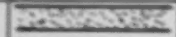
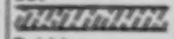
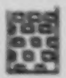
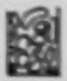
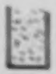
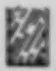
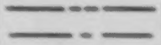
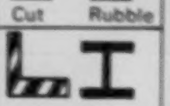
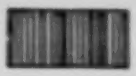
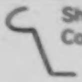
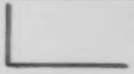
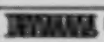
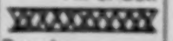
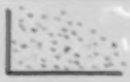
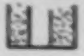
T. Structural steel--The term applied to hot-rolled steel sections, shapes, and plates 1/8" thick or greater

(NOTE: This includes fasteners and other devices to complete the steel frame.)

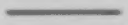
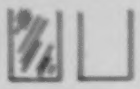
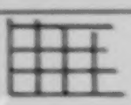
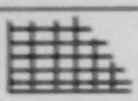
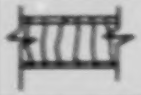
INFORMATION SHEET

XIV. Material symbols used on plan, elevation, and section drawings

(NOTE: Refer to *Architectural Graphic Standards* for symbols not shown.)

Material	Plan	Elevation	Section
Earth	None	None	
Concrete			Same as Plan View
Concrete Block			
Gravel Fill	Same as Section	None	
Wood	Floor Areas Left Blank	  Siding Panel	Finish   Framing
Brick	 Face  Common	 Face or Common	
Stone	 Cut  Rubble	  Cut Rubble	  Cut Rubble
Structural Steel		Indicate by Note	 Specify
Sheet Metal Flashing			 Show Contour
Insulation	Same as Section	 Insulation	 Loose Fill or Batt  Board
Plaster	Same as Section	 Plaster	Stud  Lath and Plaster

INFORMATION SHEET

Glass			Large Scale Small Scale
Tile			

XV. Materials in a concrete mix (Transparency 16)

A. Cement

B. Sand

C. Aggregate

D. Water

(NOTE: Water-cement ratio test minimum is 4" slump.)

E. Admixture

(NOTE: A design mixture for 3000 P.S.I. concrete with a 20% safety factor would be 517 lb. cement [5 1/2 sacks], 1300 lb. sand, 1800 lb. aggregate, and 34 gal. water [6.2 gal. per sack].)

XVI. Physical properties that affect strength of concrete (Transparency 17)

A. Temperature

B. Water

XVII. Construction masonry products and uses (Transparencies 18 and 19)

(NOTE: For special shapes contact local manufacturers.)

A. Cut stone--Used for decorative effects on buildings or non-load bearing walls

B. Adobe--Used for load bearing walls in dry climate regions

C. Concrete brick--Used for decorative effects on buildings or non-load bearing walls

D. Common brick--Used for walls, backing, and other applications where appearance is not important

INFORMATION SHEET

E. Face brick--Manufactured under controlled dimensions, color, and structural qualities for building construction

(NOTE: Defects are sold as common brick.)

F. Glazed brick--Used in decorative and special service applications

G. Fire brick--Used in fireplaces, incinerators, and industrial smelting furnaces

(NOTE: Modular size is different from other brick.)

H. Paving brick--Used in drives or areas where abrasion is a factor

I. Mortar--Used as either plain or colored to cement masonry products together

J. Structural clay tile--Used as non-load bearing partition walls, load bearing walls, backup for certain walls, and as fireproofing around structural steel

K. Concrete block--Used for non-load bearing partition walls, load bearing walls, and foundation walls

L. Tile--Used for floor and wall coverings of residences and commercial buildings that are set in cement, latex adhesive, or an epoxy mortar

(NOTE: Tile consists of terra cotta, quarry, mosaic, or ceramic materials, glazed or unglazed.)

XVIII. Glass products and uses

A. Sheet--Used for windows in thicknesses of 3/32" single strength (SS), 1/8" double strength (DS), and 1/4" heavy sheet plate

B. Safety--Used to overcome the hazards of sheet glass in large, exposed, or public areas

(NOTE: This is available tempered, laminated, and wired.)

C. Insulating--A unit of two or more sheets of glass separated by 1/8" to 1" air space, dehydrated, and sealed for windows

D. Pattern--Sheet glass with a pattern on both sides to diffuse light for privacy

E. Stained--Used for leaded glass for windows and decorative pieces

XIX. Uses of plastic in building construction

A. Laminates

1. Counter tops
2. Doors
3. Wall surfacing

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Coatings on wood or gypsum

C. Gutters and downspouts

D. Pipe

E. Trim and ornamental decor items

F. Film for vapor barriers

XX. Types of insulation materials and characteristics (Transparency 20)

(NOTE: Insulation is manufactured in a variety of forms and types to meet specific construction requirements.)

A. Blanket or batt--Available in 16" to 24" widths, 1" to 6" thicknesses, and 4' to 8' lengths of fiberglass, rock wool, or cellulose material with paper or aluminum foil backing

B. Loose fill--Available in bags; made from rock wool, fiberglass, cellulose, or polystyrene material

(NOTE: Rock wool and cellulose are treated to resist fire.)

C. Rigid--Made of fiberboard, fiberglass, polystyrene, or polyurethane that is available in sheet form with optional aluminum backing

(NOTE: Aluminum is applied when expecting extreme weather and conditions.)

D. Foam--Plastics that have blowing agents added to them which are deposited on the job site with a spray gun

XXI. Metal products and uses

A. Structural steel shapes--Used for girders, columns, and brick masonry lintels (Transparency 21)

B. Reinforcing bars--Used in structural steel open web beams and in reinforced concrete

C. Welded wire fabric--Mesh used for reinforcement of concrete

D. Gauge metals--Used for wall studs, window and door frames, roof flashings, duct work, roofing, and wall siding

E. Nonferrous metals--Aluminum, brass, and copper used for windows, thresholds, siding, electrical wiring, gutters, and flashing

XXII. Materials commonly used to cover a roof

A. Asphalt shingles

B. Rolled

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Wood shingles

D. Built-up

E. Clay tile

F. Metal

XXIII. Wood products used in construction (Transparency 22)

A. Dimension lumber

1. Rough framing members

(NOTE: Refer to *Architectural Graphic Standards* or *Wood Products Association Use Manual* for species or grade stress and loading.)

2. Finished

3. Ornamental

B. Plywood

(NOTE: For sizes, profiles, grades, and uses refer to *Plywood Products Association Use Manual.*)

C. Glue laminated timber

(NOTE: For sizes refer to American Institute of Timber Construction or manufacturer's product manual.)

XXIV. Nominal and actual sizes for dimension lumber

NOMINAL SIZES	**ACTUAL SIZES**
2 x 4	1 1/2 x 3 1/2
2 x 6	1 1/2 x 5 1/2
2 x 8	1 1/2 x 7 1/2
2 x 10	1 1/2 x 9 1/2
2 x 12	1 1/2 x 11 1/2

(NOTE: Actual size dimensions are used for drawing, and both actual and nominal are used for structural design calculations.)

XXV. Information which must be given to a truss manufacturer (Transparency 23)

(NOTE: Trusses are designed in accordance with the Truss Plate Institute design specifications.)

A. Span

(NOTE: Longer spans will require increasing of panel systems.)

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Roof pitch

(NOTE: This is controlled by the designer.)

C. Spacing of trusses

(NOTE: Wider spacing will place more loads on each truss and will require larger chords.)

D. Roof load

(NOTE: Refer to load charts for the area.)

XXVI. Structural design terms and definitions (Transparencies 24 and 25)

A. Dead load–The weight of the materials used to construct the building

B. Live load–The weight or force exerted by items that are not a part of the building itself

(NOTE: Wind, snow, furniture, and people live loads are commonly assigned by a local code according to the building occupancy and use.)

C. Vertical shear (V)--A downward force at or near the support that tends to cut or shear the beam off at the supports

D. Horizontal shear (H)--Force which causes a beam to fail by pulling the fibers apart parallel to the beam

E. Moment (M)--The force that tends to cause the point of load on a beam to rotate about a column connection or support

(NOTE: Units are in foot-pounds.)

F. Bending (f)--A force due to moments in the beam which tend to bend the beam past failure

(NOTE: l/360 maximum bending or deflection is common.)

G. Reaction (R)--The force needed to resist moments to maintain equilibrium

(NOTE: Units are in foot-pounds.)

H. Fiber stress--A property of a material measuring its maximum allowable fiber strength at the farthest point from the neutral axis

(NOTE: Wood fiber stress can be found in *Architectural Graphic Standards* in tables for each species in PSI.)

I. Deflection (Δ)--Permissible bending according to local code depending upon beam's length of span, load, and material

(NOTE: If deflection for a beam is greater than $\frac{\text{l in inches}}{360}$, the beam needs to be recalculated.)

INFORMATION SHEET

J. Section modulus (S)--Used to determine the rectangular cross-section of a beam that will resist moments

K. Modulus of inertia (I)--Used to determine the rectangular cross-section of a beam that will determine the allowable deflection in a beam

(NOTE: Use only actual dimensions.)

L. Modulus of elasticity (E)--The rate of deformation of a material as stress is applied to it

(NOTE: Units are in pounds per square inch.)

XXVII. Structural design formulas (Transparencies 24 and 25)

(NOTE: For the following formulas w = square feet of floor surface per 1 linear foot along beam multiplied by the dead load in pounds; l = length of beam in feet; b = width of beam; d = depth of beam; E = modulus; and f = bending [fiber stress of lumber in PSI].)

A. Vertical shear--$V = \frac{wl}{2}$

B. Horizontal shear--$H = \frac{3V}{2bd}$

C. Maximum moment--$M = \frac{wl^2}{8}$

(NOTE: If answer is needed in inch pounds, multiply by 12.)

D. Deflection--$\Delta = \frac{5wl^3}{348EI}$

E. Section modulus--$S = \frac{bd^2}{6}$

(NOTE: Calculations may be for nominal or actual size dimensions.)

F. Minimum allowable section modulus--$S = \frac{M}{f}$

G. Modulus of inertia--$I = \frac{bd^3}{12}$

(NOTE: Use **actual** size dimensions for b and d. This formula is used to calculate wood beams; steel beam data can be found in tables.)

INFORMATION SHEET

XXVIII. Abbreviations

Anchor bolt--AB

Beam--BM

Blocking--BLKG

Bottom--BOTT

Ceiling--CL

Center to center--C to C

Floor--FL

Frame--FR

Header--HDR

Laminated--LAM

Lumber--LBR

Nominal--NOM

On center--OC

Opening--OPG

Partition--PTN

Plates--PLTS

Platform--PLATF

Plywood--PLY

Riser--R

Roof--RF

Roofing--RFG

Rough--RGH

Sheathing--SHTG

Siding--SDG

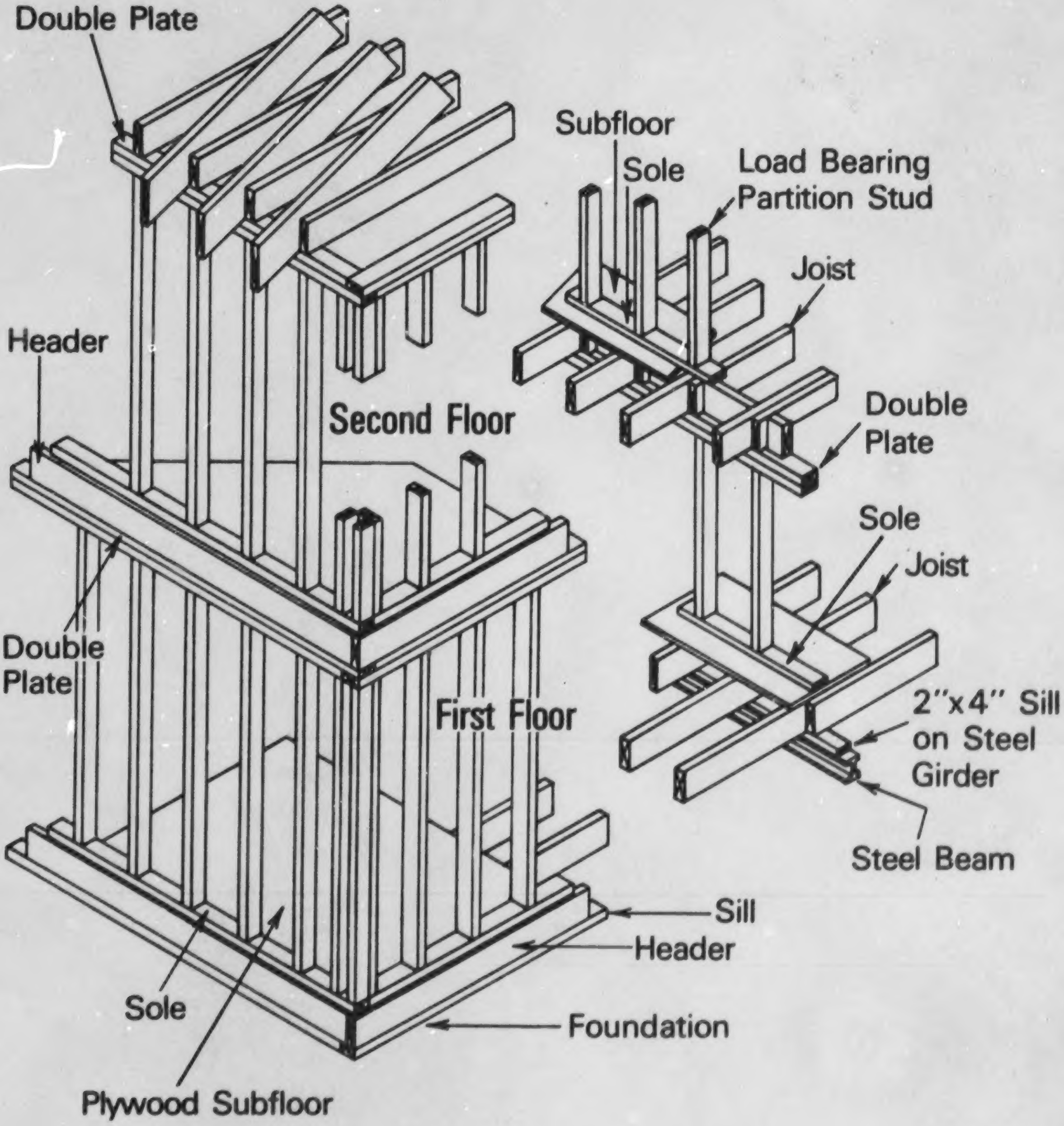
Structural--STR

Thickness--THK

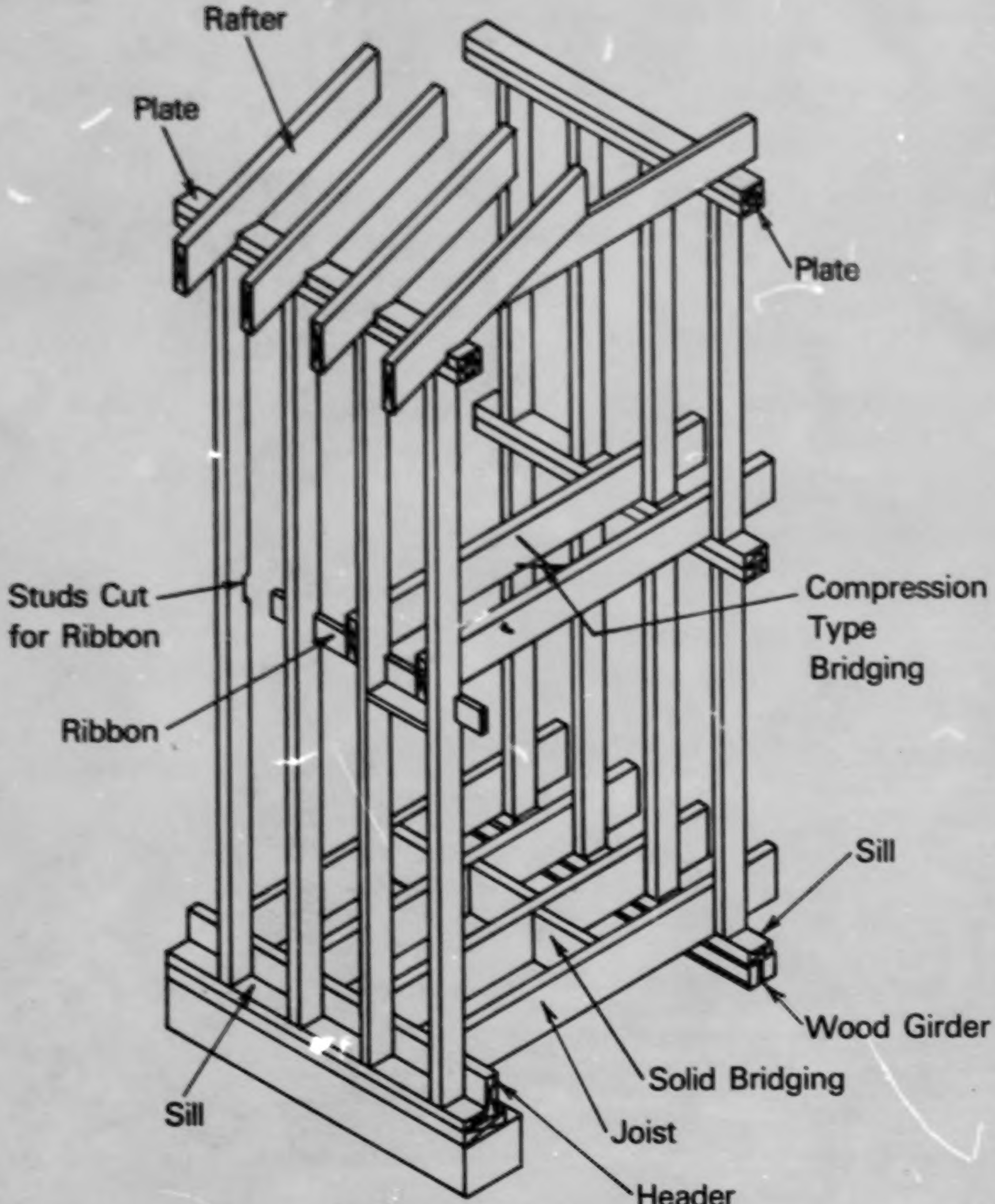
Tongue and groove--T & G

Window--WDW

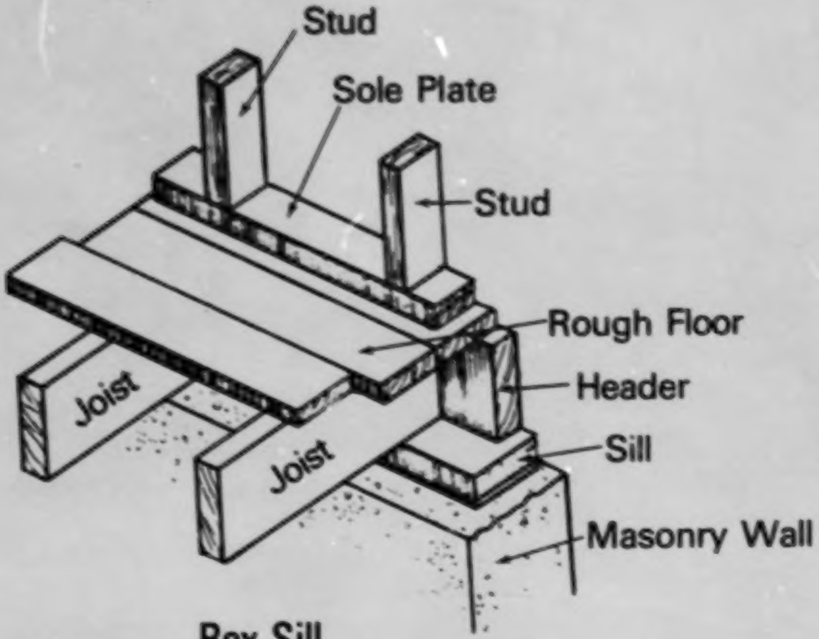
Platform Framing


Double Plate
Header
Second Floor
Double Plate
First Floor
Subfloor
Sole
Load Bearing Partition Stud
Joist
Double Plate
Sole
Joist
2"x4" Sill on Steel Girder
Steel Beam
Sill
Header
Foundation
Sole
Plywood Subfloor

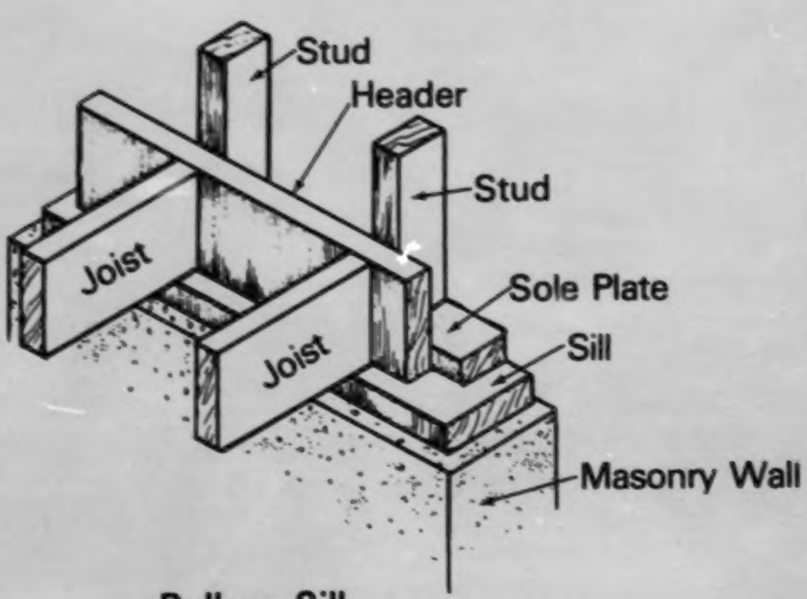
Balloon Framing


Rafter
Plate
Plate
Studs Cut for Ribbon
Ribbon
Compression Type Bridging
Sill
Wood Girder
Solid Bridging
Sill
Joist
Header

Types of Sill Construction

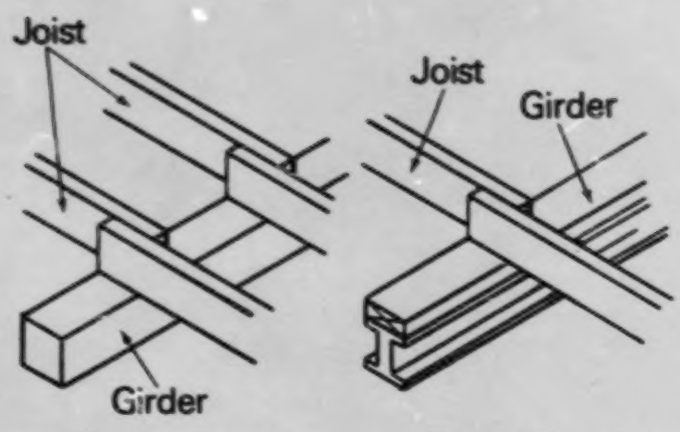

Stud
Sole Plate
Stud
Rough Floor
Header
Sill
Masonry Wall
Joist
Joist

Box Sill


Stud
Header
Stud
Sole Plate
Sill
Masonry Wall
Joist
Joist

Balloon Sill

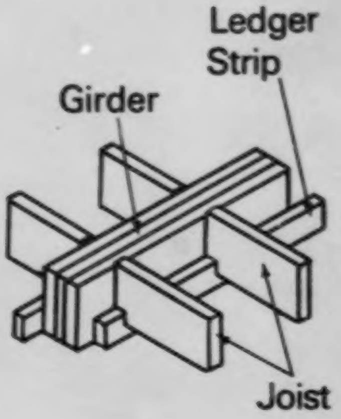
Types of Wood Floor Joist Framings


Joist
Joist
Girder
Girder

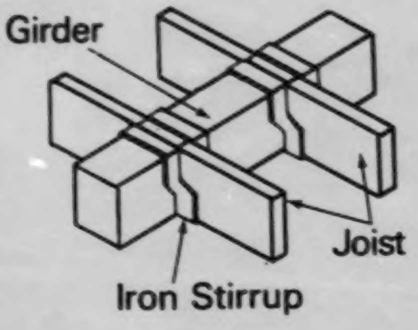
Wood Beam

Steel Beam

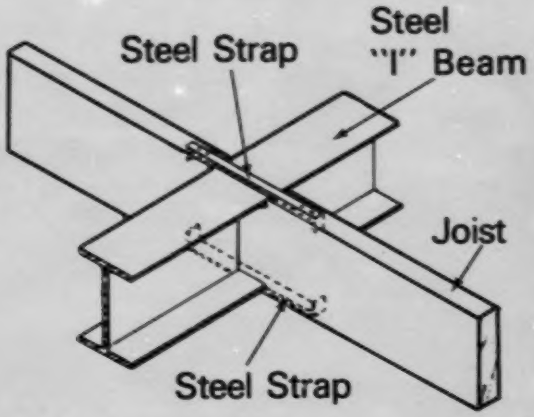
Lapped


Ledger Strip
Girder
Joist

Notched

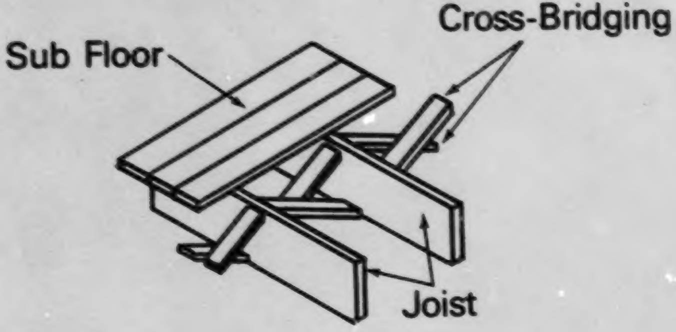

Girder
Joist
Iron Stirrup

Hung with Stirrups

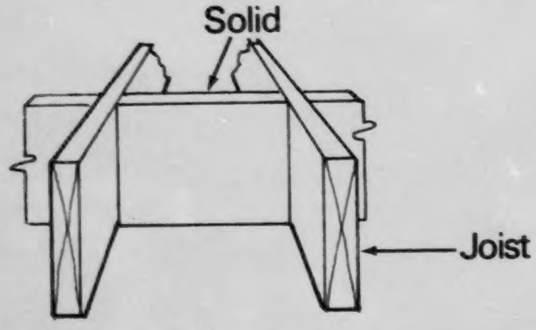

Steel Strap
Steel "I" Beam
Joist
Steel Strap

Framed

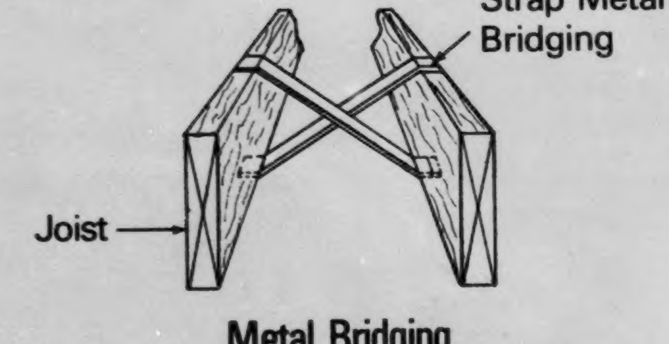
Bridging


Cross-Bridging
Sub Floor
Joist

Wood

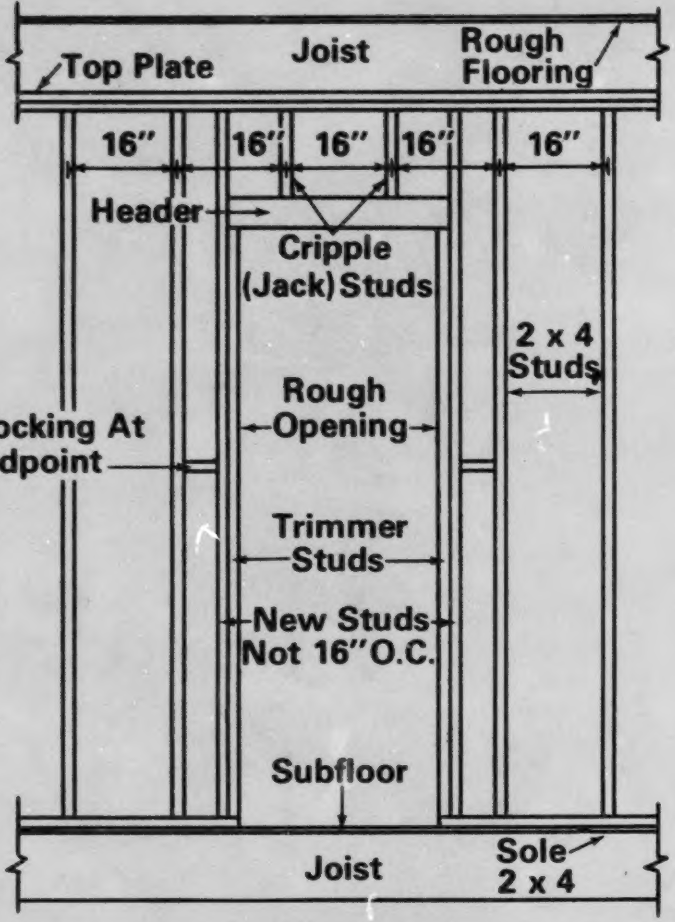

Solid
Joist

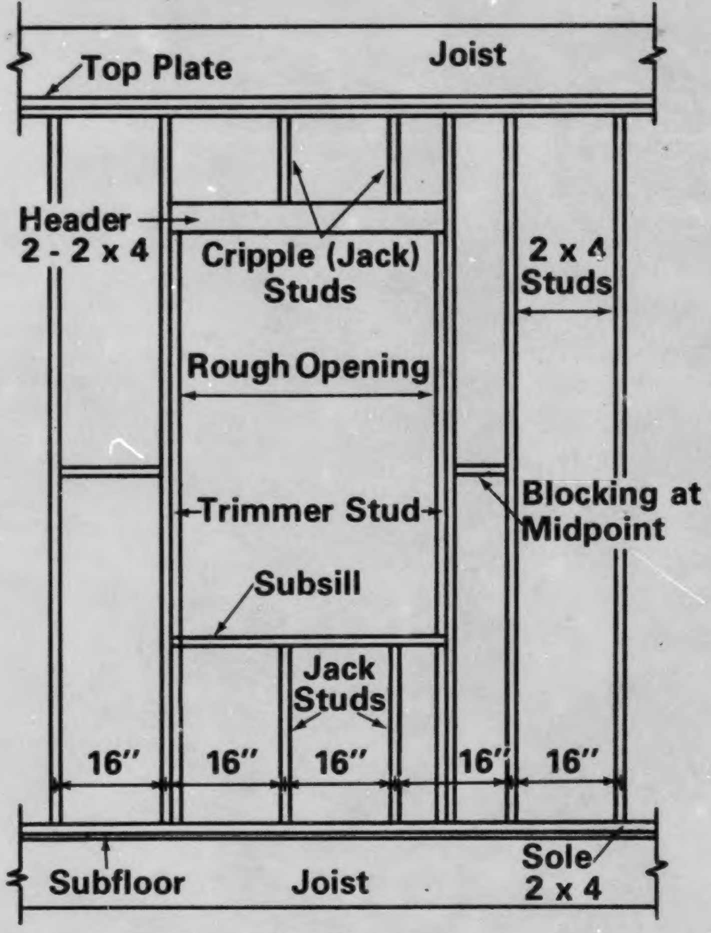
Solid Bridging


Strap Metal
Bridging
Joist

Metal Bridging

Wall Framing Members

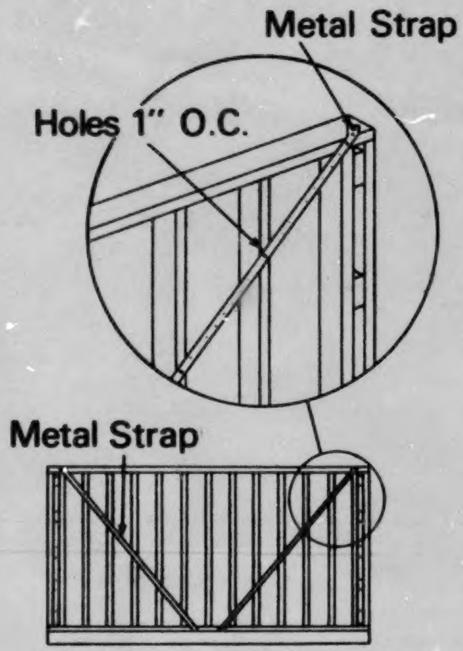

Top Plate
Joist
Rough Flooring
16"
16"
16"
16"
16"
Header
Cripple (Jack) Studs
2 x 4 Studs
Rough Opening
Blocking At Midpoint
Trimmer Studs
New Studs Not 16" O.C.
Subfloor
Sole 2 x 4
Joist


Top Plate
Joist
Header 2 - 2 x 4
Cripple (Jack) Studs
2 x 4 Studs
Rough Opening
Trimmer Stud
Blocking at Midpoint
Subsill
Jack Studs
16"
16"
16"
16"
16"
Subfloor
Joist
Sole 2 x 4

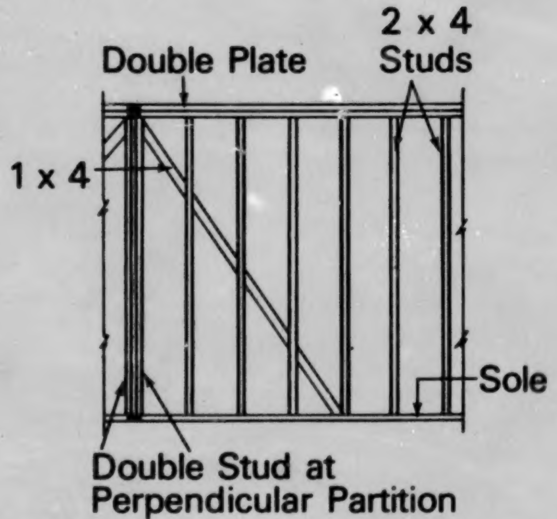
TM 6

AD-259

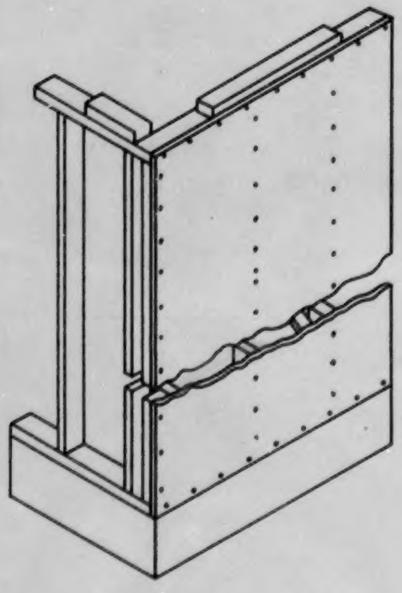
Frame Bracing


Metal Strap
Holes 1" O.C.
Metal Strap

Strap

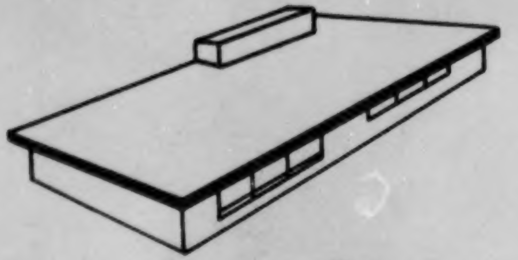

Double Plate
2 x 4
Studs
1 x 4
Sole
Double Stud at
Perpendicular Partition

**1 x 4 Let-in
Wood**

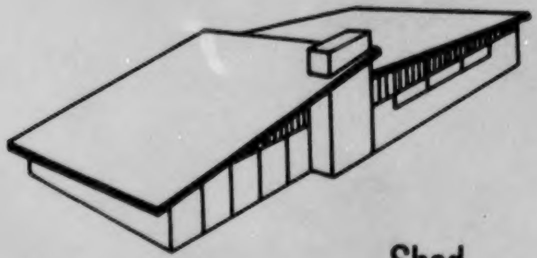


Plywood

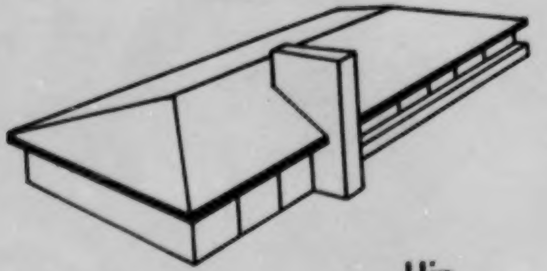
Basic Types of Roofs



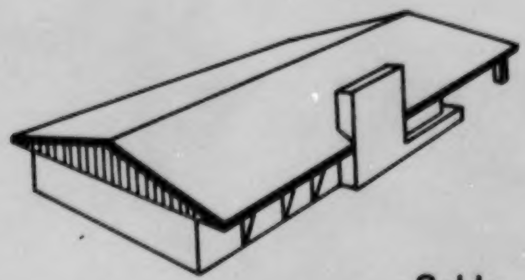
Flat



Shed

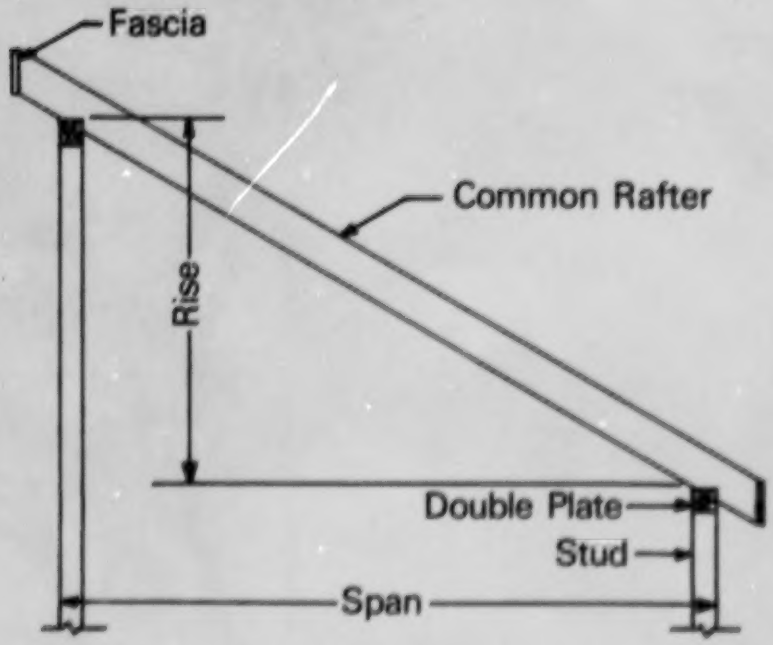


Hip

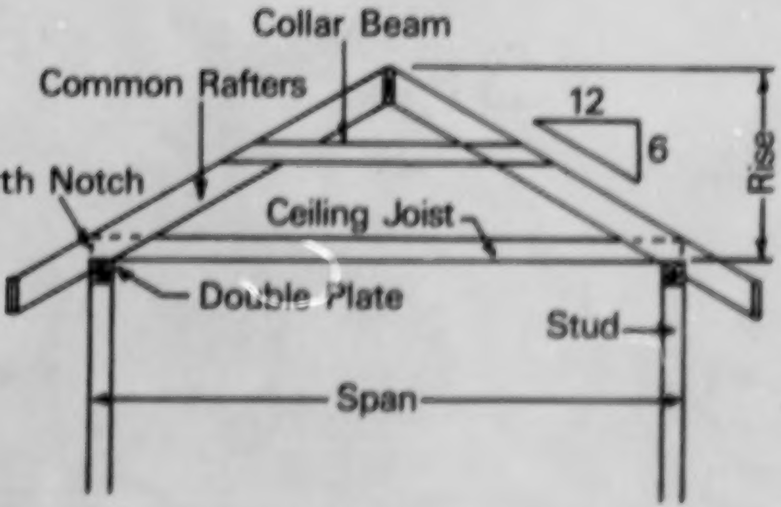


Gable

Roof Framing Members


Fascia
Common Rafter
Rise
Double Plate
Stud
Span

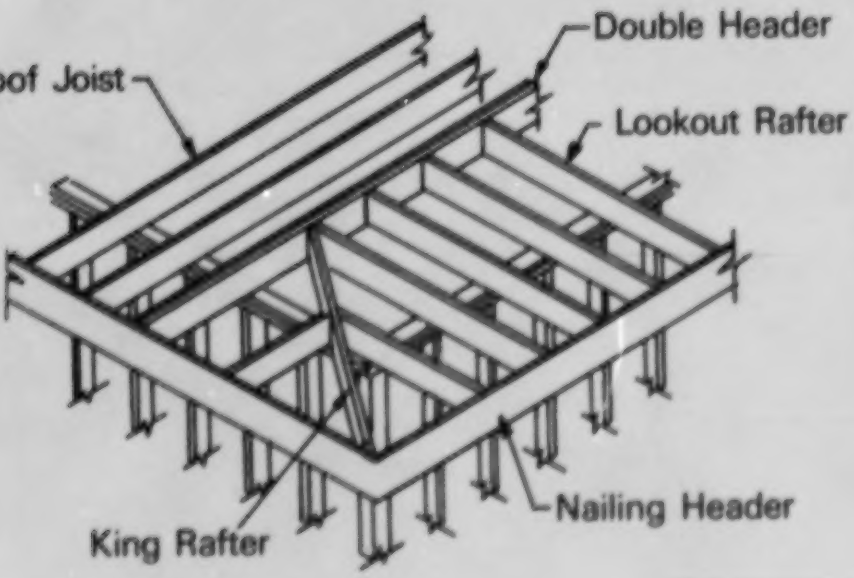
Shed


Collar Beam
Common Rafters
12
6
Rise
Bird's Mouth Notch
Ceiling Joist
Double Plate
Stud
Span

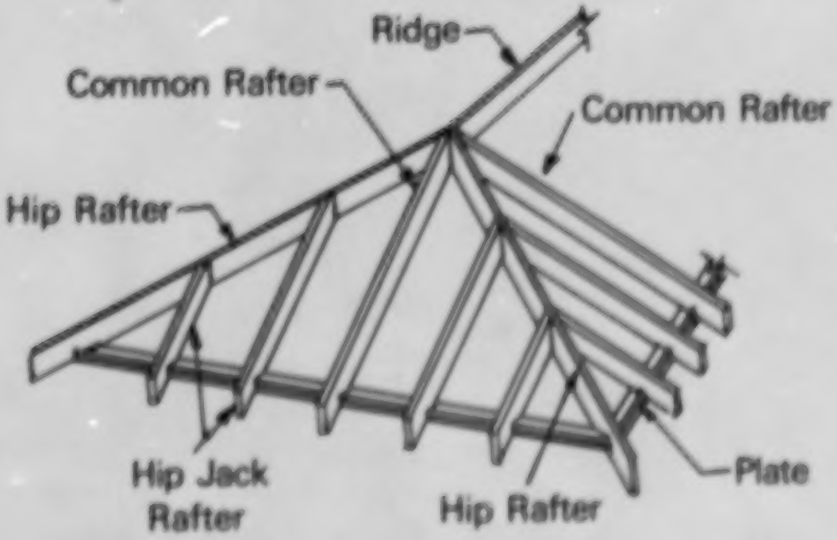
Gable

Roof Framing Members

(Continued)

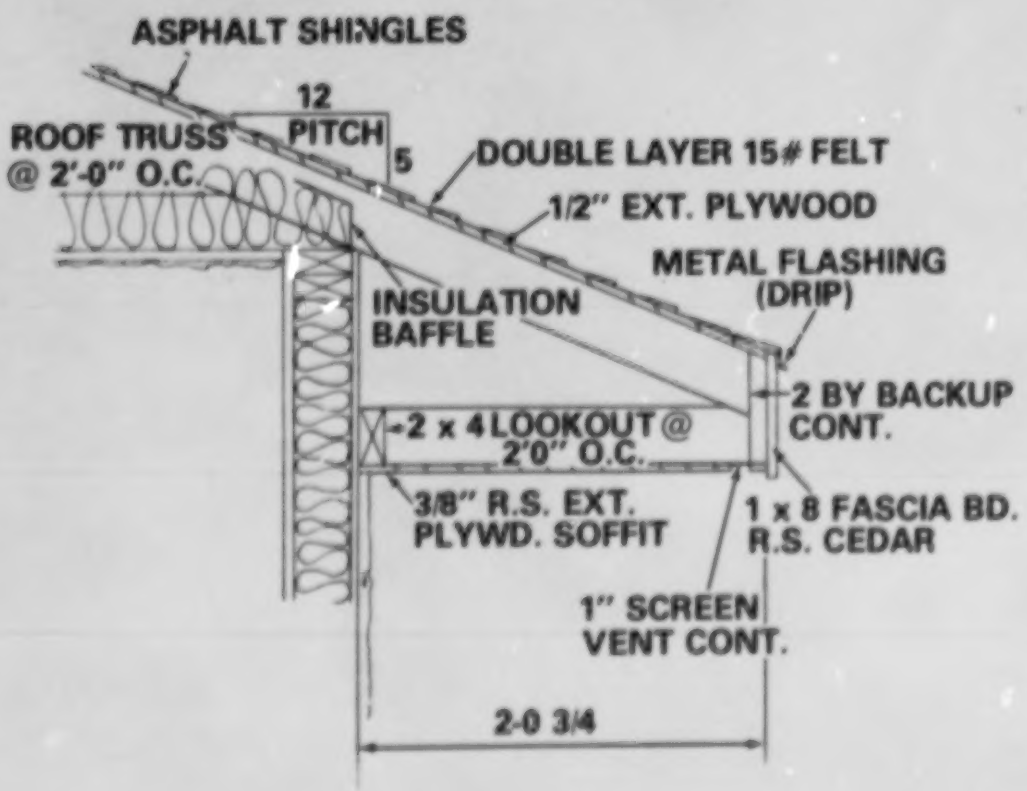

Roof Joist
Double Header
Lookout Rafter
Nailing Header
King Rafter

Flat

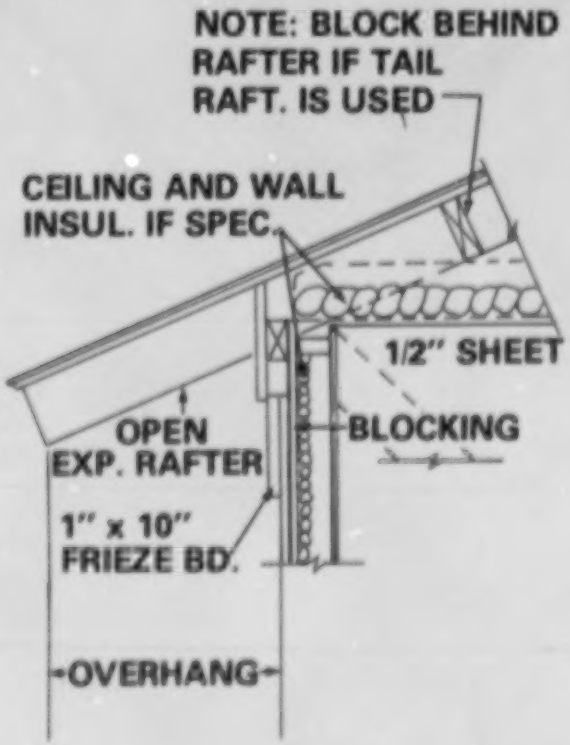

Ridge
Common Rafter
Common Rafter
Hip Rafter
Hip Jack Rafter
Hip Rafter
Plate

Hip

Types of Cornices


ASPHALT SHINGLES
12
PITCH
5
ROOF TRUSS @ 2'-0" O.C.
DOUBLE LAYER 15# FELT
1/2" EXT. PLYWOOD
METAL FLASHING (DRIP)
INSULATION BAFFLE
2 BY BACKUP CONT.
2 x 4 LOOKOUT @ 2'0" O.C.
3/8" R.S. EXT. PLYWD. SOFFIT
1 x 8 FASCIA BD. R.S. CEDAR
1" SCREEN VENT CONT.
2-0 3/4

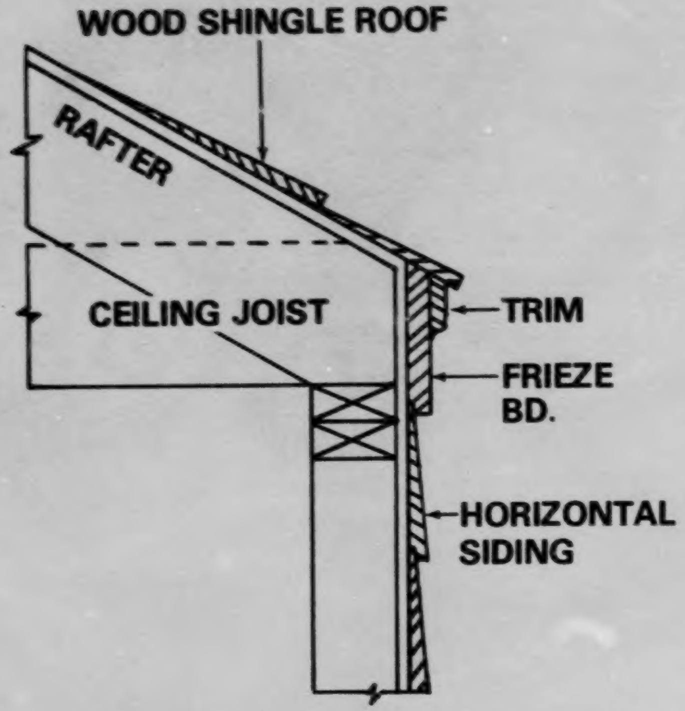
Wide Box (Plumb Cut)


NOTE: BLOCK BEHIND RAFTER IF TAIL RAFT. IS USED
CEILING AND WALL INSUL. IF SPEC.
1/2" SHEET
OPEN EXP. RAFTER
BLOCKING
1" x 10" FRIEZE BD.
OVERHANG

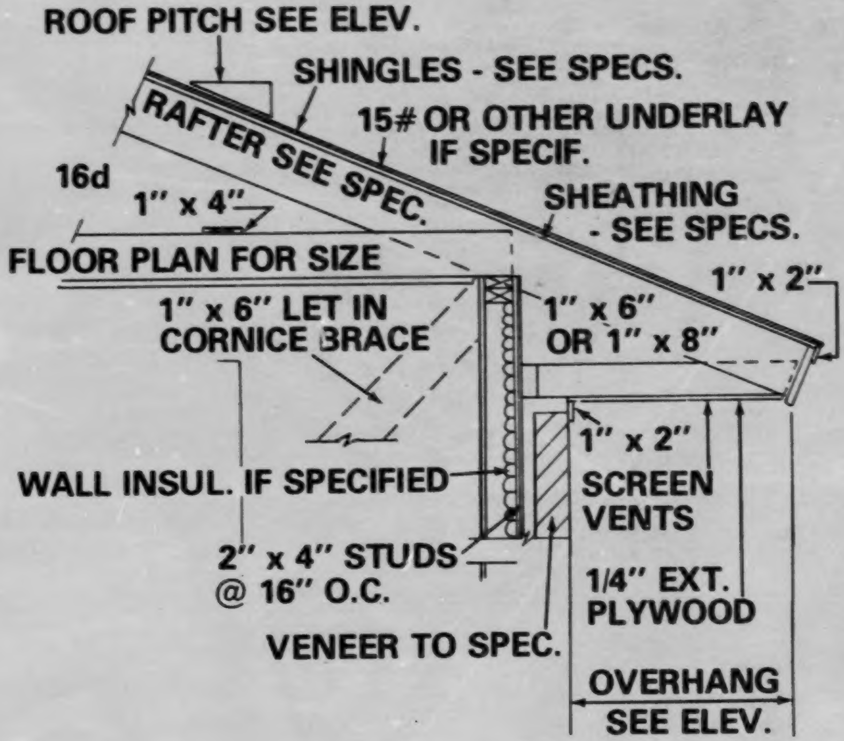
Open

Types of Cornices

(Continued)


WOOD SHINGLE ROOF
RAFTER
CEILING JOIST
TRIM
FRIEZE BD.
HORIZONTAL SIDING

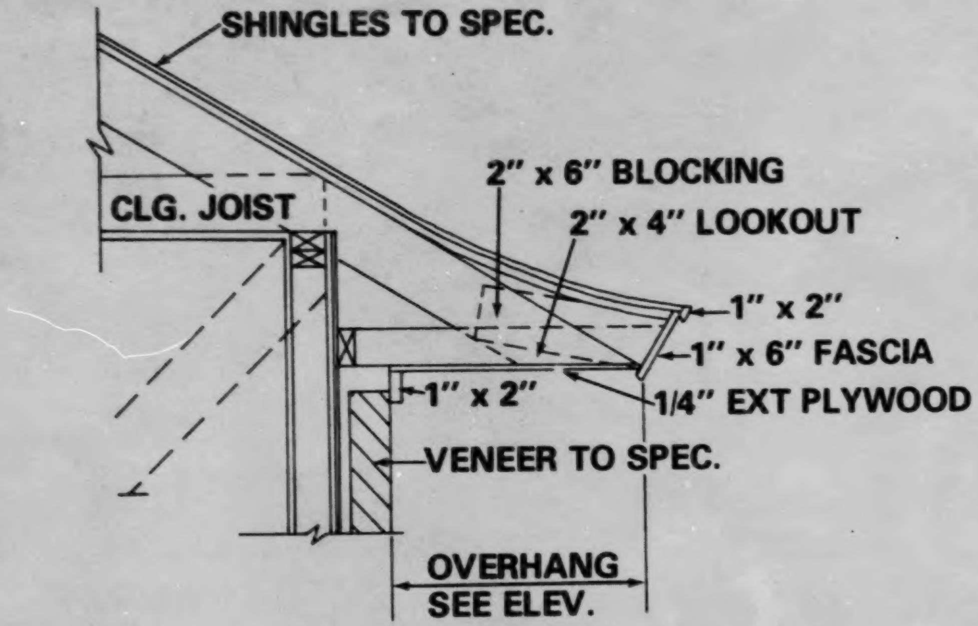
Close Box


ROOF PITCH SEE ELEV.
SHINGLES - SEE SPECS.
15# OR OTHER UNDERLAY IF SPECIF.
RAFTER SEE SPEC.
16d
1" x 4"
SHEATHING - SEE SPECS.
FLOOR PLAN FOR SIZE
1" x 2"
1" x 6" LET IN CORNICE BRACE
1" x 6" OR 1" x 8"
1" x 2"
SCREEN VENTS
WALL INSUL. IF SPECIFIED
2" x 4" STUDS @ 16" O.C.
1/4" EXT. PLYWOOD
VENEER TO SPEC.
OVERHANG SEE ELEV.

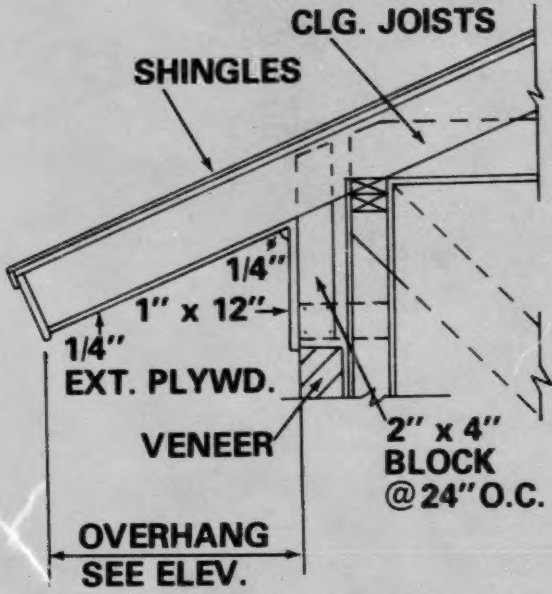
Wide Box with Lookouts
(Square Cut)

Types of Cornices

(Continued)

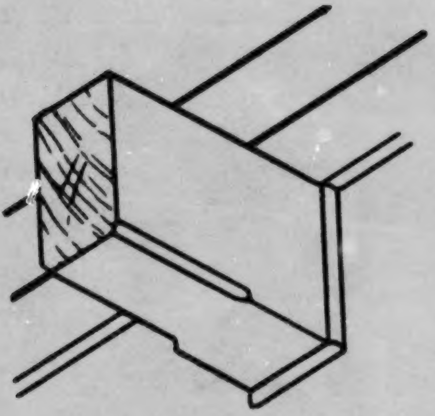

SHINGLES TO SPEC.
CLG. JOIST
2" x 6" BLOCKING
2" x 4" LOOKOUT
1" x 2"
1" x 6" FASCIA
1" x 2"
1/4" EXT PLYWOOD
VENEER TO SPEC.
OVERHANG
SEE ELEV.

Swept Eave

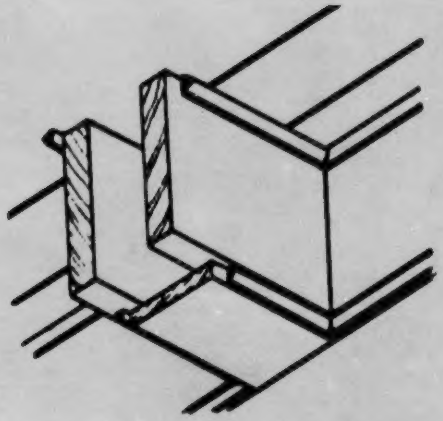

CLG. JOISTS
SHINGLES
1/4"
1" x 12"
1/4"
EXT. PLYWD.
VENEER
2" x 4"
BLOCK
@24" O.C.
OVERHANG
SEE ELEV.

Wide Box without Lookouts

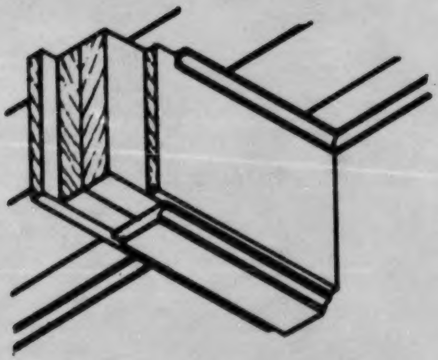
Types of Beams



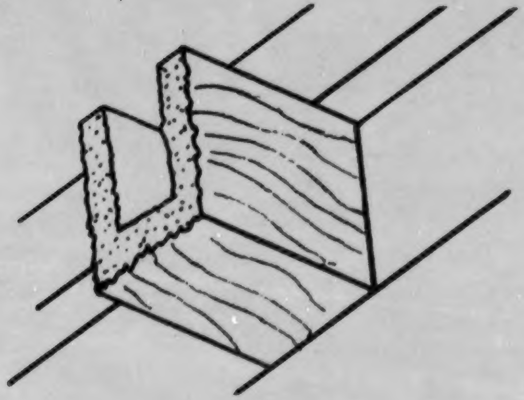
Solid Beam



Spaced Beam

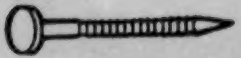


Cased Beam

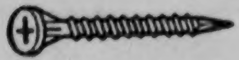


False Beam (Decorative)

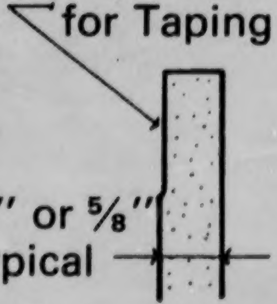
Gypsum Wallboard



Annular Ring Nail



Drywall Screw

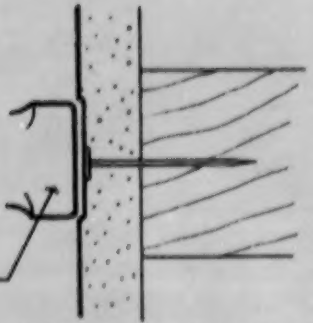


Tapered Edge to Allow for Taping

½″ or ⅝″ Typical

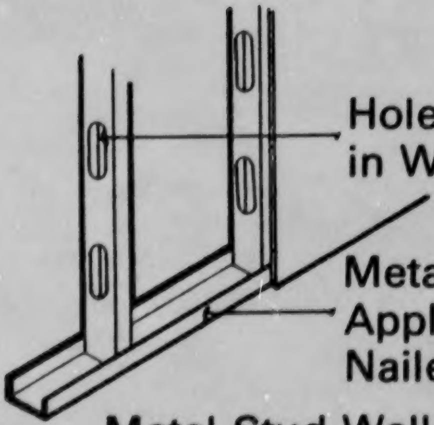
Gypsum Board Section

(Note: This is commonly called drywall.)



Hammer

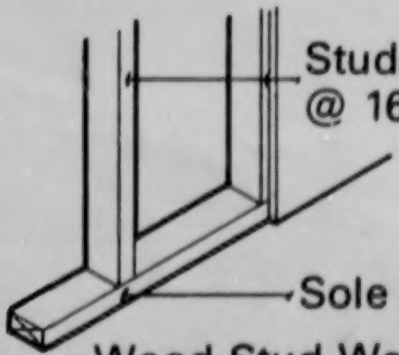
Dimpled Board @ Nail



Holes to Permit Wiring in Wall

Metal Channel Mastic Applied or 'Ram Set' Nailed to Floor

Metal Stud Wall

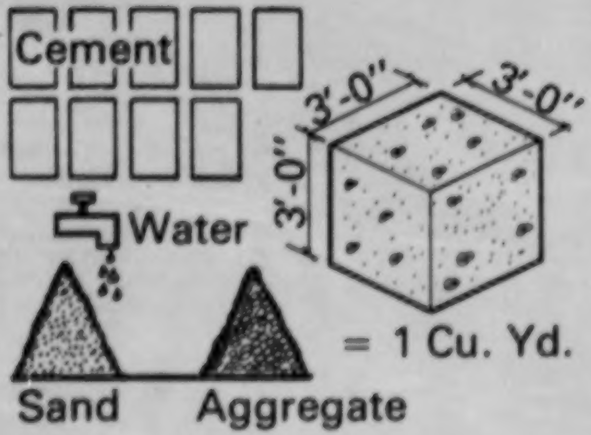


Studs Spaced @ 16″ O.C.

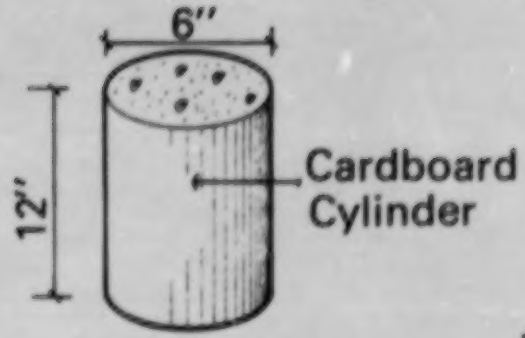
Sole Plate

Wood Stud Wall

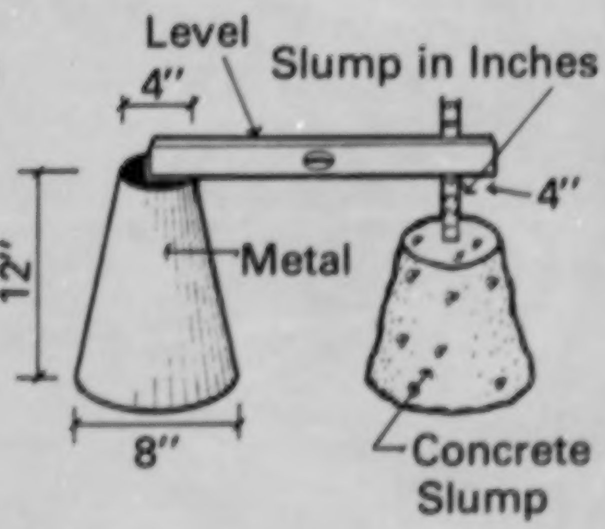
Concrete Materials and Testing


Cement
Water
3'-0"
3'-0"
3'-0"
= 1 Cu. Yd.
Sand
Aggregate

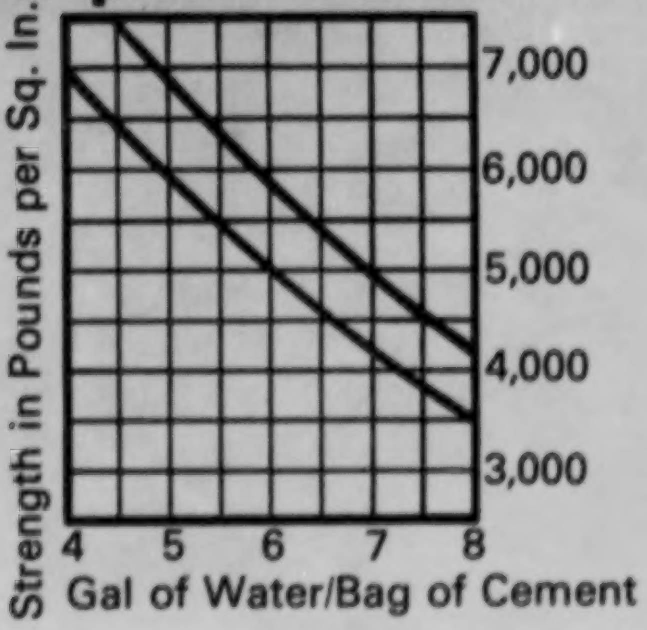
Concrete Materials

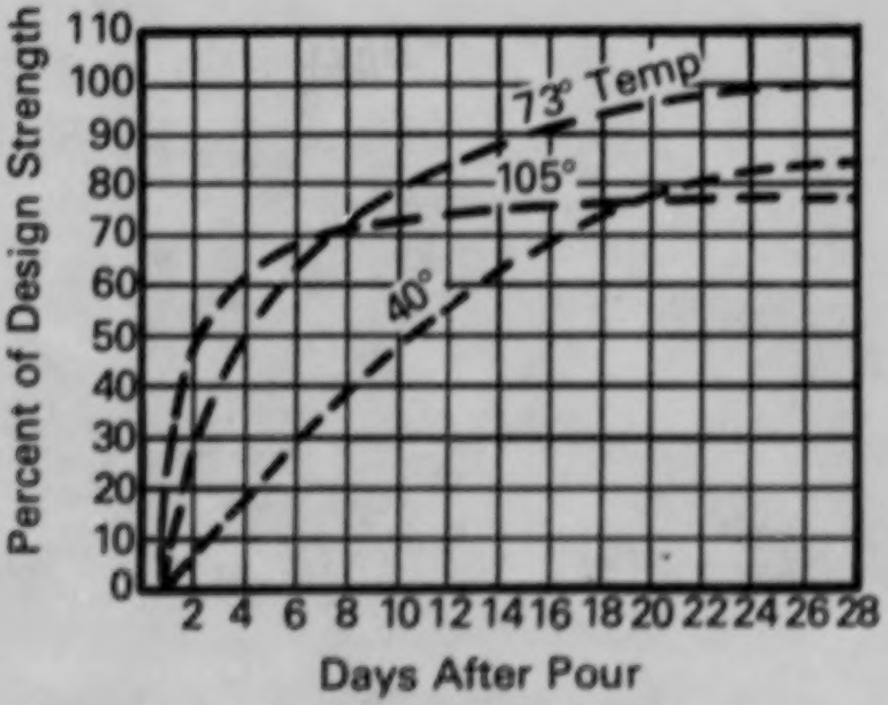

6"
12"
Cardboard Cylinder

Compression
Core Test

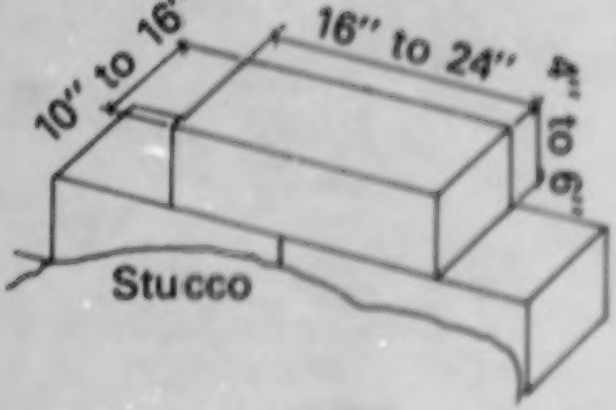

Level
Slump in Inches
4"
4"
12"
Metal
8"
Concrete Slump

Water-Temperature Effect On Concrete

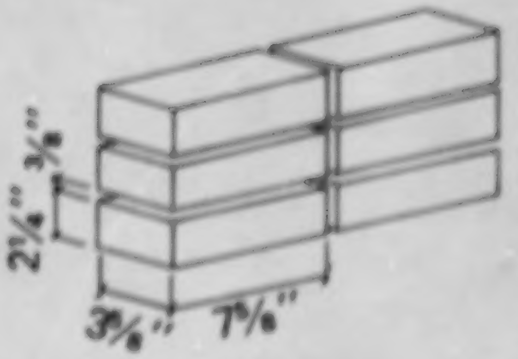




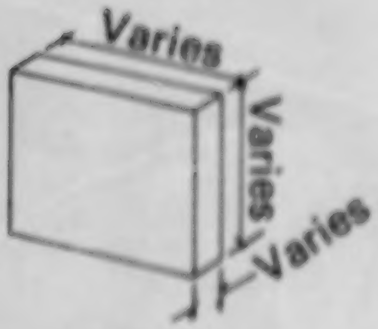
Masonry Products


10" to 16"
16" to 24"
4" to 6"
Stucco

Adobe Brick



Brick


Varies
Varies
Varies

Ceramic, Mosaic, Quarry Tile

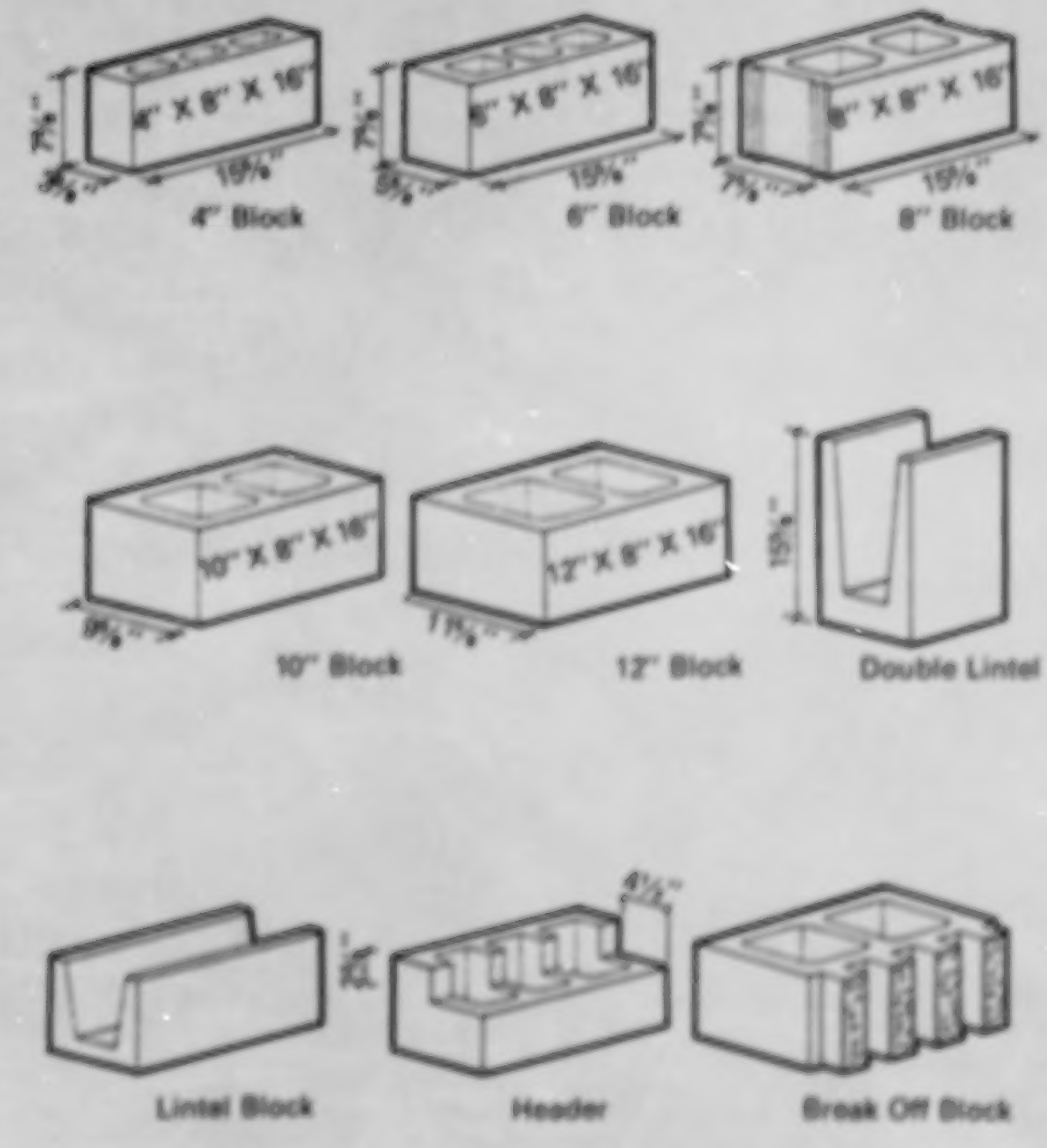
See Manufacturer for Size

Nominal Modular Sizes of Brick

Unit Designation	Dimensions		
	Thickness	Height	Length
Modular	4"	2 2/3"	8"
Economy	4"	4"	8"
Double	4"	5 1/3"	8"
Roman	4"	2"	12"
Norman	4"	2 2/3"	12"
Utility	4"	4"	12"
Triple	4"	5 1/3"	12"
SCR Brick	6"	2 2/3"	12"
6" Jumbo	6"	4"	12"
8" Jumbo	8"	4"	12"

Masonry Products

(Continued)


4" X 8" X 16"
7⅝"
15⅝"
3⅝"
6" X 8" X 16"
7⅝"
15⅝"
5⅝"
8" X 8" X 16"
7⅝"
15⅝"
7⅝"
10" X 8" X 16"
9⅝"
12" X 8" X 16"
11⅝"
15⅝"
4½"
7⅝"

4" Block

6" Block

8" Block

10" Block

12" Block

Double Lintel

Lintel Block

Header

Break Off Block

Standard Concrete Blocks

Insulation R Values

Loose Insulation	R Value
Fiberglass	2.2/in.
Rockwool	2.9/in.
Cellulose	3.75/in.
Polystyrene	5/in.
Urethane Foam	6.2/in.

Batts of Insulation	R Value
6" Fiberglass	19
5-5½" Rockwool	19

R Value -- Resistance to Heat Transfer

Higher R Values Mean Greater Insulating Power.

Structural Steel Shapes

Descriptive Name	Shape	Identifying Symbol	Typical Designation Height Wt/Ft in Lb.	Nominal Size Height Width
Wide Flange Shapes	I	W	W21 X 142	21 X 13
American Standard Beams	I	S	S8 X 23	8 X 4
American Standard Channels	[	C	C6 X 13	6 X 2
Angles—Unequal Legs	L	L	L8 X 6 X ½″	8 X 6

Standard Lumber Sizes

	thickness in.	width in.		thickness in.	width in.
board lumber	1"	2" or more	beam & stringers	5" and thicker	more than 2" greater than thickness
light framing	2" to 4"	2" to 4"	posts & timbers	5" x 5" and larger	not more than 2" greater than thickness
studs	2" to 4"	2" to 4" 10' and shorter	decking	2" to 4"	4" to 12" wide
structural light framing	2" to 4"	2" to 4"	siding	thickness expressed by dimension of butt edge	
structural joists & planks	2" to 4"	6" and wider	mouldings	size at thickest and widest points	
Lengths of lumber generally are 6 feet and longer in multiples of 2'					

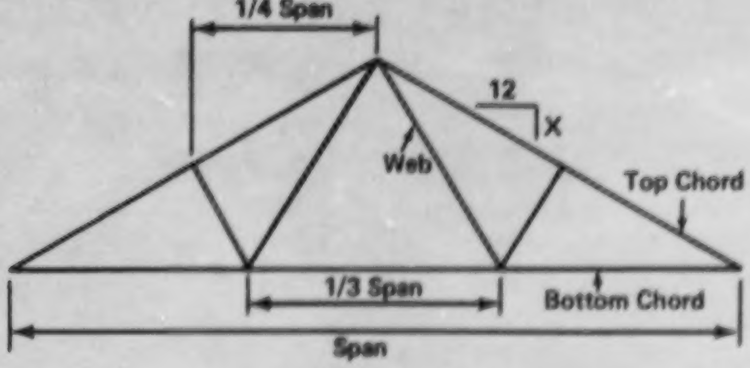
standard lumber sizes/nominal, dressed, based on WWPA rules

Product	Description	Nominal Size		Dressed Dimensions	
				Thicknesses and Widths In.	
		Thickness In.	Width In.	Surfaced Dry	Surfaced Unseasoned
DIMENSION	S4S	2	2	1-1/2	1-9/16
		3	3	2-1/2	2-9/16
	(Surfaced 4 Sides)	4	4	3-1/2	3-9/16
			6	5-1/2	5-5/8
			8	7-1/4	7-1/2
			10	9-1/4	9-1/2
			12	11-1/4	11-1/2
			Over 12	Off 3/4	Off 1/2

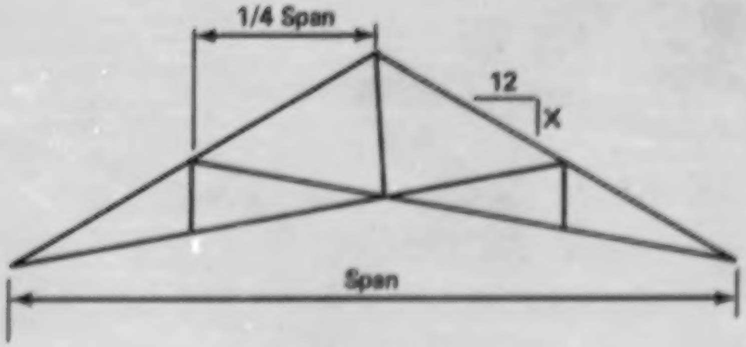
		Nominal Size	Width	
			Overall	Face
SHIPLAP		1 x 6	5 1/2	5 1/8
		1 x 8	7 1/4	6 7/8
		1 x 10	9 1/4	8 7/8
		1 x 12	11 1/4	10 7/8
TONGUE AND GROOVE		1 x 4	3 3/8	3 1/8
		1 x 6	5 3/8	5 1/8
		1 x 8	7 1/8	6 7/8
		1 x 10	9 1/8	8 7/8
		1 x 12	11 1/8	10 7/8
S4S		1 x 4	3 1/2	3 1/2
		1 x 6	5 1/2	5 1/2
		1 x 8	7 1/4	7 1/4
		1 x 10	9 1/4	9 1/4
		1 x 12	11 1/4	11 1/4

		Nominal Size	Width	
			Overall	Face
PANELING PATTERNS		1 x 6	5 7/16	5 1/16
		1 x 8	7 1/8	6 3/4
		1 x 10	9 1/8	8 3/4
		1 x 12	11 1/8	10 3/4
BEVEL SIDING		1 x 4	3 1/2	3 1/2
		1 x 6	5 1/2	5 1/2
		1 x 8	7 1/4	7 1/4
		1 x 10	9 1/4	9 1/4
		1 x 12	11 1/4	11 1/4

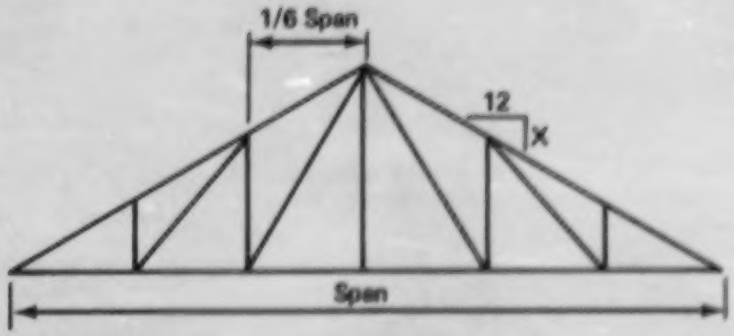
Trusses


1/4 Span
12
X
Web
Top Chord
1/3 Span
Bottom Chord
Span

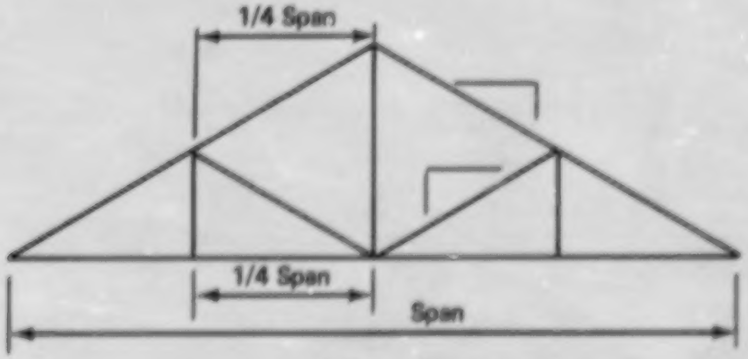
4 Panel


1/4 Span
12
X
Span

4 Panel

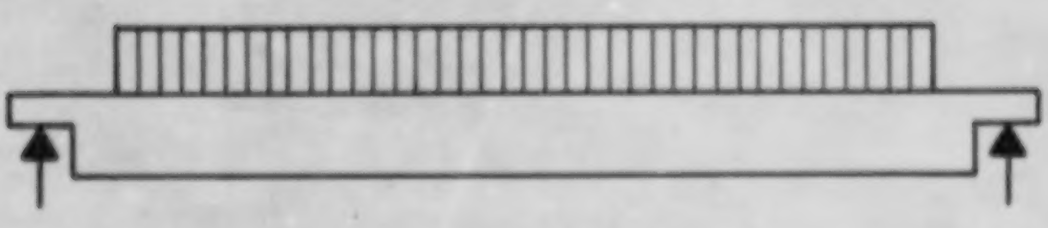

1/6 Span
12
X
Span

6 Panel

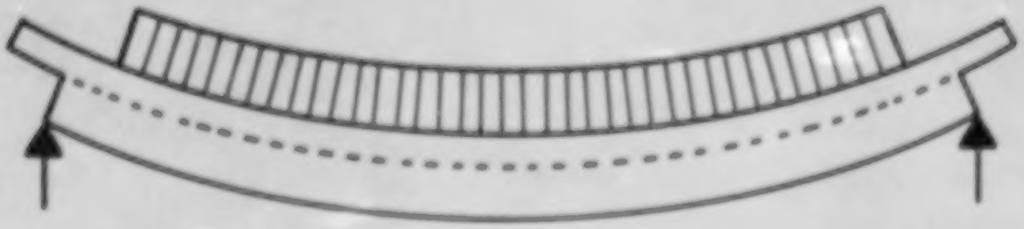

1/4 Span
1/4 Span
Span

4 Panel

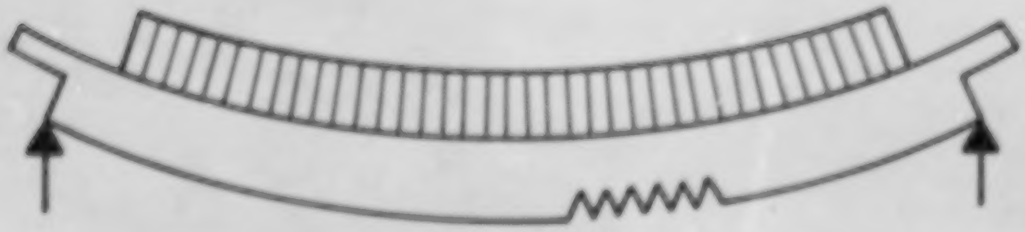
Structural Design Terms



Vertical Shear



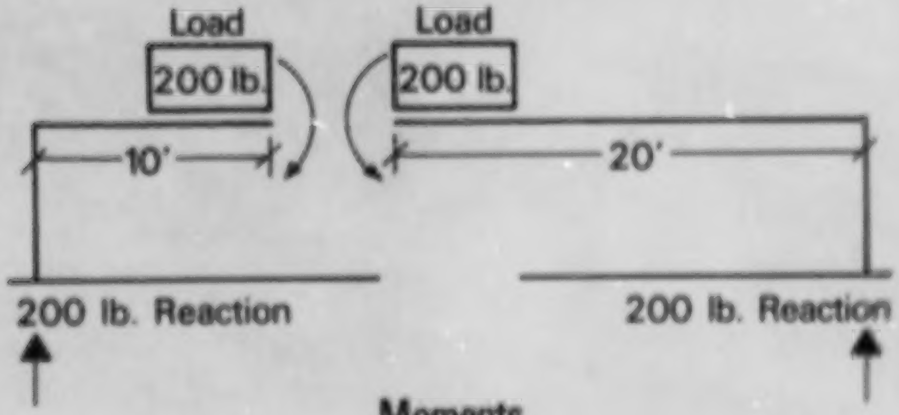
Horizontal Shear



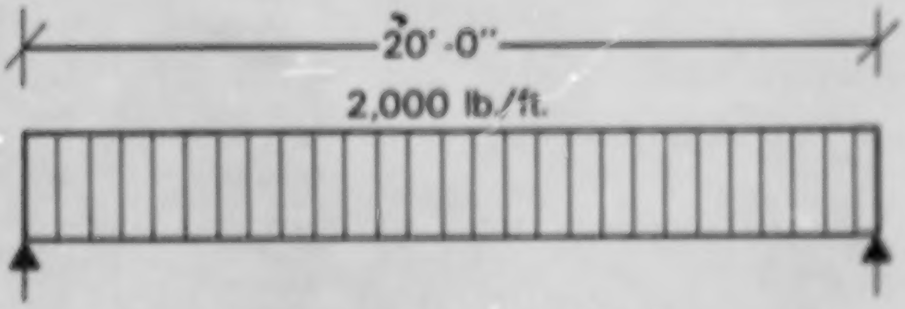
Bending

Structural Design Terms

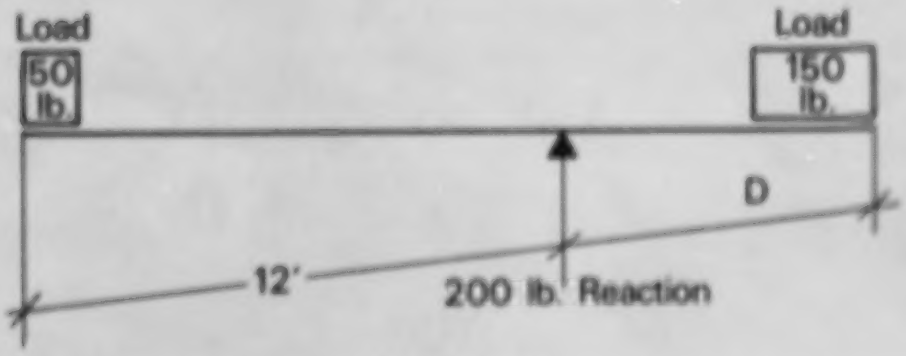
(Continued)


Load
200 lb.
10'
200 lb. Reaction
Load
200 lb.
20'
200 lb. Reaction

Moments


20'-0"
2,000 lb./ft.

Uniformly Distributed Load


Load
50 lb.
Load
150 lb.
D
12'
200 lb. Reaction

Equilibrium

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1–DETERMINE SIZES OF WOOD FLOOR JOISTS AND ROOF RAFTERS

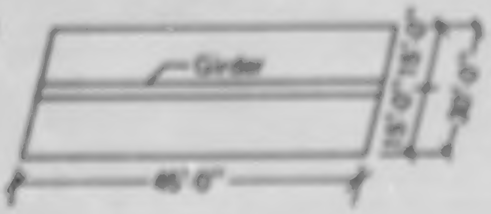
Introduction: Floor joists and roof rafters are simple beams typically placed 12", 16", or 24" on center. Instead of calculating each joist like a beam, a table has been established to determine the maximum span. The rafter and joist tables found in *Architectural Graphic Standards* require only three factors to determine the span–live load, deflection, and bending.

Example A: Wood floor joist sizes

Given: 30' wide x 45' long residence with one girder in floor, (Figure 1) 40 lb. live load, and Southern pine #2 floor joist 16" O.C.

(NOTE: Check live load tables for live load in your area. Allowable unit stress tables for Southern pine #2 show bending (f) = 1200 PSI and maximum deflection (Δ) = 1,760,000 PSI.)

FIGURE 1



1. Select rafters and joists table for 40 lb. live load
2. Find the joist size for 15'-0" span according to bending or deflection
   a. Bending–With maximum bending to 1200 PSI, 2 x 10 joist of 16" O.C. can span 17'-5", exceeding 15'-0"
   b. Deflection–With deflection to 1,600,000 PSI, 2 x 10 joist of 16" O.C. can span 16'-3", exceeding 15'-0"

      (NOTE: Local code may limit deflection values; local code may use bending values.)

Example B: Roof rafter sizes

(NOTE: The tables calculate rafter span in horizontal distance rather than the actual length of roof.)

Given: 30' wide x 45' long residence with 4:12 pitch and wood shingles, Southern pine #2 16" O.C., and 20 lb. live load

(NOTE: See local codes.)

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

1. Select rafters and roof joists table for 20 lb. live load and group 1 roof coverings
2. Find the rafter size for 1/2 span of horizontal distance using Southern pine #2
3. In column 1 = 1200 PSI, a 2 x 8, 16" O.C. rafter will span 18'3" horizontal distance, exceeding 15'-0".

Problems:

Directions: Find the joist sizes as shown in Example A.

A. 32' wide x 40' long residence, 50 lb. live load, Douglas Fir construction grade, and code limits deflection as Δ = 1,600,000 PSI

(NOTE: If joist depth is too much, use more than one girder in floor.)

B. 28' wide x 48' long residence, 60 lb. live load, and Douglas Fir construction grade

C. As assigned by instructor

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

Directions: Find the rafter sizes as shown in Example B.

D. 32' wide x 40' long residence with 4:12 pitch and asphalt shingles roof, 30 lb. live load, and Douglas Fir construction grade with rafters 16" O.C.

E. 28' wide x 48' long residence with 4:12 pitch and tile roof, 30 lb. live load, and Douglas Fir construction grade with rafters 16" O.C.

F. As assigned by instructor

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

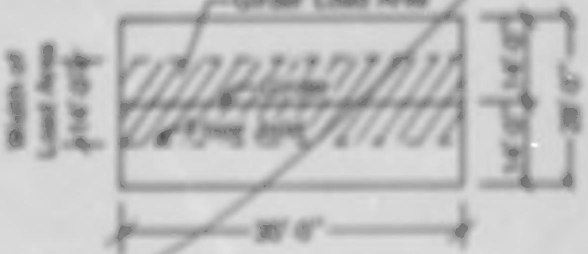
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2-DETERMINE SIZES OF WOOD GIRDERS

Introduction: All weight of the floor system, including the live and dead loads, are transmitted either to the foundation wall or to horizontal supports known as girders or beams. The steps commonly used to design wood girders are to determine maximum shear and moment on beam, choose species of lumber, calculate minimum allowable section modulus, and beam deflection. A beam with light load and long span should be checked for deflection. A beam with short span or a large load located near the supports should be checked for horizontal shear. It is a common practice to design a beam or girder with depth the same as the floor joist depth. This may require shorter spans and several piers. Refer to Objective 27 in the information sheet for formulas and *Architectural Graphic Standards* for tables for the following example and problems.

Example:

Given: 28' x 30' residence, Douglas Fir select structural lumber for floor joist and girder, and 60 PSF live and dead load (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



1. Determine maximum moment

   a. $M = \frac{wl^2}{8}$

      1) l = 30' length of girder for calculation

      2) w = 14'0 x 60 PSF = 840 PSF load on 1 linear foot of girder

   b. $M = \frac{840 \text{ PSF } (30)^2}{8} = 94{,}500$ ft. lb., or 1,134,000 in. lb.

2. Determine maximum vertical shear

   a. $V = \frac{wl}{2}$

   b. $V = \frac{840 \text{ PSF } (30)^2}{2} = 378{,}000$ lb.

3. Fiber stress for Douglas Fir select structural is 1,900 PSI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

4. Determine the minimum allowable section modulus

   a. $S = \frac{M}{f}$

   b. $S = \frac{1{,}134{,}000 \text{ in.-lb.}}{1{,}900 \text{ PSI}} = 596.842 \text{ in}^3$

   c. Checking this figure against several beams, the beam would be greater than a 6 x 12 (Table 1).

   d. Therefore, by shortening the span and adding piers, the correct girder can be selected.

TABLE 1 SECTION MODULUS OF BEAMS

2 x 6	$S = 8.57 \text{ in}^3$
2 x 8	$S = 15.23 \text{ in}^3$
2 x 10	$S = 24.44 \text{ in}^3$
2 x 12	$S = 35.82 \text{ in}^3$
3 x 8	$S = 24.6 \text{ in}^3$
3 x 10	$S = 39.48 \text{ in}^3$
3 x 12	$S = 57.86 \text{ in}^3$
3 x 14	$S = 79.73 \text{ in}^3$
4 x 12	$S = 79.90 \text{ in}^3$
6 x 12	$S = 121.23 \text{ in}^3$

5. Place 3 pier supports and shorten the span for girder to 4 equal 7' 6" spans.

6. Determine the minimum allowable section modulus

   a. $M = \frac{840 \text{ PLF } (7.5)^2}{8} = 5906.25 \text{ ft.-lb. or } 70875.0 \text{ in.-lb.}$

   b. $S = \frac{M}{f}$

   c. $S = \frac{70875}{1900} = 37.30 \text{ in}^3$

   d. Checking section modulus of beams, a 3 x 10 is closest to the one-third or one-half ratio of b to d.

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

7. Check for horizontal shear

   a. $H = \frac{3V}{2bd}$

   b. $V = \frac{840\ PSF\ (7.5')^2}{2} = 236.25$

   c. 3 x 10 = 2 1/2 x 9 1/2 actual size

   d. $H = \frac{(3)\ (236.25)}{(2)\ (2.5 \times 9.5)} = 14.92$ PSI

   e. Douglas Fir select structural has an allowable horizontal shear of 135 PSI, and so the girder will work

8. Check for deflection

   a. $\Delta = \frac{5wl^3}{384EI}$

   b. w = 840 PSF

   c. l = 7.5' or 90"

   d. E = 1,760,000 PSI, Douglas Fir

   e. I = 178.62 in.^{4}

   f. $\Delta = \frac{(5)\ (840)\ (7.5)^3}{(384)\ (1,760,000 \times 178.62)} = 0.10$ in.

   g. Checking code, maximum = l/360

      $\frac{7.5' \times 12"}{360} = 0.25$ in.

   h. Therefore, deflection is less than code, so the girder will work

Directions: Determine the size of a wood girder for the following problems.

Problems:

A. 28' wide x 50' long one-story residence with live and dead load total of 50 PSF, and Southern Pine No. 1 dense lumber

B. Determine the wood girder size of a building project assigned by instructor

   (NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

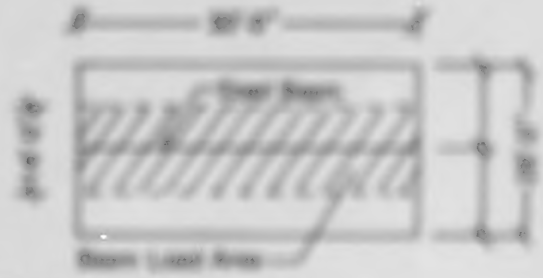
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3–DETERMINE SIZES OF STEEL BEAMS

Introduction: Steel is rolled into many shapes and is available in a variety of strengths to meet the requirements of frame construction. The principal shapes rolled for structural beams are wide flange (W), American standard (S), and miscellaneous shapes (M). References to properties of steel and tables will be found in the *Manual of Steel Construction*. Steel beams are given a three numeral designation to indicate their shape, height in inches, and weight in pounds per foot. The procedure used in steel design is similar to wood beam design. The beam design is for a uniformly loaded beam.

Example

Given: 28' wide 30' long residence, 60 PSF live and dead load, and A36 steel (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



1. Determine the maximum moment
   a. $M = \frac{wl^2}{8}$
   b. $l = 30'$
   c. $w = 14' 0 \times 60 = 840$ PSF
   d. $M = \frac{840 (30)^2}{8} = 94500$ PSF or 1,134,000 PSI
2. Determine maximum vertical shear
   a. $V = \frac{wl}{2}$
   b. $V = \frac{840 (30)}{2} = 12600$ lb.
3. Strength of steel was given as A36

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

4. Determine the section modulus
   a. $S = \frac{M}{f}$
   b. f = 24,000 PSI constant for steel
   c. $S = \frac{1134000}{24000} = 47.25 \text{ in.}^3$
   d. Checking this figure against the section modulus in the AISC Manual, the following beams will work (Table 1)

TABLE 1

W 10 x 45	$S = 49.1 \text{ in.}^3$
W 16 x 31	$S = 47.2 \text{ in.}^3$

5. Check the beam choice for horizontal shear
   a. $f_v = \frac{V}{dt}$
   b. d = 16 in.
   c. t = thickness of web = .275
   d. $f_v = \frac{12600}{(16)(.275)} = 2863.6$ PSI less than 14,500 PSI AISC steel

   (NOTE: W10 x 45 was not used because of exceeding deflection of 30' span as shown in tables.)

6. Check the beam for deflection
   a. $\Delta = \frac{5Wl^3}{384EI}$
   b. E = 29,000,000 PSI steel
   c. $I = 375.3 \text{ in.}^4$ taken through x axis in AISC table for W 16 x 31 beam
   d. $\Delta = \frac{[illegible]}{384 \times 29,000,000 \times [illegible]} = [illegible] \text{ in.}$
   e. Allowable deflection is $\frac{l}{360} = \frac{360}{360} = 1.0$

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

Directions: Determine the size of a steel beam for the following problems.

Problems:

A. 24' wide 32' long one-story residence with live and dead load total of 50 PSF, and A36 steel beam

B. As assigned by instructor

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--DETERMINE SIZES OF EXTERIOR OR INTERIOR WALL HEADERS

Introduction: Header sizes can be determined by using the wood beam design procedure or by refering to a header table. Most header tables have been prepared from a wood beam design procedure.

Example: Determine header size for a window opening of 6'-0" for a 26'-0" wide residence. Live and dead loads on roof are 45 PSF. Southern Pine No. 1 dense lumber is used.

1. Determine maximum moment
   a. $M = \frac{wl^2}{8}$
   b. w = (13'-0") [1/2 span] x 45 PSF = 585 PSF
   c. l = 6'-0"
   d. $M = \frac{(585)(6)^2}{8} = 2632.5$ PSF or 31590.0 PSI
2. Determine minimum allowable section modulus
   a. $S = \frac{M}{f}$
   b. f = 1750 PSI for Douglas Fir #1 dense
   c. $S = \frac{31590}{1750} = 18.05 \text{ in.}^2$
   d. Checking the section modulus chart (Table 1) 2 - 2 x 8 will be needed for header above 6'-0" window opening

TABLE 1

Nominal Size	Section Modulus
2 - 2 x 4	6.13 in.^{3}
2 - 2 x 6	15.13 in.^{3}
2 - 2 x 8	28.13 in.^{3}
2 - 2 x 10	45.13 in.^{3}
2 - 2 x 12	66.13 in.^{3}

(NOTE: Actual size dimensions were used to calculate section modulus.)

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

Directions: Determine the size of headers of given openings.

Problems:

A. 20' wide x 30' long residence, Douglas Fir select structural, garage door opening = 14'-0", and 40 PSF live and dead load

B. 24' wide x 32' long residence, Southern Pine No. 1 KD, exterior wall window opening = 6'-6", and 40 PSF live and dead load

C. As assigned by instructor

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #1

A. 2 x 12 joist will span 18'-5" with one girder in middle or 2 girders with 2 x 8 joists

B. 2 x 10 joist will span 15'-4" with one girder in middle

C. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

D. 2 x 8 will span 17'-5"

E. 2 x 8 will span 16'-3"

F. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

Assignment Sheet #2

A. Section modulus = 32.91 in.^{3} for 8'-0" span; use 3 x 10 girder

B. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

Assignment Sheet #3

A. Section modulus = 38.4 for 16'-0" span; use W 10 x 45 or M 16 x 26

B. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

Assignment Sheet #4

A. Section modulus = 61.88 in.^{3}; use 2 - 2 x 12 headers

B. Section modulus = 17.38 in.^{3}; use 2 - 2 x 8 headers

C. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. System used in a two-story house where the second story framing is the same as first story

_____b. System which uses a continuous stud for the full two stories with exterior and interior supporting walls resting on the sill

_____c. Any part of a building unit

_____d. The lowest member of the frame of a structure, resting on the foundation and supporting the floor joists or the interior walls

_____e. A horizontal member placed perpendicular to floor or ceiling joists and to which joists are nailed in framing floors, a chimney, a stairway, or other opening

_____f. Composed of an insulation material which is placed between sill and foundation

_____g. A horizontal structural member which supports the floor or ceiling system

_____h. The bottom horizontal member of a frame wall

_____i. The top horizontal member of a frame wall

_____j. A wall that subdivides spaces within any story of a building

_____k. The measurement of spacing for studs, rafters, joists, and other framing members from the center of one member to the center of the next

_____l. Small wood or metal members that are inserted in a diagonal position between the floor joists at midspan

_____m. Solid wood blocking used between floor joists to keep joists vertical and in alignment

1. Rafter
2. Header
3. Pitch
4. Trimmer
5. Sole plate
6. Lookout
7. Member
8. Ridge
9. Balloon framing system
10. Valley rafter
11. Bridging
12. Sill plate
13. Ledger

_____n. A wood strip let into the studding to provide a bearing surface for joists

_____o. A wood strip nailed to the lower side of a girder to provide a bearing surface for joists

_____p. A large horizontal structural member used to support the ends of joists and beams or to carry walls over openings

_____q. A metal U-shaped strap used to support framing members

_____r. The longest framing member around a rectangular opening into which a header is joined

_____s. A structural member that is cut less than full length

_____t. That portion of a roof that projects out from the wall

_____u. A horizontal board nailed onto the ends of the rafters

_____v. The underside of an overhanging cornice

_____w. A short wooden framing member used to support an overhang portion of the roof

_____x. A horizontal member connecting the top of the siding with the soffit of the cornice

_____y. A structural member in a roof framework running from the eave to the ridge

_____z. The lower portion of a roof which extends beyond the wall

____aa. The top edge of the roof where two slopes meet

____bb. A low wall or railing around the edge of a roof

____cc. The diagonal rafter that extends from the plate to the ridge to form the hip

____dd. The diagonal rafter at the intersection of two intersecting sloping roofs

____ee. A rafter that spans the distance from the wall plate to a hip, or from a valley to a ridge

14. Fascia
15. Joist
16. Span
17. On center
18. Hip rafter
19. Top plate
20. Purlin
21. Cornice
22. Ribbon
23. Trusses
24. Soffit
25. Platform framing system
26. Jack rafter
27. Stirrup
28. Frieze
29. Partition
30. Sill sealer
31. Cripple

_____ff. The measured vertical distance from the top of the wall plate to the intersection of the center line of the rafters

_____gg. One-half the span given as 12 units

_____hh. Ratio between the rise and run of a roof

_____ii. The angle of the roof from the ridge to the plate

_____jj. The horizontal distance from the outside of one stud wall to the outside of the opposite stud wall

_____kk. Structural members arranged and fastened in triangular units to form a framework for support of loads over a long span

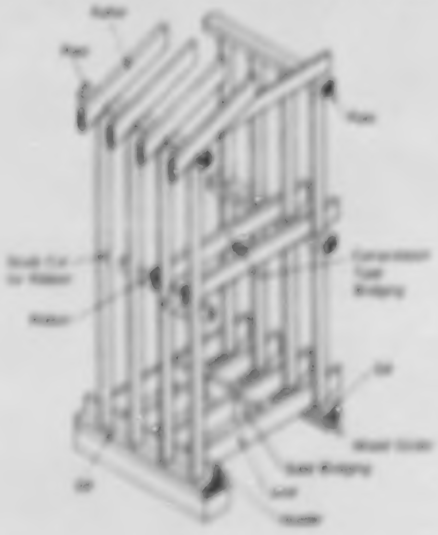
_____ll. Wall construction consisting of posts rather than studs

_____mm. Horizontal roof framing member laid perpendicular to rafters over trusses for bracing the roof

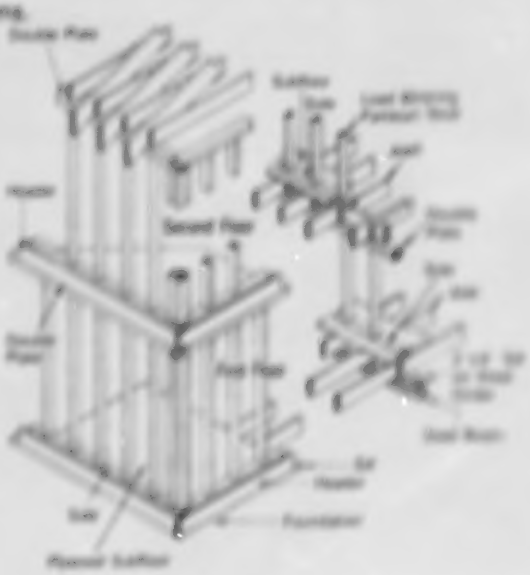
_____nn. A beam made of superimposed layers of similar materials uniting them with glue and pressure

32. Eave
33. Laminated beam
34. Girder
35. Parapet wall
36. Post and beam construction
37. Rise
38. Slope
39. Run
40. Solid bridging

2. Identify types of two-story framing systems.


Rafter
Plate
Plate
Ribbon
Sill
Solid Bridging
Joist
Header
Sill

a. ______________________


Double Plate
Subfloor
Studs
Joist
Header
Second Floor
Double Plate
First Floor
Sill
Header
Foundation
Sole
Plywood Subfloor
Steel Beam

b. ______________________

3. Select types of wood floor sill constructions by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Square

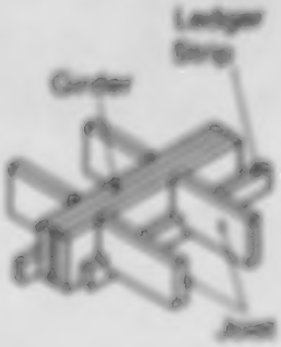
_____b. Balloon

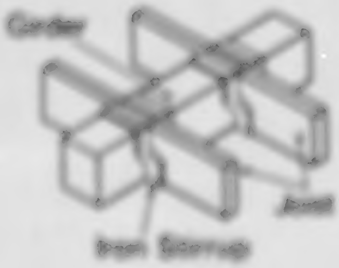
_____c. Platform

_____d. Box

_____e. Stirrup

4. Identify types of wood floor joist framings.


Ledger Strip
Girder
Joist

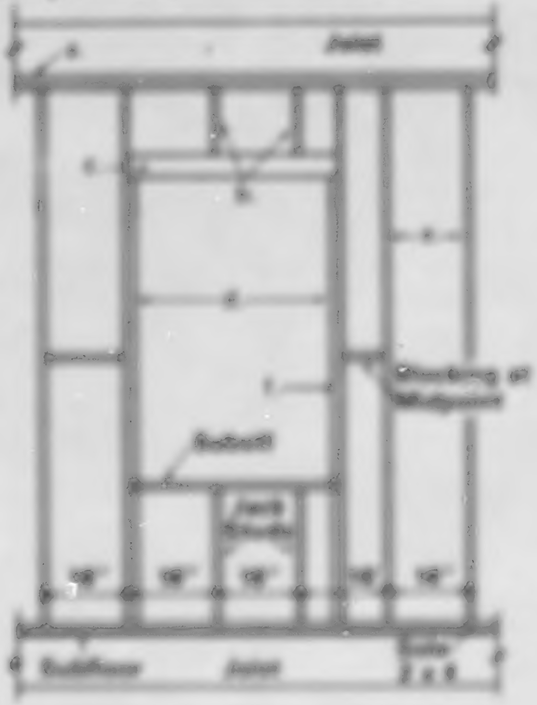

Girder
Joist
Iron Stirrup

a. ______________________ b. ______________________

5. State the purpose of bridging.

____

6. Identify wall framing members.


Joist
a
b
c
d
e
f
Sheathing or Wallboard
Subsill
Jack Studs
16"
16"
16"
16"
16"
Subfloor
Joist
Sole 2 x 4

a. ____________________ b. ____________________

c. ____________________ d. ____________________

e. ____________________ f. ____________________

7. List three methods of frame bracing.

a. ____

b. ____

c. ____

8. Complete the following list of types of sheathing.

a. Solid lumber

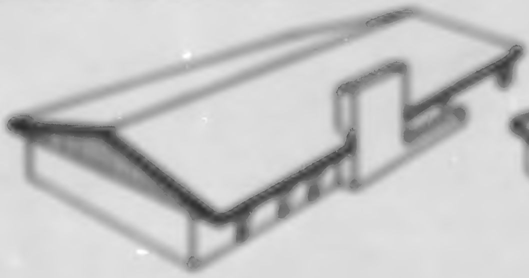
b. ____

c. ____

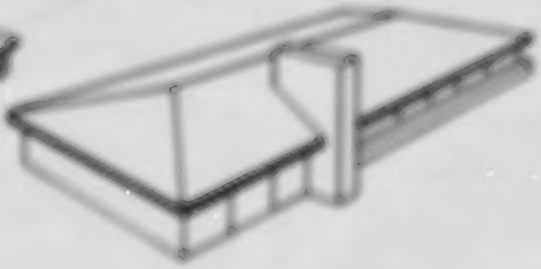
d. Gypsum

e. Plastics

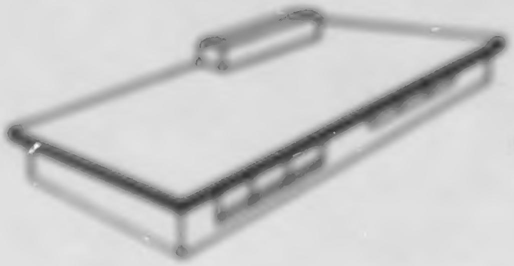
9. Identify types of roofs.



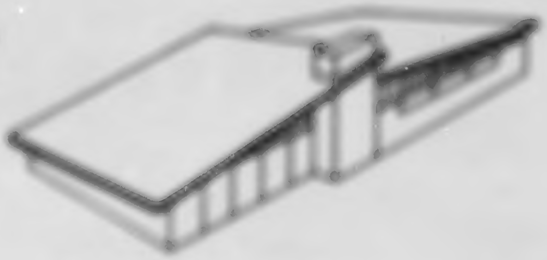
a. ______________________



b. ______________________

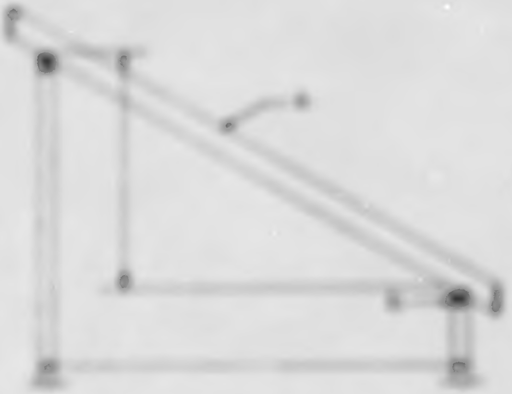


c. ______________________

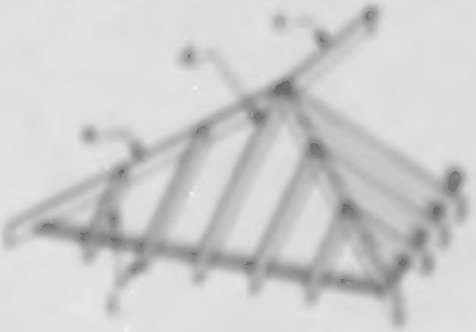


d. ______________________

10. Identify roof framing members for the following shed and hip roofs.



Shed



Hip

a. ______________________

b. ______________________

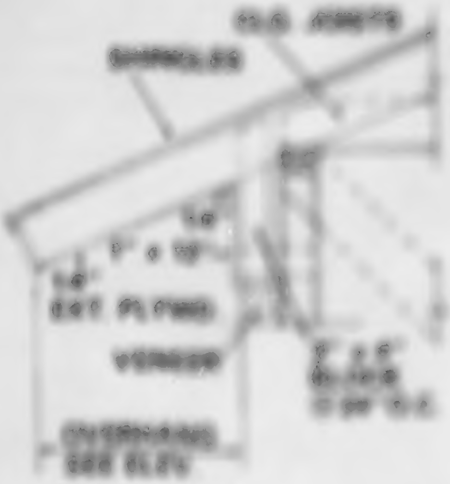
c. ______________________

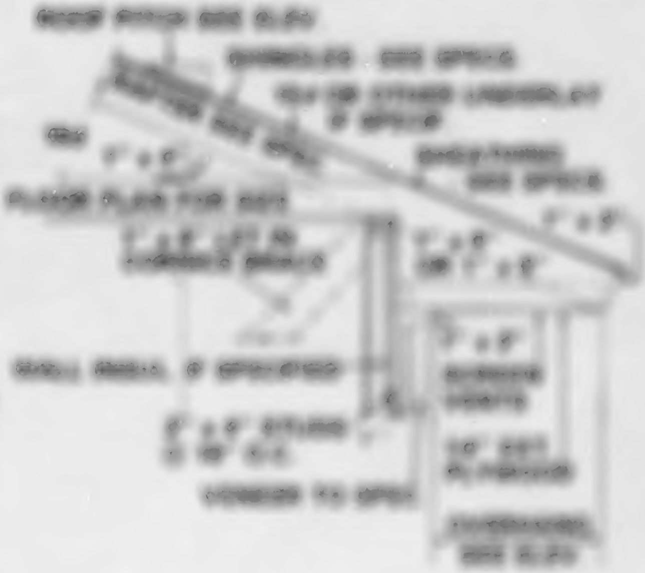
d. ______________________

e. ______________________

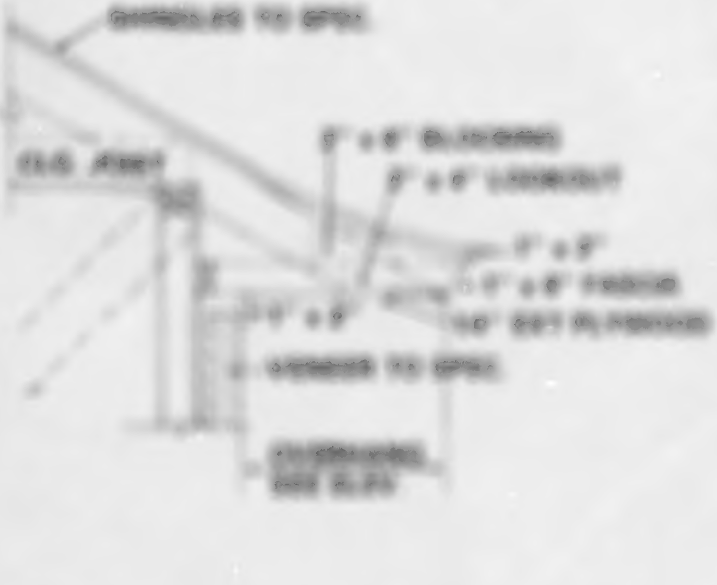
f. ______________________

11. Identify types of cornices


C.J. JOISTS
SHINGLES
1/2"
2" x 10"
1/2"
EXT. PLYWD.
VENEER
2" x 4"
BLOCK
@ 24" O.C.
OVERHANG
SEE ELEV

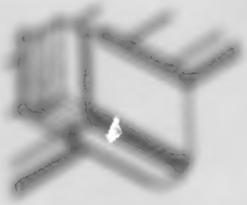

ROOF PITCH SEE ELEV
SHINGLES - SEE SPECS
15# OR OTHER UNDERLAY
IF SPEC'D
SHEATHING
SEE SPECS
2" x 6"
FLOOR PLAN FOR SIZE
1" x 4" LET IN
CORNER BRACE
2" x 6"
OR 1" x 6"
WALL INSUL. IF SPECIFIED
2" x 2"
SCREEN
VENTS
2" x 4" STUDS
@ 16" O.C.
1/2" EXT
PLYWOOD
VENEER TO SPEC
OVERHANG
SEE ELEV

a. ____________________ b. ____________________

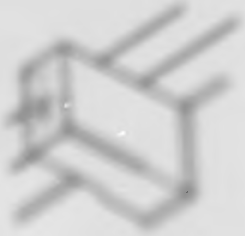

SHINGLES TO SPEC
C.J. JOIST
2" x 6" BLOCKING
2" x 4" LOOKOUT
1" x 2"
1" x 6" FASCIA
1/2" EXT PLYWOOD
2" x 2"
VENEER TO SPEC
OVERHANG
SEE ELEV

c. ____________________

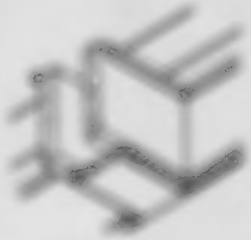
12. Identify types of post and beam framing.



a. ______________________



b. ______________________



c. ______________________

13. Match the building materials on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. A powder of alumina, silica, lime, iron oxide, and magnesia burned together in a kiln to be used as a binding agent in mortar or concrete	1. Prestressed concrete
_____b. A plastic mixture of cement, sand, and aggregate with water; when mixed and cast, it reaches a load bearing design strength in 28 days	2. Aggregate
_____c. Pea gravel or crushed rock from 1/4" to 1 1/2" in diameter	3. Concrete
_____d. Chemicals used to make the concrete more workable, slower or faster in hardening, freeze resistant, or other desired quality	4. Cement
_____e. Casting concrete used around steel cables or rods which are under tension to counteract stresses caused by external loading	5. Kiln-burned brick
_____f. Concrete used for steel rods in tubes which are placed under tension after concrete has hardened	6. Adobe
_____g. Natural sun-dried clays or earth and a binder	7. Sand-lime brick

_____a. Natural clays with chemicals sometimes added for color which are molded to shape, dried, and fired for hardness

_____b. A mixture of sand and lime, molded and hardened under steam pressure

_____c. A mixture of cement and fine aggregate, molded into solid or core units and hardened chemically

_____d. Cement, hydrated lime, sand, and water

_____e. Cement, sand, aggregate, or other lightweight aggregate materials molded and hardened under steam pressure

_____f. A type of structural clay tile used for non-load bearing ornamental effects in construction

_____g. A core of air-entrained gypsum between two layers of treated paper

_____h. A product made of materials that are similar to those used in making brick, but it is a larger building unit

_____i. Two sections of glass fused together, creating a partial vacuum

_____j. Wood cut into pieces of uniform thickness, width, and length

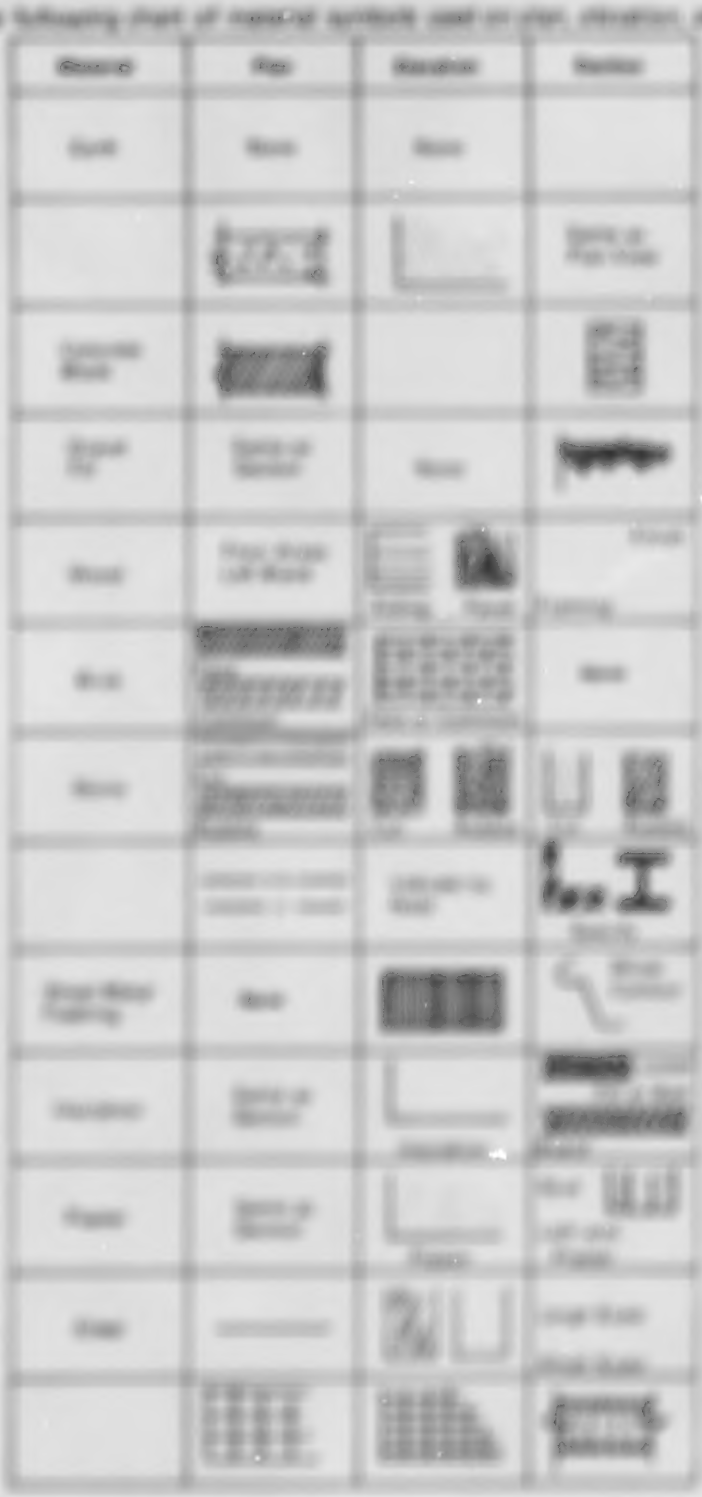
_____k. A wood product consisting of several layers of lumber with the grain at right angles in each successive layer

_____l. Kiln-dried lumber bonded together in layers with an adhesive to form beams, arches, and other structural members

_____m. The term applied to hot-rolled steel sections, shapes, and plates 1/8" thick or greater

8. Admixture
9. Post-tensioned concrete
10. Concrete block
11. Gypsum wallboard
12. Mortar
13. Lumber
14. Plywood
15. Terra-cotta
16. Structural clay tile
17. Glass blocks
18. Concrete brick
19. Structural steel
20. Glue-laminated timber

[illegible]



[illegible]

15. Select materials in a concrete mix by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Water

_____b. Mortar

_____c. Sand

_____d. Cement

_____e. Glass

_____f. Aggregate

_____g. Admixture

16. Name the physical properties that affect strength of concrete.

a. ____

b. ____

17. Match the construction masonry products on the right with the correct uses.

_____a. Used for decorative effects on buildings or non-load bearing walls

_____b. Used for load bearing walls in dry climate regions

_____c. Used for walls, backing, and other applications where appearance is not important

_____d. Manufactured under controlled dimensions, color, and structural qualities for building construction

_____e. Used in decorative and special service applications

_____f. Used in fireplaces, incinerators, and industrial smelting furnaces

_____g. Used in drives or areas where abrasion is a factor

_____h. Used as either plain or colored to cement masonry products together

_____i. Used as non-load bearing partition walls, loadbearing walls, backup for certain walls, and as fireproofing around structural steel

1. Concrete block
2. Paving brick
3. Face brick
4. Fire brick
5. Cut stone or concrete brick
6. Tile
7. Structural clay tile
8. Mortar
9. Glazed brick
10. Common brick
11. Adobe

_____j. Used for non-load bearing partition walls, loadbearing walls, and foundation walls

_____k. Used for floor and wall coverings of residences and commercial buildings that are set in cement, latex adhesive, or an epoxy mortar

18. Match the glass products on the right with the correct uses.

_____a. Used for windows in thicknesses of 3/32" single strength, 1/8" double strength, and 1/4" heavy sheet plate

_____b. Used to overcome the hazards of sheet glass in large, exposed, or public areas

_____c. A unit of two or more sheets of glass separated by 1/8" to 1" air space, dehyrated, and sealed for windows

_____d. Sheet glass with a pattern on both sides to diffuse light for privacy

_____e. Used for leaded glass for windows and decorative pieces

1. Safety
2. Insulating
3. Pattern
4. Sheet
5. Stained

19. Complete the following list of the uses of plastic in building construction.

a. Laminates

1) Counter tops

2) Doors

3) ______________________________

b. Coatings on wood or gypsum

c. ______________________________

d. ______________________________

e. Trim and ornamental decor items

f. Film for vapor barriers

20. Match the types of insulation materials on the right with the correct characteristics.

_____a. Available in 16" to 24" widths, 1" to 6" thicknesses, and 4' to 8' lengths of fiberglass, rock wool, or cellulose material with paper or aluminum foil backing

_____b. Available in bags; made from rock wool, fiberglass, cellulose, or polystyrene material

_____c. Plastics that have blowing agents added to them which are deposited on the job site with a spray gun

_____d. Made of fiberboard, fiberglass, polystyrene, or polyurethane that is available in sheet form with optional aluminum backing

1. Loose fill
2. Rigid
3. Blanket or batt
4. Foam

21. Match the metal products on the right with the correct uses.

_____a. Used for girders, columns, and brick masonry lintels

_____b. Used in structural steel open web beams and in reinforced concrete

_____c. Mesh used for reinforcement of concrete

_____d. Used for wall studs, windows and door frames, roof flashings, duct work, roofing, and wall siding

_____e. Aluminum, brass, and copper used for windows, thresholds, siding, electrical wiring, gutters, and flashing

1. Welded wire fabric
2. Gauge metals
3. Reinforcing bars
4. Structural steel shapes
5. Nonferrous metals

22. Select materials commonly used to cover a roof by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Wood shingles

_____b. Brick

_____c. Clay tile

_____d. Asphalt shingles

_____e. Welded wire fabric

23. List wood products used in construction.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

c. ______________________________

24. Complete the following chart of nominal and actual sizes for dimension lumber.

Nominal Size	Actual Size
2 x 4	________
________	1 1/2 x 5 1/2
2 x 8	1 1/2 x ________
2 x 10	________
________	1 1/2 x 11 1/2

25. List information which must be given to a truss manufacturer.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

c. ______________________________

26. Match the structural design terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. The weight of the materials used to construct the building

_____b. The weight or force exerted by items that are not a part of the building itself

_____c. A downward force at or near the support that tends to cut or shear the beam off at the supports

_____d. Force which causes a beam to fail by pulling the fibers apart parallel to the beam

_____e. The force that tends to cause the point of load on a beam to rotate about a column connection or support

_____f. A force due to moments in the beam which tend to bend the beam past failure

_____g. The force needed to resist moments to maintain equilibrium

1. Moment
2. Deflection
3. Live load
4. Reaction
5. Horizontal shear
6. Fiber stress
7. Dead load

_____h. A property of a material measuring its maximum allowable fiber strength at its farthest point from the neutral axis

_____i. Permissible bending according to local code depending upon beam's length of span, load, and material

_____j. Used to determine the rectangular cross section of a beam that will resist moments

_____k. Used to determine the rectangular cross section of a beam that will determine the allowable deflection in a beam

_____l. The rate of deformation of a material as stress is applied to it

8. Modulus of elasticity
9. Section modulus
10. Vertical shear
11. Bending
12. Modulus of inertia

27. Match the structural design terms on the right with the correct formulas.

_____a. $V = \frac{wL}{2}$

_____b. $H = \frac{3V}{2bd}$

_____c. $M = \frac{wL^2}{8}$

_____d. $\Delta = \frac{5wL^4}{384EI}$

_____e. $S = \frac{bd^2}{6}$

_____f. $I = \frac{bd^3}{12}$

1. Section modulus
2. Maximum moment
3. Deflection
4. Vertical shear
5. Horizontal shear
6. Modulus of inertia

28. Complete the following chart of abbreviations.

a.	_____	AB	g.	Partition	_____
b.	Center to center	_____	h.	Plywood	_____
c.	Floor	_____	i.	_____	R
d.	_____	HDR	j.	_____	RF
e.	_____	LBR	k.	Siding	_____
f.	On center	_____	l.	Window	_____

28. Demonstrate the ability to:

    a. Determine sizes of wood floor joists and roof rafters.

    b. Determine sizes of wood girders.

    c. Determine sizes of steel beams.

    d. Determine sizes of exterior or interior wall headers.

    (NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS AND BUILDING MATERIALS
UNIT V

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. [illegible] k. [illegible] u. [illegible] ee. [illegible]
   b. [illegible] l. [illegible] v. [illegible] ff. [illegible]
   c. [illegible] m. [illegible] w. [illegible] gg. [illegible]
   d. [illegible] n. [illegible] x. [illegible] hh. [illegible]
   e. [illegible] o. [illegible] y. [illegible] ii. [illegible]
   f. [illegible] p. [illegible] z. [illegible] jj. [illegible]
   g. [illegible] q. [illegible] aa. [illegible] kk. [illegible]
   h. [illegible] r. [illegible] bb. [illegible] ll. [illegible]
   i. [illegible] s. [illegible] cc. [illegible] mm. [illegible]
   j. [illegible] t. [illegible] dd. [illegible] nn. [illegible]

2. a. Balloon
   b. Platform

3. b, d

4. a. Notched
   b. Hung with stirrups

5. To brace the joists

6. a. Top plate
   b. Cripple studs
   c. Header
   d. Rough opening
   e. Studs (2 x 4)
   f. Trimmer

7. a. Metal straps on exterior walls
   b. 1 x 4 set into studs
   c. Plywood sheet

8. b. Plywood
   c. Fiberboard

9. a. Gable
   b. Hip
   c. Flat
   d. Shed

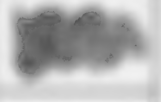
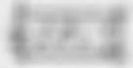
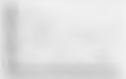
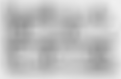
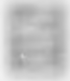
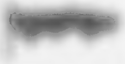
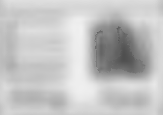
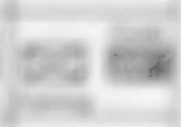
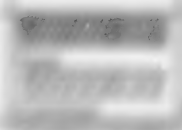
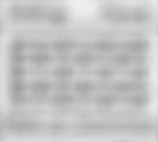
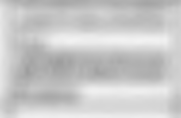
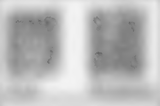
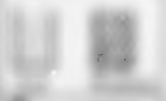
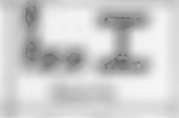
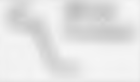
10. a. Common rafter
    b. Double plate
    c. Ridge
    d. Common rafter
    e. Hip rafter
    f. Hip jack rafters

11. a. [illegible]
    b. [illegible]
    c. [illegible]

12. a. [illegible]
    b. [illegible]
    c. [illegible]

13. a–j, k–t [illegible]

14.

Material	Plan	Elevation	Section
Earth	None	None	
Concrete			[illegible]
Concrete Block			
Gravel Fill	[illegible]	None	
Wood	[illegible]		
Brick			
Stone			
Structural Steel	[illegible]	[illegible]	
Sheet Metal Flashing			

Insulation	[illegible]		
Pipes	[illegible]		
[illegible]			[illegible]
[illegible]			

15. [illegible]

16. a. Temperature
b. Water

17. [illegible]

18. [illegible]

19. a. [illegible]
c. [illegible]
d. Pipe

20. [illegible]

21. [illegible]

22. [illegible]

(3) a [illegible] lumber
b Plywood
c [illegible] lumber

(4) [illegible] [illegible]
[illegible] [illegible]
[illegible] [illegible]
[illegible] [illegible]
[illegible] [illegible]
[illegible] [illegible]

(5) Any three of the following:

a Span
b Roof pitch
c Spacing of trusses
d Roof load

(6) a [illegible] g [illegible]
b [illegible] h [illegible]
c [illegible] i [illegible]
d [illegible] j [illegible]
e [illegible] k [illegible]
f [illegible] l [illegible]

(7) a [illegible]
b [illegible]
c [illegible]
d [illegible]
e [illegible]
f [illegible]

(8) a [illegible] g [illegible]
b [illegible] h [illegible]
c [illegible] i [illegible]
d [illegible] j [illegible]
e [illegible] k [illegible]
f [illegible] l [illegible]

(9) [illegible] to the satisfaction of the instructor

[illegible]

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT [illegible]

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to arrange in order a set of working drawings and identify plan and elevation symbols of doors and windows. The student should also be able to sketch and draw floor plans and elevations. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to working drawings with the correct definitions.
2. Identify information on a title block.
3. Complete a list of [illegible] for placing the title block on a drawing.
4. [illegible]
5. [illegible]
6. Arrange in order a set of residential working drawings.
7. Complete a chart of abbreviations.
8. Identify plan symbols of various doors and windows.
9. Identify plan symbols of bathroom and kitchen fixtures and built-in components.
10. Identify elevation symbols of various doors and windows.
11. Match material symbols with the correct materials.
12. [illegible]
13. Arrange in order the steps in preparing elevations.
14. [illegible]
15. List types of sections.

[illegible]

- a. [illegible]
- b. [illegible]
- c. [illegible]
- d. [illegible]
- e. [illegible]
- f. [illegible]
- g. [illegible]
- h. [illegible]

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT I

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Provide samples of residential and commercial working drawings.

VII. Discuss the good and bad features of the sample drawings, especially in the floor plan and elevations.

VIII. [illegible]

IX. [illegible]

X. [illegible]

XI. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

   A. Objective sheet

   B. Information sheet

   C. Transparency masters

      1. TM 1 [illegible] Title Block

      2. TM 2 Title Block

      3. TM 3 Use of Working Drawings

      4. TM 4 Door Plan Symbols

      5. TM 5 Window Plan Symbols

      6. TM 6 Plan Symbols

      7. TM 7 Door Elevation Symbols

8. [illegible]

9. [illegible]

10. [illegible]

11. [illegible]

12. [illegible]

13. [illegible]

14. [illegible]

15. [illegible]

16. [illegible]

17. [illegible]

18. [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

3. [illegible]

4. [illegible]

5. [illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

8. [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

A. [illegible]

B. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

[illegible]

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

A. Working drawing--Any drawing used to give information for the manufacture or construction of a structure

B. Set of working drawings--All the information needed by a builder to complete a building exactly as intended by the designer or architect

(NOTE: Specifications or description of materials are included in any set of drawings.)

C. Title block--Located in lower right hand corner of drawing sheet to identify the firm, address, title, drafter, date, project number, and sheet number

D. Reference symbols--Keying symbol system used to locate information and refer from one drawing sheet to another

(NOTE: Special symbols vary from company to company.)

E. Schedules--Organized information in tabular form which gives detailed information about such items as doors or windows

F. Match lines--Used to match portions of a building that appear on several drawing sheets

G. Key plan--Identifies each unit area of a building and the cross hatched unit indicates the area which appears on the drawing sheet

H. Legend--An explanatory list of the symbols used on a drawing or set of drawings

I. Veneered wall--A wall with some type of masonry face which is attached to, but not so bonded to the body of the wall as to exert a common reaction under load

J. Wainscot--Facing for the lower part of an interior wall which is finished differently from the remainder of the wall

K. Slope--Relationship between rise and run showing slant of roof

L. Rise--Vertical distance covered by a roof

M. Run--Horizontal distance covered by a roof

INFORMATION SHEET

II. Information on a title block (Transparency 1)

A. Name of owner and address of site

B. Firm or name of school

C. Title of sheet

D. Drawn by

(NOTE: Drafter's name or initials.)

E. Approved by

F. Scale

G. Checked by

H. Date

I. Sheet number

J. Project or job number

III. Methods for placing the title block on a drawing

A. Commercially printed on vellum or film

B. Plastic film applique

(NOTE: This is placed on reversed side of vellum or film.)

C. Rubber stamp

(NOTE: This is placed in lower right corner of vellum and then border lines are added.)

D. Hand drawn

(NOTE: 1" minimum borders are placed on left hand side of sheet for purpose of binding.)

IV. Information on a title sheet, cover sheet, or index (Transparency 2)

A. Project name and address

B. Numerically listed index of drawings in the set of working drawings

(NOTE: Often survey information is included.)

INFORMATION SHEET

V. Common scales used on a set of working drawings

		U.S.	ISO METRIC (mm)
A.	Plot plan	1" = 20' or 40'	1:100, 1:200 or 1:500
B.	Foundation plan	1/8" or 1/4" = 1'-0"	1:100 or 1:50
C.	Floor plan	1/8" or 1/4" = 1'-0"	1:100 or 1:50
D.	Elevations	1/8" or 1/4" = 1'-0"	1:100 or 1:50
E.	Construction details	3/4" to 1 1/2" = 1'-0"	1:20 or 1:10
F.	Wall section details	3/4" to 1 1/2" = 1'-0"	1:20 or 1:10
G.	Interior elevations	3/8" to 1/2" = 1'-0"	1:50 or 1:20

VI. Suggested arrangement of a set of working drawings (Transparency 3)

(NOTE: This varies since different plans seldom have the same number and kinds of plans.)

Residential	Commercial
	(NOTE: A = Architecture, S = Structural, E = Electrical, M = Mechanical.)
1. Sheet 1 Plot or site plan	A-1 Plot or site plan
2. Sheet 2 Foundation plan	A-2 Foundation plan
3. Sheet 3 Floor plan	A-3 Floor plan
4. Sheet 4 Elevations	A-4 Elevations
5. Sheet 5 Sections	A-5 Sections and details
6. Sheet 6 Interior elevations and details (optional)	A-6 Schedules S-1 Structural details
7. Sheet 7 Electrical plan	E-1 Electrical plan
(NOTE: This may be drawn on floor plan.)	
8. Sheet 8 HVAC plan	M-1 HVAC plan
(NOTE: This may be drawn and completed by HVAC contractor, utility company, or supplier.)	
9. Sheet 9 Plumbing	M-2 Plumbing plan
(NOTE: This is not commonly drawn.)	

INFORMATION SHEET

VII. Abbreviations

ACST Acoustical
AL Aluminum
∠ Angle iron
AO Arched opening
AT Asphalt tile
BSMT Basement
BATH Bathroom
BR Bedroom
BF DR Bi-fold door
CAB Cabinet
CO Cased opening
CLG Ceiling
CER Ceramic
CL Closet
CONC Concrete
CONC BL Concrete block
DR Dining room
DO Ditto
DH Double hung
DS Double strength
DF Douglas fir
EL Elevation
FIN Finish
FIN FL Finish floor
FLG Flooring
FT Foot

GL Glass
HDBD Hardboard
HDW Hardware
INT Interior
K Kitchen
LG Length
LIN CL Linen closet
LR Living room
LVD Louvered door
MFG Manufacturing
MATL Material
OC On center
PTD Painted
PTGL Plate glass
QT Quarry tile
SCR Screen
SH Single hung
SS Single strength
SLDG Sliding
SC Solid core
VAR Varnish
VT Vinyl tile
WS Weather stripping
WP White pine
W Width

INFORMATION SHEET

VIII. Plan symbols of doors and windows

A. Doors (Transparency 8)

1. Interior doors

a. Flush or panel

b. French

c. Sliding

d. Pocket

e. Bi-fold

f. Double action

g. Accordion

h. Archway or cased opening

2. Exterior doors

a. Hinged

b. French

c. Sliding

B. Windows (Transparency 9)

1. Double hung

2. Casement

3. Sliding

4. Awning

5. Hopper

6. Fixed picture

(NOTE: Special windows are indicated by a detail.)

IX. Plan symbols of bathroom and kitchen fixtures and built-in components (Transparency 10)

A. Bathroom fixtures

1. Water closet

2. Wall hung water closet

INFORMATION SHEET

    3. Free standing lavatory
    4. Wall hung lavatory
    5. Bathtub
    6. Shower
  B. Kitchen and laundry fixtures
    1. Sink
    2. Refrigerator
    3. Cooktop
    4. Free standing range
    5. Oven
    6. Dishwasher
    7. Washer
    8. Dryer
    9. Microwave
    10. Trash compactor
  C. Built in components
    1. Fireplace
    2. Closet
    3. Stairs
    4. Bookcase
    5. Cabinets
V. Elevation symbols of doors and windows
  A. Doors (Transparency 9)
    1. Flush
    2. Panel
    3. French
    4. Sliding

271

INFORMATION SHEET

5. Pocket

6. Bi-fold

7. Double-action

8. Accordion

B. Windows (Transparency 8)

1. Double hung

2. Casement

3. Sliding

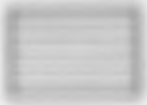
4. Awning

5. Hopper

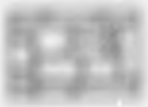
6. Fixed picture

IX. Exterior material symbols

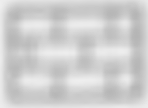
A. Brick



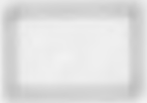
D. Rock



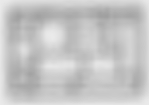
B. Concrete block



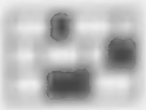
E. Concrete and cement



C. Cut stone

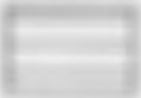


F. Wood shingle

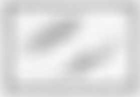


INFORMATION SHEET

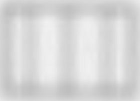
G. Horizontal wood siding



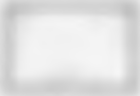
J. Glass



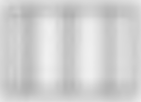
H. Vertical wood siding



K. Stucco



I. Board and batten



XVI. Factors to consider when drawing elevations (Transparencies 9 and 10)

A. Use formal or informal balance

(NOTE: Formal balance is symmetrical; left side is identical to right side. This type of balance is used in traditional architecture. Informal balance is asymmetrical and is widely used in contemporary architecture.)

B. Every elevation should have some point of emphasis

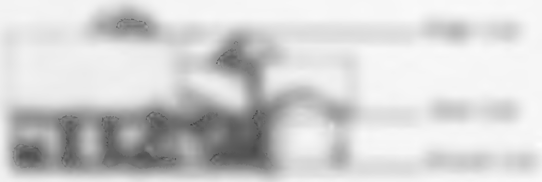
C. Use no more than two types of exterior siding

D. Do not mix types of masonry, stone and brick, or vertical and horizontal siding

(NOTE: This is only a general rule.)

E. The basic horizontal lines of an elevation are the ground line, eave line, and ridge line

Example



INFORMATION SHEET

F. Door and window lines should be related to other structural lines

G. Sufficient roof overhang is needed to afford protection from sun, rain, and snow

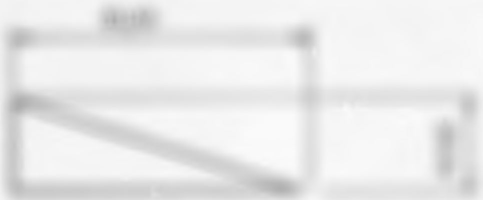
H. Type of roof greatly affects the appearance of an elevation

I. Slope of roof needs to be calculated in order to draw the pitch of a roof using the following formulas

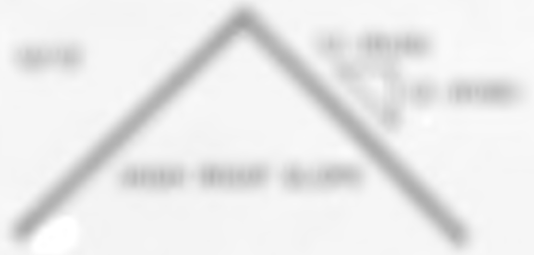
Formula: Rise = Vertical distance

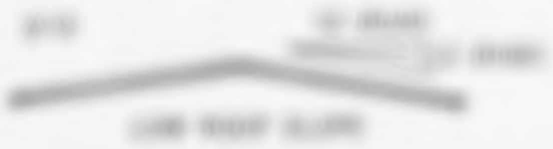
Run = Horizontal distance

Slope = Rise/run



Example:


12/12
12" RUN
12" RISE
HIGH ROOF SLOPE


3/12
12" RUN
3" RISE
LOW ROOF SLOPE

INFORMATION SHEET

XIII. Steps in projecting elevations (Transparency 11)

A. Project floor plan outline and door, window, and chimney locations; draw horizontal lines (ridge, eave, and ground)

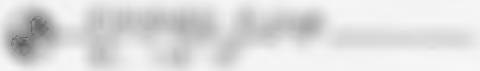
B. Line out roof slope, add roof overhang, locate chimney (if used), and block in outline

C. Line out door and window outlines, and draw building material divisions

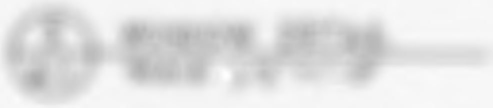
D. Add details and siding symbols, draw vegetation, and add basement outline (if used)

XIV. Referencing methods and symbols (Transparencies 12, 13, 14, and 15)

A. Floor elevation

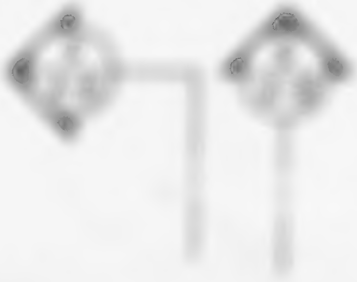


B. Section details (exterior or interior elevations)



C. Floor plan and elevation

NOTE: Arrow points in direction view is taken.



[illegible]

B. [illegible]

[illegible]

C. [illegible]

[illegible]

D. [illegible]

[illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

G. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

H. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

SHEET INDEX

NO.	TITLE
1	[illegible] Plan
2	Foundation Plan
3	[illegible] Plan
4	[illegible]
5	[illegible]
6	[illegible]
7	[illegible] Plan
8	[illegible] Plan
9	[illegible] Plan

VII. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

A. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

3. [illegible]

4. [illegible]

5. [illegible]

[illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

B. [illegible]

[illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

3. [illegible]

4. [illegible]

5. [illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

8. [illegible]

9. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

[illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

3. [illegible]

4. [illegible]

5. [illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

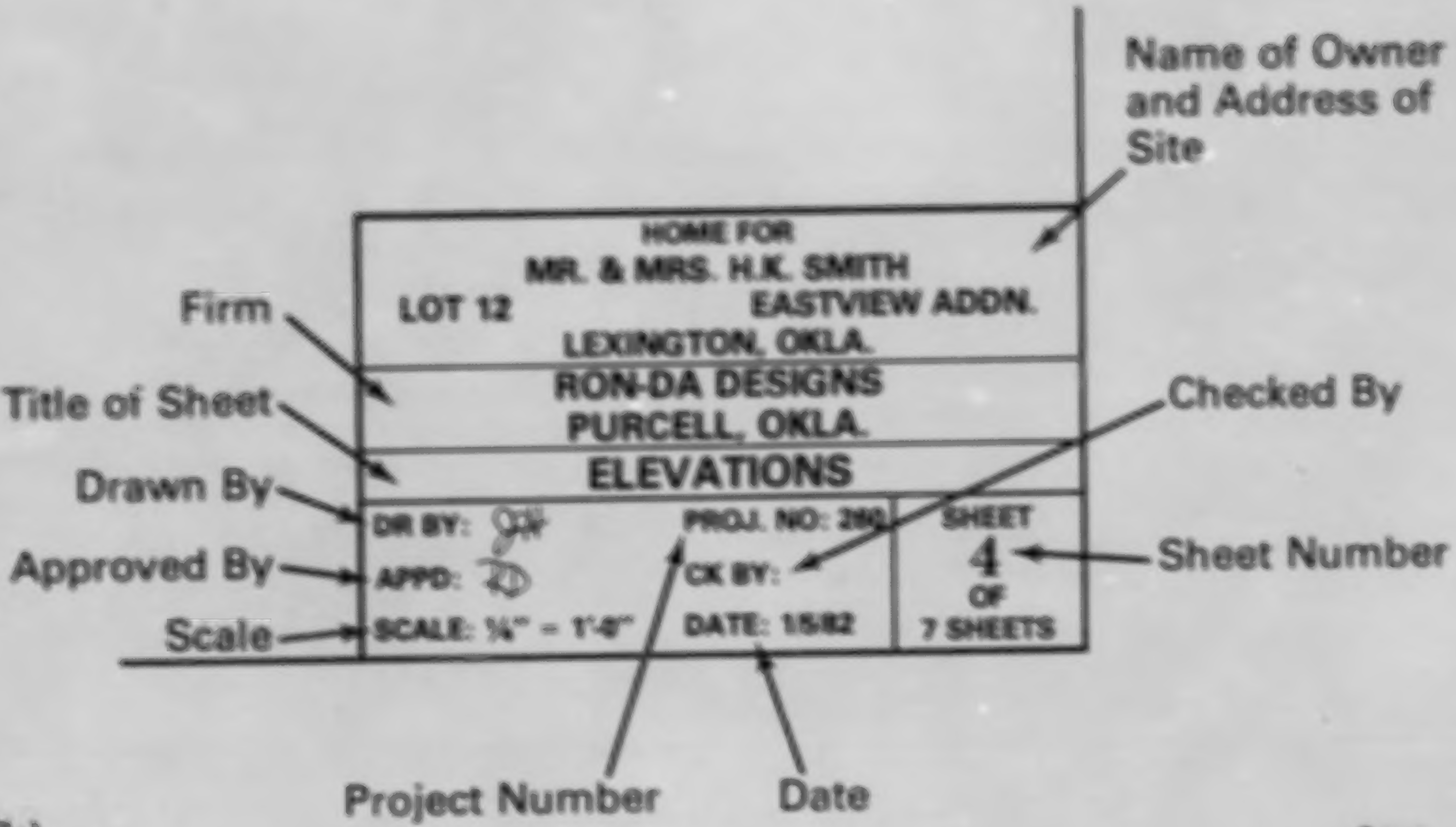
[illegible]

[illegible]

C. [illegible]

[illegible]

Information on a Title Block



Name of Owner and Address of Site

HOME FOR
MR. & MRS. H.K. SMITH
LOT 12 EASTVIEW ADDN.
LEXINGTON, OKLA.

RON-DA DESIGNS
PURCELL, OKLA.

ELEVATIONS

DR BY:
APPD:
SCALE: ¼" = 1'-0"

PROJ. NO: 280
CK BY:
DATE: 1/5/82

SHEET
4
OF
7 SHEETS

Firm

Title of Sheet

Drawn By

Approved By

Scale

Checked By

Sheet Number

Project Number

Date

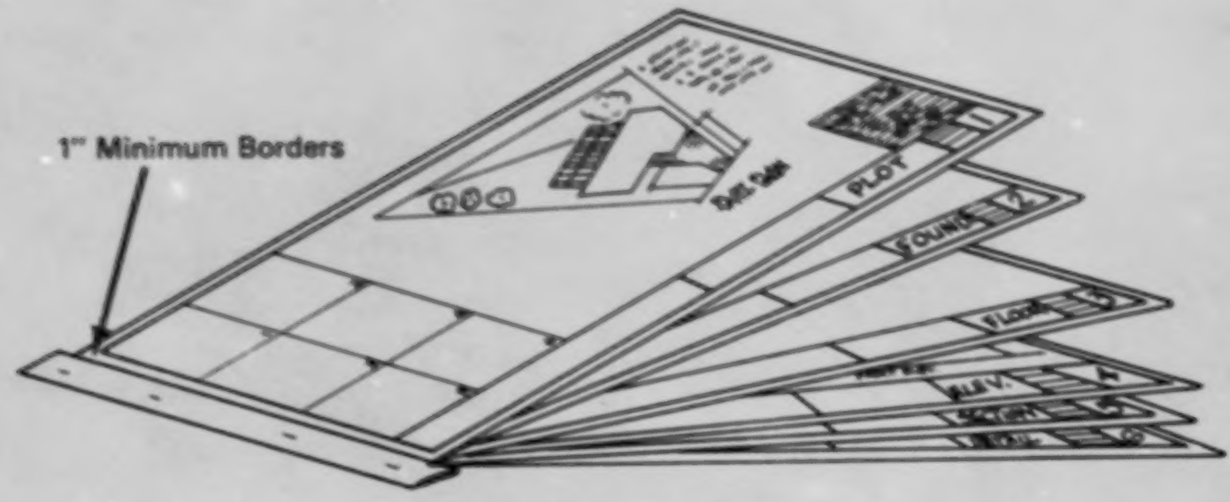
Title Sheet

A RESIDENCE FOR:
MR. & MRS. J.W. HORRIS
109 BASE ST. HUNTER, OKLA. 74640-0132

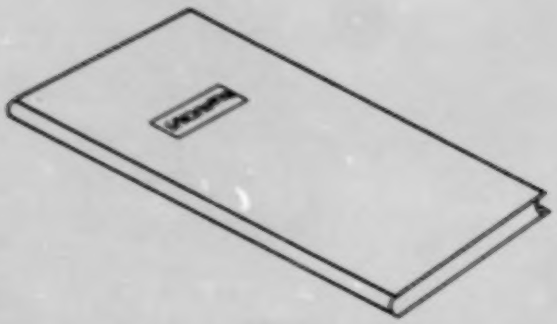
INDEX

SHEET 1 PLOT PLAN
SHEET 2 FOUNDATION PLAN
SHEET 3 FLOOR PLAN
SHEET 4 ELEVATIONS
SHEET 5 SECTIONS
SHEET 6 DETAILS
SHEET 7 HVAC PLAN

Set of Working Drawings


1" Minimum Borders
PLOT
FOUND.
FLOOR
ELEV.
SECTION
DETAIL

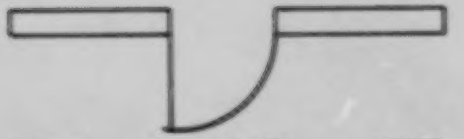
Set of Drawings

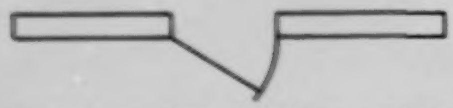


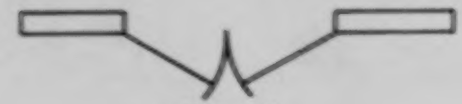
Specifications

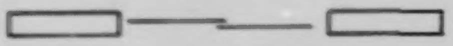
Door Plan Symbols

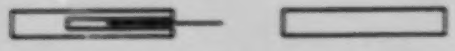
Interior Doors

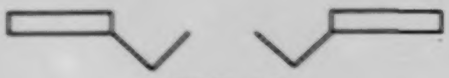

Flush or Panel (Shown 90°)

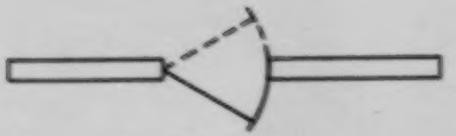

Flush or Panel (Shown 45°)

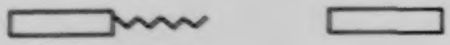

French

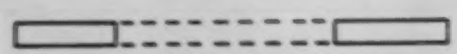

Sliding


Pocket

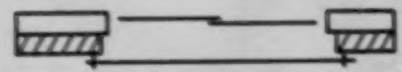

Bi-Fold

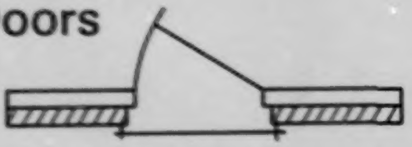

Double Action

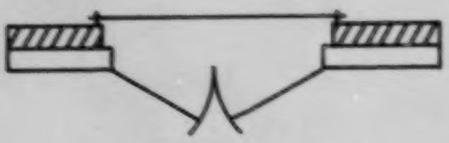

Accordion


Archway or Cased Opening

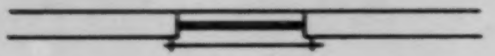
Exterior Doors

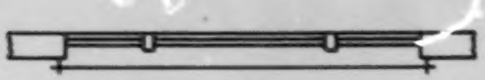

Sliding (in Brick Veneer Wall)

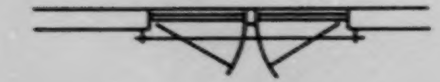

Hinged (In Brick Veneer Wall)

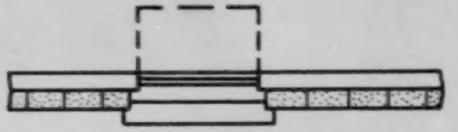

French

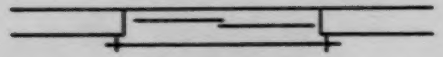
Window Plan Symbols

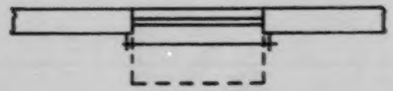

Double Hung (in Frame Wall)


Fixed with
Double Hung Side Lights


Double Casement

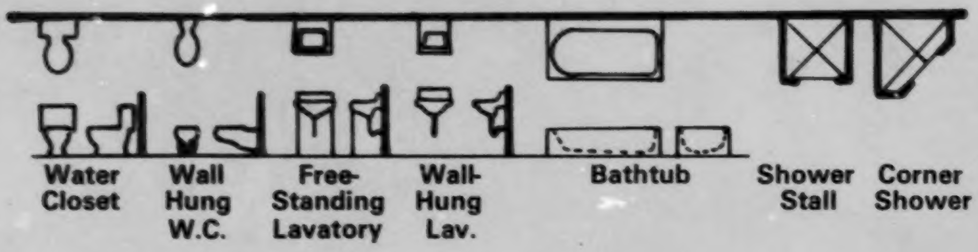

Hopper (in Cut Stone Veneer)


Sliding

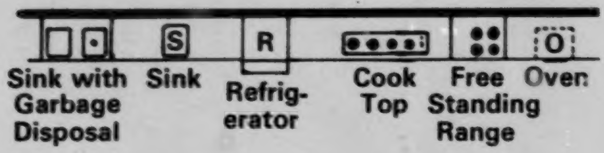

Awning

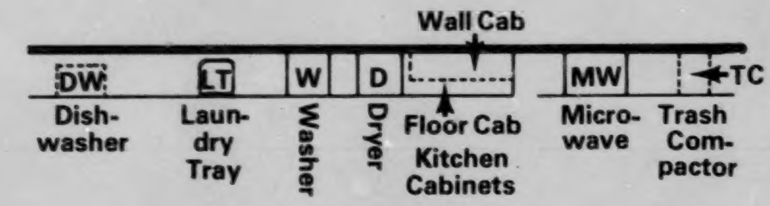
Plan Symbols

Bathroom Fixtures

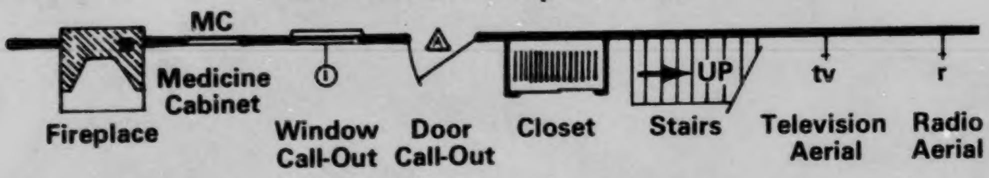

Water Closet
Wall Hung W.C.
Free-Standing Lavatory
Wall-Hung Lav.
Bathtub
Shower Stall
Corner Shower

Kitchen and Laundry Fixtures


Sink with Garbage Disposal
S
Sink
R
Refrig-erator
Cook Top
Free Standing Range
O
Oven


Wall Cab
DW
Dish-washer
LT
Laun-dry Tray
W
Washer
D
Dryer
Floor Cab
Kitchen Cabinets
MW
Micro-wave
TC
Trash Com-pactor

Built-In Components


MC
Medicine Cabinet
Fireplace
Window Call-Out
Door Call-Out
Closet
UP
Stairs
tv
Television Aerial
r
Radio Aerial

Furniture (General)

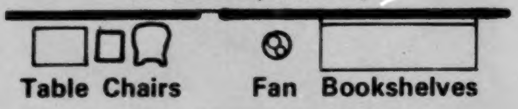
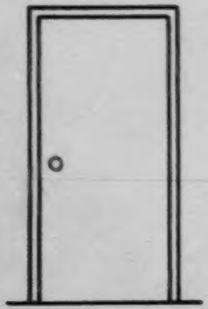
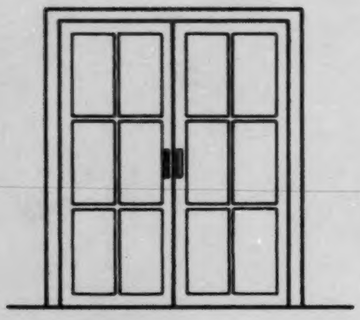


Table
Chairs
Fan
Bookshelves

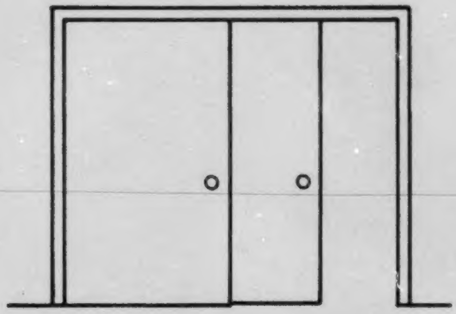
Door Elevation Symbols



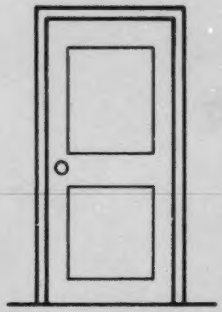
Flush



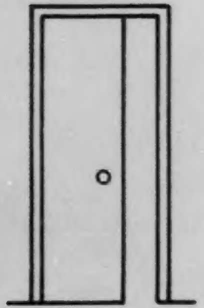
French



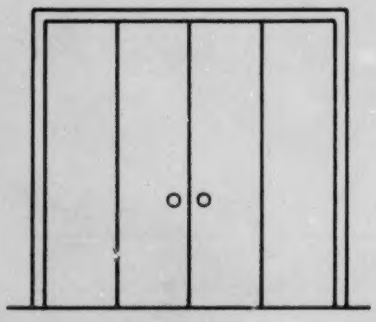
Sliding



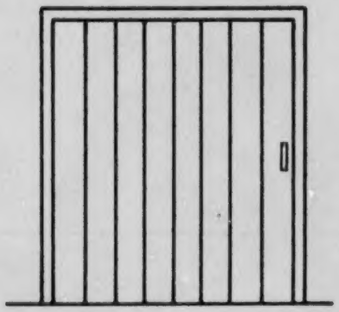
Panel



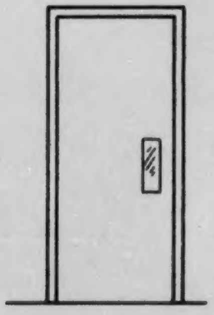
Pocket



Bi-Fold

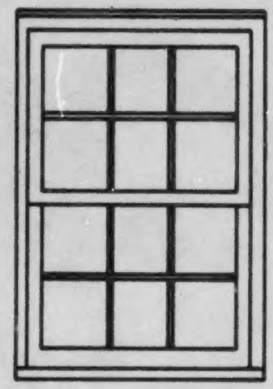


Accordion

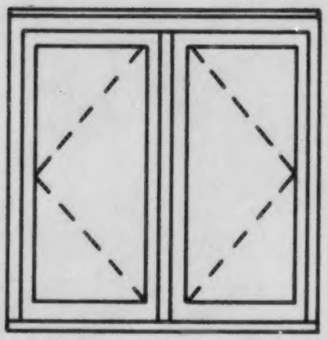


Double Action

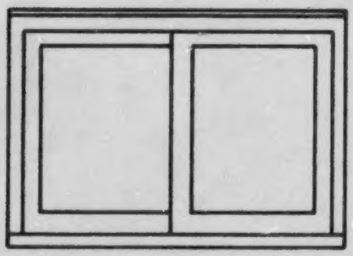
Window Elevation Symbols



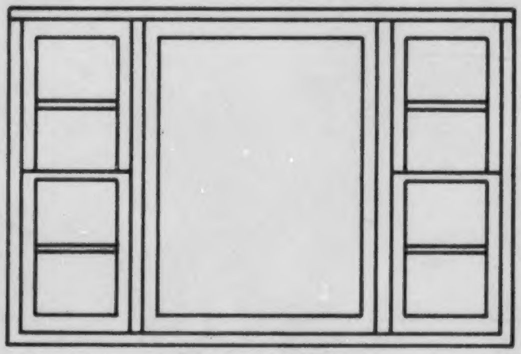
Double Hung



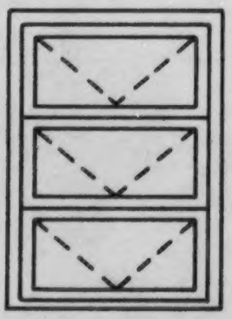
Double Casement



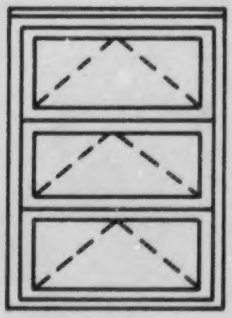
Sliding



Fixed with
Double Hung Side Lights

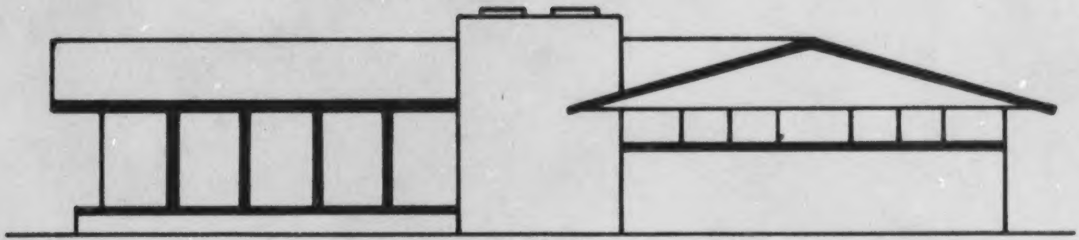


Hopper

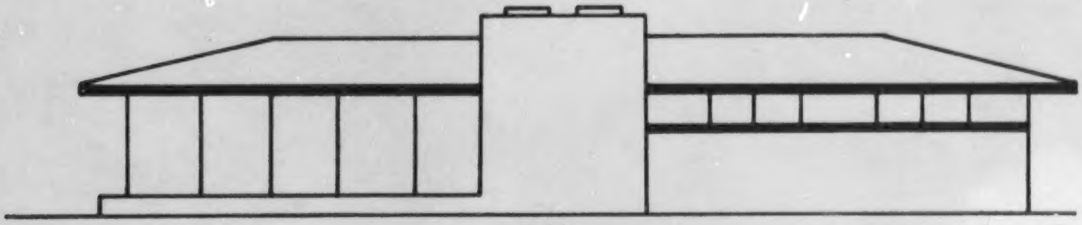


Awning

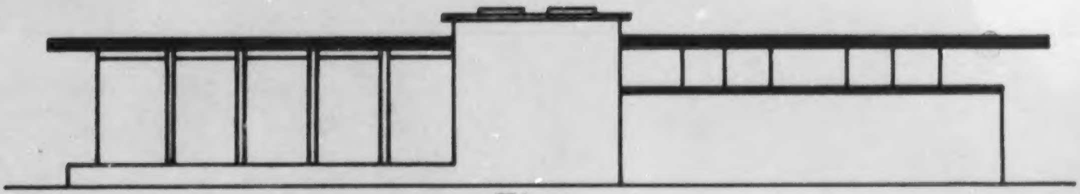
Ways Different Roofs Affect Elevation Appearance



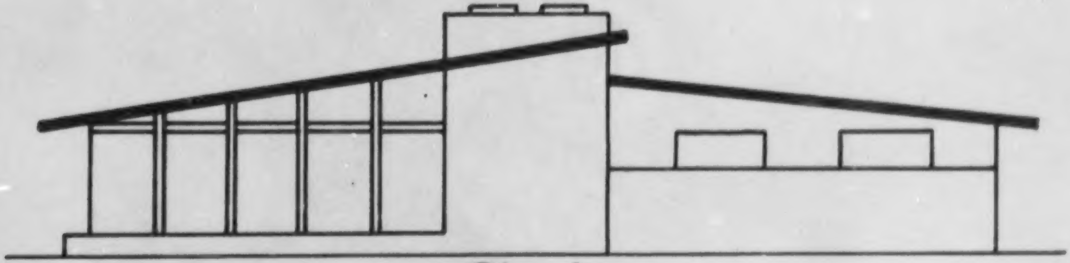
Gable



Hip



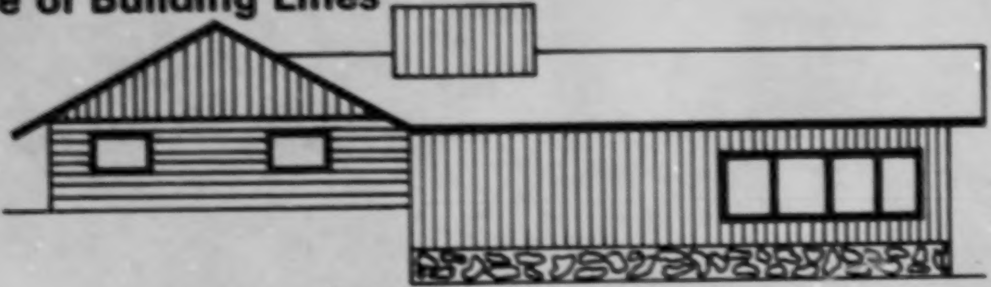
Flat



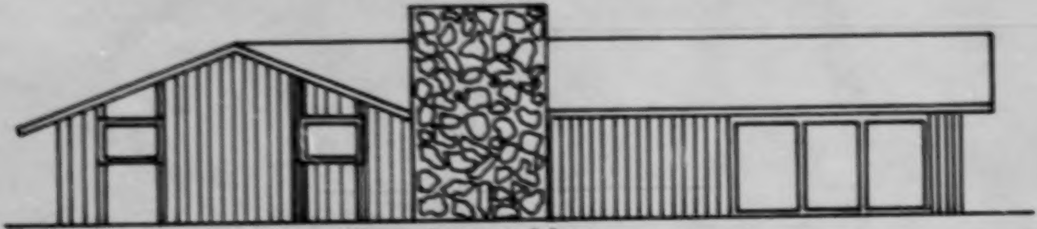
Shed

Factors Which Affect Elevation Appearance

Use of Building Lines

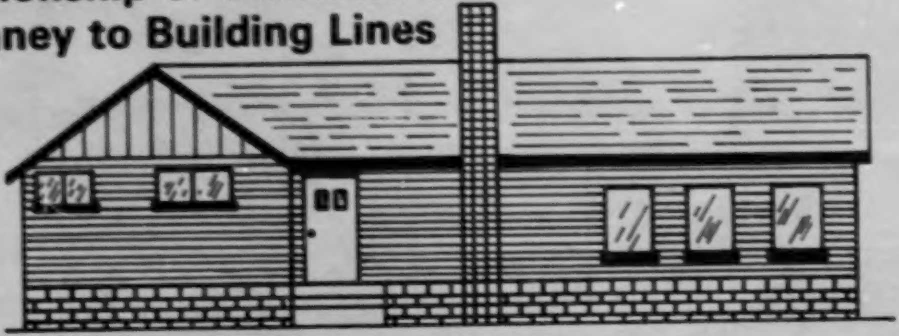


Inconsistent Lines

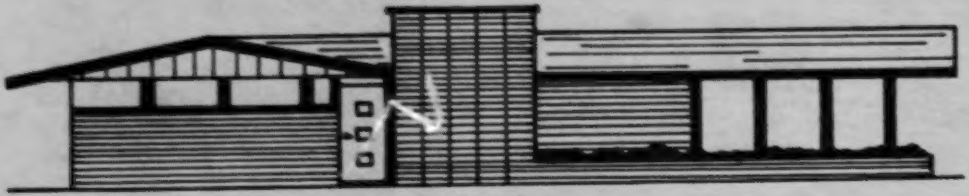


Consistent Lines

Relationship of Windows and Chimney to Building Lines

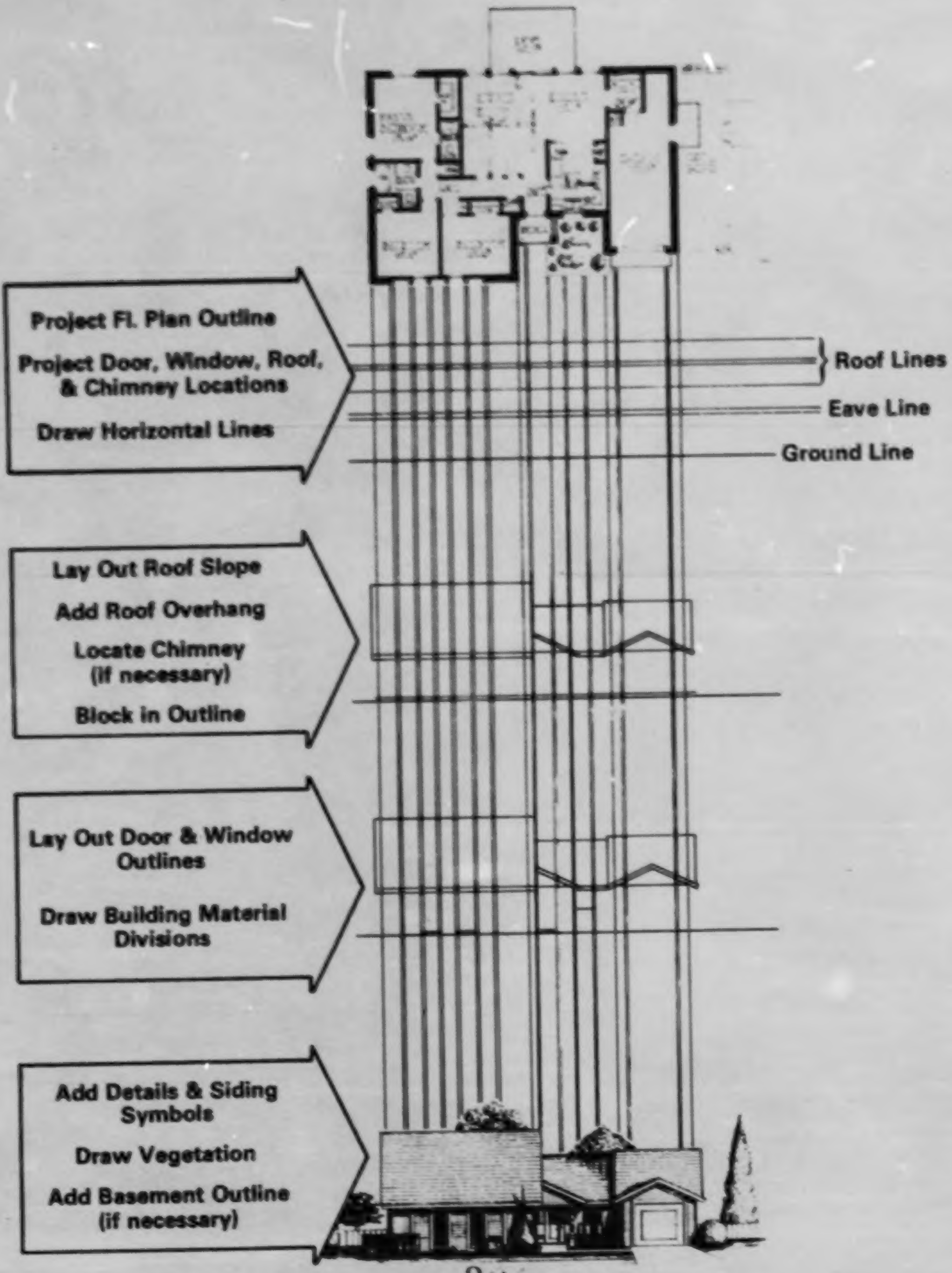


Unrelated



Related

Projecting an Elevation



Project Fl. Plan Outline

Project Door, Window, Roof, & Chimney Locations

Draw Horizontal Lines

Lay Out Roof Slope

Add Roof Overhang

Locate Chimney (if necessary)

Block in Outline

Lay Out Door & Window Outlines

Draw Building Material Divisions

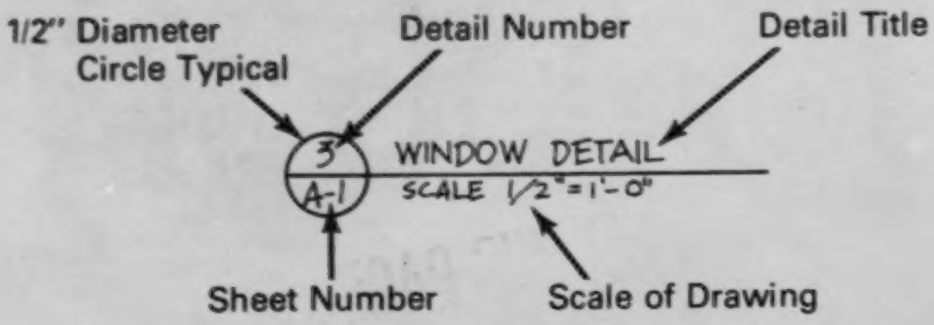
Add Details & Siding Symbols

Draw Vegetation

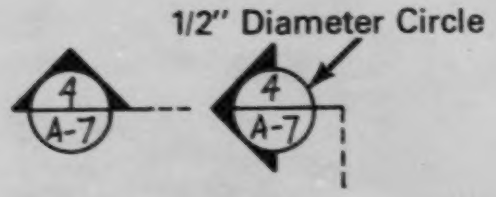
Add Basement Outline (if necessary)

Reference Methods

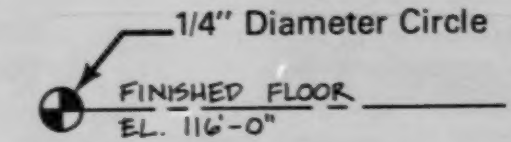
Parts of a Typical Symbol


1/2" Diameter Circle Typical
Detail Number
Detail Title
3
A-1
WINDOW DETAIL
SCALE 1/2"=1'-0"
Sheet Number
Scale of Drawing

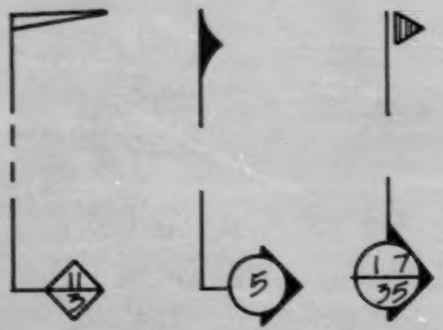
Elevations and Floor Plans


1/2" Diameter Circle
4
A-7
4
A-7

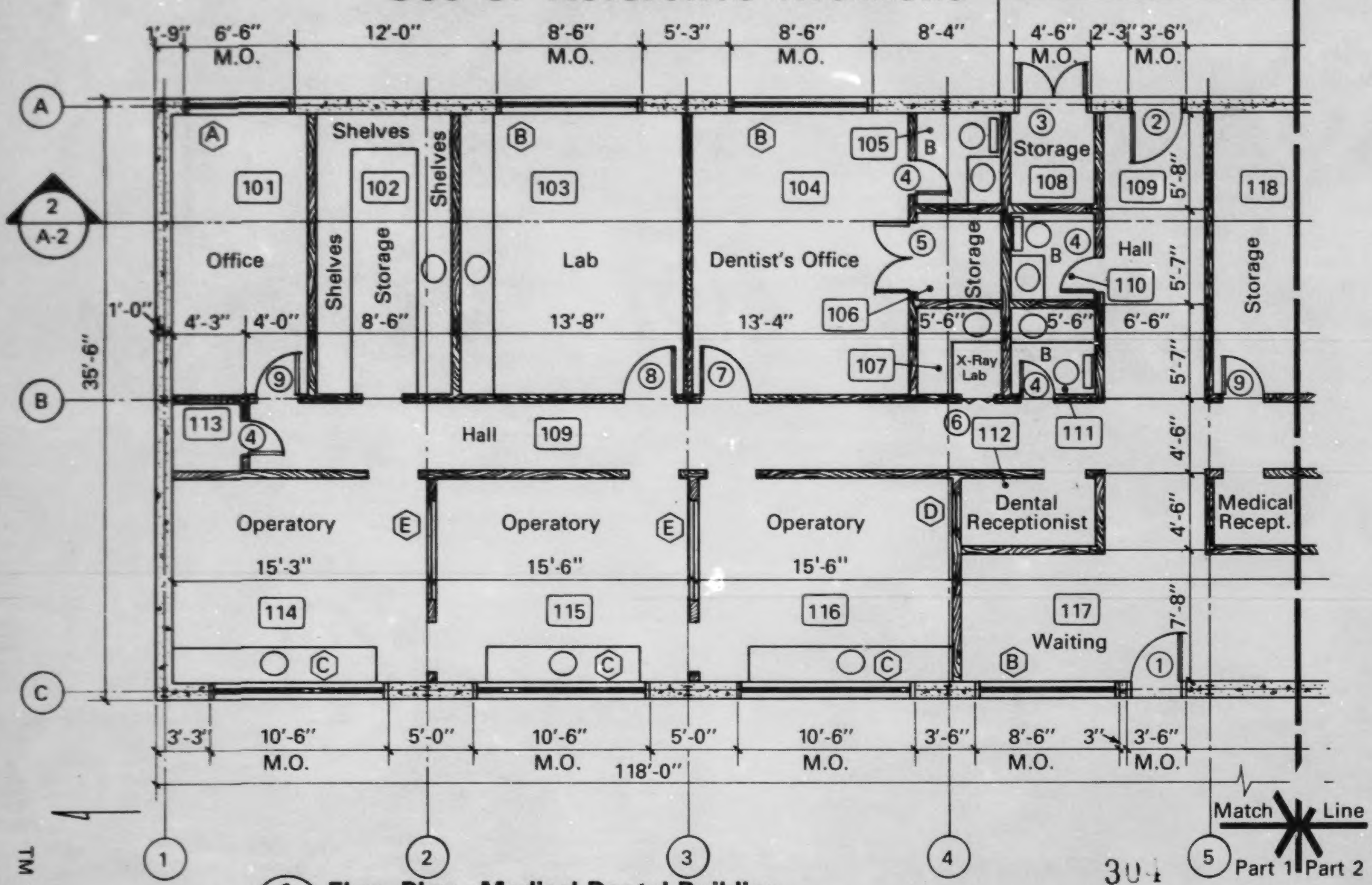
Floor Elevations


1/4" Diameter Circle
FINISHED FLOOR
EL. 116'-0"

Cutting Plane Line, Arrows, and Typical Symbols



Use of Reference Methods


1'-9"
6'-6" M.O.
12'-0"
8'-6" M.O.
5'-3"
8'-6" M.O.
8'-4"
4'-6" M.O.
2'-3"
3'-6" M.O.
A
B
C
2 / A-2
35'-6"
1'-0"
Office
101
102
Shelves
Storage
Shelves
103
Lab
104
Dentist's Office
105
106
107
X-Ray Lab
108
Storage
109
110
Hall
111
112
113
Hall 109
114
115
116
117
Waiting
118
Storage
Operatory
Operatory
Operatory
Dental Receptionist
Medical Recept.
4'-3"
4'-0"
8'-6"
13'-8"
13'-4"
5'-6"
5'-6"
6'-6"
5'-8"
5'-7"
5'-7"
4'-6"
4'-6"
7'-8"
15'-3"
15'-6"
15'-6"
3'-3"
10'-6" M.O.
5'-0"
10'-6" M.O.
5'-0"
10'-6" M.O.
3'-6"
8'-6" M.O.
3"
3'-6" M.O.
118'-0"
1
2
3
4
5
Match Line
Part 1
Part 2

1 / A-1 **Floor Plan - Medical Dental Building**
Scale: 1/8" = 1'-0"

TM 13

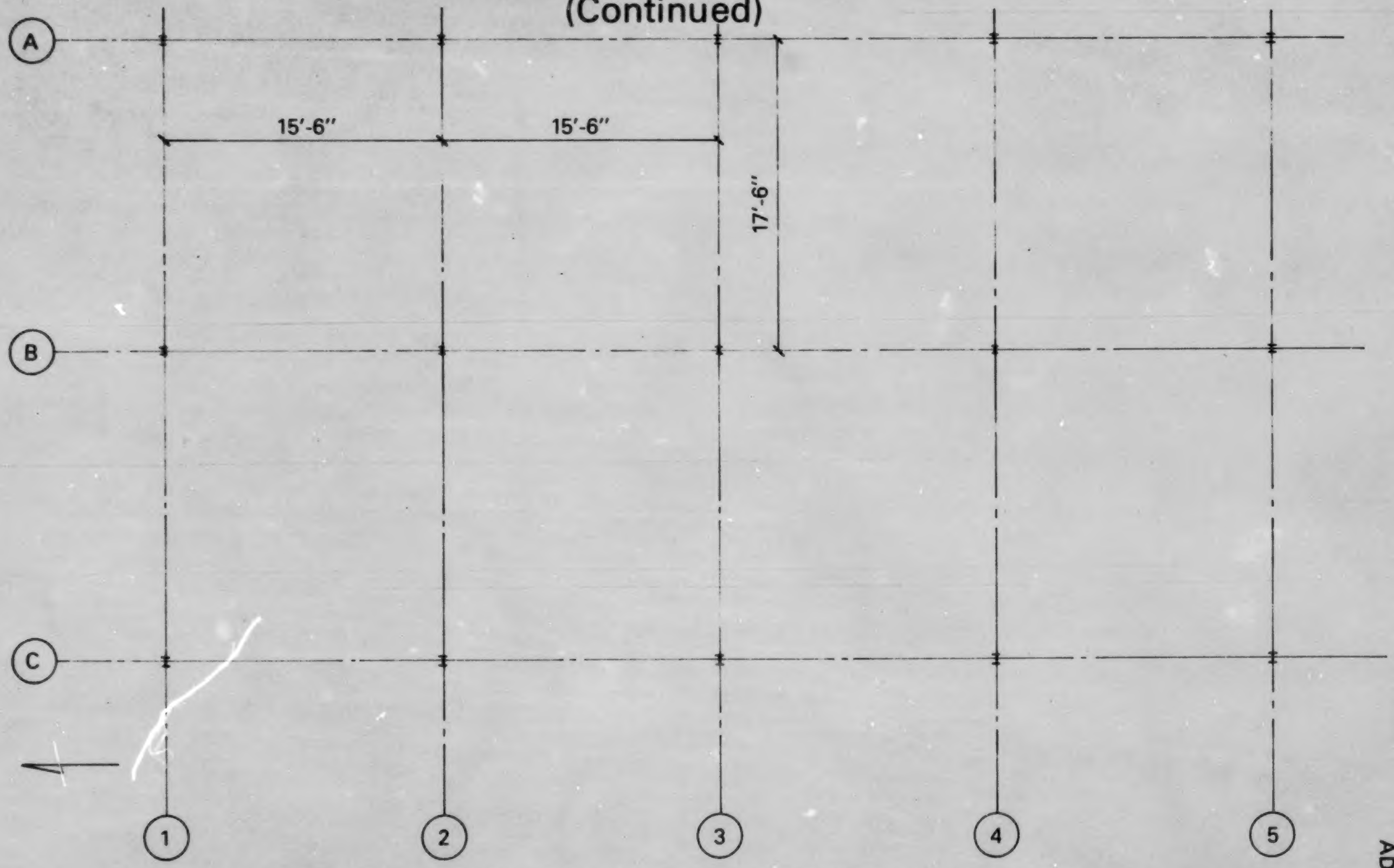
AD-375

C 303

304

Use of Reference Methods

(Continued)



A
B
C
15'-6"
15'-6"
17'-6"
1
2
3
4
5

Note: Exterior Elevations are Noted by Points of Compass. This TM Corresponds to TM13.)

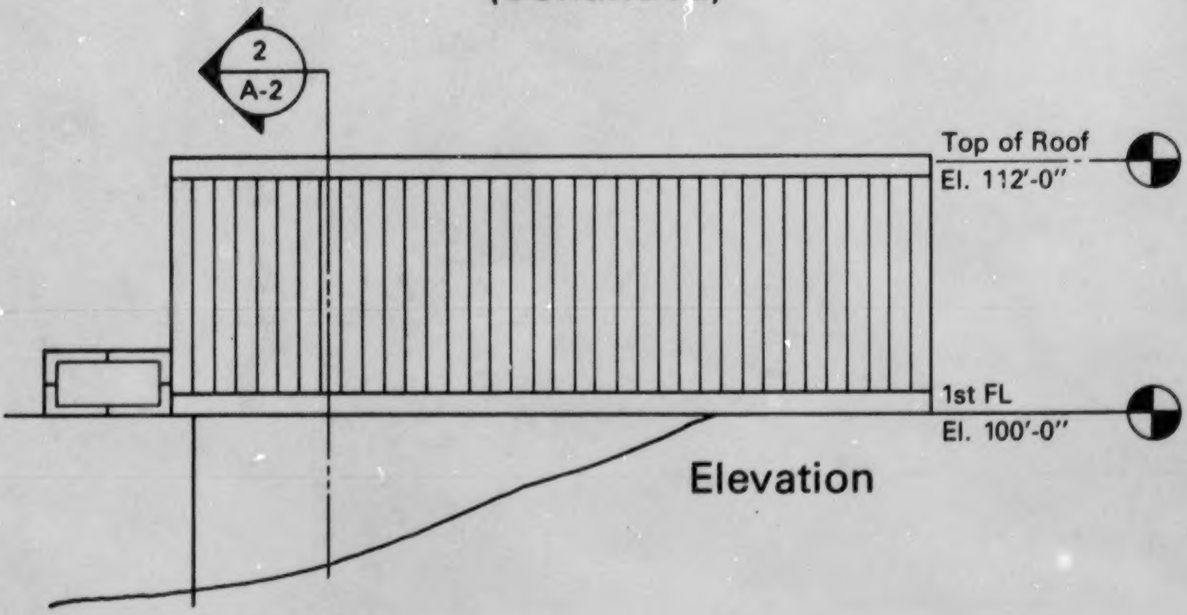
Plan Grid

TM 14

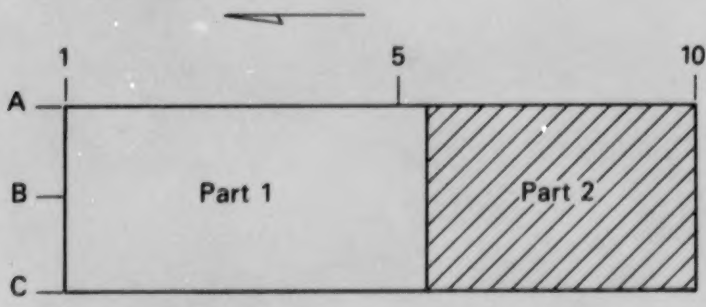
AD-377

Use of Reference Methods

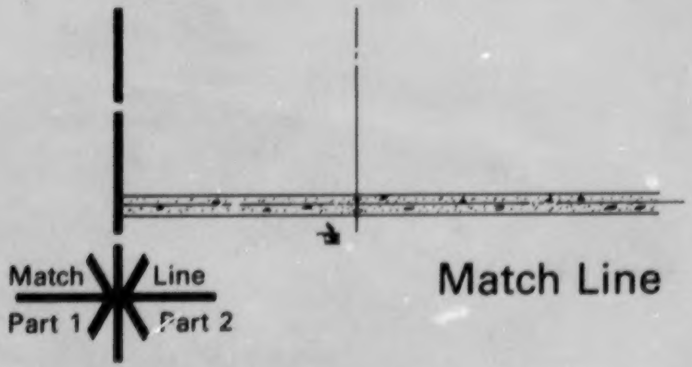
(Continued)


2
A-2
Top of Roof
El. 112'-0"
1st FL
El. 100'-0"

Elevation


1
5
10
A
B
C
Part 1
Part 2

Key Plan


Match
Line
Part 1
Part 2

Match Line

(NOTE: This TM Corresponds to TMs 13 and 14.)

Window Schedule

Sym	Size	Type	Mfgr & Catalog No.	Remarks	Glass
A	6'-0" x 4'-0"	Fixed	"E-Z set" 7248C	Alum w/ Plastic screens	Thermopane
B	8'-0" x 4'-0"	D.O.	D.O. 9648C	D.O.	D.O.
C	10'-0" x 3'-0"	D.O.	D.O. 12036C	D.O.	D.O.
D	2'-0" x 4'-0"	D.O.	D.O. 2448M	Wood Trim	1/4" P.P.
E	6'-0" x 4'-0"	D.O.	D.O. 7248M	D.O.	D.O.
F	7'-0" x 4'-0"	D.O.	D.O. 8448C	Alum w/ Plastic screens	Thermopane
G	6'-0" x 3'-0"	D.O.	D.O. 7236C		D.O.

(NOTE: This TM corresponds to TMs 13-15.)

Door Schedule

Sym	Size	Mfgr & Catalog No.		Remarks	Material	THK	Type
①	3'-0" x 6'-8"	Phillips	Housemart	3 Coats Ext trim paint	Metal	1 3/4"	Solid
②	3'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	M-1 M-5	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.
③	2'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	M-91	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.
④	2'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	A-4	Stain & Lacq. Finish	Birch	1 3/8"	Hollow Core
⑤	2'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	A-10	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.
⑥	2'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	B-17	D.O.	Pine	D.O.	Bifold
⑦	3'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	A-5	D.O.	Birch	D.O.	Solid Core
⑧	3'-0" x 6'-8"	D.O.	A-17	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	Hollow Core
⑨	2'-6" x 6'-8"	D.O.	A-21	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.
⑩	2'-10" x 6'-8"	D.O.	D-7	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.
⑪	2'-6" x 6'-8"	D.O.	D-4	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.	D.O.

(NOTE: This TM corresponds to TMs 13-16.)

Room Finish Schedule

Mark No.	Room	Floor		Base		Walls								Ceiling			Materials	Paint & Finish
						N		E		S		W						
		M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	Ht.		
101	Office	1	A	4	D	6	C	6	C	7	C	7	C	7	D	8'-0"	1. Carpet (NIC)	A. Non Req'd.
102	Storage	2	A	4	E	7	D	6	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	8'-0"	2. Vinyl Sheet	B. Wall Paper (NIC)
103	Lab	5	A	4	E	7	D	6	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	8'-0"	3. Ceramic Tile	C. Vinyl Wall Covering (NIC)
104	Dentist's Office	1	A	4	F	8	F	6	A	8	F	8	F	7	H	8'-0"	4. Wood Base	D. Semi-Gloss Enamel
105	Bath - Dentist	3	A	4	F	7	B	6	B	7	B	7	B	7	H	8'-0"	5. Vinyl Base	E. Flat Wall Latex
106	Storage	1	A	4	E	7	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	8'-0"	6. Concrete-Bare	F. Stain/Varnish
107	X-Ray Lab	2	A	5	A	7	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	7	A	8'-0"	7. Gypsum Walled	G. Semi-Transp. Stain
108	Storage	6	A	4	E	7	A	6	A	7	A	7	A	7	A	Varies	8. Wood Paneling	H. Accoustical Texture
109	Hall	1	A	5	A	7	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	7	H	7'-0"		
110	Bath - Men	3	A	5	A	7	C	7	C	7	C	7	C	7	D	8'-0"		
111	Bath - Women	3	A	5	A	7	C	7	C	7	C	7	C	7	D	8'-0"		
112	Dental Recept.	2	A	5	A	7	C	7	C	7	C	7	C	7	H	7'-0"		
113	Storage	2	A	5	A	6	A	7	A	7	A	7	A	7	A	Varies		
114	Operatory	2	A	5	A	6	D	7	D	7	D	6	D	7	H	8'-0"		
115	Operatory	2	A	5	A	7	D	7	D	7	D	6	D	7	H	8'-0"		
116	Operatory	2	A	5	A	7	D	7	D	7	D	6	D	7	H	8'-0"		
117	Waiting	1	A	4	F	8	A	8	A	8	A	6	C	7	H	Varies		
118	Storage	2	A	5	A	7	E	6	E	7	E	7	E	7	D	8'-0"		
119	Lab	2	A	4	E	7	D	6	D	7	D	7	D	7	D	8'-0"		

(NIC) = Not in Contract
M = Material
F = Finish

(NOTE: This TM corresponds to TMs 13-17.)

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1--SKETCH A FLOOR PLAN OF YOUR HOUSE

Directions: Measure the rooms in your house. On grid paper sketch a floor plan of your house. Use the scale 1/4" = 1'-0" or 1/8" = 1'-0".

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2--DRAW A FLOOR PLAN FROM A PRELIMINARY SKETCH

Directions: Draw a floor plan using the preliminary sketch your made for Assignment Sheet #7 of Unit IV, "Residential Design." Use the appropriate floor plan symbols covered in this unit.

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3--SKETCH DIFFERENT ROOFS ON AN ELEVATION

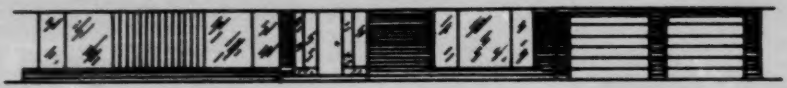
Directions: Since the type of roof greatly affects the appearance of an elevation, make four sketches of the following house and add one of the basic roof types to each sketch.

A. Hip

B. Shed

C. Flat

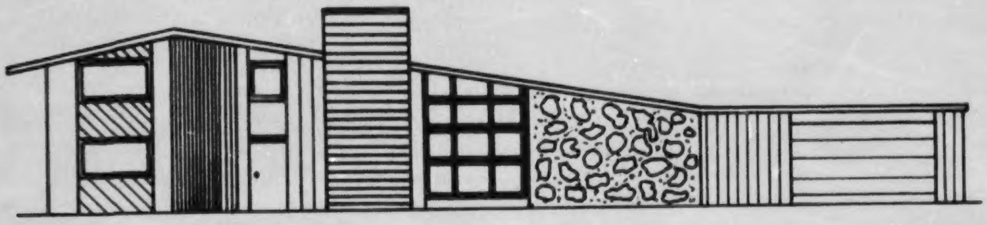
D. Gable



INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--RESKETCH AN ELEVATION TO ELIMINATE THE INCONSISTENT USE OF MATERIALS

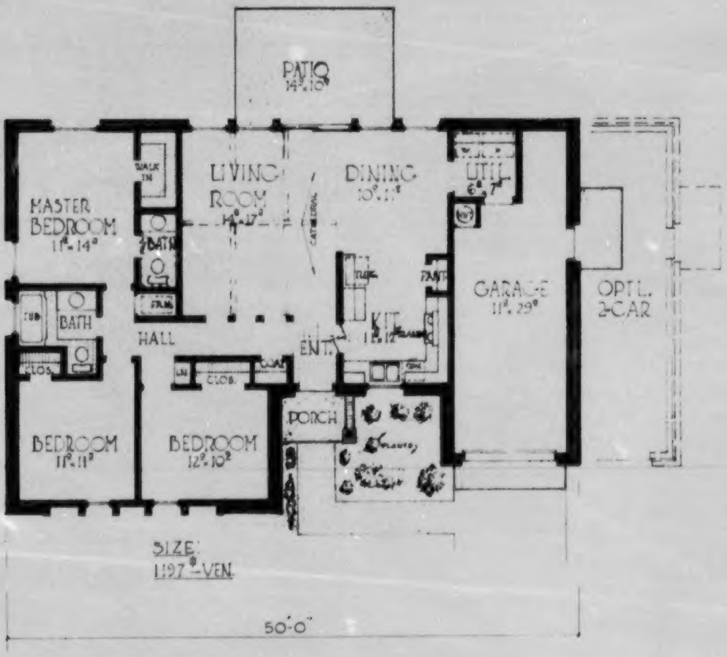
Directions: Too many materials are used on the following building. Sketch an elevation of this house and change the building materials to be consistent with the design.



INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5--SKETCH TWO DIFFERENT ELEVATIONS OF THE SAME FLOOR PLAN

Directions: Sketch two different elevations of the following floor plan. Different types of roofs or exterior material are easy ways to change the appearance of a house.


PATIO
14x10
LIVING ROOM
14x17
CATHEDRAL
DINING
10x11
UTIL.
6x7
MASTER BEDROOM
11x14
WALK IN
BATH
TUB
BATH
CLOS.
HALL
LIN
CLOS.
COAT
ENT.
KIT
11x12
PANT
GARAGE
11x29
OPT'L 2-CAR
PORCH
BEDROOM
11x11
BEDROOM
12x10
SIZE:
1197 -VEN.
50'-0"

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #6--DRAW A FRONT AND SIDE ELEVATION

Directions: Draw a front and side elevation using the floor plan you drew in Assignment Sheet #2.

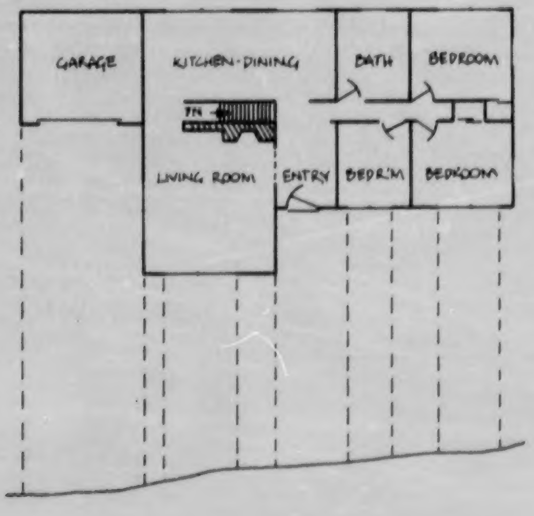
INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #7--DRAW A FRONT ELEVATION ON AN UNEVEN TERRAIN

Directions: Draw a front elevation of the following floor plan. The house will be situated on the uneven terrain as shown.

(NOTE: Instructor will supply the appropriate scale.)

SCALE: 1/32"=1'-0"


GARAGE
KITCHEN-DINING
BATH
BEDROOM
FN
LIVING ROOM
ENTRY
BEDR'M
BEDROOM

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #8--COMPLETE A DOOR AND WINDOW SCHEDULE

Directions: Complete a door and window schedule for the floor plan that you drew in Assignment Sheet #2. Use the following guidelines to complete this assignment sheet. Refer to Transparencies 16 and 17 for examples.

Guidelines:

A. Select and place a mark symbol by each door and window on the floor plan

B. Use a numeral for doors and a letter for windows

C. Use the same numeral or letter for the same sizes or types of doors and windows

D. Use a different numeral or letter for different sizes or types of doors and windows

E. Refer to *Sweet's Catalog File* or a product catalog for door and window sizes, types, catalog numbers, materials, and glazing

F. Fill in door and window schedule with corresponding mark symbol and information from catalogs

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. Any drawing used to give information for the manufacture or construction of a structure

_____b. All the information needed by a builder to complete a building exactly as intended by the designer or architect

_____c. Located in lower right hand corner of drawing sheet to identify the firm, address, title, drafter, date, project number, and sheet number

_____d. Keying symbol system used to locate information and refer from one drawing sheet to another

_____e. Organized information in tabular form which gives detailed information about such items as doors or windows

_____f. Used to match portions of a building that appear on several drawing sheets

_____g. Identifies each unit area of a building and the cross hatched unit indicates the area which appears on the drawing sheet

_____h. An explanatory list of the symbols used on a drawing or set of drawings

_____i. A wall with some type of masonry face which is attached to, but not so bound to the body of the wall as to exert a common reaction under load

_____j. Facing for the lower part of an interior wall which is finished differently from the remainder of the wall

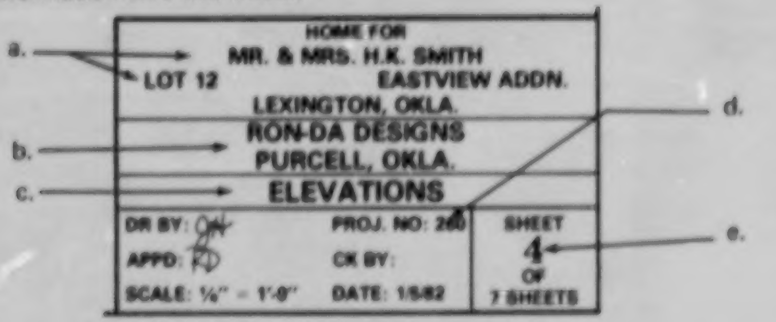
_____k. Relationship between rise and run showing slant of roof

_____l. Vertical distance covered by a roof

_____m. Horizontal distance covered by a roof

1. Key plan
2. Title block
3. Match lines
4. Working drawing
5. Rise
6. Legend
7. Reference symbols
8. Veneered wall
9. Slope
10. Set of working drawings
11. Run
12. Schedules
13. Wainscot

2. Identify information on a title block.


a.
b.
c.
d.
e.
HOME FOR
MR. & MRS. H.K. SMITH
LOT 12
EASTVIEW ADDN.
LEXINGTON, OKLA.
RON-DA DESIGNS
PURCELL, OKLA.
ELEVATIONS
DR BY:
APPD:
SCALE: ¼" = 1'-0"
PROJ. NO: 260
CK BY:
DATE: 1/5/82
SHEET
4
OF
7 SHEETS

a. ______________________ b. ______________________

c. ______________________ d. ______________________

e. ______________________

3. Complete the following list of methods for placing the title block on a drawing.

a. ______________________

b. ______________________

c. Rubber stamp

d. Hand drawn

4. Select information on a title sheet, cover sheet, or index by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Project name and address

_____b. All specifications

_____c. Numerically listed index of drawings in the set of working drawings

5. Match common U.S. scales on the right used with the correct parts of a set of working drawings.

_____a. Foundation plan	1. 1" = 20' or 40'
_____b. Construction details	2. 1/8" or 1/4" = 1'-0"
_____c. Plot plan	3. 3/4" to 1 1/2" = 1'-0"
_____d. Interior elevations	4. 3/8" to 1/2" = 1'-0"
_____e. Elevations	
_____f. Floor plan	
_____g. Wall section details	

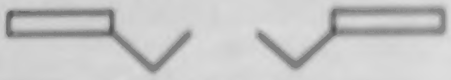
6. Arrange in order a set of residential working drawings by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. HVAC plan
_____b. Foundation plan
_____c. Interior elevations and details
_____d. Floor plan
_____e. Plumbing
_____f. Sections
_____g. Elevations
_____h. Plot or site plan
_____i. Electrical plan

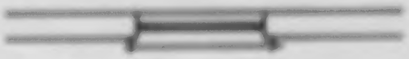
7. Complete the following chart of abbreviations.

AO	__________	LR	__________
_____	Concrete	MATL	__________
_____	Dining room	_____	On center
_____	Finish floor	_____	Solid core
GL	__________	WS	__________
_____	Kitchen		

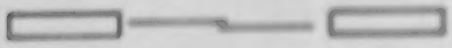
8. Identify plan symbols of the following doors and windows.



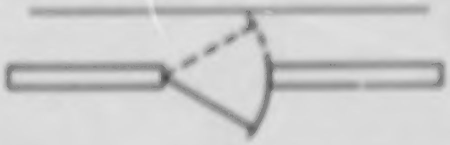
a. __________



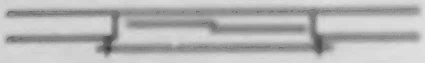
b. __________



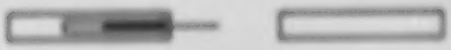
c. __________



d. __________

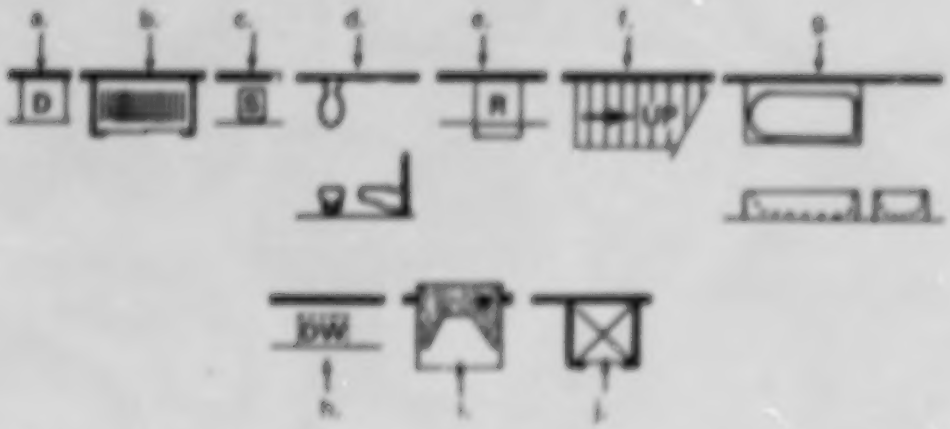


e. __________



f. __________

9. Identify plan symbols of the following bathroom and kitchen fixtures and built-in components.



a. ____________________ b. ____________________

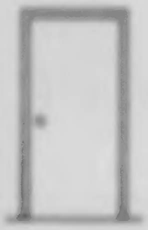
c. ____________________ d. ____________________

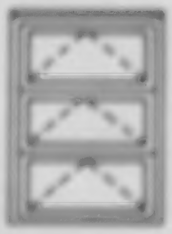
e. ____________________ f. ____________________

g. ____________________ h. ____________________

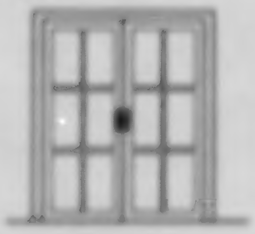
i. ____________________ j. ____________________

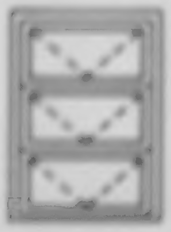
10. Identify elevation symbols of the following doors and windows.





a. ____________________ b. ____________________



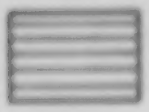


c. ____________________ d. ____________________

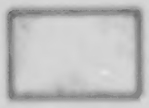
11. Match the exterior materials on the right with the correct symbols.

1. Glass
2. Rock
3. Horizontal wood siding
4. Wood shingle
5. Stucco
6. Brick
7. Concrete block

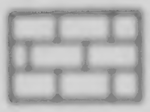
_____a.



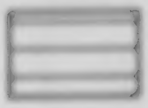
_____b.



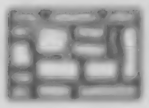
_____c.



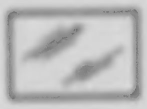
_____d.



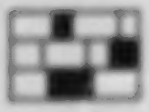
_____e.



_____f.



_____g.



12. Select true statements concerning factors to consider when drawing elevations by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Always use formal balance

_____b. Every elevation should have some point of emphasis

_____c. Use at least four types of exterior sidings for variety

_____d. The basic horizontal lines of an elevation are the vanishing lines and property lines

_____e. Sufficient roof overhang is needed to afford protection from sun, rain, and snow

_____f. Type of roof does not affect the appearance of an elevation

_____g. Slope of roof needs to be calculated in order to show the slant of a roof

13. Arrange in order the steps in projecting elevations by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

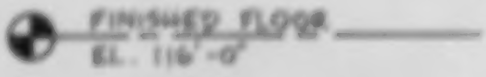
_____a. Lay out door and window outlines, and draw building material divisions

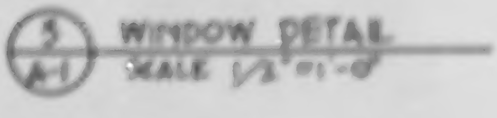
_____b. Add details and siding symbols, draw vegetation, and add basement outline (if used)

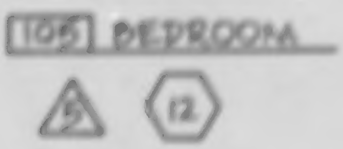
_____c. Lay out roof slope, add roof overhang, locate chimney (if used), and block in outline

_____d. Project floor plan outline and door, window, and chimney locations; draw horizontal lines

14. Match reference methods on the right with the correct symbols.

_____a. 

_____b. 

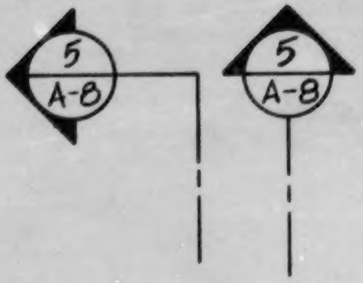
_____c. 

1. Feature

2. Floor plan and elevation

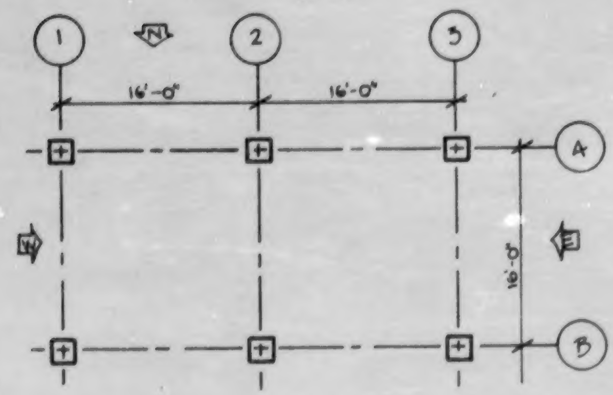
3. Floor elevation

______d.



4. Plan grid
5. Drawing sheet index
6. Schedules
7. Section details, exterior, or interior elevations

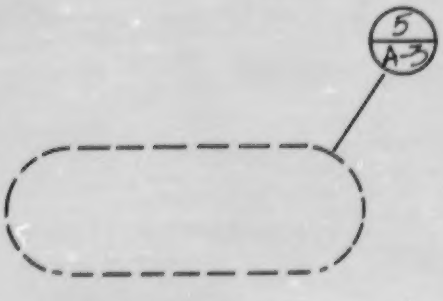
______e.


1
2
3
N
16'-0"
16'-0"
A
B
16'-0"
E

______f.

NO.	TITLE
1	Plot Plan
2	Foundation Plan
3	Floor Plan
4	Elevations
5	Sections
6	Details
7	Plumbing Plan
8	HVAC Plan
9	Electrical Plan

______g.



15. List three types of schedules.

a. ____

b. ____

c. ____

16. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Sketch a floor plan of your house.

b. Draw a floor plan from a preliminary sketch.

c. Sketch different roofs on an elevation.

d. Resketch an elevation to eliminate the inconsistent use of materials.

e. Sketch two different elevations of the same floor plan.

f. Draw a front and side elevation.

g. Draw a front elevation on an uneven terrain.

h. Complete a door and window schedule.

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

INTRODUCTION TO WORKING DRAWINGS
UNIT VI

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 4
   b. 10
   c. 2
   d. 7
   e. 12
   f. 3
   g. 1
   h. 6
   i. 8
   j. 13
   k. 9
   l. 5
   m. 11

2. a. Name of owner and address of site
   b. Firm or name of school
   c. Title of sheet
   d. Project or job number
   e. Sheet number

3. a. Commercially printed on vellum or film
   b. Plastic film appliques

4. a, c

5. a. 2
   b. 3
   c. 1
   d. 4
   e. 2
   f. 2
   g. 3

6. a. 8
   b. 2
   c. 6
   d. 3
   e. 9
   f. 5
   g. 4
   h. 1
   i. 7

7.

AO	Arched opening	LR	Living room
CONC	Concrete	MATL	Material
DR	Dining room	OC	On center
FIN FL	Finish floor	SC	Solid core
GL	Glass	WS	Weather stripping
K	Kitchen		

8. a. Bi-fold door
   b. Double hung window
   c. Sliding door
   d. Double action door
   e. Sliding window
   f. Pocket door

9. a. Dryer
   b. Closet
   c. Sink
   d. Wall-hung water closet
   e. Refrigerator
   f. Stairs
   g. Bathtub
   h. Dishwasher
   i. Fireplace
   j. Shower

10. a. Flush door
    b. Awning window
    c. French doors
    d. Hopper window

11. a. 6
    b. 5
    c. 7
    d. 3
    e. 2
    f. 1
    g. 4

12. b, e, g

13. a. 3
    b. 4
    c. 2
    d. 1

14. a. 3
    b. 7
    c. 6
    d. 2
    e. 4
    f. 5
    g. 1

15. Any three of the following:
    a. Windows
    b. Doors
    c. Room-finish
    d. Electrical
    e. Plumbing
    f. Footing, column, or beam

16. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

DIMENSIONING
UNIT VII

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to distinguish between the correct and incorrect use of dimensioning and select true statements concerning dimensioning. The student should also be able to dimension a floor plan and elevation, prepare a floor plan according to a modular system, and dimension a detail using metric system. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to dimensioning with the correct definitions.
2. Select the line technique at corners which is most used.
3. Distinguish between the correct and incorrect uses of dimensioning.
4. Complete a chart for drawing wall thicknesses.
5. Select true statements concerning general dimensioning rules.
6. Select true statements concerning floor, foundation, and basement plan dimensioning.
7. Select true statements concerning site and plot plan dimensioning.
8. Select true statements concerning elevation dimensioning.
9. Select true statements concerning detail and wall section dimensioning.
10. Select true statements concerning HVAC plan dimensioning.
11. Select true statements concerning plumbing plan dimensioning.
12. List advantages of the modular system.
13. Select true statements concerning modular dimensioning.
14. Select true statements concerning metric dimensioning.
15. Complete a chart of dimensioning abbreviations.

16. Demonstrate the ability to:

    a. Identify dimensioning errors.

    b. Dimension a floor plan.

    c. Dimension an elevation.

    d. Prepare and dimension a floor plan according to a modular system.

    e. Dimension a detail using metric system (optional).

DIMENSIONING
UNIT VII

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Discuss the various methods of dimensioning.

VII. Provide a set of residential working drawings as a reference for students.

VIII. Take a field trip to a local lumber company to determine what lumber is available in metric sizes.

IX. Provide 8 x 8 fade-out gridded vellum for use in Assignment Sheet #4.

X. Provide metric equivalent charts for use in Assignment Sheet #5. This is an optional assignment.

XI. Discuss the suggested pencil lead grades (HB, H, etc.) for various lines.

XII. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

  A. Objective sheet

  B. Information sheet

  C. Transparency masters

    1. TM 1--Arrowheads and Leaders
    2. TM 2--Exterior Wall Dimensioning
    3. TM 3--Floor Plan Dimensioning
    4. TM 4--Plot Plan Dimensioning
    5. TM 5--Elevation Dimensioning
    6. TM 6--Wall Section Dimensioning

7. TM 7–Detail Dimensioning
8. TM 8–Modular System
9. TM 9–Modular Dimensioning
10. TM 10–Metric Dimensioning

D. Assignment sheets

1. Assignment Sheet #1–Identify Dimensioning Errors
2. Assignment Sheet #2–Dimension a Floor Plan
3. Assignment Sheet #3–Dimension an Elevation
4. Assignment Sheet #4–Prepare and Dimension a Floor Plan According to a Modular System
5. Assignment Sheet #5–Dimension a Detail Using Metric System (Optional)

E. Test

F. Answers to test

II. References:

A. Wyatt, William E. *General Architectural Drawing.* Peoria, IL 61614: Charles A. Bennett Co., Inc., 1969.

B. Brown, Walter C. *Blueprint Reading for Construction Residential and Commercial.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1980.

C. Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. *Architectural Drawing and Planning.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

D. Obermeyer, Thomas. *Architectural Technology.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1976.

E. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

F. Wakita, Osamu A. and Richard M. Linde. *The Professional Practice of Architectural Detailing.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1977.

G. Weidhaas, Ernest R. *Architectural Drafting and Construction.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1974.

DIMENSIONING
UNIT VII

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

A. Dimensioning–Recording the actual size of the building and its many parts accurately on a drawing

B. Location dimension–Dimension that locates a feature on an object

C. Size dimension–Dimension which tells how large or small an object is

D. Detail dimension–Dimension for a small part

E. Overall dimension–Dimension showing the total length of an object

F. Special notes–Notes which give the name of kinds of materials or operations

(NOTE: Even though identical materials are called out on other details, sections, elevations, or on same sheet, it is standard practice to identify all materials again.)

G. General notes–Notes which give procedures or information usually placed at bottom or right hand of sheet

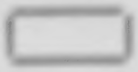
H. Module–A standard unit of measurement

I. Modular system–Where most materials are equal in size to an established module or a multiple of that module

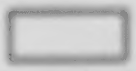
J. Call out–Specific note that is directed to a specific point on the drawing by the use of a leader

II. Line technique at corners

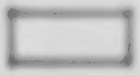
A. Poor



B. Good



C. Most used

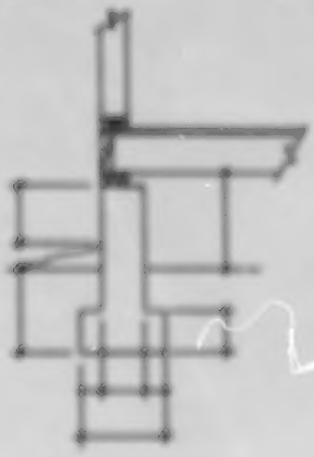


INFORMATION SHEET

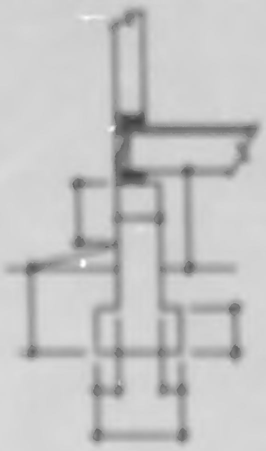
III. Correct and incorrect uses of dimensioning

A. Group dimension lines

1. Correct

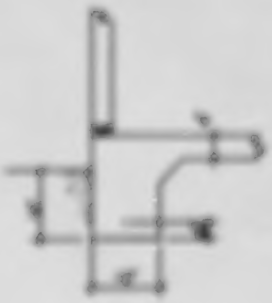


2. Incorrect

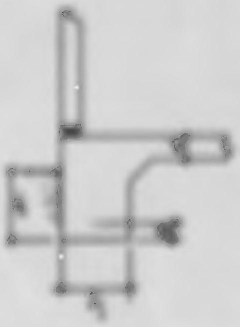


B. Location dimensions

1. Correct



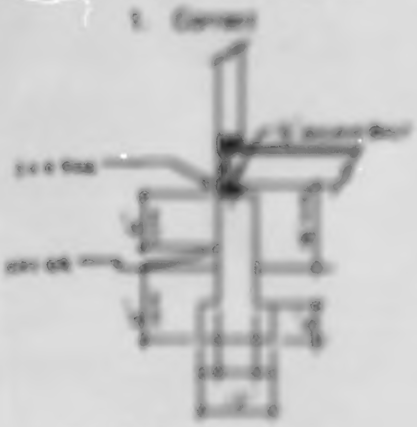
2. Incorrect



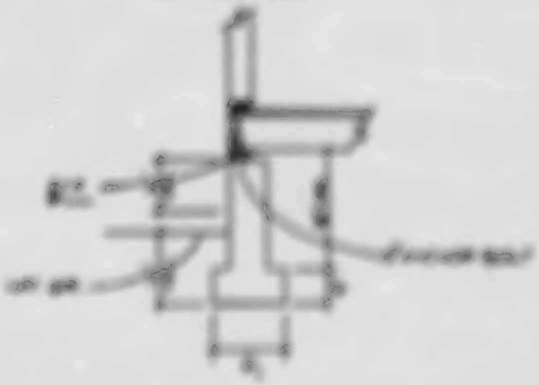
INFORMATION SHEET

C. Crossing dimension lines

1. Correct

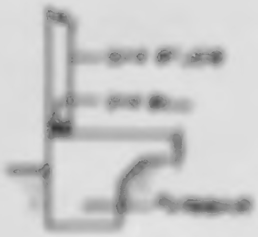


2. Incorrect

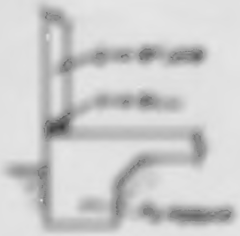


D. Leaders

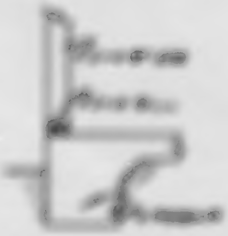
1. Best



2. Acceptable

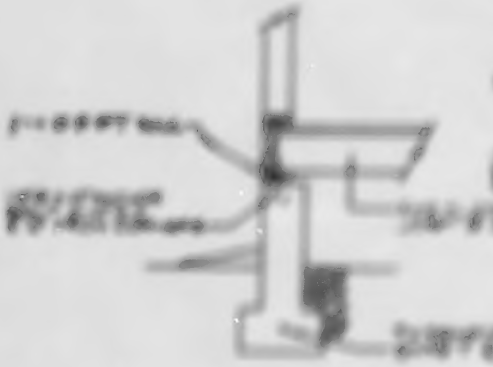


3. Not recommended

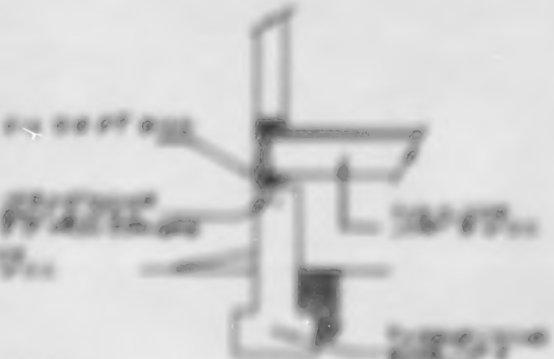


E. Location of leaders

1. Correct



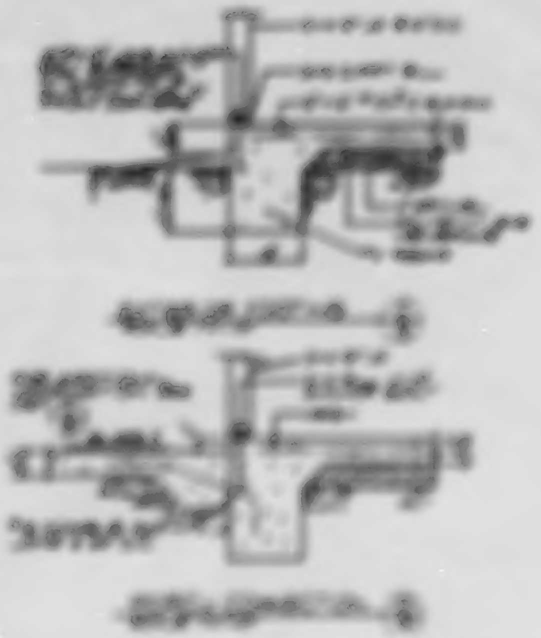
2. Incorrect



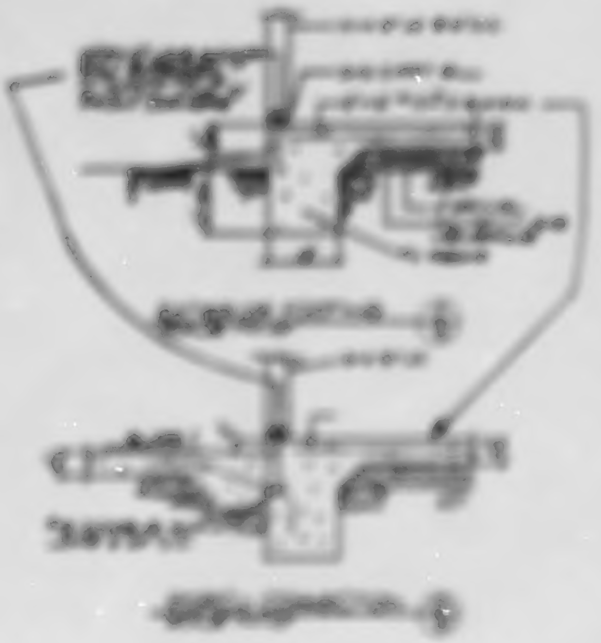
INFORMATION SHEET

F. Note drawing

1. Correct

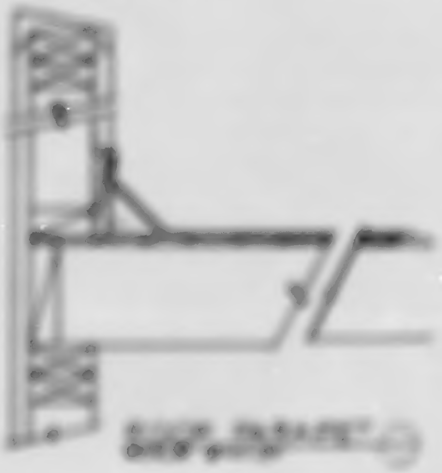


2. Incorrect

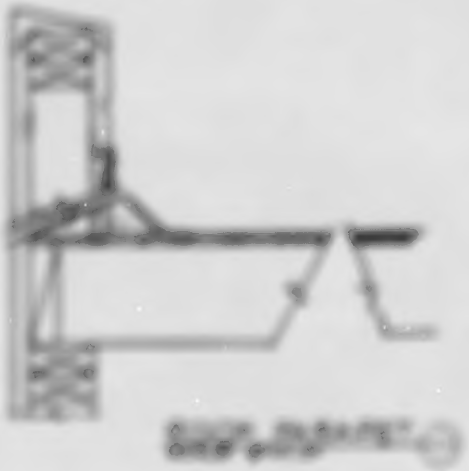


G. Break symbols

1. Correct


ROOF PARAPET

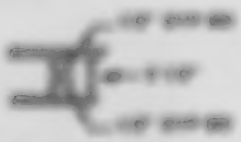
2. Incorrect


ROOF PARAPET

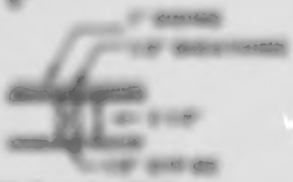
INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Drawing wall thicknesses

A. Wood frame walls	Actual size	Drawn size
1. Interior	4 1/2"	5"
2. Interior (with vent pipe plumbing)	6 1/2"	6 to 8"
3. Exterior	6"	6"


1/2" dry wall
2 × 4 = 3 1/2"
1/2" dry wall

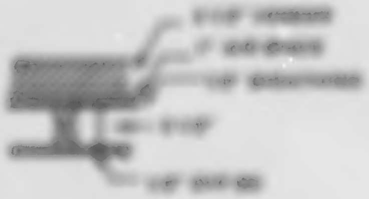
4 1/2" Interior Wall


1" siding
1/2" sheathing
2 × 4 = 3 1/2"
1/2" dry wall

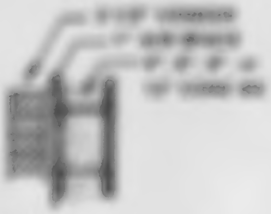
6" Exterior Wall

(NOTE: Thickness of exterior walls may vary because of rigid insulation siding materials.)

B. Brick veneer walls	Actual size	Drawn size
1. Veneer on frame	9"	10"
2. Veneer on conc. block		

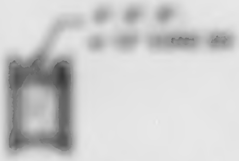

3 1/2" veneer
1" air space
1/2" sheathing
2 × 4 = 3 1/2"
1/2" dry wall

9" Exterior Wall


3 1/2" veneer
1" air space
4", 6", 8", or 12" conc. blk.

Veneer Masonry Wall

C. Concrete masonry unit walls	4", 6", 8", or 12"	4", 6", 8", or 12"


4", 6", 8", or 12" conc. blk.

Masonry Wall

INFORMATION SHEET

V. General dimensioning rules (Transparency 1)

A. Everything is dimensioned the actual size, even though it is drawn to scale

B. Dimensions should not be crowded; keep dimensions at least 3/8" from the drawing and from each other

C. An unbroken dimension line should be used and the dimension should be placed above it

D. Distances over 12" are recorded as feet and inches

(NOTE: If the distance is an even number of feet, record the inches with a zero.)

Example: 6' 0"

E. Distances less than one foot are given in inches

Example: 6", not 0' 6"

F. Dimensions are placed on a drawing so they can be read from the bottom or right side of the drawing

(NOTE: This is the aligned method.)

G. Every drawing and detail should have the scale indicated even if on the same page and drawn to the same scale

H. Anything unusual should be explained with a note

(NOTE: Notes are lettered horizontally so they can be read from the bottom of the page and the letters are usually 1/8" high.)

I. Dimension lines are drawn thinner than visible lines used to draw the object

J. Extension lines should not cross dimension lines

K. Extension lines may cross each other

L. Do not dimension to hidden lines unless there is no other way

M. Whenever possible, line up a series of dimensions

N. Place the shortest dimensions near the object; the overall dimension should be on the outside

O. When a space to be dimensioned is too small to receive the figures, place them outside of it

P. Dots or 45° diagonal lines may be used in place of arrowheads

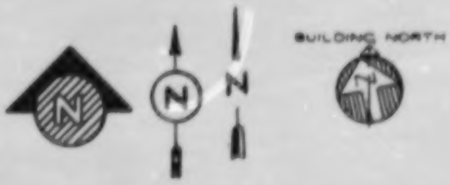
(NOTE: Do not mix dots, diagonal lines, and arrows.)

INFORMATION SHEET

Q. Dimension numerals and notes are lettered 1/8" high

R. North arrow should be attractive but simple on floor and plot plan

Examples:



VI. Floor, foundation, and basement plan dimensioning (Transparencies 2 and 3)

(NOTE: The floor plan probably contains more information and references than any other sheet in a set of working drawings.)

A. Dimensions are placed on all sides of the plan

(NOTE: Aligned method is used.)

B. All projections or offsets are dimensioned

C. Overall dimensions are placed on all sides of the drawing

(NOTE: The builder should not have to add or use a scale to find a dimension.)

D. Cumulative dimensions should be added to see that their total equals the overall dimension

E. Identify fixtures and built-in items which cannot be clearly drawn, such as a clothes chute, dishwasher, or garbage disposal

F. The size and direction of ceiling joists and floor joists can be shown by symbol and noted

G. Rooms are identified by name, such as living room

(NOTE: The bedrooms should be numbered to assist the builder when decisions are made concerning the color of paint in the room and other related decisions.)

H. The size and depth of the fireplace opening are commonly shown and hearth material is indicated

I. The width and length of each room is given, and interior walls are located by dimensioning to the center line of wall

J. When dimensioning an exterior frame wall, the dimension extends over the stud

INFORMATION SHEET

K. When dimensioning an exterior masonry veneer wall, 5" is allowed beyond the face of the wall

(NOTE: The veneer overall dimension is given.)

L. Doors and windows in frame walls are dimensioned to their center lines

(NOTE: These dimensions are located on the floor plan.)

M. Doors and windows in solid masonry walls are usually dimensioned to the masonry sides of the opening (Transparency 2)

(NOTE: These dimensions are located on the floor plan.)

N. Door and window sizes can be lettered directly or coded on the floor plan to a door and window schedule

(NOTE: Several code systems are commonly found; one may use numbers for doors and letters for windows.)

O. Any change in floor elevation must be indicated by a line plus a note

P. Floor materials with varying thicknesses must be shown by a solid line and noted

Q. Columns, beams, and piers are located by dimensions to their center lines

R. All obvious dimensions are omitted

(NOTE: Interior doors, permanent fixtures, or cabinet doors are not dimensioned.)

S. Areas to be cut or filled should be noted

T. Materials in concrete floors should be noted

VII. Site and plot plan dimensioning (Transparency 4)

A. The boundaries of a plot are described by dimensions given in 100ths of a foot

Example: 153.75'

B. Bearings are given to show the compass direction of all the boundaries

Example: N 3° 27' E

C. Contour lines are dimensioned by indicating their elevation above sea level or some other known datum level

D. Dimensions of required setback from street are shown

E. Dimensions of building, location of sidewalks and driveway, easement, flood plain, and retaining walls are shown

INFORMATION SHEET

F. Water well or private sewage disposal system to be used are indicated

G. Lot description, lot number, street, scale, and north arrow are noted

H. Existing or new plantings of trees and shrubs are noted if in contract

I. Utility service should be indicated by note and symbols

VIII. Elevation dimensioning (Transparency 5)

A. The ceiling line and finished floor line are indicated and the total distance between these is shown

B. Roof slope is indicated by the symbol ⌈

(NOTE: The example in Transparency 5 is 10 ⌈ 12 ; this indicates 10" of rise in the roof for every 12" of run.)

C. Exterior materials are noted such as brick, asphalt shingles, or board and batten siding

D. The overhang of the roof at the eaves is frequently dimensioned

E. The finished grade is indicated with a note

F. Window sizes and door sizes are sometimes lettered below the door or window, but the door and window schedule is preferred

G. Heights of chimneys above the ridge line are dimensioned

H. Crawl space is called out

IX. Detail and wall section dimensioning (Transparencies 6 and 7)

A. The dimensions, material, and location of all members in a wall section are specified

B. Draw materials to their **actual** size

C. Materials are noted to their **nominal** size

D. The floor, fill, foundation wall, and footing are dimensioned

E. Finish floor to finished ceiling distance is specified

F. Cabinets and other built-ins require only intermediate and overall dimensions

G. Fireplace details should be completely dimensioned and materials should be indicated with a note

H. Stair details should have tread and riser indicated and total stair rise and run noted

I. Notes should be kept in straight line for neatness

INFORMATION SHEET

X. HVAC plan dimensioning

A. Main supply, runs, and return line sizes are noted

B. Volume of air output and sizes for registers are noted

C. Information about heating-cooling unit may be described in a general note

D. Dimension location of heat-cooling source on foundation plan

XI. Plumbing plan dimensioning

(NOTE: Only partial plans are usually shown on small buildings and detail information is included on the floor plans.)

A. Location and size of soil stacks, vents, drains, and supply lines should be noted on plan view or isometric drawing

B. Size collars for passage of pipes in foundation walls on foundation drawings

C. Note, describe, and dimension septic tank and drain field

D. Note special traps and drains

E. Locate water meter and water lines entering building

XII. Advantages of the modular system (Transparency 8)

A. Reduces cutting and fitting

B. Reduces building cost

C. Standardizes sizes of building materials

D. Reduces drafting errors by reducing fractional dimensions

XIII. Modular dimensioning (Transparency 9)

A. Show light 4" grids on all plans, elevations, and sections drawn to scale of 3/4" = 1'-0".

(NOTE: For smaller scales, use 4' grid.)

B. Center the building parts on grid lines or between grid lines

C. To indicate location of building parts, use grid dimensions

D. Use a dot to indicate any position not on a grid line

INFORMATION SHEET

XIV. Metric dimensioning (Transparency 10)

A. Measurements in millimeters are given in whole numbers

B. It is not necessary to label mm on dimensions

(NOTE: A note such as ALL DIMENSIONS SHOWN IN MILLIMETERS may be used.)

C. Fractional parts are expressed in decimals

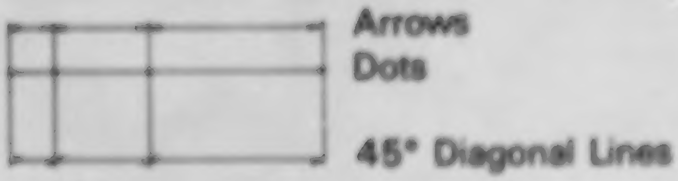
D. When the size of an item is shown, all dimensions should be in the same unit

(NOTE: Occasionally meters are used, but the preferred unit of measurement is millimeters.)

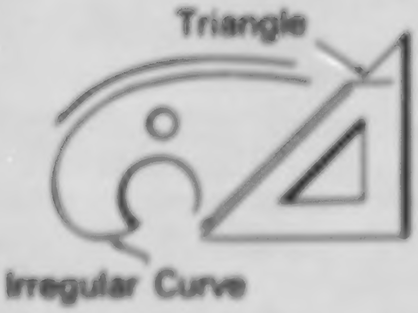
XV. Dimensioning abbreviations

Air conditioning	A/C	Furred	FUR
Anchor bolt	AB	Hot water	HW
Asphalt	ASPH	Joint	JT
Basement	BSMT	Kitchen	KIT
Bedroom	BR	Lavatory	LAV
Block	BLK	Living room	LR
Building	BLDG	Long	LG
Cabinet	CAB	Masonry opening	MO
Ceiling	CLG	Medicine cabinet	MC
Ceiling joist	CJ	On center	OC
Center to center	C to C	Overhead	O.H.
Closet	CL	Refrigerator	REF
Column	COL	Reinforcing bar	REBAR
Concrete	CONC	Sheathing	SHTHG
Dining room	DR	Siding	SDG
Dishwasher	DW	Sill cock	SC
Dryer	D	Specification	SPEC
Each way	E.W.	Veneer	VNR
Elevation	EL	Washer	W
Finish	FIN	Water closet	WC
Fireplace	FPL	Weatherproof	WP
Floor	FL	Wire mesh	WM
Foundation	FND	Wire mesh	WM
Frame	FR		
Furnace	FURN		

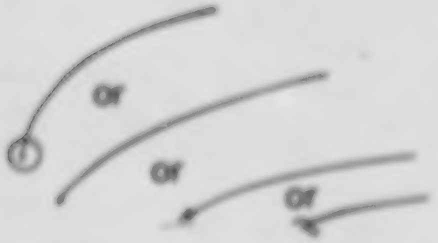
Arrowheads and Leaders


Arrows
Dots
45° Diagonal Lines

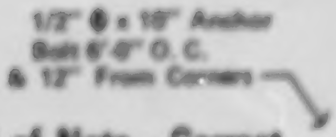
Arrowhead Types


Triangle
Irregular Curve

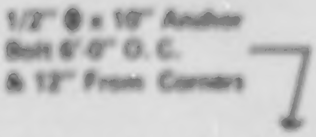
Construction of Leaders



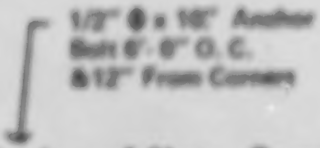
Surface Note Leaders


1/2" Ø x 10" Anchor
Bolt 6'-0" O. C.
& 12" From Corners

End of Note --Correct


1/2" Ø x 10" Anchor
Bolt 6'-0" O. C.
& 12" From Corners

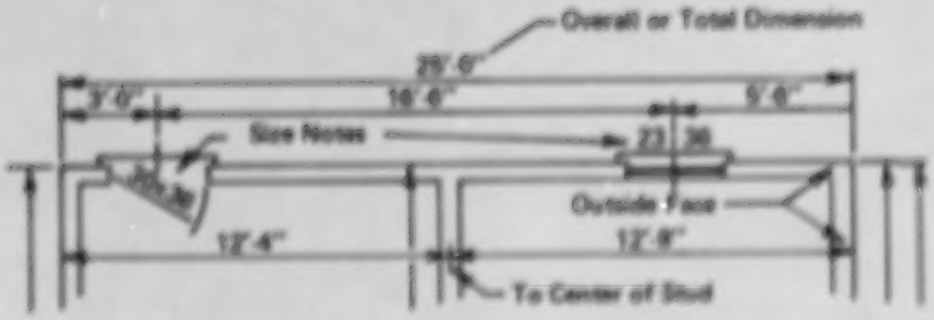
In Middle of Note--Incorrect


1/2" Ø x 10" Anchor
Bolt 6'-0" O. C.
&12" From Corners

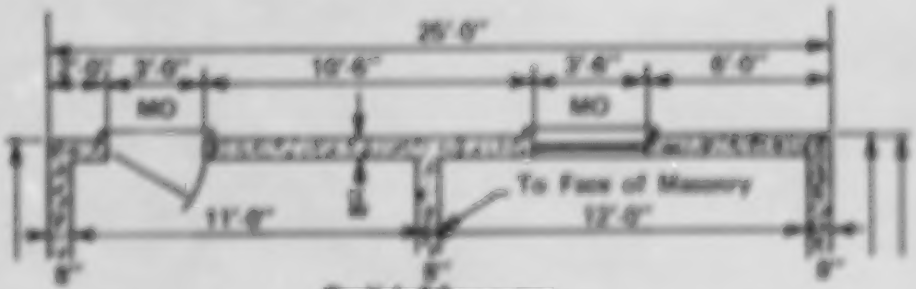
Beginning of Note--Correct

Leader Origin

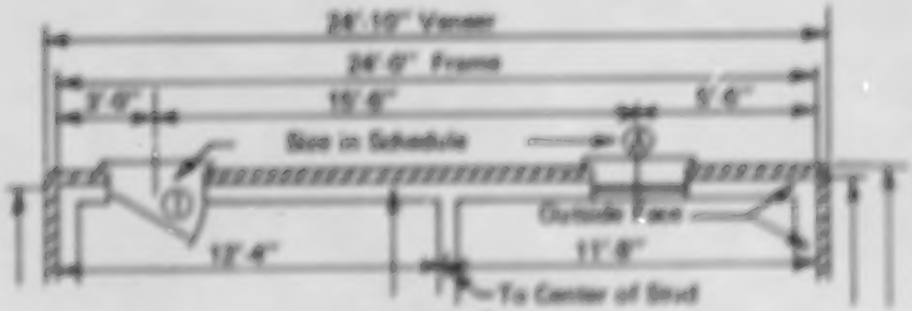
Exterior Wall Dimensioning


Overall or Total Dimension
25'-0"
3'-0"
16'-6"
5'-6"
Size Notes
23
36
Outside Face
12'-4"
12'-8"
To Center of Stud

Frame

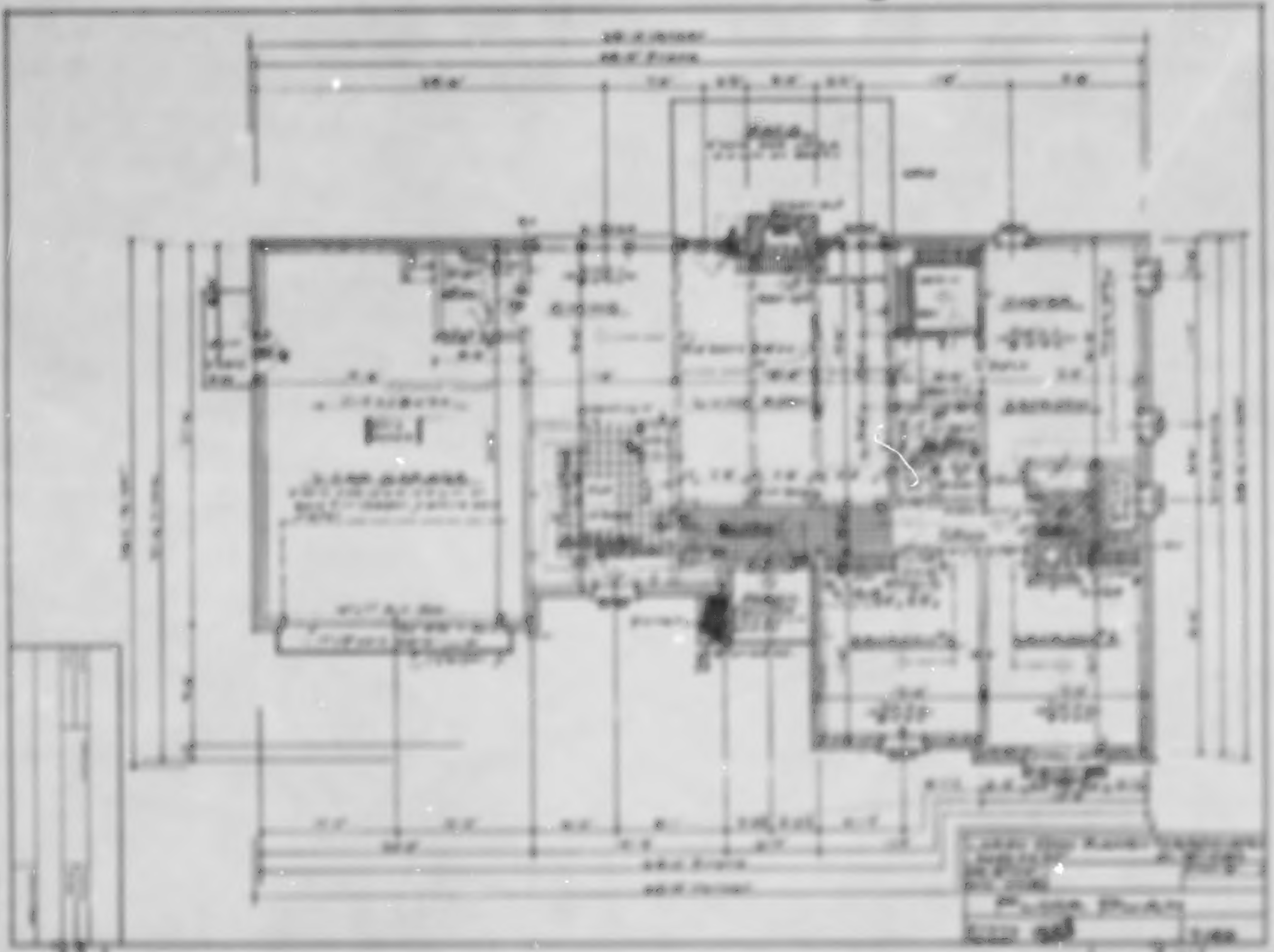

25'-0"
2'-0"
3'-0"
10'-6"
3'-6"
6'-0"
MO
MO
To Face of Masonry
11'-0"
12'-0"
8"
8"
8"

Solid Masonry

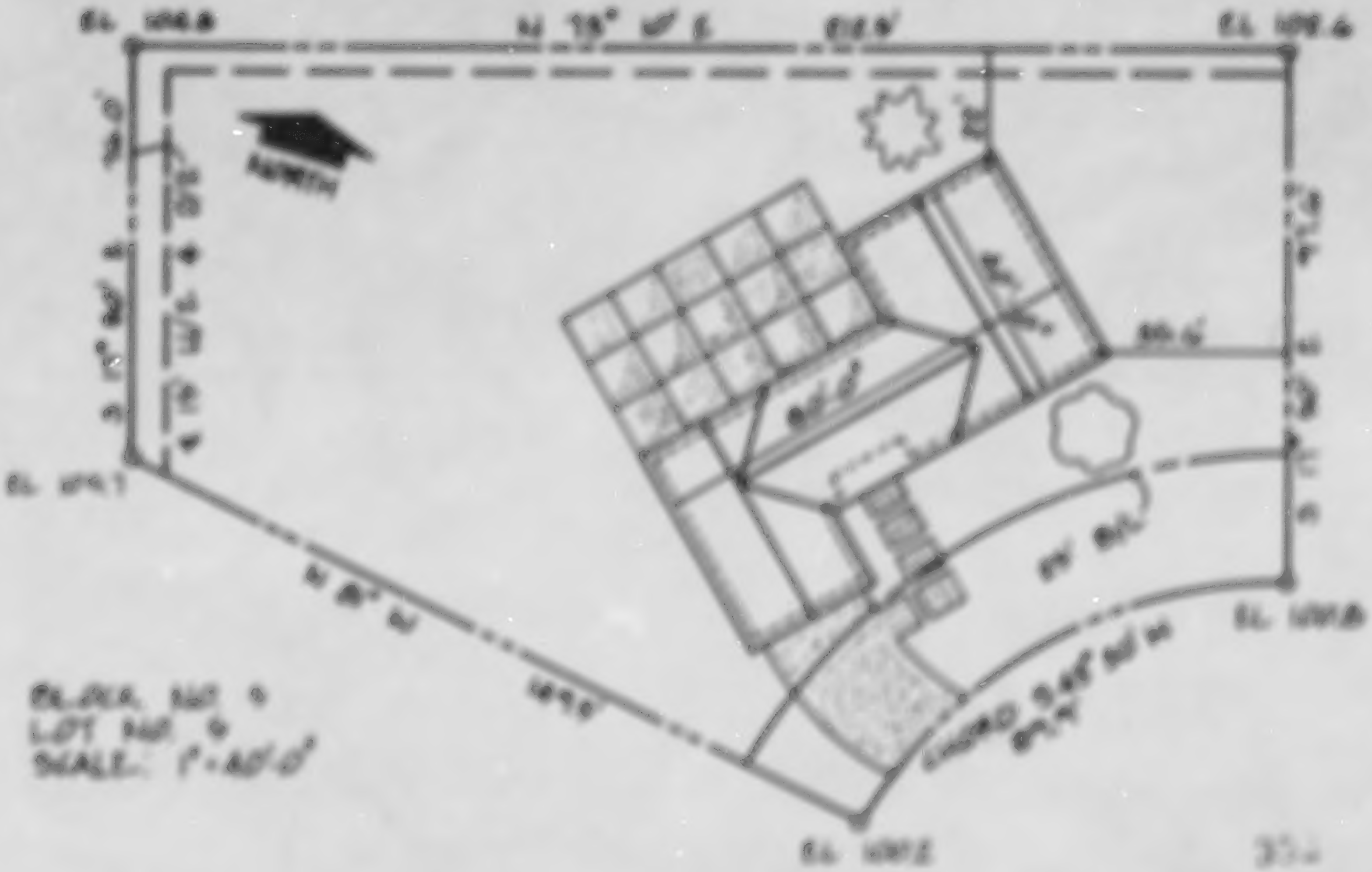

24'-10" Veneer
24'-0" Frame
3'-0"
15'-6"
5'-6"
Size in Schedule
①
A
Outside Face
12'-4"
11'-8"
To Center of Stud

Masonry Veneer

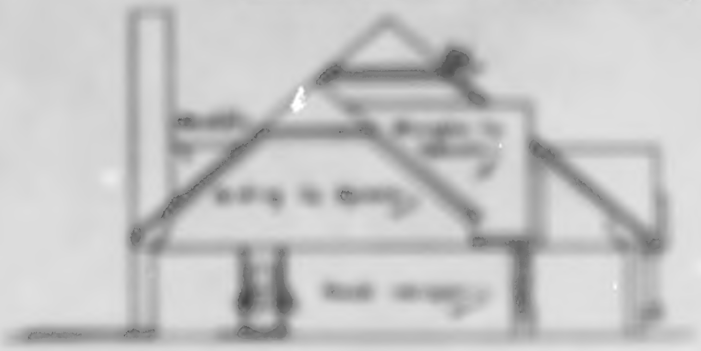
Floor Plan Dimensioning



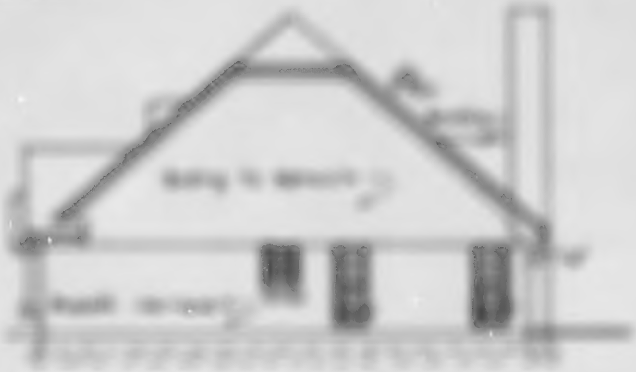
Plot Plan Dimensioning


NORTH
EL.
EL.
EL.
EL.
EL.
CHORD
BLOCK NO.
LOT NO.
SCALE:

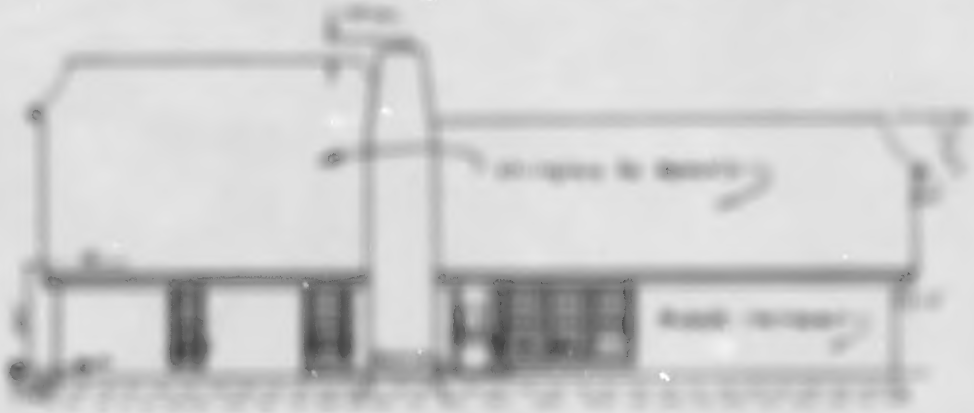
Elevation Dimensioning



[illegible]



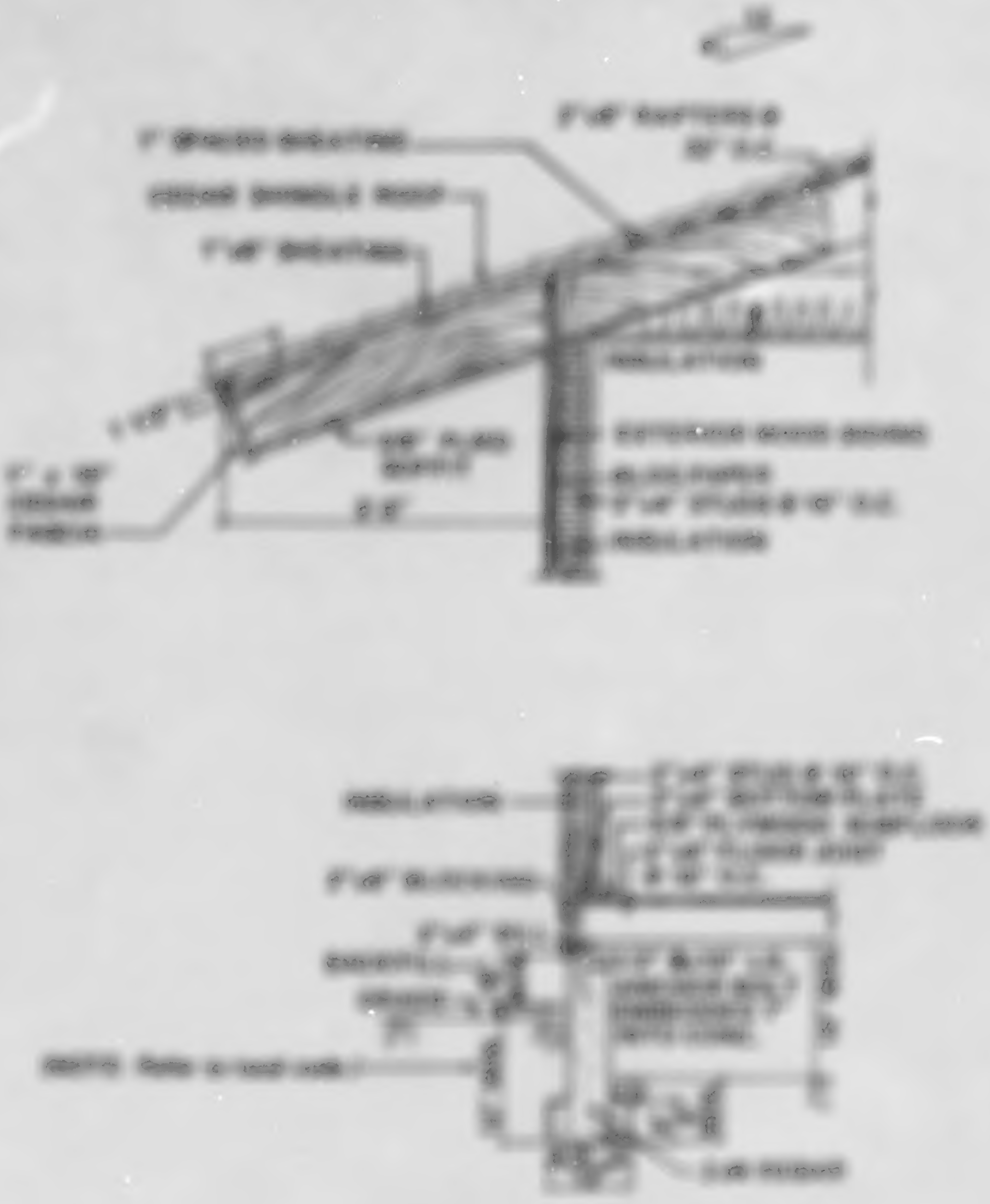
[illegible]



[illegible]

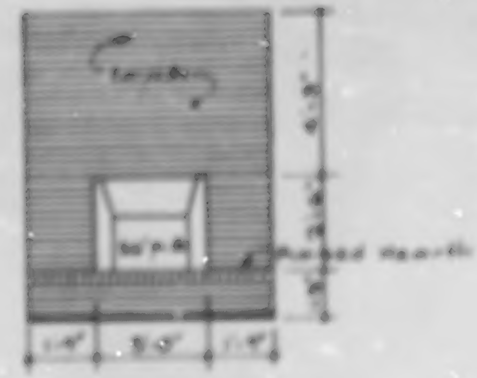
[illegible]

Wall Section Dimensioning

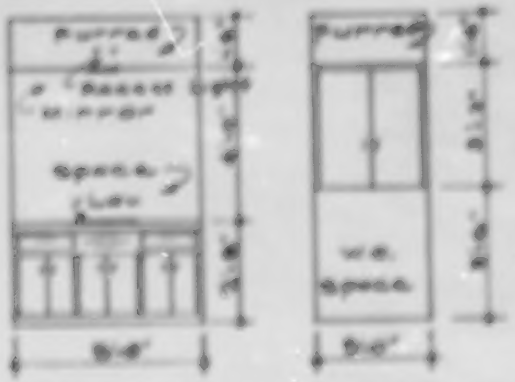


Typical Wall Section
Scale ½" = 1'-0"

Detail Dimensioning

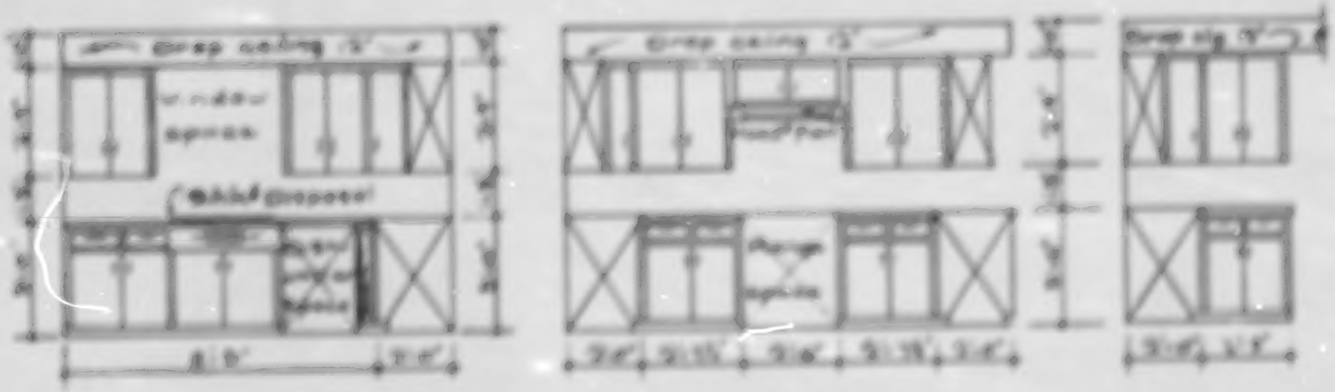

brick
W.P.B.
raised hearth
1'-4"
5'-0"
1'-4"

FIREPLACE


furred
mirror
space for lav
W.B. space

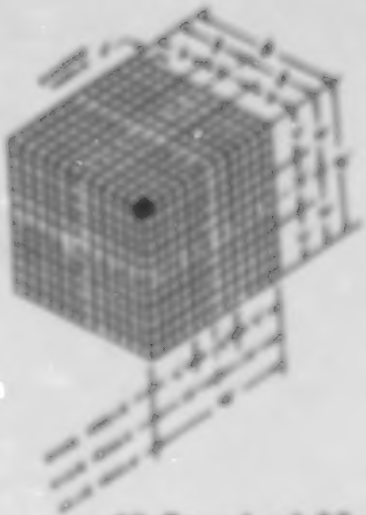
VANITY TOWELS

MASTER BATH

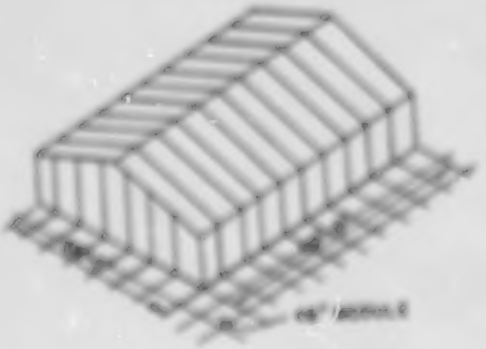

drop ceiling 1'-3"
window space
disposal
range space

KITCHEN CABINETS

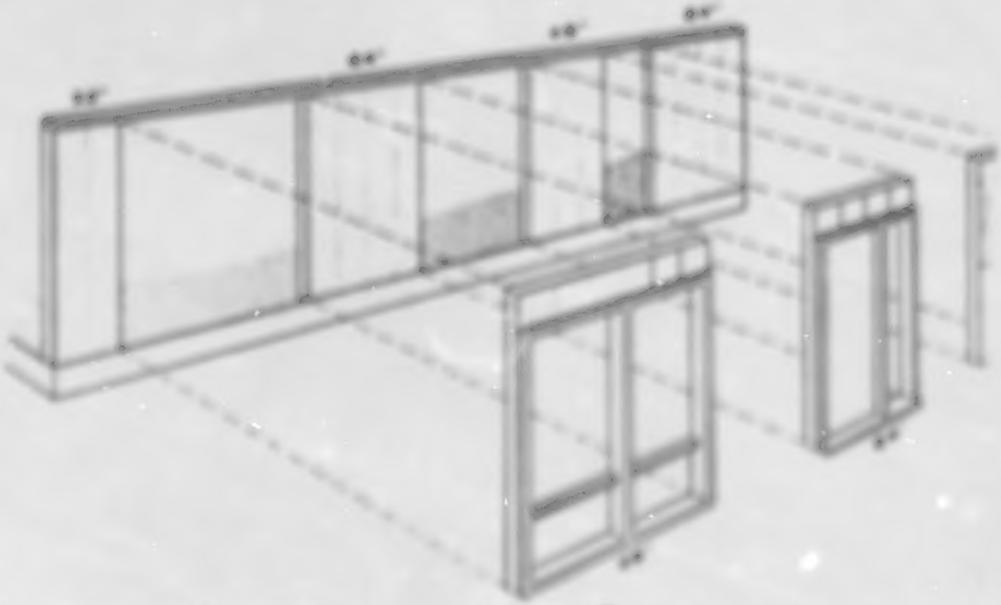
Modular System



4" Standard Modular System

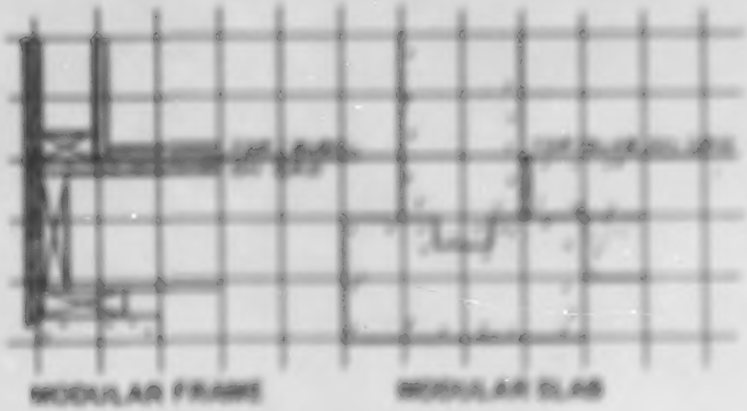


48" Modular

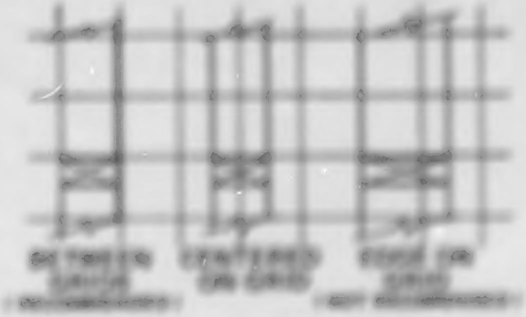


Wall, Window, and Door Components

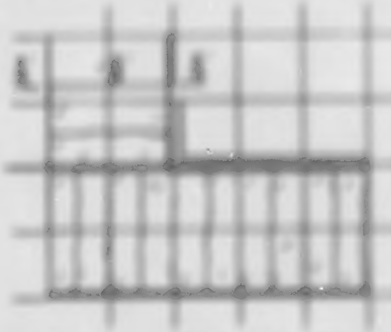
Modular Dimensioning


MODULAR FRAME
MODULAR SLAB

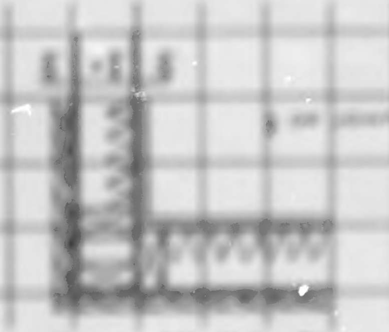
Vertical Positioning


BETWEEN GRIDS (RECOMMENDED)
CENTERED ON GRID
EDGE ON GRID (NOT RECOMMENDED)

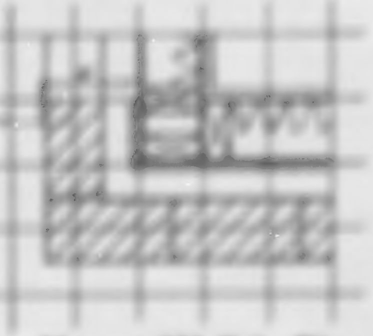
Stud Wall to Grid Line



Masonry Wall in Plan

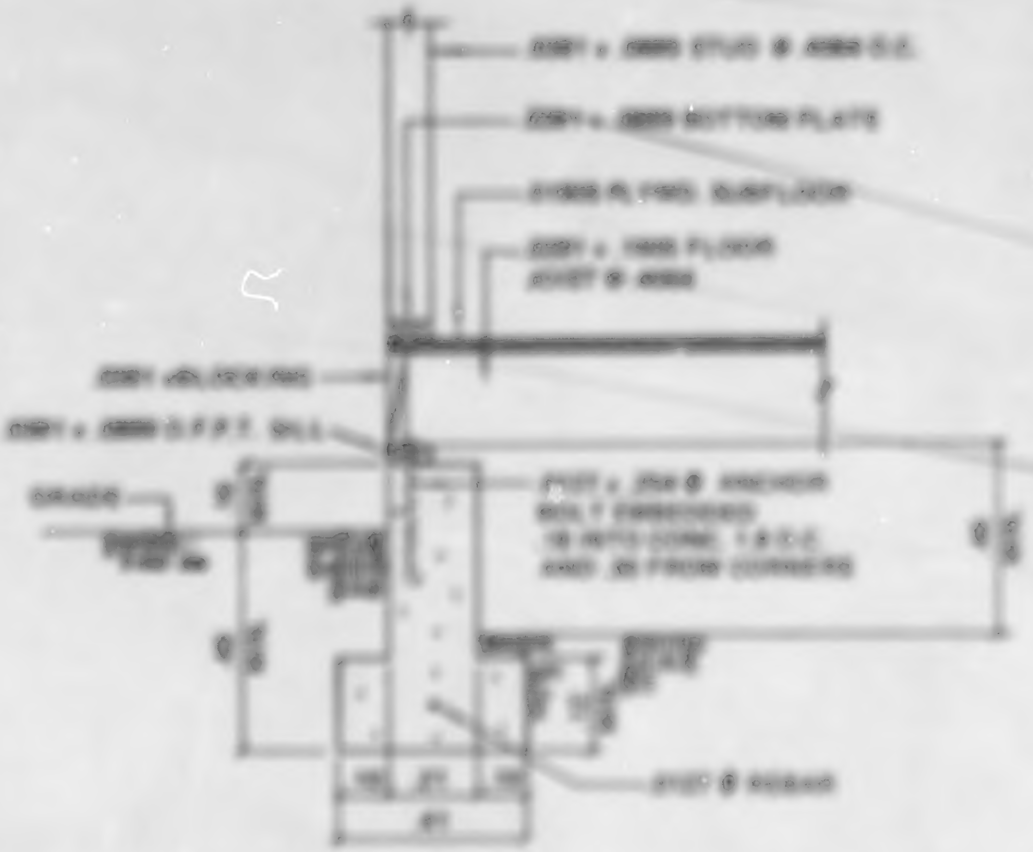


Frame Wall in Plan



Veneer Wall in Plan

Metric Dimensioning


STUD @ O.C.
BOTTOM PLATE
PLYWD. SUBFLOOR
FLOOR
JOIST @
D.F.P.T. SILL
GRADE
ANCHOR
BOLT EMBEDDED
AND FROM CORNERS
REBAR

2-Story Footing

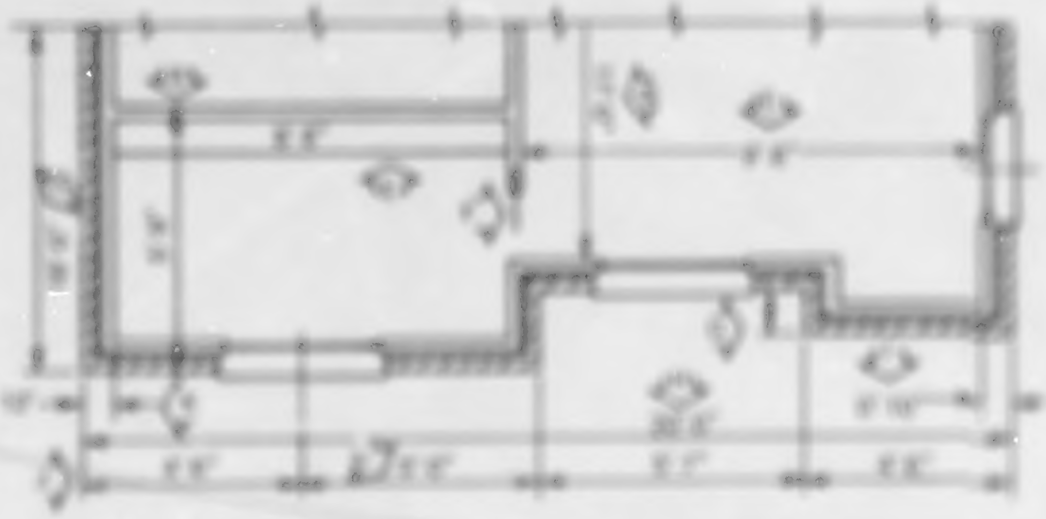
Scale : 1:10

Note All Sizes Are Net

DIMENSIONING
UNIT VII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1 - IDENTIFY DIMENSIONING ERRORS

Directions: Identify the dimensioning errors shown on the following floor plan.



A. ____________________

B. ____________________

C. ____________________

D. ____________________

E. ____________________

F. ____________________

G. ____________________

H. ____________________

I. ____________________

J. ____________________

K. ____________________

L. ____________________

DIMENSIONING
UNIT XII

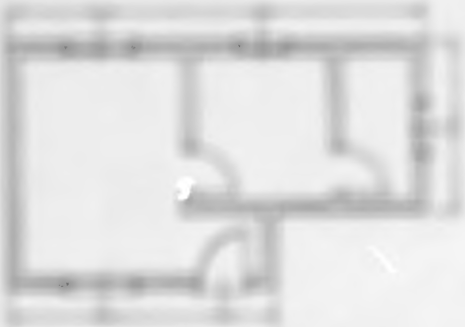
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3 DIMENSION A FLOOR PLAN

Directions: Dimension the floor plan in the problem on vellum with 1/4" = 1'-0" scale. Use the procedure in the example to aid in placement of dimension and extension lines.

Example:

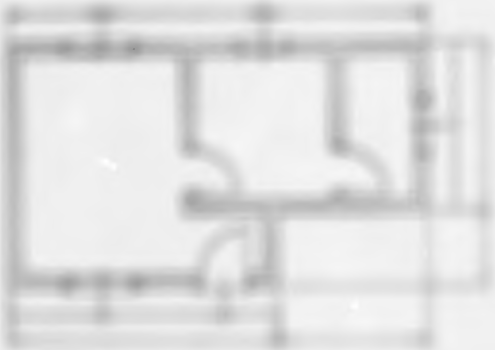
1. Place a row of dimensions on every outside wall containing a window or door at least 3/4" beyond the farthest projection (Figure 1).

FIGURE 1



2. Place a second line of dimensions on every wall containing offsets to provide outside dimensions for each wall (Figure 2).

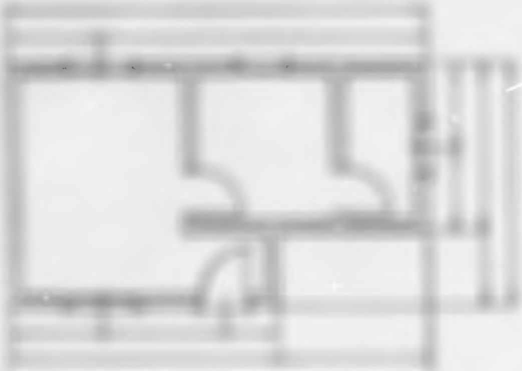
FIGURE 2



ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

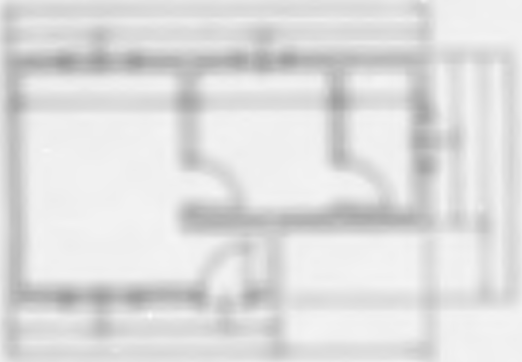
3. Place overall dimension lines and check that the subtotal dimensions equal the overall dimension (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



4. Place lines of interior dimensions to locate partitions and interior features (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



5. Place additional required notes and schedule reference symbols to complete the drawing.

Problem: Dimension one of the floor plans that you drew in Unit VI, "Working Drawings."

DIMENSIONING
UNIT [illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #[illegible] DIMENSION AN ELEVATION

Directions: Dimension the elevation that you drew in Assignment Sheet #[illegible] of Unit [illegible], "Working Drawings."

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

5. [illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

NAME ____________________

TEST

1. [illegible]

____ a. [illegible]		1. [illegible]
____ b. [illegible]		2. [illegible]
____ c. [illegible]		3. [illegible]
____ d. [illegible]		4. [illegible]
____ e. [illegible]		5. [illegible]
____ f. [illegible]		6. [illegible]
____ g. [illegible]		7. [illegible]
____ h. [illegible]		8. [illegible]
____ i. [illegible]		9. [illegible]
____ j. [illegible]		10. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

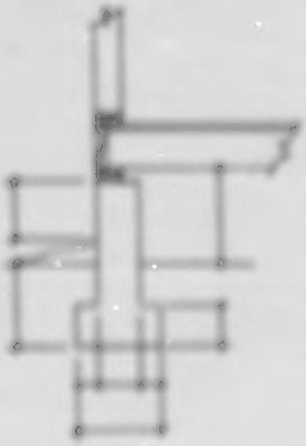
a. ____________________

b. ____________________

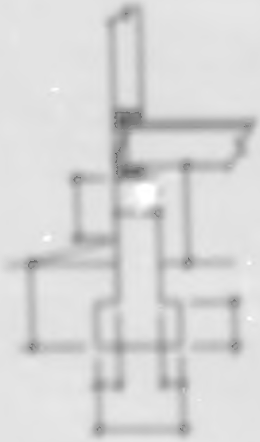
c. ____________________

3. Distinguish between correct and incorrect uses of dimensioning by placing an "X" next to the correct uses.

a. Group dimension lines

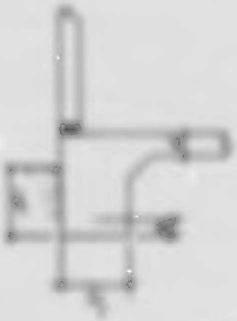


1) ______________________

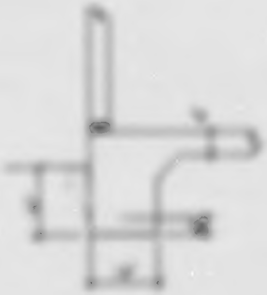


2) ______________________

b. Location dimensions

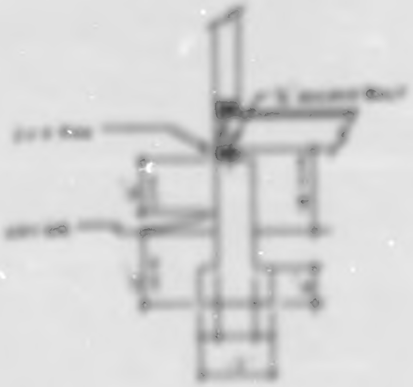


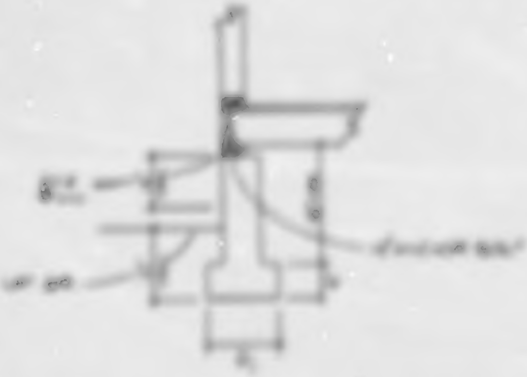
1) ______________________



2) ______________________

c. Crossing dimension lines

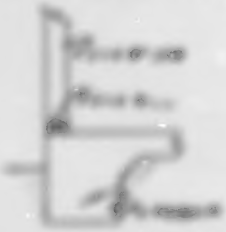


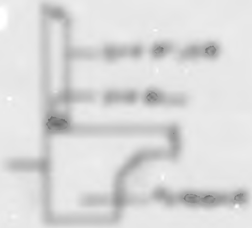


1) ____________________ 2) ____________________

d. Leaders

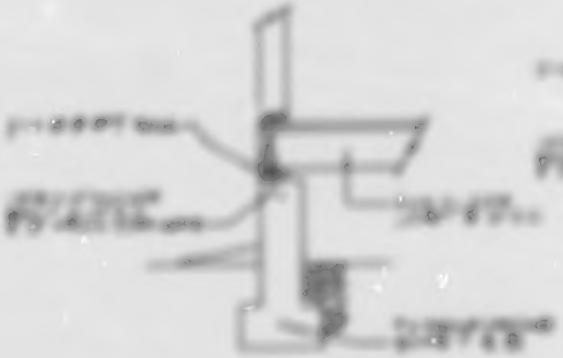
(NOTE: Select the illustration which is best.)

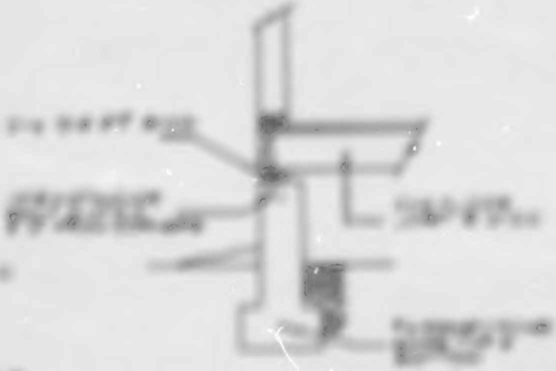




1) ____________________ 2) ____________________

e. Location of leaders





1) ____________________ 2) ____________________

4. Complete the following chart for drawing wall thicknesses.

	Actual Size	Drawn Size
a. Wood frame walls		
1) Interior	________	________
2) Interior (with vent pipe plumbing)	6 1/2"	________
3) ________	5"	6"
b. Brick veneer on frame	________	10"
c. Concrete masonry unit walls	4", 6", 8", or 12"	4", 6", 8", or 12"

5. Select true statements concerning general dimensioning rules by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Everything does not need to be dimensioned the actual size

_____b. Dimensions should not be crowded; keep dimensions at least 3/8" from the drawing and from each other

_____c. A broken dimension line should be used and the dimension should be placed below it

_____d. Distances less than one foot are given in inches

_____e. Dimensions are placed on a drawing so they can be read from the left side of the drawing

_____f. Dimension lines are drawn heavier than visible lines used to draw the object

_____g. Extension lines should always cross dimension lines

_____h. Extension lines may not cross each other

_____i. Whenever possible, line up a series of dimensions

_____j. Place the shortest dimensions near the object; the overall dimension should be on the outside

_____k. When a space to be dimensioned is too small to receive the figures, delete the figures

_____l. Dimension numerals and notes are lettered 1" high

6. Select true statements concerning floor, foundation, and basement plan dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Projections and offsets are not dimensioned

_____b. Cumulative dimensions should be added to see that their total equals the overall dimension _____c. Identify fixtures and built-in items which cannot be clearly drawn, such as a clothes chute, dishwasher, or garbage disposal

_____d. The size and direction of ceiling joists and floor joists can be shown by symbol and noted

_____e. Rooms are not identified by name

_____f. The size and depth of the fireplace opening are commonly shown and hearth material is indicated

_____g. The width and length of each room is given, and interior walls are located by dimensioning to the center line of wall

_____h. When dimensioning an exterior frame wall, the dimension never extends over the stud

_____i. When dimensioning an exterior masonry veneer wall, 1/2" is allowed beyond the face of the wall

_____j. Doors and windows in solid masonry walls are usually dimensioned to the masonry sides of the opening

_____k. Door and window sizes must always be noted directly on the floor plan

_____l. Floor material does not need to be indicated on the plan

_____m. Areas to be cut or filled should not be noted

_____n. Materials in concrete floors do not have to be noted

2. Select true statements concerning site and plot plan dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. The boundaries of a plot are described by dimensions given in whole numbers

_____b. Elevation marks are given to show the compass direction of all the boundaries

_____c. Contour lines are dimensioned by indicating their elevation above sea level or some other known datum level

_____d. Dimensions of required setback from street should be deleted

_____e. Dimensions of building, location of sidewalks and driveway, easement, flood plain, and retaining walls are shown

_____f. Water well or private sewage disposal system need not be shown

_____g. Lot description, lot number, street numbers need not be indicated on plan

_____h. Scale is never noted since it varies

_____i. Utility service do... will be indicated by note and symbols

8. Select true statements concerning elevation dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. The ceiling line and finished floor line are indicated and the total distance between these is shown

_____b. Roof slope is indicated by the symbol [illegible]

_____c. The overhang of the roof at the eaves is indicated on a separate drawing

_____d. The finished grade is indicated with a note

_____e. Window sizes and door sizes are sometimes lettered below the door or window, but the door and window schedule is preferred

9. Select true statements concerning detail and wall section dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. The dimensions, material, and location of all members in a wall section are specified

_____b. Draw materials to their actual size

_____c. Finish floor to finished ceiling distance is not specified

_____d. Cabinets and other built-ins require extensive, complete dimensions

_____e. Fireplace details require only overall dimensions

_____f. Stair details should have tread and riser indicated and total stair rise and run noted

10. Select true statements concerning HVAC plan dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Main supply, riser, and return line sizes are noted

_____b. Volume of air output and sizes for registers do not need to be noted

_____c. Information about heating/cooling unit may be described in a general note

_____d. Dimension location of heat-carrying ducts on this plan

11. Select true statements concerning plumbing plan dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Location and size of soil stacks, vents, drains, and supply lines should be noted on elevation plan

_____b. Give sizes for passage of pipes in foundation walls on foundation drawings

_____c. Septic tank and drain field does not need to be dimensioned _____c. Note special traps and drains

_____d. Locate water meter and water lines entering building

12. List two advantages of the modular system.

a. ____

b. ____

13. Select true statements concerning modular dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Show light 4" grids on all plans, elevations, and sections drawn to scale of 3/4" = 1'-0"

_____b. Center the building parts on grid lines or between grid lines

_____c. To indicate location of building parts, use grid dimensions

_____d. Use an X to indicate any position not on a grid line

14. Select true statements concerning metric dimensioning by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Measurements in millimeters are taken to 5 decimal places

_____b. Always label unit on every dimension

_____c. Fractional parts are expressed in decimals

_____d. When the size of an item is shown, all dimensions should be in the same unit

15. Complete the following chart of dimensioning abbreviations.

a.	______________	A/C	f.	______________	HW
b.	Bedroom	_____	g.	______________	LR
c.	Ceiling	_____	h.	Reinforcing rod	_____
d.	______________	CL	i.	Weatherproof	_____
e.	______________	DW			

16. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Identify dimensioning errors

b. Dimension a floor plan

c. Dimension an elevation

d. Prepare and dimension a floor plan according to a modular system

e. Dimension a detail using metric system (optional)

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

[illegible]
UNIT [illegible]

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

3. [illegible]

4. a. Wood frame walls

		Actual Size	Drawn Size
	1) Interior	4 1/2"	5"
	2) Interior (with wet wall plumbing)	6 1/2"	6 or 8"
	3) Exterior	6"	6"
b.	Brick veneer on frame	9"	10"
c.	Concrete masonry unit	4", 6", 8", or 12"	4", 6", 8", or 12"

5. [illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

8. [illegible]

9. [illegible]

10. [illegible]

11. [illegible]

12. Any two of the following:
    a. Reduces cutting and fitting
    b. Reduces building cost
    c. Economical use of building materials
    d. Reduces drafting errors by [illegible] dimensions

13. [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]
- a [illegible]
- b [illegible]
- c [illegible]
- d [illegible]
- e [illegible]
- f [illegible]
- g [illegible]
- h [illegible]
- i [illegible]

[illegible] Evaluated by the performance of the instructor

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

1. [illegible]
2. [illegible]
3. [illegible]
4. [illegible]
5. [illegible]
6. [illegible]
7. [illegible]
8. [illegible]
9. [illegible]
10. [illegible]
11. [illegible]
12. [illegible]
13. [illegible]
14. [illegible]
15. [illegible]
16. [illegible]

11. Demonstrate the ability to:

    a. Calculate the footing requirements for a typical one-story frame house

    b. Calculate pier or column footing requirements

    c. Draw a foundation plan

    d. Draw a foundation section

FOUNDATIONS
UNIT [illegible]

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Review information presented in Unit [illegible], "Structural Systems" concerning [illegible].

VII. Invite speakers who are experienced in [illegible].

VIII. Take a field trip to a construction site where foundation work is being done.

IX. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the different types of floor systems.

X. Provide samples of foundation drawings.

XI. Discuss common problems encountered when drawing foundation plans.

XII. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

A. Objective sheet

B. Information sheet

C. Transparency masters

1. TM 1 Types of Flooring Systems

2. TM 2 Wood Beam Framing Details

3. TM 3 Wood Beam Framing Details (Continued)

4. TM 4 Wood Beam Framing Details (Continued)

5. TM 5 Wood Beam Framing Details (Continued)

6. [illegible]

7. [illegible]

8. [illegible]

9. [illegible]

10. [illegible]

11. [illegible]

12. [illegible]

13. [illegible]

14. [illegible]

15. [illegible]

D. Assignment sheets

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

3. [illegible]

4. [illegible]

E. Test

F. Answers to test

V. References

A. [illegible]

B. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

D. [illegible]

E. [illegible]

F. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

Q. Girder–A large or principal horizontal structural member used to support the ends of floor joists and beams

R. Pilaster–A masonry unit used to support the ends of beams or stiffen a foundation wall

S. Piling–A foundation system consisting of steel, timber, or concrete driven vertically into the ground to stable soil or rock

T. Concrete slab–A concrete floor on grade that can be unreinforced or reinforced supported by a foundation or independent from a foundation

U. Monolithic slab–Where the slab and foundation are poured at the same time

V. Reinforcing–The process of including additional materials to strengthen the concrete

W. Rebar–A reinforcing bar placed in concrete to provide resistance to tensile stresses or breakage

(NOTE: Rebars are manufactured in plain and deformed shapes and call outs are interpreted in 1/8" intervals.)

X. Dowels–Reinforcing bars used to hold together two different pours of concrete

Y. Anchor bolt–A threaded rod inserted in masonry construction to attach sill plate to foundation wall

Z. Waterproofing–The process of applying materials to basement walls, foundation walls, or underside of concrete slab to repel moisture

AA. Crawl space–The space below the floor of a building built above the ground

BB. Corbelled brick–Method where exterior masonry veneer walls may extend 1" past or outside a foundation

CC. Poche–Process of shading in the area to be emphasized

DD. Chase–A slot or groove built in a masonry wall to provide space for ducts, pipes, or conduits

EE. Expansion joint–A separation in a masonry or concrete wall or concrete floor to provide room for expansion due to temperature and moisture changes

FF. Pressure treated wood (PTW)–Wood impregnated with toxic chemicals at elevated pressures and temperatures to eliminate decay

INFORMATION SHEET

II. Abbreviations used on foundation plans and details

American Concrete Institute	ACI	Footing	FTG
Anchor bolt	AB	Foundation	FDN
At	@	Galvanized	GALV
Basement	BSMT	Gauge	GA
Beam	BMS	Grade	GR
Block	BLK	Header	HDR
Bottom	BOT	Insulation	INS
Building	BLDG	Interior	INT
Center to center	C to C	Joist	JST
Column	COL	Minimum	MIN
Concrete	CONC	On center	OC
Concrete block	CONC BK	Plywood	PLY
Diameter	ϕ	Pounds per sq. ft.	PSF
Douglas fir pressure treated	DFPT	Pounds per sq. in.	PSI
Excavate	EXC	Reinforce	REINF
Exterior	EXT	Reinforcing bar	REBAR
Finish	FIN	Welded wire fabric	WWF
Floor	FL	With	w/

III. Types of floor systems

- A. Concrete slab
- B. Supported (wood) floor

IV. Advantages and disadvantages of wood foundations

- A. Advantages
  1. Costs less to build
  2. Requires less excavation
  3. Saves time in construction

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Disadvantages

1. Should not be used in wet climates

2. Requires special treated wood

V. Types of footing systems (Transparency 1)

A. Pier with post

B. Pier with column

C. Grade beam - one pour

D. Grade beam with pile

E. Spread

F. Interior - one pour

G. Interior - two pour

VI. Typical crawl space footing detail drawings (Transparencies 2, 3, 4, and 5)

A. Grade beam

B. Masonry foundation wall

C. Typical pier detail

D. Exterior bearing footing

E. Porch connection

F. Wood foundation detail

G. Basement wood foundation detail

VII. Typical slab floor footing detail drawings (Transparencies 6, 7, and 8)

A. Footing @ veneer

B. Grade beam @ veneer

C. Interior bearing footing

D. Exterior bearing footing

E. Porch connection

F. Garage @ apron

INFORMATION SHEET

VIII. Methods of waterproofing the foundation wall and concrete slab (Transparency 9)

  A. Waterproof materials

  B. Drain tile

  C. Chemicals in concrete

  D. Pipe mastic

IX. Methods of protecting a structure from termites (Transparency 10)

  A. Treated wood

  (NOTE: These include pressure treated wood, redwood, and cedar.)

  B. Soil treatment

  (NOTE: If federal, state, and local regulations permit soil treatment, refer to *Minimum Property Standards*, Table 5-2.1.)

  C. Crawl space ventilation

  (NOTE: Refer to *Minimum Property Standards*, Table 4-3.1.)

  D. Termite shield

  (NOTE: This is usually 26 ga. galv. metal.)

X. Methods of preventing breakage of foundations and concrete slabs (Transparencies 11 and 12)

  A. Reinforcing

  (NOTE: This involves the use of reinforcing bars in foundation and mesh in concrete slab.)

  B. Sand bed

  (NOTE: This is used for expansive soil.)

  C. Fiber inserts

  (NOTE: These are used only under grade beams.)

  D. Footing placed below frost line

XI. Designing and constructing a footing (Transparency 13)

  A. The concrete should be poured continuously; no load should be placed on a footing until the concrete has thoroughly set up

  B. If a footing trench is dug too deeply, the excess space should be filled with concrete

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Footings can be poured in earth trenches without side forms if the soil is firm enough to retain its shape

D. Footing width should be designed to support with safety the load to be placed upon it

E. Footings should be protected from freezing

F. In residential construction, a footing should never be less than 6" (152 mm) thick

G. Footing thickness should never be less than one and one-half times the projection of the footing from the foundation

H. The thickness-to-width ratio of a footing should be kept close to 2 to 1 if footing projection exceeds one half the width of the foundation thickness

I. The bearing area of flared footing is figured the same way as for spread footings

J. The slope of a flared footing should not be less than 60° from the normal degree of slope grade

K. A stepped footing vertical distance should not be higher than 3/4 of the horizontal distance between steps

L. A stepped footing horizontal distance between steps should not be less than 2'-0" (610 mm)

M. A stepped footing horizontal and vertical steps should be poured at the same time

N. A key should be used for a two-pour foundation system

XII. Designing piling and grade beams

A. Each pier and column footing loading should be figured separately

B. Pier or column footing thickness is 8" (Transparency 13)

(NOTE: 2'-0" X 2'-0" is a common size for residential construction.)

C. Piling should be spaced 8'-0" on center maximum, at least 10" in diameter, and have a bearing area of 2 square feet for average soil

D. Piling should have one No. 5 bar running full length into grade beam

E. Grade beam for frame construction should be at least 6" wide by 14" high

F. Grade beam for masonry and masonry veneer construction should be 8" wide by 14" high

G. Grade beam should have four No. 5 steel bars for masonry and masonry veneer construction or four No. 4 steel bars for frame construction

INFORMATION SHEET

XIII. Designing a slab foundation system

A. Slab on ground construction should not be attempted in areas having ground water or a hydrostatic pressure condition near the ground surface

B. The site should be graded so water cannot collect beneath the slab

C. Perimeter insulation should be used, except in areas where freezing weather seldom occurs

(NOTE: Refer to *Minimum Property Standards,* Table 6-7.3 or manufacturer's design data.)

D. The slab should be poured continuously if possible

E. Concrete should be allowed to develop top strength before being subjected to a load

F. The minimum floor slab should be 4" (102 mm) thick

G. Metal heating coils and reinforcement should be covered with at least 1" of concrete

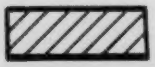
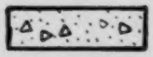
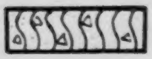
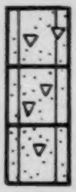
H. Hot air ducts in a slab should be completely encased in at least 2" (51 mm) of concrete, unless they are crush-resistant

I. The top of the floor slab should be at least 8" (203 mm) above finished grade

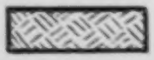
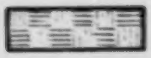
J. Basement floor slabs and garage floors should be designed according to the requirements set forth for house floor slabs

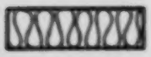
K. Porch floor slabs should be reinforced if they exceed 3'-6" (1067 mm) in width

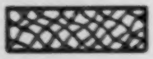
XIV. Symbols used in foundation plans and details

Name	Section
A. Brick, Common	
B. Concrete	
(NOTE: Common use.)	
C. Concrete block	 or 

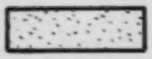
INFORMATION SHEET

D. Earth  or 

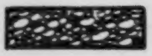
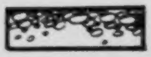
E. Insulation:
Batt, loose,
fill-blanket 

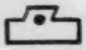
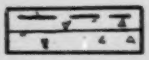
F. Rigid insulation 

G. Metal, flashing ————

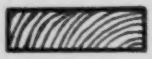
H. Gypsum wallboard 

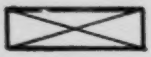
(NOTE: Label drywall on drawings.)

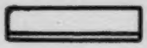
I. Stone, gravel,
porous fill  or 

J. Reinforcing bar  

End view Side view

K. Wood, finish 

L. Wood, rough 

M. Wood finish
on stud 

N. Waterproofing
(film) ————

O. Wire mesh — — —

INFORMATION SHEET

XV. Live and dead loads (Transparencies 14 and 15)

A. Live loads–Those fixed or moving weights which are not a structural part of the house

Examples: Weights of furniture, occupants, snow on the roof, wind

B. Dead loads–Those static or fixed weights of the structure itself

Examples: Weights of roofing, foundation walls, siding, joists

XVI. Preliminary steps to drawing a foundation plan

A. Examine the floor plan to determine the type of exterior walls specified

(NOTE: The type of exterior walls determines the dimension of the foundation. For example, the foundation size will be larger for a brick veneer house than a house with a stud wall structure.)

B. Examine the plot plan and elevation to determine the need for stepped footings, retaining walls, and problems related to grade

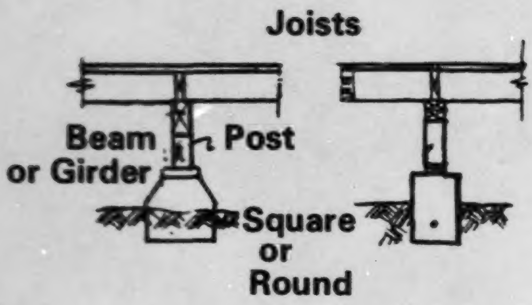
C. Determine the size of footings and foundation walls required from information available

D. Check the frost penetration depth for the area where the house is to be built

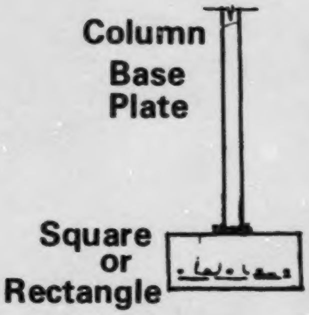
E. Refer to building codes to be sure that all requirements are met

F. Have a soil bearing test made if soil bearing capacity is questionable

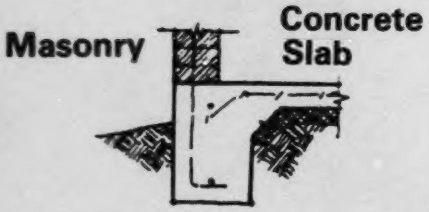
Types of Footing Systems


Joists
Beam or Girder
Post
Square or Round

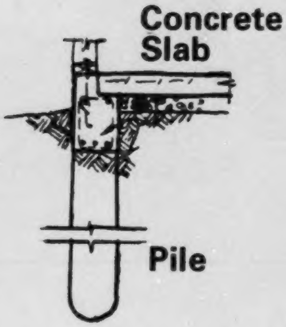
Pier


Column
Base Plate
Square or Rectangle

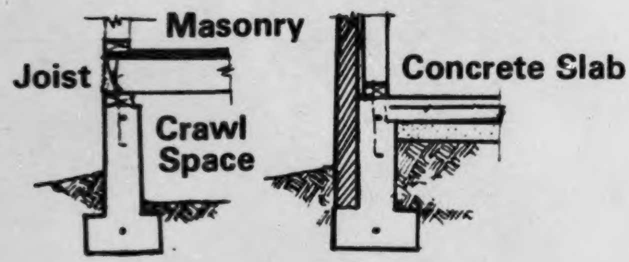
Column


Masonry
Concrete Slab

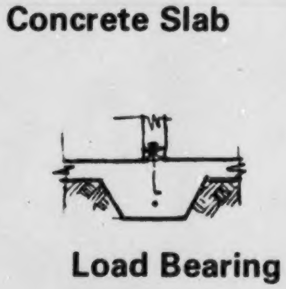
Grade Beam


Concrete Slab
Pile

Grade Beam With Pile

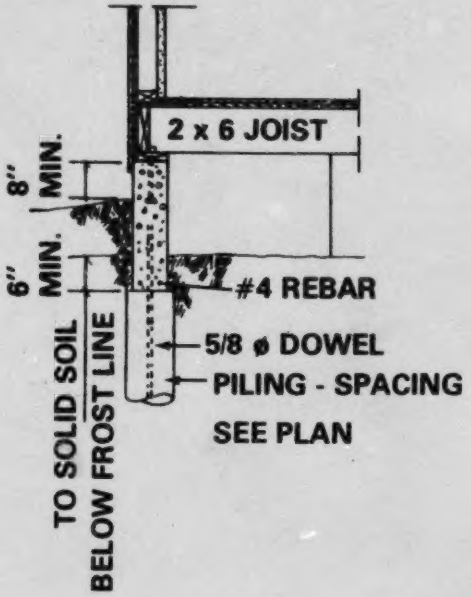

Masonry
Joist
Crawl Space
Concrete Slab

Spread


Concrete Slab
Load Bearing

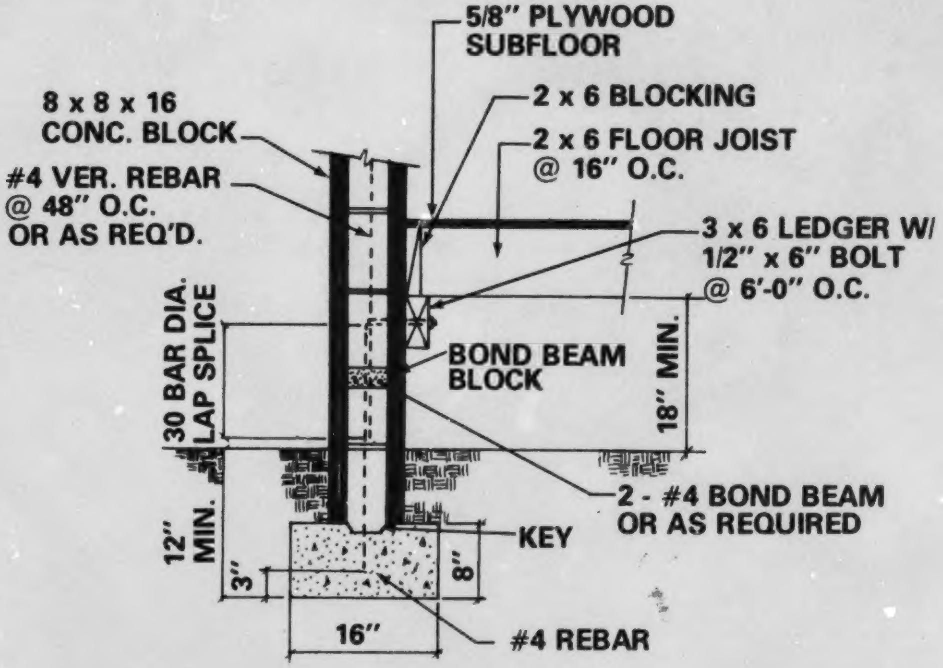
Interior

Crawl Space Footing Details


2 x 6 JOIST
8" MIN.
6" MIN.
#4 REBAR
5/8 ø DOWEL
PILING - SPACING
SEE PLAN
TO SOLID SOIL
BELOW FROST LINE

GRADE BEAM

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

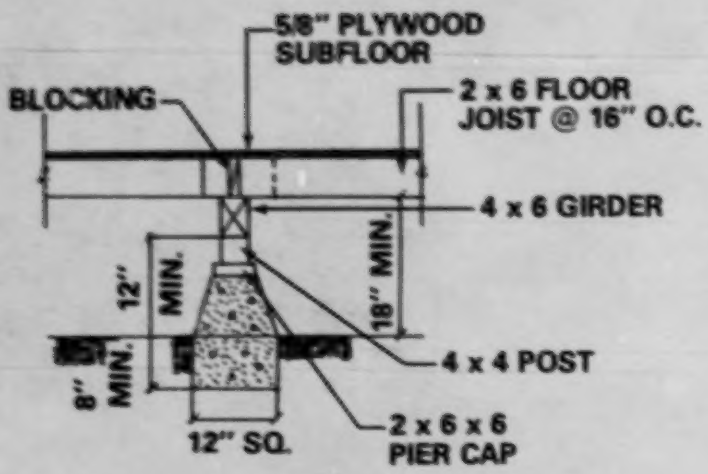

5/8" PLYWOOD
SUBFLOOR
8 x 8 x 16
CONC. BLOCK
2 x 6 BLOCKING
2 x 6 FLOOR JOIST
@ 16" O.C.
#4 VER. REBAR
@ 48" O.C.
OR AS REQ'D.
3 x 6 LEDGER W/
1/2" x 6" BOLT
@ 6'-0" O.C.
30 BAR DIA.
LAP SPLICE
BOND BEAM
BLOCK
18" MIN.
2 - #4 BOND BEAM
OR AS REQUIRED
12" MIN.
KEY
3"
8"
16"
#4 REBAR

MASONRY FOUNDATION WALL

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

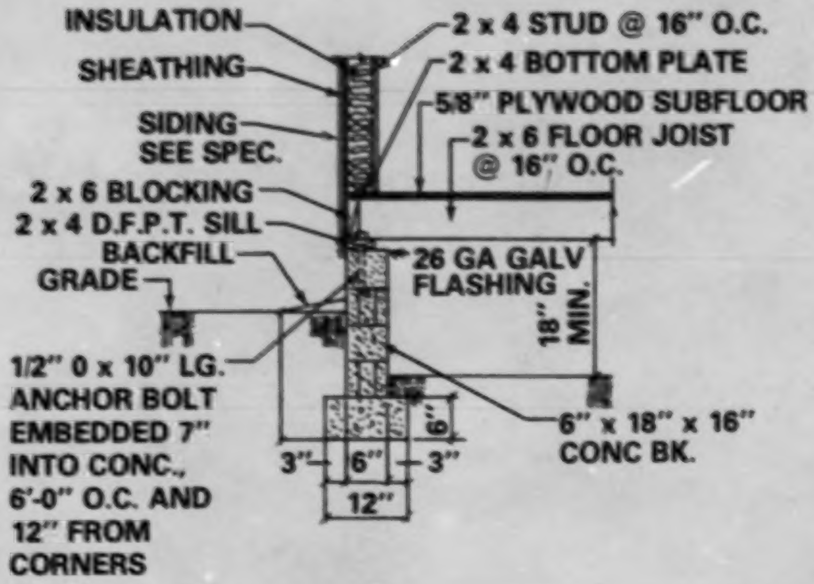
Crawl Space Footing Details

(Continued)


5/8" PLYWOOD SUBFLOOR
BLOCKING
2 x 6 FLOOR JOIST @ 16" O.C.
4 x 6 GIRDER
12" MIN.
18" MIN.
4 x 4 POST
8" MIN.
12" SQ.
2 x 6 x 6 PIER CAP

TYPICAL PIER DET.

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

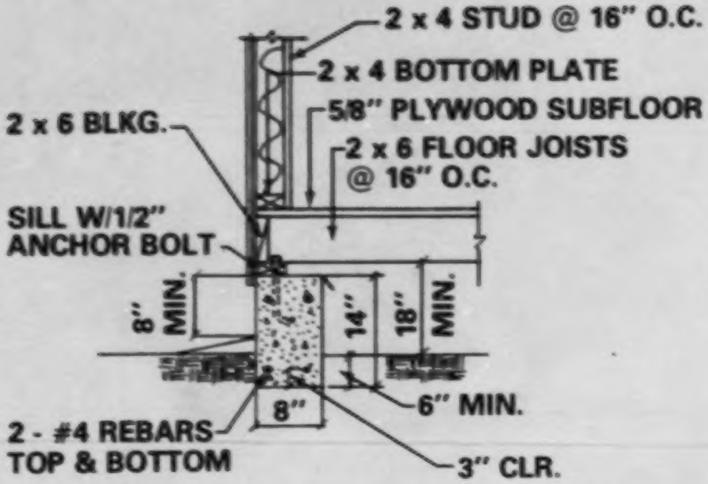

INSULATION
SHEATHING
SIDING SEE SPEC.
2 x 6 BLOCKING
2 x 4 D.F.P.T. SILL
BACKFILL
GRADE
1/2" 0 x 10" LG. ANCHOR BOLT EMBEDDED 7" INTO CONC., 6'-0" O.C. AND 12" FROM CORNERS
2 x 4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2 x 4 BOTTOM PLATE
5/8" PLYWOOD SUBFLOOR
2 x 6 FLOOR JOIST @ 16" O.C.
26 GA GALV FLASHING
18" MIN.
6"
3"
6"
3"
12"
6" x 18" x 16" CONC BK.

EXTERIOR BEARING FTG.

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

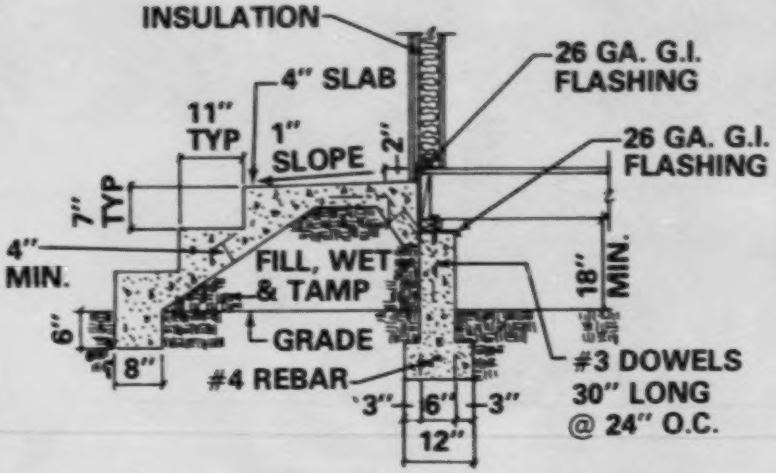
Crawl Space Footing Details

(Continued)


2 x 4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2 x 4 BOTTOM PLATE
5/8" PLYWOOD SUBFLOOR
2 x 6 BLKG.
2 x 6 FLOOR JOISTS @ 16" O.C.
SILL W/1/2" ANCHOR BOLT
8" MIN.
14"
18" MIN.
6" MIN.
8"
2 - #4 REBARS TOP & BOTTOM
3" CLR.

GRADE BEAM

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

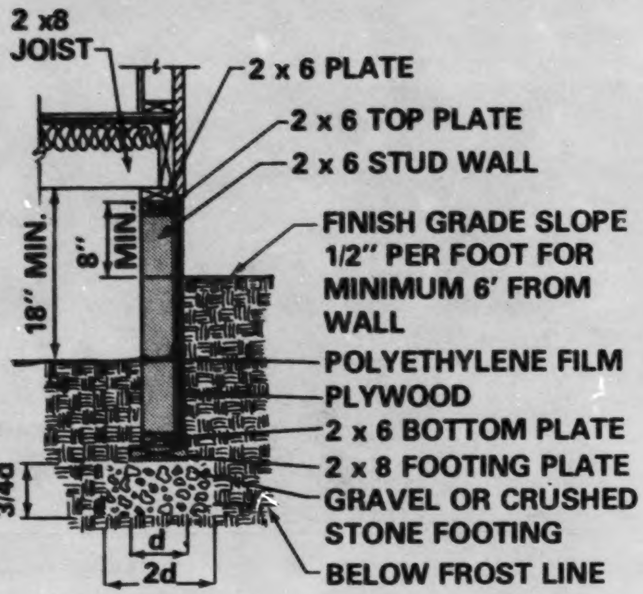

INSULATION
26 GA. G.I. FLASHING
4" SLAB
11" TYP
1" SLOPE
2"
26 GA. G.I. FLASHING
7" TYP
4" MIN.
FILL, WET & TAMP
18" MIN.
6"
GRADE
8"
#4 REBAR
#3 DOWELS 30" LONG @ 24" O.C.
3"
6"
3"
12"

PORCH CONNECTION

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

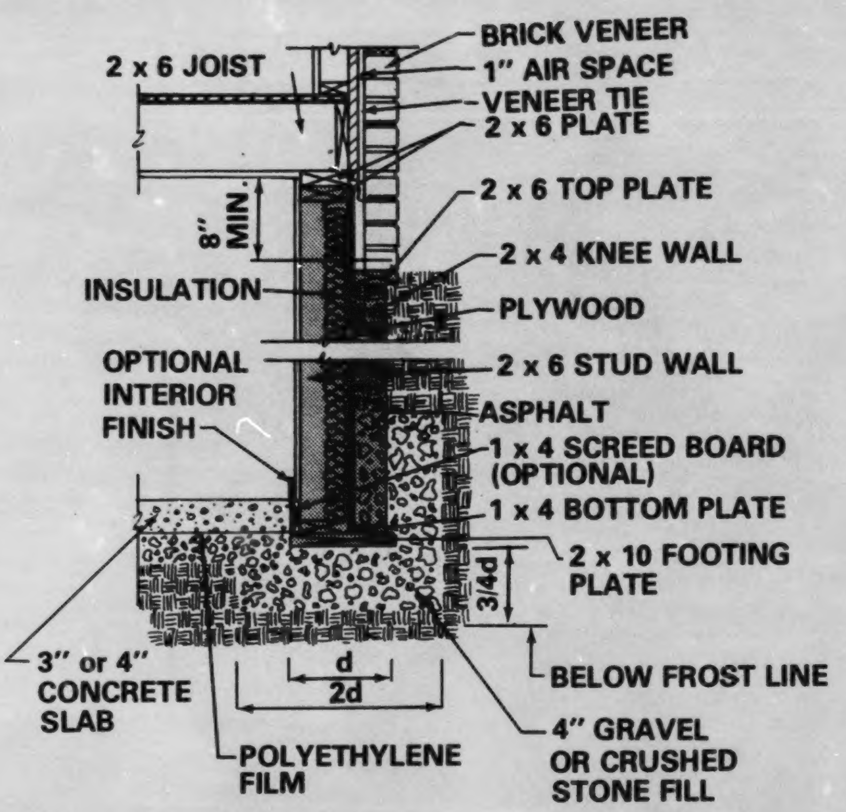
Crawl Space Footing Details

(Continued)


2 x8 JOIST
2 x 6 PLATE
2 x 6 TOP PLATE
2 x 6 STUD WALL
FINISH GRADE SLOPE 1/2" PER FOOT FOR MINIMUM 6' FROM WALL
18" MIN.
8" MIN.
POLYETHYLENE FILM
PLYWOOD
2 x 6 BOTTOM PLATE
2 x 8 FOOTING PLATE
3/4d
GRAVEL OR CRUSHED STONE FOOTING
d
2d
BELOW FROST LINE

WOOD FDN. DETAIL

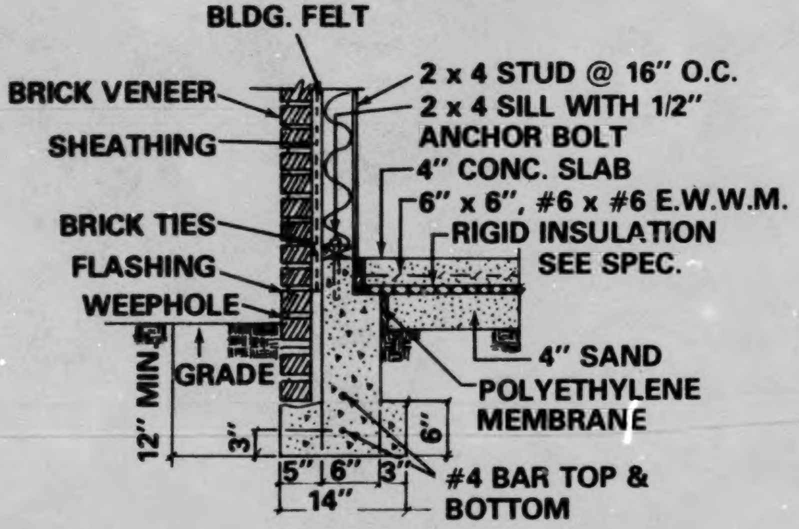
SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"


2 x 6 JOIST
BRICK VENEER
1" AIR SPACE
VENEER TIE
2 x 6 PLATE
2 x 6 TOP PLATE
8" MIN.
2 x 4 KNEE WALL
INSULATION
PLYWOOD
OPTIONAL INTERIOR FINISH
2 x 6 STUD WALL
ASPHALT
1 x 4 SCREED BOARD (OPTIONAL)
1 x 4 BOTTOM PLATE
2 x 10 FOOTING PLATE
3/4d
BELOW FROST LINE
3" or 4" CONCRETE SLAB
d
2d
POLYETHYLENE FILM
4" GRAVEL OR CRUSHED STONE FILL

BASEMENT WOOD FDN DETAIL

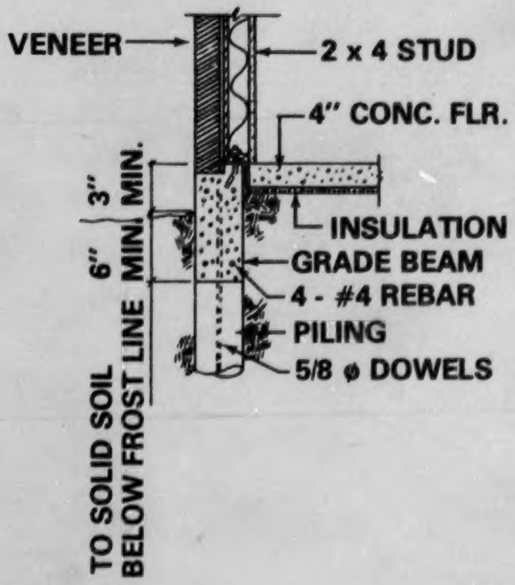
SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

Slab Floor Footing Details


BLDG. FELT
BRICK VENEER
SHEATHING
BRICK TIES
FLASHING
WEEPHOLE
GRADE
12" MIN.
3"
5"
6"
3"
14"
6"
2 x 4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2 x 4 SILL WITH 1/2" ANCHOR BOLT
4" CONC. SLAB
6" x 6", #6 x #6 E.W.W.M.
RIGID INSULATION SEE SPEC.
4" SAND
POLYETHYLENE MEMBRANE
#4 BAR TOP & BOTTOM

FOOTING @ VENEER

SCALE: 1 1/2" = 1'-0"

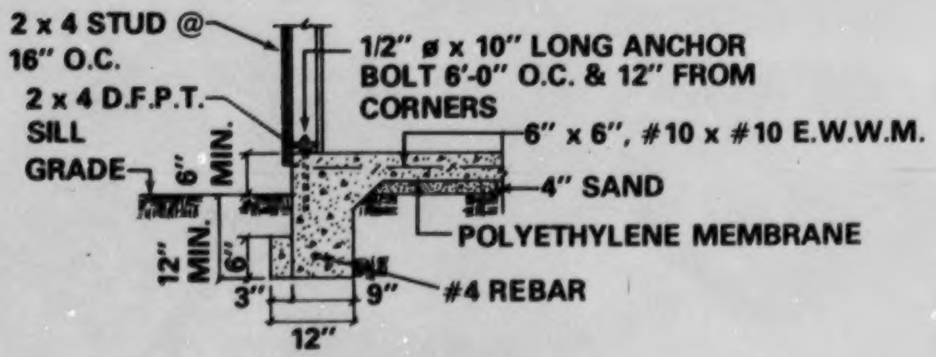

VENEER
2 x 4 STUD
4" CONC. FLR.
INSULATION
GRADE BEAM
4 - #4 REBAR
PILING
5/8 ø DOWELS
3" MIN.
6" MIN.
TO SOLID SOIL BELOW FROST LINE

GRADE BEAM @ VENEER

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

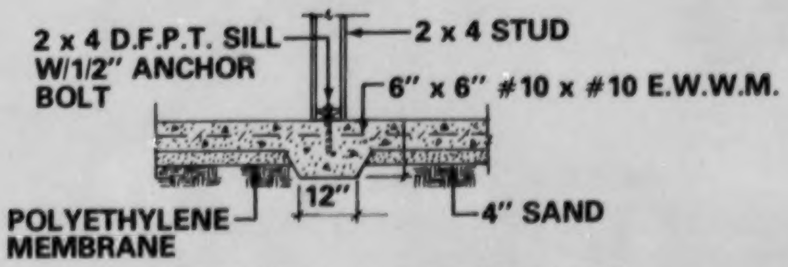
Slab Floor Footing Details

(Continued)


2 x 4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2 x 4 D.F.P.T. SILL
GRADE
1/2" ø x 10" LONG ANCHOR BOLT 6'-0" O.C. & 12" FROM CORNERS
6" x 6", #10 x #10 E.W.W.M.
4" SAND
POLYETHYLENE MEMBRANE
#4 REBAR
6" MIN.
12" MIN.
6"
3"
9"
12"

EXT. BEARING FOOTING

SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

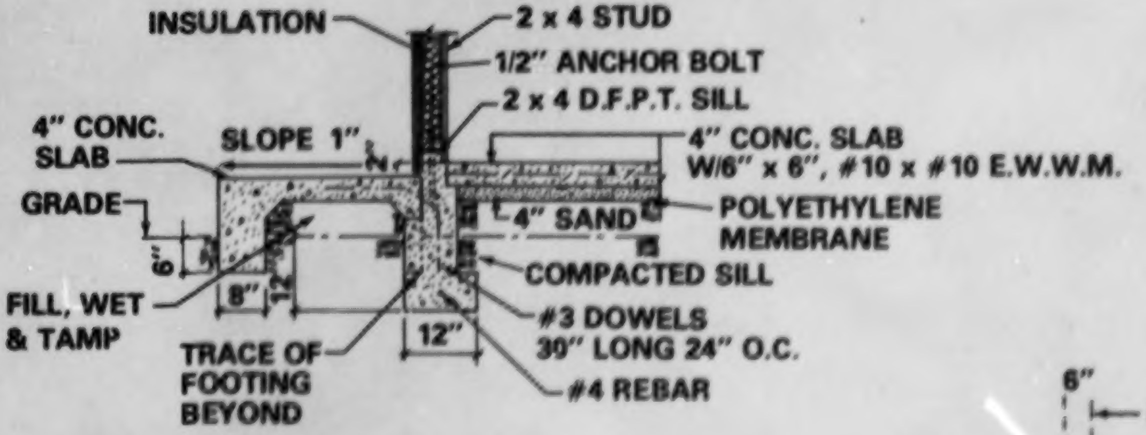

2 x 4 D.F.P.T. SILL W/1/2" ANCHOR BOLT
2 x 4 STUD
6" x 6" #10 x #10 E.W.W.M.
12"
POLYETHYLENE MEMBRANE
4" SAND

INTERIOR BEARING FTG.

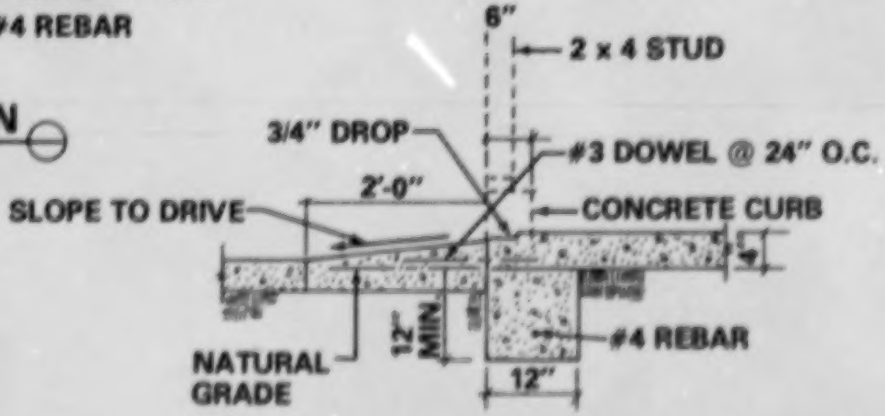
SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

Slab Floor Footing Details

(Continued)

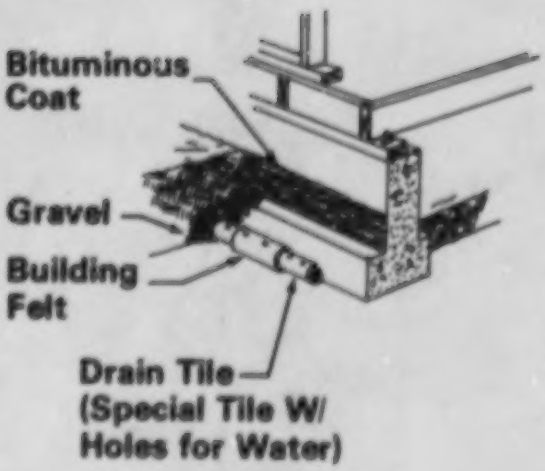

INSULATION
2 x 4 STUD
1/2" ANCHOR BOLT
2 x 4 D.F.P.T. SILL
4" CONC. SLAB
SLOPE 1"
4" CONC. SLAB W/6" x 6", #10 x #10 E.W.W.M.
GRADE
4" SAND
POLYETHYLENE MEMBRANE
6"
12"
8"
COMPACTED SILL
FILL, WET & TAMP
#3 DOWELS 30" LONG 24" O.C.
TRACE OF FOOTING BEYOND
12"
#4 REBAR

PORCH CONNECTION
SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

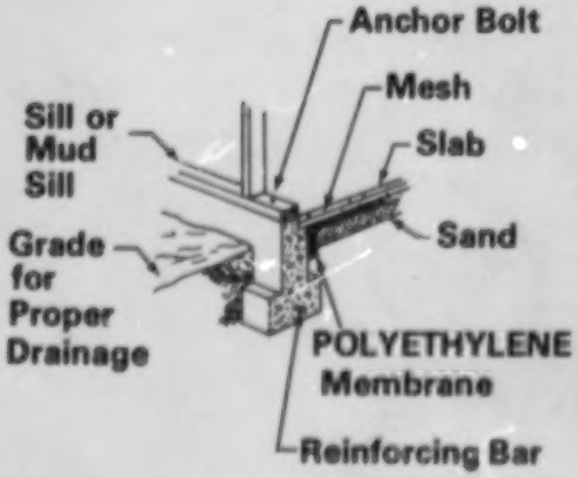

6"
2 x 4 STUD
3/4" DROP
#3 DOWEL @ 24" O.C.
2'-0"
SLOPE TO DRIVE
CONCRETE CURB
4"
12" MIN
#4 REBAR
NATURAL GRADE
12"

GARAGE @ APRON
SCALE: 1" = 1'-0"

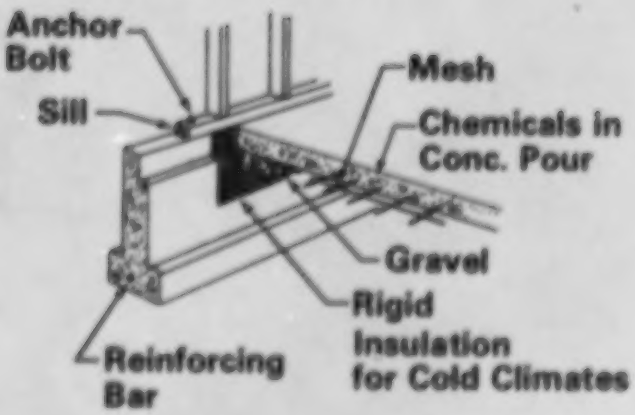
Waterproofing Foundation Systems


Bituminous Coat
Gravel
Building Felt
Drain Tile (Special Tile W/ Holes for Water)

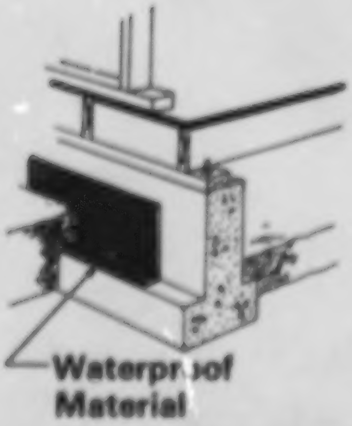
Drain Tile


Anchor Bolt
Mesh
Slab
Sand
Sill or Mud Sill
Grade for Proper Drainage
POLYETHYLENE Membrane
Reinforcing Bar

Waterproof Material

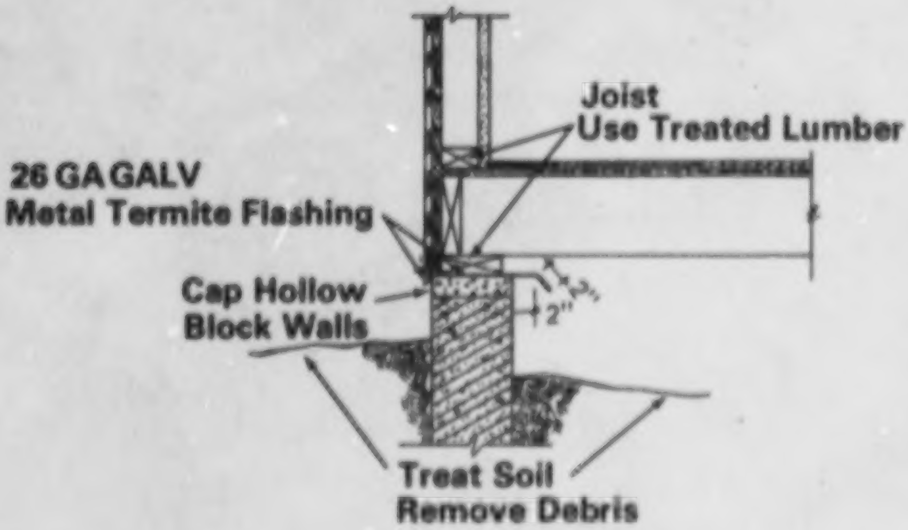

Anchor Bolt
Sill
Mesh
Chemicals in Conc. Pour
Gravel
Rigid Insulation for Cold Climates
Reinforcing Bar

Chemicals

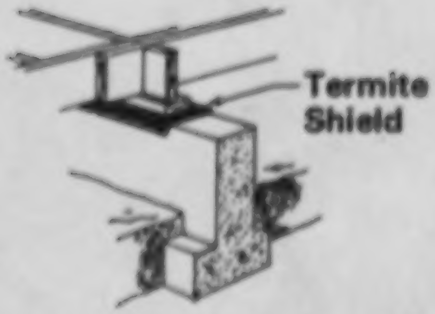

Waterproof Material

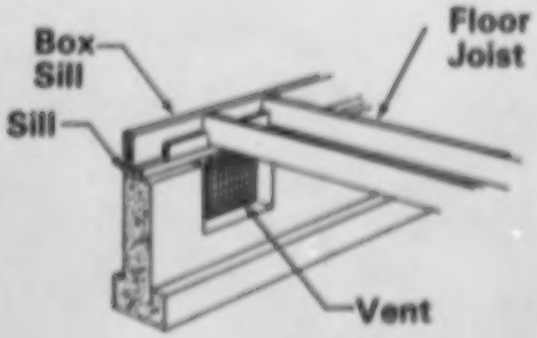
Waterproof Material

Termite Protection


Joist
Use Treated Lumber
26 GA GALV
Metal Termite Flashing
Cap Hollow
Block Walls
2"
Treat Soil
Remove Debris

Treated Wood and Soil

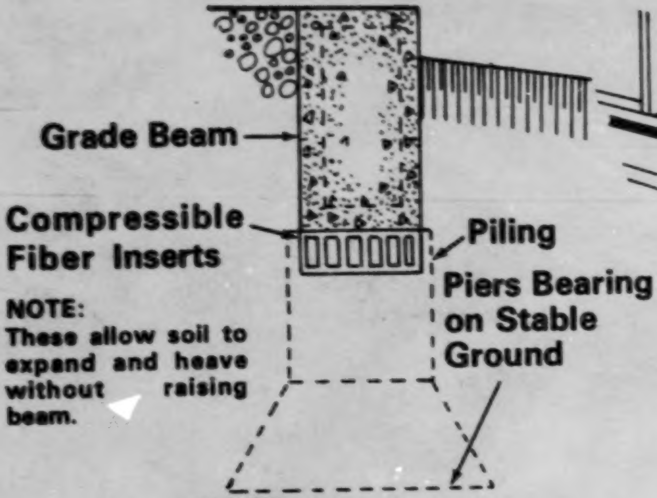

Termite
Shield


Box
Sill
Sill
Floor
Joist
Vent

Termite Shield

Crawl Space Ventilation

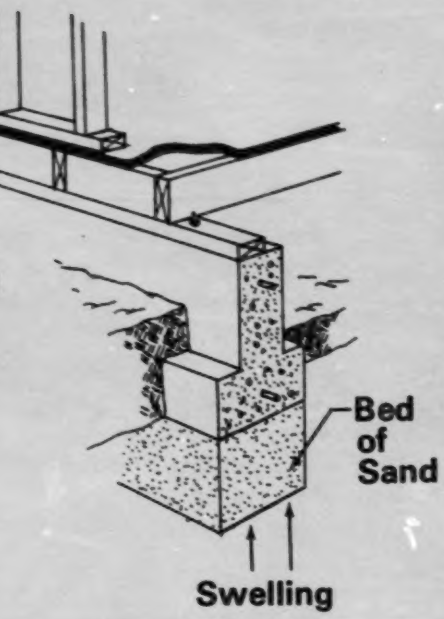
Foundation Breakage Conditions


Grade Beam
Compressible Fiber Inserts
Piling
Piers Bearing on Stable Ground

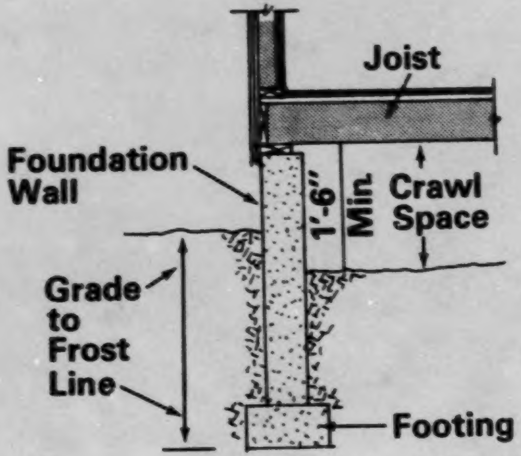
NOTE:
These allow soil to expand and heave without raising beam.

NOTE:
Check with soil mechanics engineer for requirements.

Fiber Inserts

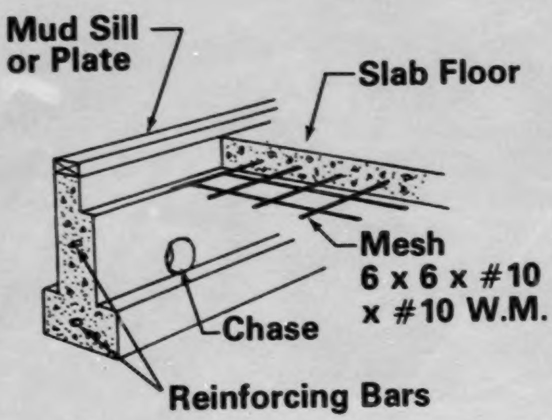

Bed of Sand
Swelling

Sand


Joist
Foundation Wall
1'-6" Min.
Crawl Space
Grade to Frost Line
Footing

NOTE:
See standards for correct size and quantity.

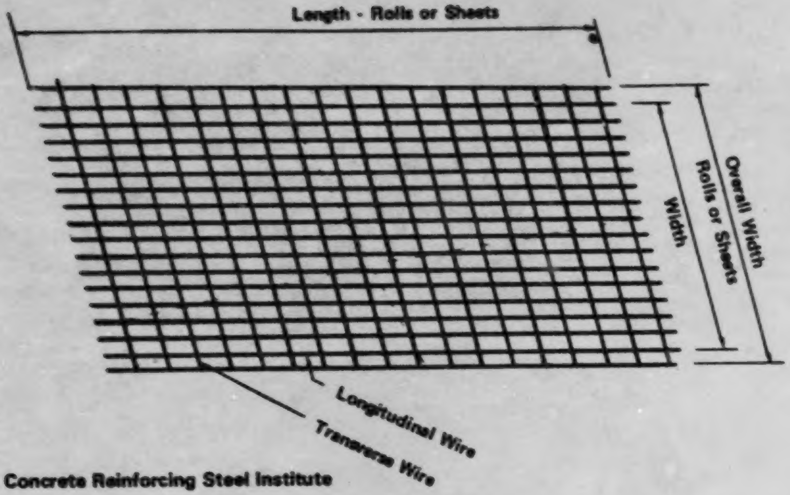
Frost Line


Mud Sill or Plate
Slab Floor
Mesh 6 x 6 x #10 x #10 W.M.
Chase
Reinforcing Bars

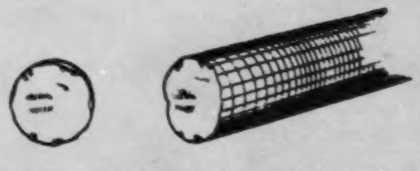
NOTE:
See frost depth chart for depth in your area.

Reinforcing

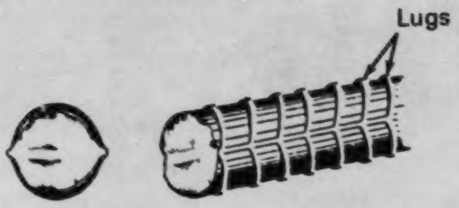
Reinforcing Materials


Length - Rolls or Sheets
Overall Width
Rolls or Sheets
Width
Longitudinal Wire
Transverse Wire

Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute



Plain Bar



Deformed Bar

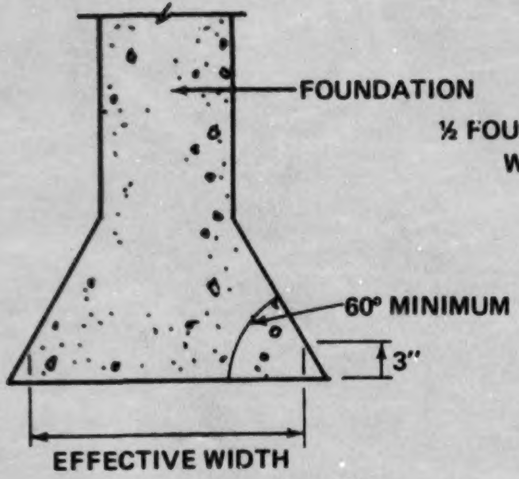
Common Stock Styles of Welded Wire Fabric

Style Designation		Spacing Of Wires, in.		Weight lbs. per 100 sq. ft.
Old Designation (By Steel Wire Gage)	New Designation (By W-Number)	Longit.	Transv.	
6x6—10x10	6x6—W1.4xW1.4	6	6	21
6x6—8x8	6x6—W2.1xW2.1	6	6	30
6x6—6x6	6x6—W2.9xW2.9	6	6	42
6x6—4x4	6x6—W4xW4	6	6	58
4x4—10x10	4x4—W1.4xW1.4	4	4	31
4x4—8x8	4x4—W2.1xW2.1	4	4	44
4x4—6x6	4x4—W2.9xW2.9	4	4	62
4x4—4x4	4x4—W4xW4	4	4	85

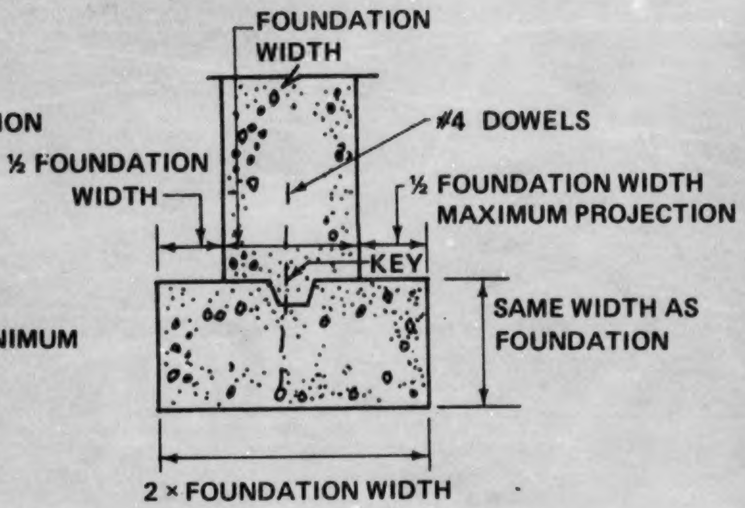
ASTM Standard Reinforcing Bars

Bar Size	Bar Designation Number	Nominal Weight, lb. per ft.	Nominal Dimensions	
			Diameter, in.	Cross-Sectional Area, sq. in.
⅜" o	3	0.376	0.375	0.11
½" o	4	0.668	0.500	0.20
⅝" o	5	1.043	0.625	0.31
¾" o	6	1.502	0.750	0.44
⅞" o	7	2.044	0.875	0.60
1" o	8	2.670	1.000	0.79
1⅛" o	9	3.400	1.128	1.00
1¼" o	10	4.303	1.270	1.27
1⅜" o	11	5.313	1.410	1.56

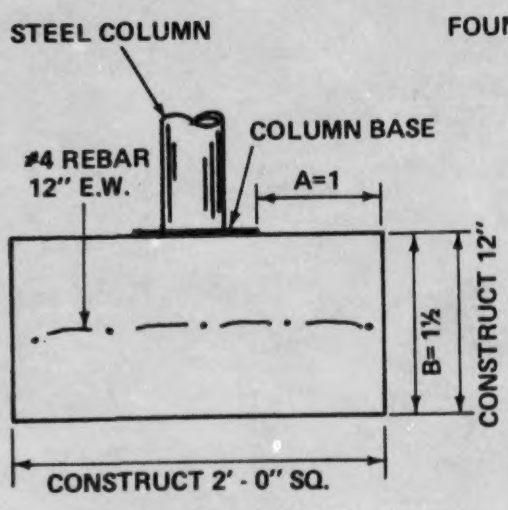
Footing Design


FOUNDATION
60° MINIMUM
3"
EFFECTIVE WIDTH

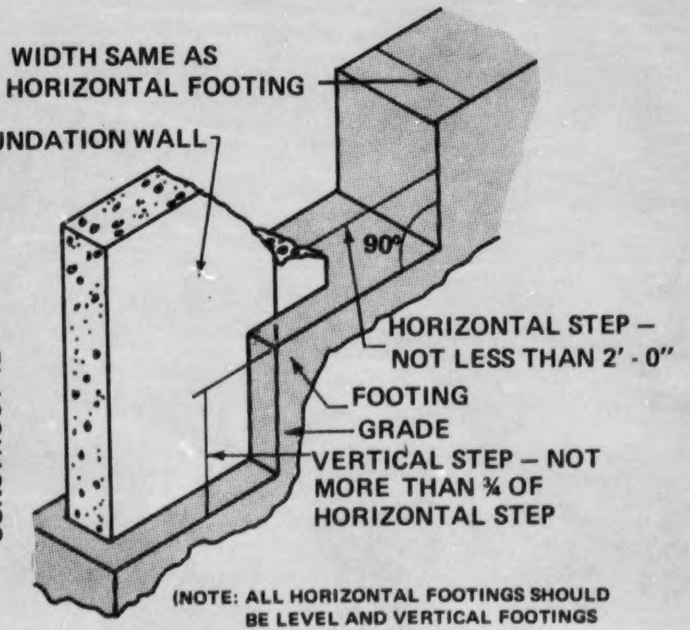
Flared Footing


FOUNDATION WIDTH
#4 DOWELS
½ FOUNDATION WIDTH
½ FOUNDATION WIDTH MAXIMUM PROJECTION
KEY
SAME WIDTH AS FOUNDATION
2 × FOUNDATION WIDTH

Spread Footing


STEEL COLUMN
COLUMN BASE
#4 REBAR 12" E.W.
A=1
B=1½
CONSTRUCT 12"
CONSTRUCT 2' - 0" SQ.

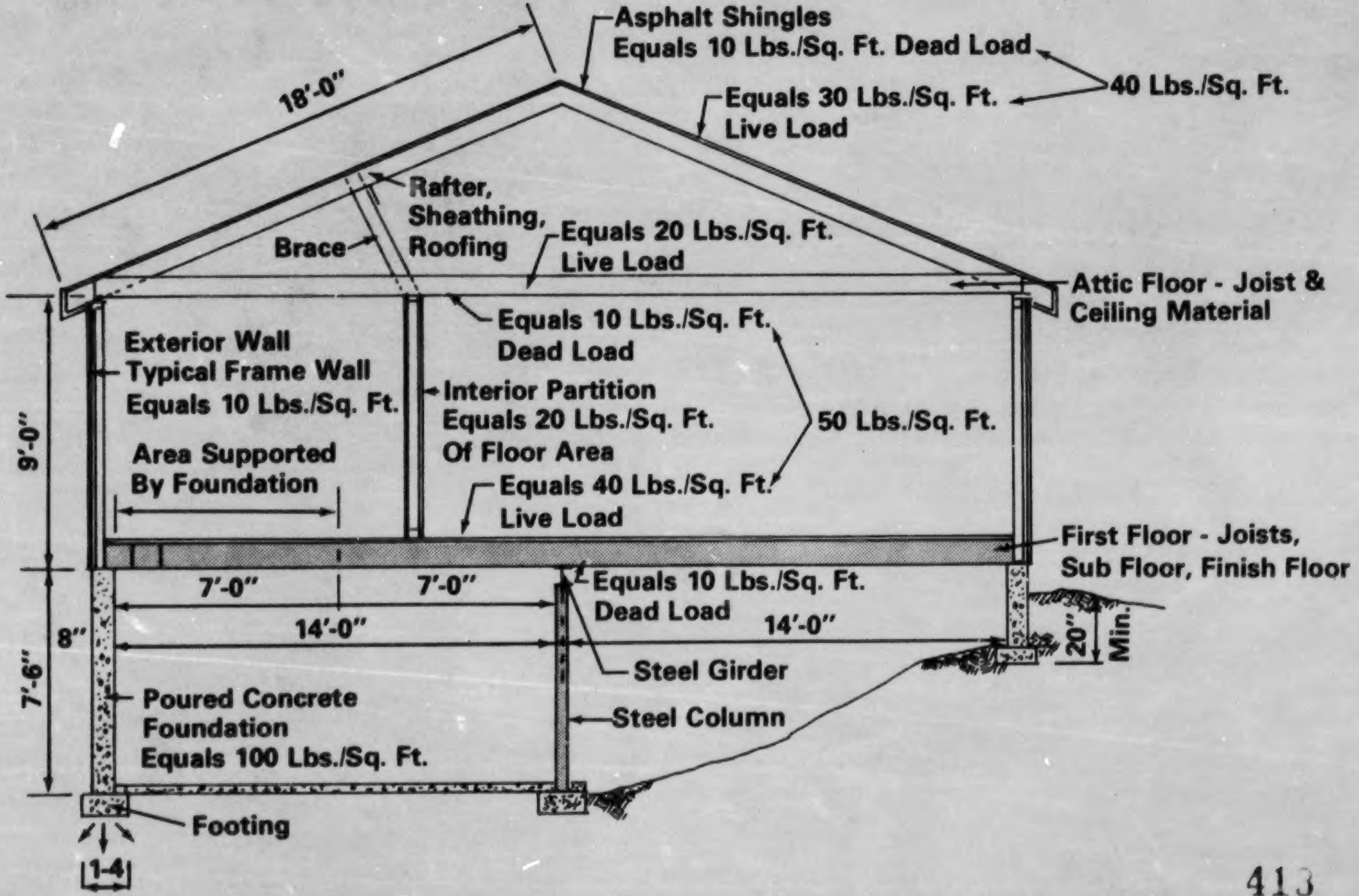
Column Footing


WIDTH SAME AS HORIZONTAL FOOTING
FOUNDATION WALL
90°
HORIZONTAL STEP – NOT LESS THAN 2' - 0"
FOOTING
GRADE
VERTICAL STEP – NOT MORE THAN ¾ OF HORIZONTAL STEP

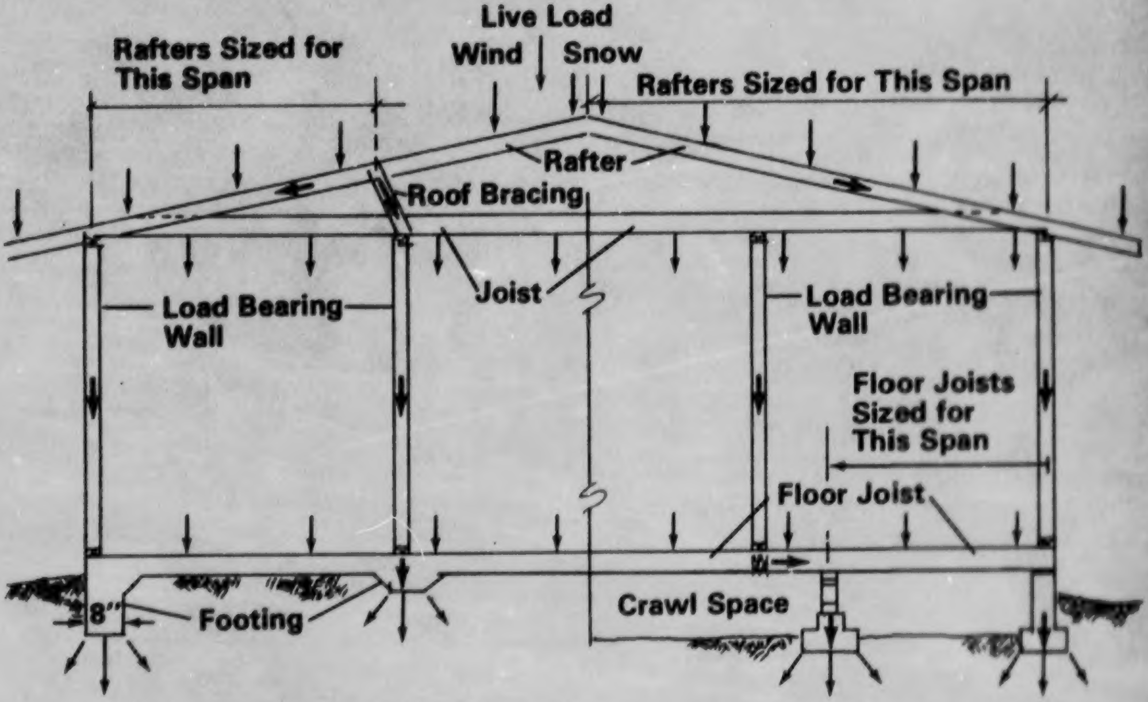
(NOTE: ALL HORIZONTAL FOOTINGS SHOULD BE LEVEL AND VERTICAL FOOTINGS PERPENDICULAR.)

Stepped Footing

Typical Live and Dead Loads for a Frame House


Asphalt Shingles
Equals 10 Lbs./Sq. Ft. Dead Load
40 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Equals 30 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Live Load
18'-0"
Rafter,
Sheathing,
Roofing
Brace
Equals 20 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Live Load
Attic Floor - Joist &
Ceiling Material
Equals 10 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Dead Load
Exterior Wall
Typical Frame Wall
Equals 10 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Interior Partition
Equals 20 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Of Floor Area
50 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
9'-0"
Area Supported
By Foundation
Equals 40 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Live Load
First Floor - Joists,
Sub Floor, Finish Floor
7'-0"
7'-0"
Equals 10 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Dead Load
14'-0"
14'-0"
8"
20"
Min.
7'-6"
Steel Girder
Poured Concrete
Foundation
Equals 100 Lbs./Sq. Ft.
Steel Column
Footing
1-4

Live and Dead Loads for a Residence


Live Load
Wind
Snow
Rafters Sized for This Span
Rafters Sized for This Span
Rafter
Roof Bracing
Joist
Load Bearing Wall
Load Bearing Wall
Floor Joists Sized for This Span
Floor Joist
8"
Footing
Crawl Space
Concrete Slab Floor
Wood Frame Floor

NOTE: Arrows Indicate Direction Loads Flow

TM 15

FOUNDATIONS
UNIT VIII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1--CALCULATE THE FOOTING REQUIREMENTS FOR A TYPICAL ONE-STORY FRAME HOUSE

Introduction: A footing must provide support for the house without excessive settlement or movement to eliminate cracks in the structure. The footing is made to certain specifications and detailed according to the amount of weight the soil can support and the weight of the structure to be placed on the footing. The tables shown are for calculation of following example only. Refer to a standards book for exact data for your problems.

Example Problem: Calculate the footing requirements for a one-story frame house with roofing material of asphalt shingles, partial basement, bearing soil of hard clay, and located in Oklahoma City (Figure 1 and Tables 1, 2, and 3)

Example Solution:

TABLE 1

Average Weights of Conventional Construction Materials

Material	Weight PSF
Concrete wall, 8"	100
Concrete wall, 10"	125
Concrete wall, 12"	150
Concrete block wall, 6"	40
Concrete block wall, 8"	55
Concrete block wall, 12"	80
Brick wall, 4"	35
Brick wall, 8"	74
Brick veneer (4") over frame wall	45
Brick veneer (4") over 4" concrete block wall	65
Typical frame exterior wall with 4" studs	10
Roof, wood or asphalt shingles	10
Roof, asbestos slate	12
Roof, 3/16" slate	15
Roof, 3/8" slate	22
Roof, tar and gravel	15
Interior partitions (per square foot of floor area)	20

NOTE: Other weights can be obtained from a standards book.

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

TABLE 2

Live and Dead Loads

Design Factor	Live Load PSF	Dead Load PSF
Floors of rooms used for sleeping area	30	10
Floors of rooms other than sleeping	40	10
Floors with ceiling attached below	—	10
Ceiling joists with limited attic storage	20	10
Ceiling joists with no attic storage	5	10
Ceiling joists if attic rooms are used	30	10
Roof rafters with roof slope less than 3 in 12	20	see roof mat.
Roof rafters with roof slope over 3 in 12	15	see roof mat.

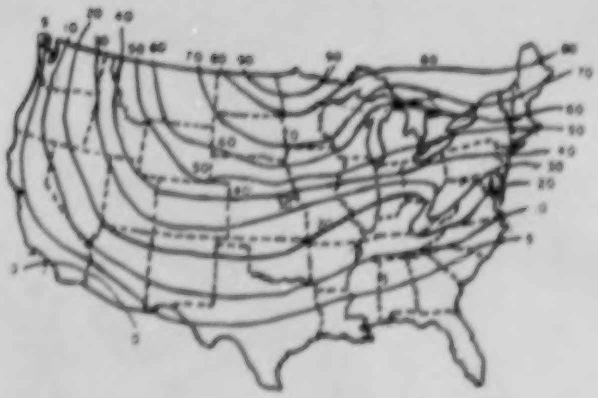
TABLE 3

Soil Classification	Bearing Value, PSF
ROCK	5000
SAND	
Coarse compact	1500
Fine compact	1000
Fine loose	500
CLAY	
Hard	3000
Sandy	2000
Soft	1000
ADOBE	1000
SILT	
Dry	500

NOTE: It is best to have a soil engineer investigate and supply a geological data of the soil.

Frost Depth in Inches

FIGURE 1



ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

1. Calculate the foundation wall height

   a. Frost depth for Oklahoma City is 20" (Figure 1)

   b. Footing thickness must be same as wall; this equals 8"

      (NOTE: Minimum wall thickness according to *HUD MPS* is 6"-8"; this example will use 8".)

   c. Floor line should be 8" above grade; 20" frost depth and 8" footing thickness = 12" + 8" above grade = 20" foundation wall height (Figure 2)

      (NOTE: This procedure is used for slab floors and crawl space floors only.)

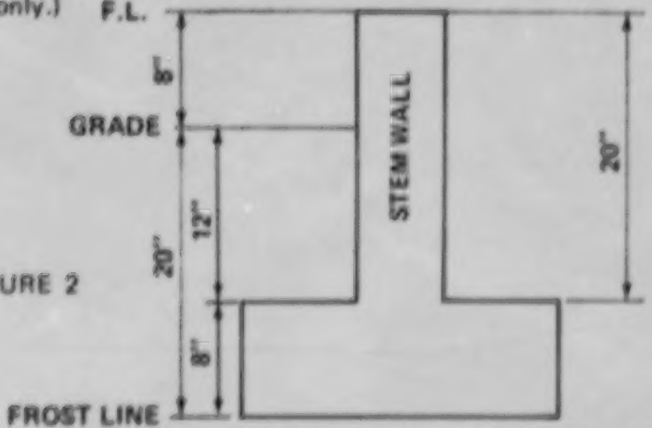

F.L.
8"
GRADE
STEM WALL
20"
12"
20"
8"
FROST LINE

FIGURE 2

2. Calculate foundation wall material load (Transparencies 14 and 15)

   7'-6" high X 1'-0" (linear foot) section = 7.5 square feet X 100 PSF for 8" concrete wall = 750 total pounds (Figure 3)

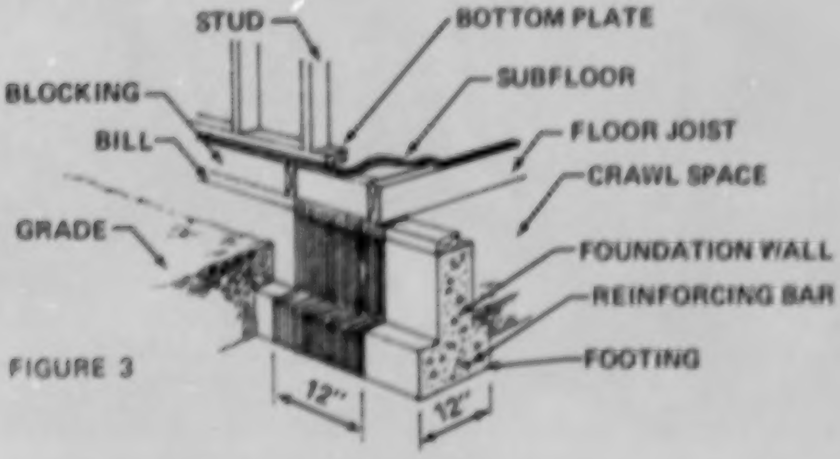

STUD
BOTTOM PLATE
SUBFLOOR
BLOCKING
FLOOR JOIST
SILL
CRAWL SPACE
GRADE
FOUNDATION WALL
REINFORCING BAR
FOOTING
12"
12"

FIGURE 3

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

3. Calculate first floor live and dead load

   1'-0" (linear foot) wide X 7'-0" long floor (half span distance) = 7.0 square feet X 50 PSF dead-live load = 350 total pounds

4. Calculate attic floor load

   1'-0" (linear foot) wide X 7'-0" (half span distance) long attic floor = 7.0 square feet X 30 PSF live load on ceiling joist = 210 total pounds

5. Calculate roof load

   1'-0" (linear foot) wide X 18'-0" rafter length = 18 square feet X 40 PSF live-dead with asphalt shingles = 720 total pounds

   (NOTE: Check local codes for your location due to variation of live loads.)

6. Calculate exterior wall load

   1'-0" wide X 9'-0" high = 9 square feet X 10 PSF = 90 total pounds

7. Calculate partition wall load

   1'-0" wide X 7'-0" (half span) long = 7.0 square feet X 20 PSF = 140 total pounds

   (NOTE: This calculation is not used for slab floor construction with interior walls used as load bearing.)

8. Add total weights

Foundation	750 PSF
First floor	350 PSF
Attic floor	210 PSF
Roof	720 PSF
Exterior wall	90 PSF
Partitions	140 PSF
Total load	2260 pounds for each linear foot of foundation

9. Check total pounds of foundation load with bearing load of hard clay

   Hard clay = 3000 PSF
   Design footing 1'-4" wide X 1'-0" long = 1.4 sq. ft. X 3000 = 4200 PSF
   Total design load less than soil capacity

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

Directions: Using data given and standards, calculate the footing requirements for a one-story house.

Problems:

A. 1. 30'-0" wide house

2. 4" brick veneer over 4" frame wall

3. Interior load bearing partition is 15'-0" from outside wall

4. 5/12 pitch with 16'-3" long rafters with wood shingles

(NOTE: For calculating rafter lengths, see Unit V, "Structural Systems.")

5. Location: Bismarck, North Dakota

B. Calculate the footing requirements for a one-story house as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

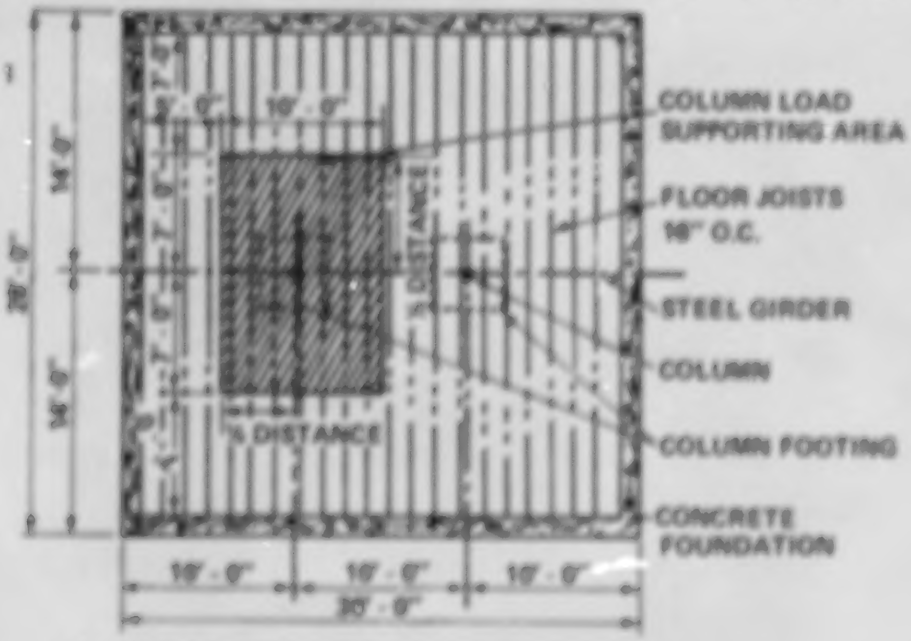
FOUNDATIONS
UNIT VIII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2–CALCULATE PIER OR COLUMN FOOTING REQUIREMENTS

Introduction: A pier or column footing carries a greater concentrated load than a foundation footing. The column supports half way from column to foundation wall or to another column. Refer to Transparency 14 and Tables 1, 2, and 3 in Assignment Sheet #1 for this example.

Example: 1. Calculate total area supported by column (Figure 1) - - 140 square feet

FIGURE 1



COLUMN LOAD SUPPORTING AREA
FLOOR JOISTS 16" O.C.
STEEL GIRDER
COLUMN
COLUMN FOOTING
CONCRETE FOUNDATION
5'-0"
10'-0"
7'-0"
7'-0"
7'-0"
7'-0"
14'-0"
14'-0"
28'-0"
½ DISTANCE
½ DISTANCE
10'-0"
10'-0"
10'-0"
30'-0"

2. Make load calculations

Attic floor – 140 sq. ft. X 30 PSF = 4,200 lbs.
First floor – 140 sq. ft. X 50 PSF = 7,000 lbs.
Partition load– 140 sq. ft. X 20 PSF = 2,800 lbs.

Total load on column 14,000 lbs.

3. Calculate footing area by dividing 14,000 pounds by 3,000 pounds per square foot hard clay; bearing value equals 4.7 square feet

4. Determine length of sides of footing by taking the square root of 4.7 square feet; this equals 2.17'

5. Calculations produce a safe condition using a 2'-0" X 2'-0" X 1'-0" thick footing

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

Directions: Using data given and standards, calculate the column or pier footing requirements for a one-story house.

Problems:

A. 1. 30'-0" wide house

2. Column to column distance is 8'-0"

3. Hard clay soil

B. Calculate the column footing requirements for a one-story house as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

FOUNDATIONS
UNIT VIII

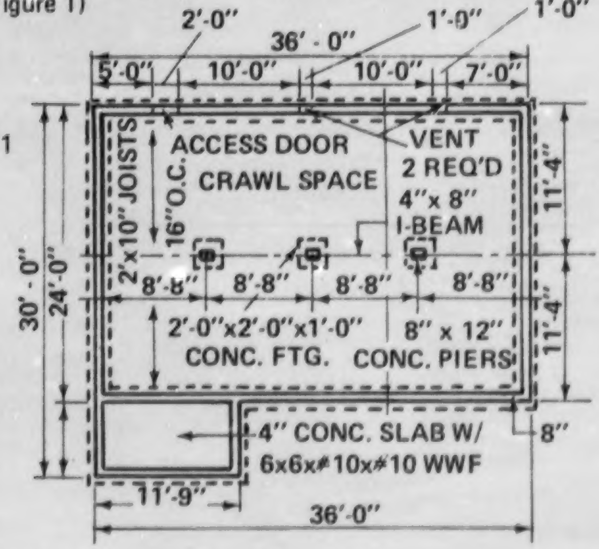
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3--DRAW A FOUNDATION PLAN

Introduction: The foundation plan is a dimensional drawing that shows the shape of the floor plan, location and size of concrete footings, concrete piers, concrete floors, wood girders, floor joist sizes, and other related information on the foundation. The procedure given below is for constructing a slab floor or crawl space foundation plan. The scale used is the same as the floor plan.

Example:

1. Place a new sheet of vellum over the floor plan and fasten to drawing surface
2. Using building outlines shown on the first floor plan, draw lines for all exterior walls and garage wall between main part of house
3. Calculate all foundation footings and pier footings and draw them to proper size as hidden lines
4. Draw in wall thickness
5. Draw construction lines across walls to locate all door openings, vent openings, or basement windows
6. Draw in fireplace outlines and footing, if needed
7. Using proper symbol, draw all beams or girders and indicate with notes (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1


2'-0"
1'-0"
1'-0"
36' - 0"
5'-0"
10'-0"
10'-0"
7'-0"
ACCESS DOOR
CRAWL SPACE
VENT
2 REQ'D
4"x 8"
I-BEAM
2'x10" JOISTS
16"O.C.
8'-8"
8'-8"
8'-8"
8'-8"
11'-4"
11'-4"
30' - 0"
24'-0"
2'-0"x2'-0"x1'-0"
CONC. FTG.
8" x 12"
CONC. PIERS
4" CONC. SLAB W/
6x6x#10x#10 WWF
8"
11'-9"
36'-0"

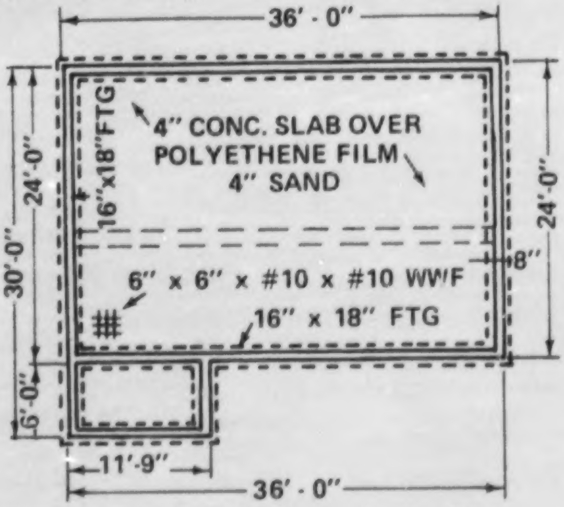
8. Draw each post or pier as required
9. Allow for plumbing chases

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

10. Dimension the entire drawing using same rules as on floor plan

11. Indicate floor reinforcement, thickness, waterproofing, and fill note (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2


36' - 0"
4" CONC. SLAB OVER
POLYETHENE FILM
4" SAND
16"x18" FTG
24'-0"
30'-0"
24'-0"
8"
6" x 6" x #10 x #10 WWF
16" x 18" FTG
6'-0"
11'-9"
36' - 0"

12. Draw joist direction and add notes for crawl space plan

13. Add cutting plane lines for reference to section drawings, if needed

14. Darken in lines and dimensional values

15. Check plan carefully for errors in spelling, total dimensions, and notes

16. Complete lettering in title block

Problem: Draw a foundation plan on vellum as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

FOUNDATIONS
UNIT VIII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--DETAIL A FOUNDATION SECTION

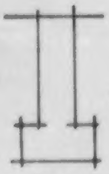
Introduction: The purpose of a detail is to illustrate, on a larger scale, the method of assembly. A detail gives the drafter the opportunity to give critical dimensions, describe materials, and indicate maximum and minimum dimensions that cannot be shown in other drawings. Shown below are some basic procedures that guarantee good details. The scale used for most foundation details is 3/4" = 1'-0" or 1" = 1'-0".

Example:

1. Using scale of 3/4" = 1'-0", construct light lines of basic forms like it is built (Figure 1)

   (NOTE: Footing size requirements must be calculated before detailing a foundation section.)

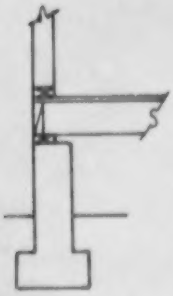
   FIGURE 1



2. Add construction lines for related materials (Figure 2)

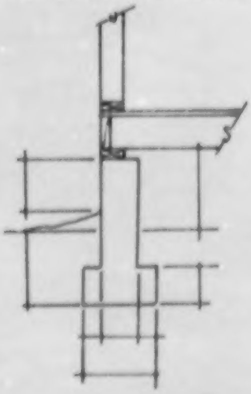
   (NOTE: Draw wood products their actual size, not nominal size.)

   FIGURE 2



3. Construct dimension lines and diagonal lines (Figure 3)

   FIGURE 3

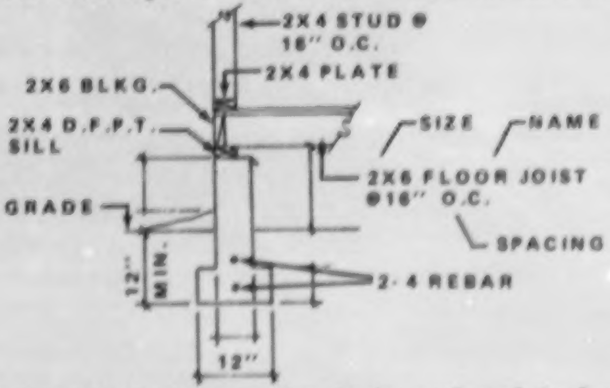


ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

4. Add all necessary notes with size of object first, then name of object, spacing third, and finally any other information (Figure 4)

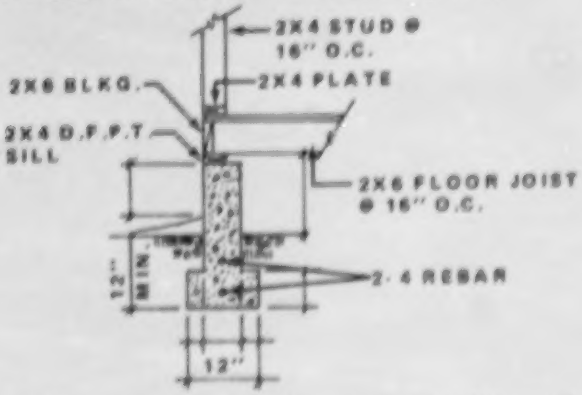
(NOTE: Use straight lines or an irregular curve for leaders.)

FIGURE 4

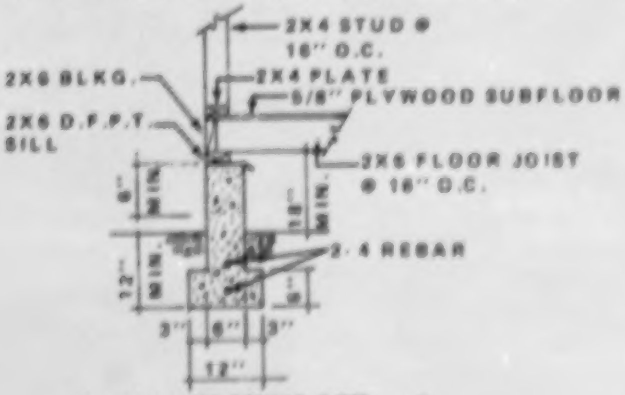

2X4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2X4 PLATE
2X6 BLKG.
2X4 D.F.P.T. SILL
SIZE
NAME
2X6 FLOOR JOIST @16" O.C.
SPACING
GRADE
12" MIN.
2-4 REBAR
12"

5. Add materials in section, darken in the outline of the foundation, and poche the detail on reverse side of vellum (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5


2X4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2X4 PLATE
2X6 BLKG.
2X4 D.F.P.T. SILL
2X6 FLOOR JOIST @ 16" O.C.
12" MIN.
2-4 REBAR
12"

6. Letter in detail title, scale, and reference bubble (Figure 6)


2X4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2X4 PLATE
5/8" PLYWOOD SUBFLOOR
2X6 BLKG.
2X6 D.F.P.T. SILL
2X6 FLOOR JOIST @ 16" O.C.
6" MIN.
18" MIN.
12" MIN.
6"
2-4 REBAR
3"
6"
3"
12"

TYPICAL FOOTING DET. A
SCALE: ¾" = 1'0" 3

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

Problem: On B size media construct a footing @ veneer and exterior bearing ftg. detail. Use scale of 3/4" = 1'-0". Veneer detail reference is Sheet No. 6, Detail C. Exterior bearing ftg. detail referencr is Sheet No. 5, Detail B. Refer to Transparencies 3 and 6 for examples.

FOUNDATIONS
UNIT VIII

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

(NOTE: The terms on this page match the definitions on this page.)

_____a. Drawing which shows the details and location of all concrete footings, piers, columns, foundation walls, and supporting beams of a building

_____b. The supporting portion of a building including the footings

_____c. That part of the house which extends from the first floor to the footing

_____d. The depth to which the soil freezes

_____e. The amount of weight soils can resist calculated in pounds per square foot

_____f. The level of the soil around the structure

_____g. Soil brought to the building site which is mechanically compacted to insure proper weight bearing capacity

_____h. Soil brought to the building site used to raise the level of the grade

_____i. The removal of soil from a known level

_____j. A masonry section designed to distribute the weight of the structure to the ground or soil

_____k. A groove in a footing of a two-pour concrete system to eliminate possible movement of foundation wall after pour

_____l. The base of the footing rises or lowers as the grade requires while maintaining a constant depth below grade

_____m. A masonry or poured concrete pillar usually below a building to support the floor framing

_____n. A wood or metal post with a footing used to support a beam

1. Key
2. Cut
3. Column
4. Foundation plan
5. Compacted fill
6. Stem wall
7. Frost line
8. Grade
9. Foundation
10. Uncompacted fill
11. Bearing capacity
12. Stepped footing
13. Footing
14. Pier

_____o. A structural member transversely supporting a load

_____p. A poured concrete foundation wall beam that spans piling or piers

_____q. A large or principal horizontal structural member used to support the ends of floor joists and beams

_____r. A masonry unit used to support the ends of beams or stiffen a foundation wall

_____s. A foundation system consisting of steel, timber, or concrete driven vertically into the ground to stable soil or rock

_____t. A concrete floor on grade that can be non-reinforced or reinforced supported by a foundation or independent from a foundation

_____u. Where the slab and foundation are poured at the same time

_____v. The process of including additional materials to strengthen the concrete

_____w. A reinforcing bar placed in concrete to provide resistance to tensile stresses or breakage

_____x. Reinforcing bars used to hold together two different pours of concrete

_____y. A threaded rod inserted in masonry construction to attach sill plate to foundation wall

_____z. The process of applying materials to basement walls, foundation walls, or underside of concrete slab to repel moisture

____aa. The space below the floor of a building built above the ground

____bb. Method where exterior masonry veneer walls may extend 1" past or outside a foundation

____cc. Process of shading in the area to be emphasized

15. Pilaster
16. Rebar
17. Crawl space
18. Piling
19. Grade beam
20. Dowels
21. Monolithic slab
22. Reinforcing
23. Beam
24. Concrete slab
25. Anchor bolt
26. Poche
27. Girder
28. Waterproofing
29. Corbelled brick

____dd. A slot or groove built in a masonry wall to provide space for ducts, pipes, or conduits

____ee. A separation in a masonry or concrete wall or concrete floor to provide room for expansion due to temperature and moisture changes

____ff. Wood impregnated with toxic chemicals at elevated pressures and temperatures to eliminate decay

30. Pressure treated wood
31. Chase
32. Expansion joint

2. Complete the following chart of abbreviations used on foundation plans and details.

____________	AB
Building	____________
Finish	____________
Floor	____________
____________	FTG
Foundation	____________
____________	GA
____________	HDR
____________	PSF
____________	REBAR

3. Name the two types of floor systems.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

4. List two advantages and one disadvantage of wood foundations.

a. Advantages

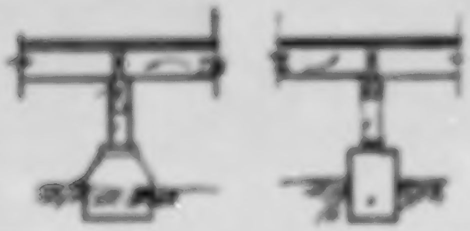
1) ______________________________

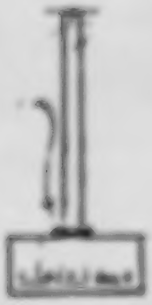
2) ______________________________

b. Disadvantage- ______________________________

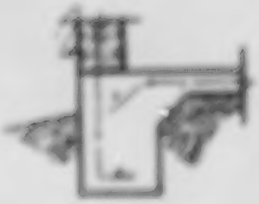
____

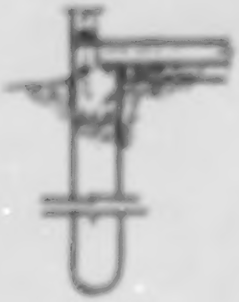
5. Identify types of footing systems.



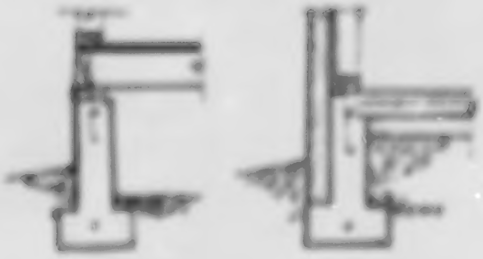


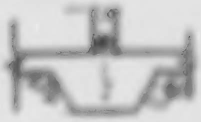
a. ______________________ b. ______________________





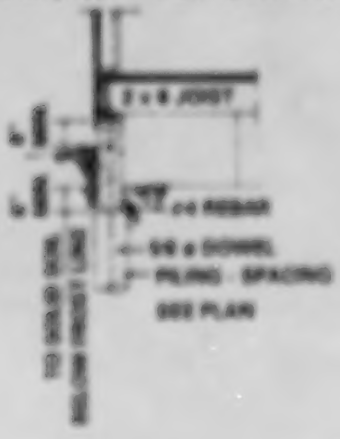
c. ______________________ d. ______________________

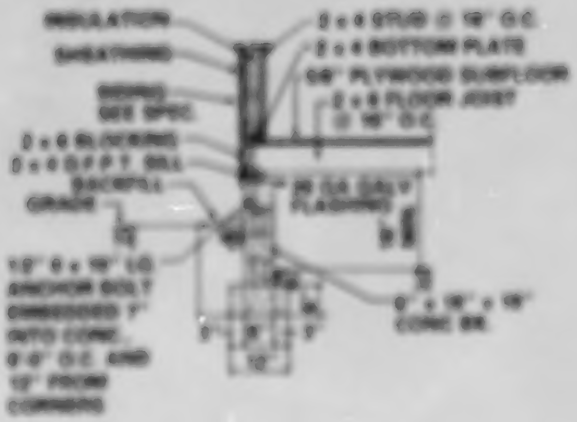




e. ______________________ f. ______________________

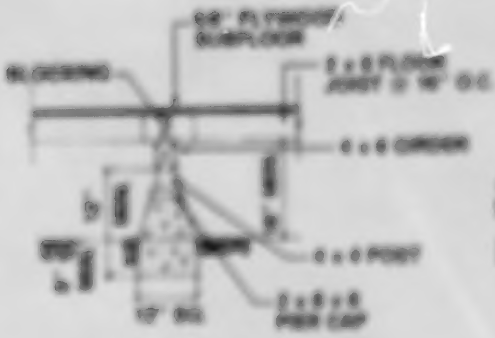
6. Identify typical crawl space footing detail drawings.

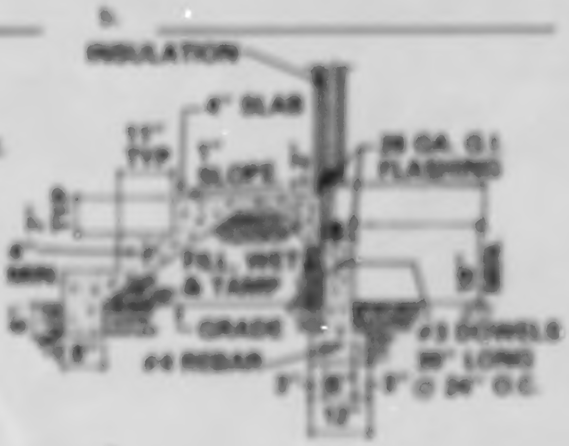

2 x 8 JOIST
#4 REBAR
5/8 ø DOWEL
PILING - SPACING
SEE PLAN


INSULATION
SHEATHING
SIDING
SEE SPEC.
2 x 6 BLOCKING
2 x 6 D.F.P.T. SILL
BACKFILL
GRADE
1/2" ø x 10" LG.
ANCHOR BOLT
EMBEDDED 7"
INTO CONC.
@ 6'-0" O.C. AND
12" FROM
CORNERS
2 x 4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2 x 4 BOTTOM PLATE
5/8" PLYWOOD SUBFLOOR
2 x 8 FLOOR JOIST
@ 16" O.C.
26 GA. GALV.
FLASHING
8" x 16" x 16"
CONC. BK.
12"

a. ____________________

b. ____________________

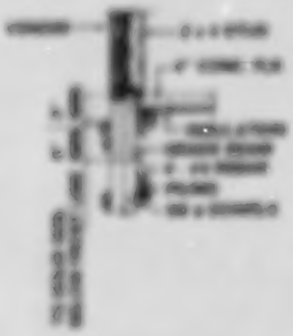

5/8" PLYWOOD
SUBFLOOR
BLOCKING
2 x 8 FLOOR
JOIST @ 16" O.C.
4 x 6 GIRDER
4 x 4 POST
2 x 6 x 6
PIER CAP
12" SQ.


INSULATION
4" SLAB
12"
TYP
1"
SLOPE
26 GA. G.I.
FLASHING
6"
MIN.
FILL, WET
& TAMP
GRADE
#4 REBAR
#3 DOWELS
30" LONG
@ 24" O.C.
12"

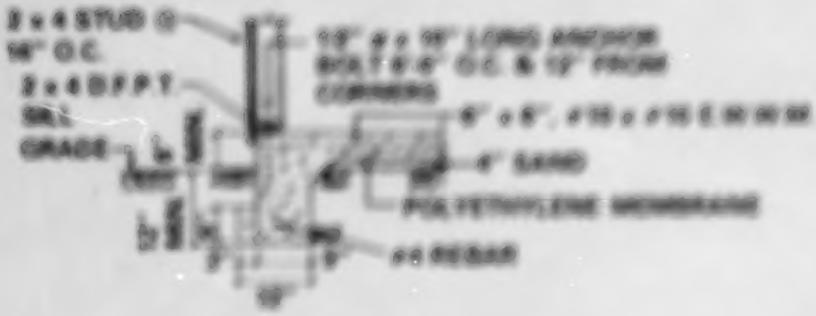
c. ____________________

d. ____________________

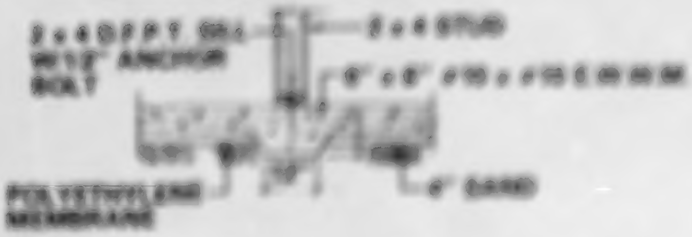
7. Identify typical slab floor footing detail drawings.


VENEER
2 x 4 STUD
4" CONC. SLAB
INSULATION
GRADE BEAM
#4 REBAR
PILING
5/8 ø DOWELS

a. ____________________


2 x 4 STUD @ 16" O.C.
2 x 6 D.F.P.T. SILL
GRADE
1/2" ø x 10" LONG ANCHOR BOLT @ 6' O.C. & 12" FROM CORNERS
6" x 6", #10 x #10 E.W.W.M.
4" SAND
POLYETHYLENE MEMBRANE
#4 REBAR
10"

b. ______________________________


2 x 4 D.F.P.T. SILL W/1/2" ANCHOR BOLT
2 x 4 STUD
6" x 6" #10 x #10 E.W.W.M.
POLYETHYLENE MEMBRANE
4" SAND

c. ______________________________

8. List two methods of waterproofing the foundation wall and concrete slab.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

9. List three methods of protecting a structure from termites.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

c. ______________________________

10. Select methods of preventing breakage of foundations and concrete slabs by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Treated wood

_____b. Sand bed

_____c. Soil treatment

_____d. Reinforcing

_____e. Fiber inserts

_____f. Footing placed below frost line

11. Select true statements concerning designing and constructing a footing by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. The concrete should be poured continuously; no load should be placed on a footing until the concrete has thoroughly set up

_____b. If a footing trench is dug too deeply, the excess space should be filled with uncompacted fill dirt

_____c. Footings can be poured in earth trenches without side forms if the soil is firm enough to retain its shape

_____d. Footing width should be designed to support with safety the load to be placed upon it

_____e. Footings do not need to be protected from freezing

_____f. In residential construction, a footing should never be less than 6" (152 mm) thick

_____g. Footing thickness should be at least four and a half times the projection of the footing from the foundation

_____h. The thickness-to-width ratio of a footing should be kept close to 2 to 1 if footing projection exceeds one half the width of the foundation thickness

_____i. The bearing area of flared footing is figured the same way as for spread footings

_____j. The slope of a flared footing should be less than 45° from the normal degree of slope grade

_____k. A stepped footing horizontal and vertical steps should be poured at the same time

12. Select true statements concerning designing piling and grade beams by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Each pier and column footing loading should be figured separately

_____b. Pier or column footing thickness is 4-6"

_____c. Piling should be spaced 8'-0" on center maximum, at least 10" in diameter, and have a bearing area of 2 square feet for average soil

_____d. Piling should have one No. 5 bar running full length into grade beam

_____e. Grade beam for frame construction should be at least 6" wide by 14" high

_____f. Grade beam for masonry and masonry veneer construction should be 10" wide by 14" high

_____g. Grade beam should have seven No. 5 steel bars for masonry and masonry veneer construction or four No. 5 steel bars for frame construction

13. Select true statements concerning designing a slab foundation system by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Slab on ground construction should not be attempted in areas having ground water or a hydrostatic pressure condition near the ground surface

_____b. The site does not need to be graded

_____c. Perimeter insulation never should be used

_____d. The slab may be poured a little at a time

_____e. Concrete should be allowed to develop top strength before being subjected to a load

_____f. The maximum floor slab should be 2" thick

_____g. Metal heating coils and reinforcement should be covered with at least 1" of concrete

_____h. Hot air ducts in a slab should be completely encased in at least 2" (51 mm) of concrete, unless they are crush resistant

_____i. The top of the floor slab should be at least 8" below the finished grade

_____j. Porch floor slabs need not be reinforced regardless of size

14. Match symbols used in foundation plans and details on the right with the correct names.

_____a. Brick, common

_____b. Concrete

_____c. Concrete block

_____d. Earth

_____e. Insulation (batt, loose, fill blanket)

_____f. Rigid insulation

_____g. Metal, flashing or waterproofing

_____h. Gypsum wallboard

_____i. Stone, gravel, porous fill

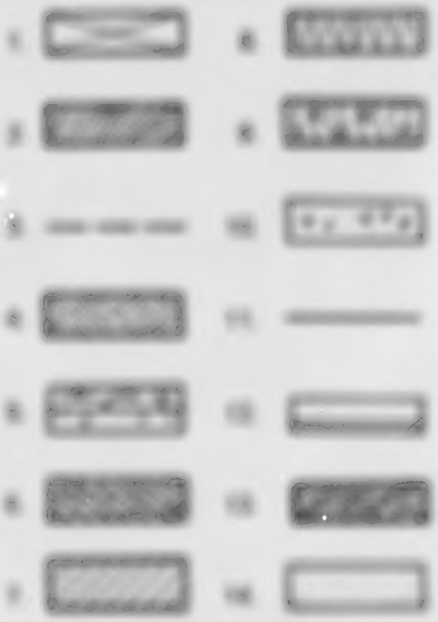
_____j. Reinforcing bar

_____k. Wood, finish

_____l. Wood, rough

_____m. Wood finish on stud

_____n. Wire mesh



15. Distinguish between live and dead loads by placing an "X" next to the description of a live load.

_____a. Those static or fixed weights of the structure itself

_____b. Those fixed or moving weights which are not a structural part of the house

16. List three preliminary steps to drawing a foundation plan

a. ____

____

b. ____

____

c. ____

____

17. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Calculate the footing requirements for a typical one-story frame house.

b. Calculate pier or column footing requirements.

c. Draw a foundation plan.

d. Detail a foundation section.

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

FOUNDATIONS
UNIT VIII

ANSWERS TO TEST

1.

a.	4	l.	12	w.	16
b.	9	m.	14	x.	20
c.	6	n.	3	y.	25
d.	7	o.	23	z.	28
e.	11	p.	19	aa.	17
f.	8	q.	27	bb.	29
g.	5	r.	15	cc.	26
h.	10	s.	18	dd.	31
i.	2	t.	24	ee.	32
j.	13	u.	21	ff.	30
k.	1	v.	22		

2.

Anchor bolt	AB
Building	BLDG
Finish	FIN
Floor	FL
Footing	FTG
Foundation	FDN
Gauge	GA
Header	HDR
Pounds per sq. ft.	PSF
Reinforcing bar	REBAR

3. a. Concrete slab
   b. Supported (wood) floor

4. Any two of the following:

   a. Advantages
      1) Costs less to build
      2) Requires less excavation
      3) Saves time in construction

   Either of the following:

   b. Disadvantages
      1) Should not be used in wet climates
      2) Requires special treated wood

5. a. Pier with post
   b. Pier with column
   c. Grade beam - one pour
   d. Grade beam with pile
   e. Spread
   f. Interior - one pour

6. a. Grade beam
   b. Exterior bearing footing
   c. Typical pier detail
   d. Porch connection

7. a. Grade beam @ veneer
   b. Exterior bearing footing
   c. Interior bearing footing

8. Any two of the following:

   a. Waterproof materials
   b. Drain tile
   c. Chemicals in concrete
   d. Pipe mastic

9. Any three of the following:

   a. Treated wood
   b. Soil treatment
   c. Crawl space ventilation
   d. Termite shield

10. b, d, e, f

11. a, c, d, f, h, i, k

12. a, c, d, e

13. a, e, g, h

14. a. 7
    b. 10
    c. 9
    d. 4
    e. 8
    f. 6
    g. 11
    h. 14
    i. 13
    j. 5
    k. 2
    l. 1
    m. 12
    n. 3

15. b

16. Any three of the following:

    a. Examine the floor plan to determine the type of exterior walls specified
    b. Examine the plot plan and elevation to determine the need for stepped footings, retaining walls, and problems related to grade
    c. Determine the size of footings and foundation walls required from information available
    d. Check the frost penetration depth for the area where the house is to be built
    e. Refer to building codes to be sure that all requirements are met
    f. Have a soil bearing test made if soil bearing capacity is questionable

17. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

DETAILS
UNIT IX

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify types of stairways, types of fireplaces, and parts of a wood window. The student should also be able to construct a stairway layout and draw fireplace details, cabinet details, door and window details, and a wall section detail. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to details with the correct definitions.
2. Identify features of a stairway.
3. Identify types of stairways.
4. Complete stairway formulas.
5. Distinguish between stair slopes.
6. Label components of a fireplace.
7. Identify types of fireplaces.
8. Distinguish between characteristics of masonry fireplaces and metal prefabricated fireplaces.
9. Select true statements concerning requirements for fireplace sizing and detailing.
10. Match types of fireplace detail drawings with the correct uses.
11. Label parts of a wood window.
12. List the four major parts of a window section drawing.
13. List the three major parts of a door section drawing.
14. Arrange in order the steps for drawing a wall section detail.
15. Demonstrate the ability to:
    - a. Construct a stairway layout.
    - b. Draw fireplace construction details.

c. Draw typical cabinet details.

d. Draw door and window section details.

e. Draw a wall section detail.

DETAILS
UNIT IX

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Provide examples of section detail drawings of residential and commercial buildings.

VII. Take a field trip to a cabinet or mill shop.

VIII. Provide manufacturers' catalogs of appliances, cabinets, prefabricated fireplaces, doors, and windows for use with the assignment sheets.

IX. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this sheet:

   A. Objective sheet

   B. Information sheet

   C. Transparency masters

      1. TM 1–Features of a Stairway
      2. TM 2–Types of Stairways
      3. TM 3–Components of a Fireplace
      4. TM 4–Types of Fireplaces
      5. TM 5–Prefabricated Fireplace
      6. TM 6–Prefabricated Fireplace (Continued)
      7. TM 7–Fireplace Details
      8. TM 8–Cabinet Details

   9. TM 9–Cabinet Details (Continued)
   10. TM 10–Cabinet Dimensions
   11. TM 11–Parts of a Cabinet
   12. TM 12–Parts of a Window
   13. TM 13–Wood Door and Window Sections
   14. TM 14–Aluminum Window Section
   15. TM 15–Drawing a Wall Section Detail
   16. TM 16–Drawing a Wall Section Detail (Continued)

D. Assignment sheets

   1. Assignment Sheet #1–Construct a Stairway Layout
   2. Assignment Sheet #2–Draw Fireplace Construction Details
   3. Assignment Sheet #3–Draw Typical Cabinet Details
   4. Assignment Sheet #4–Draw Door and Window Section Details
   5. Assignment Sheet #5–Draw a Wall Section Detail

E. Test

F. Answers to test

II. References:

A. Badzinski, Stanley Jr. *Stair Layout.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1974.

B. Brown, Walter C. *Blueprint Reading for Construction Residential and Commercial.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1980.

C. Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. *Architectural Drawing and Planning.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

D. Obermeyer, Thomas. *Architectural Technology.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1976.

E. Ramsey, Charles G. and Harold R. Sleeper. *Architectural Graphic Standards.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1970.

F. Wakita, Osamu A. and Richard M. Linde. *The Professional Practice of Architectural Detailing.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1976.

G. *Manual of Acceptable Practices to the HUD Minimum Property Standards.* Washington, D. C.: U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

H. Weidhaas, Ernest R. *Architectural Drafting and Construction.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1974.

I. Willis, Charles D. *Blueprint Reading for Commercial Construction.* Albany, NY 12205: Delmar Publishers/Litton Educational Publishing, Inc., 1979.

J. *Residential Fireplace and Chimney Details.* McLean, VA: Brick Institute of America.

DETAILS
UNIT IX

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

A. Riser-Vertical member from bottom of one tread to the tread above

B. Tread-Horizontal member extending from face of one riser to the face of an adjoining one, plus nosing

C. Nosing-Portion of the tread which projects beyond the riser surface

D. Unit rise-Vertical distance from the top of one tread to the next tread

E. Unit run-Horizontal distance from the face of one riser to the face of the next riser

F. Closed stairs-Stairs which have a wall on both sides

G. Open stairs-Stairs which have no wall on one or both sides

H. Mantel-Decorative ledge above the fireplace

I. Saddle-Two sloping surfaces meeting in a ridge and used between the back side of chimney and a sloping surface

J. Firebrick-Type of hard, heat-resistant masonry which has been fired and kiln dried

K. Chimney chase-The assembly of materials that encloses the metal flue

L. Cement wash-Cement and sand mix placed on top of chimney for weather-proofing

(NOTE: This is sometimes called the concrete cap.)

M. Throat-Opening in a fireplace that is controlled by a damper to provide passage of smoke and hot air gases up the chimney

N. Clean out-Area in the ash pit used for easier removal of ashes

O. Spark arrestor-A metal cap with screen placed on chimney flue to retain sparks in flue

P. Stile-A vertical face frame member of cabinet trim

Q. Rail-A horizontal face frame member of cabinet trim

R. Furring-Wood strips fastened to a wall or ceiling for attaching dry wall above wall cabinet

(NOTE: Furr down is normally 1'0".)

INFORMATION SHEET

S. Cabinet work- All storage spaces that are not part of the structure and may be job-built, shop-built, or manufactured

(NOTE: See manufacturers' catalogs for planning.)

T. Soffit- The underside of a furred down area above wall cabinets

(NOTE: This is called the soffit line.)

U. Transverse wall section- A section that runs through the narrow width of a building

V. Longitudinal wall section- A section that runs through the length of a building

II. Features of a stairway (Transparency 1)

A. Unit rise

B. Unit run

C. Tread

D. Riser

E. Tread nosing

F. Stringer or carriage

G. Hand rail

H. Clearance

I. Balusters

J. Newell post

K. Total rise

L. Total run

M. Landing

III. Types of stairways and uses (Transparency 2)

A. Straight run- Used most in home construction

B. U-type- Used most in public buildings and split foyers

C. L-type with landing- Used where straight run space is not available

D. L-type with winders- Used where space is not available for L-type with landing

E. Spiral- Used where little space is available

INFORMATION SHEET

IV. Stairway formulas

A. Unit rise + Unit run = 17" to 18"

B. 2 x Unit rise + Unit run = 24" to 25"

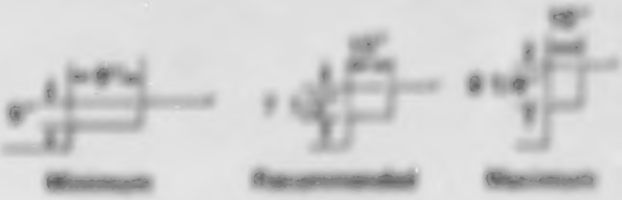
C. Unit rise x Unit run = 72" to 75"

V. Stair slopes

A. Minimum 5" riser, 9" tread

B. Recommended 7 1/2" riser, 10" tread

C. Maximum 8 1/4" riser, 10" tread


9"
5"
10"
7 1/2"
10"
8 1/4"
Minimum
Recommended
Maximum

VI. Components of a fireplace (Transparency 3)

A. Cap

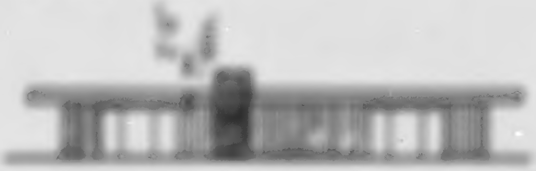
B. Spark arrester

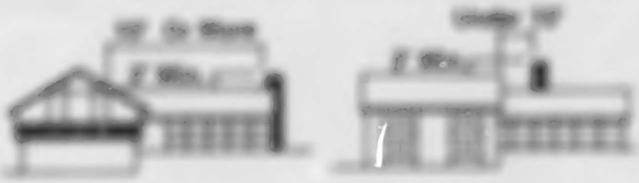
C. Flue lining

(NOTE: This is made of terra cotta or prefabricated metal pipe. Standard sizes are found in manufacturers' catalogs.)

D. Flue

E. Chimney




10' Or More
2' Min.
Under 10'
2' Min.

Minimum Chimney Height

INFORMATION SHEET

F. Smoke chamber

G. Throat

H. Damper

I. Ash pit

J. Clean out

K. Footing

L. Hearth

M. Firebox

N. Face

VII. Types of fireplaces (Transparency 8)

A. Single face

B. Double face opposite sides

C. Double face adjacent sides

D. Three face

E. Prefabricated

VIII. Characteristics of masonry fireplaces and metal prefabricated fireplaces

A. Masonry fireplaces

1. Are pleasing to the eye
2. Can burn large sizes of wood
3. Last a lifetime
4. Are expensive to install
5. Some local codes do not permit their installation in existing homes
6. Usually are not as efficient
7. Can be a safety hazard if not constructed correctly

B. Metal prefabricated fireplaces

1. Cost less to install
2. Generally heat up faster and give more heat

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Commonly used as a source of back-up heat
4. Will not last a lifetime
5. Sizes of wood used for burning is limited
6. Can be a safety hazard if not constructed correctly

IX. Requirements for fireplace sizing and detailing (Transparencies 8 and 9)

(NOTE: Refer to standards or manufacturers' catalogs for sizes.)

A. Verify that prefabricated fireplace meets building code requirements

B. Framing lumber should not come closer than 2" from chimney

C. Extend chimney 2' higher than any portion of a roof located within 10'

D. Each fireplace must have a separate flue

E. For proper draft, the area of the flue should not be less than one-tenth the area of the fireplace opening

F. Prefabricated fireplace elevation drawings are needed to show clearances and trim for code or manufacturers' recommendations

G. Design of brick masonry fireplace should be based upon 8" module to reduce the amount of brick cutting

X. Types of fireplace detail drawings and uses (Transparency 11)

(NOTE: Refer to Residential Fireplace and Chimney Details by The Brick Institute of America for more information.)

A. Front elevation view-Shows size of fireplace opening, trim, hearth, and overall dimensions

B. Section view-Shows assembly and details from footing through ceiling to cap height above finished roof level

C. Plan view-Commonly shown on floor plan that shows overall size and location dimensions of fireplace

XI. Parts of a wood window (Transparency 12)

(NOTE: Refer to Unit VI, "Working Drawings" for the use of schedules.)

A. Sash

1. Top rail
2. Meeting rail

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Side rail
4. Bottom rail

B. Frame

1. Top jamb
2. Side jamb
3. Sill
4. Blind stop

C. Trim

1. Apron
2. Stool
3. Casing extension

D. Drip cap

(NOTE: This is used for wood frame exterior walls.)

E. Glass

1. Single
2. Double
3. Triple
4. Insulated

(NOTE: This is sometimes called Thermopane.)

F. Muntins and mullions

XI. Major parts of a window section drawing (Transparencies 10 and 10)

(NOTE: Details are drawn at a scale of 1 1/2" = 1'0" or 3" = 1'0".)

A. Head

B. Jamb

C. Rail

D. Sill

INFORMATION SHEET

XIII. Major parts of a door section drawing (Transparency 13)

(NOTE: Refer to Unit VI, "Working Drawings" for schedules.)

A. Head

B. Jamb

C. Sill

(NOTE: This is for exterior doors.)

XIV. Steps for drawing a wall section detail (Transparencies 15 and 16)

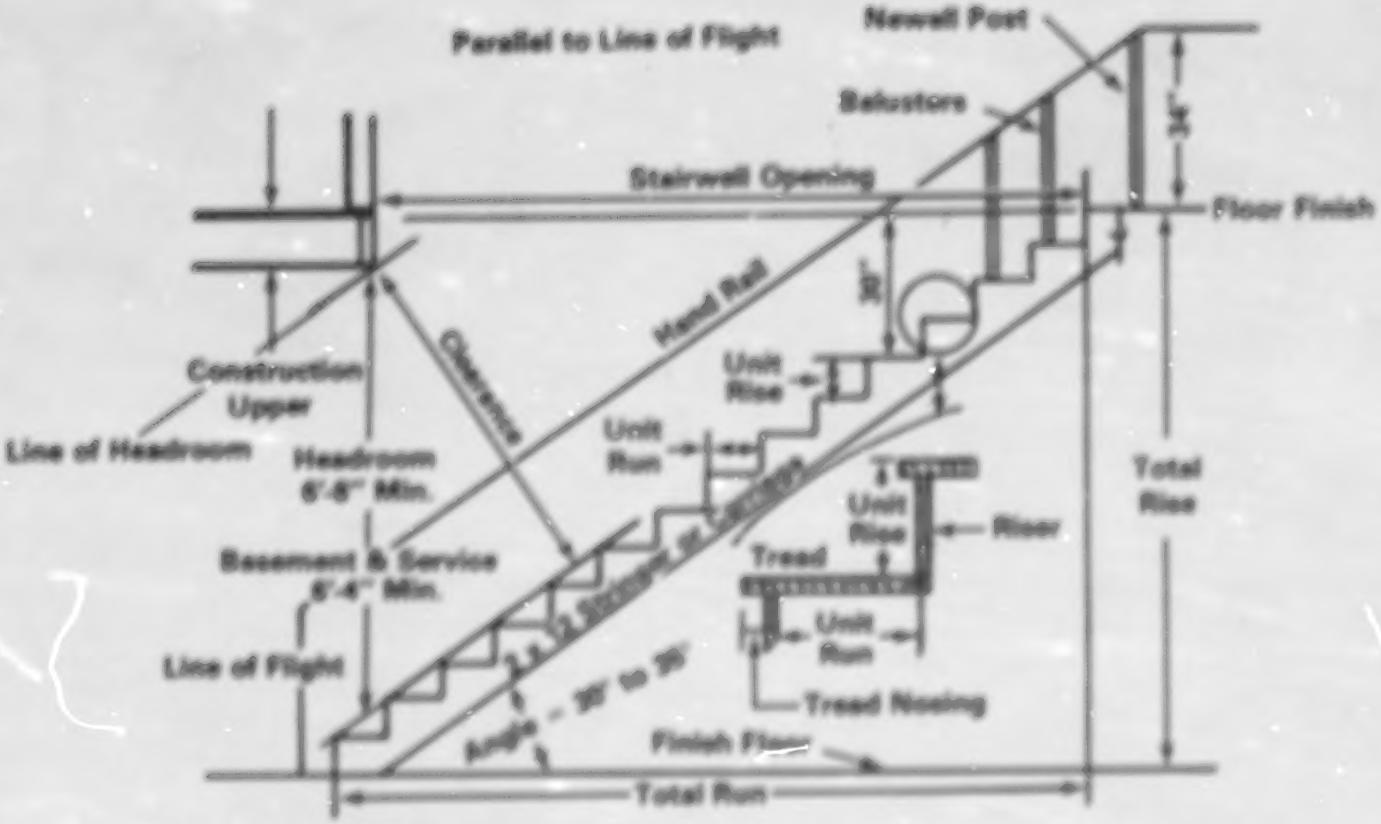
A. Draw horizontal projection lines lightly

B. Draw vertical projection lines lightly

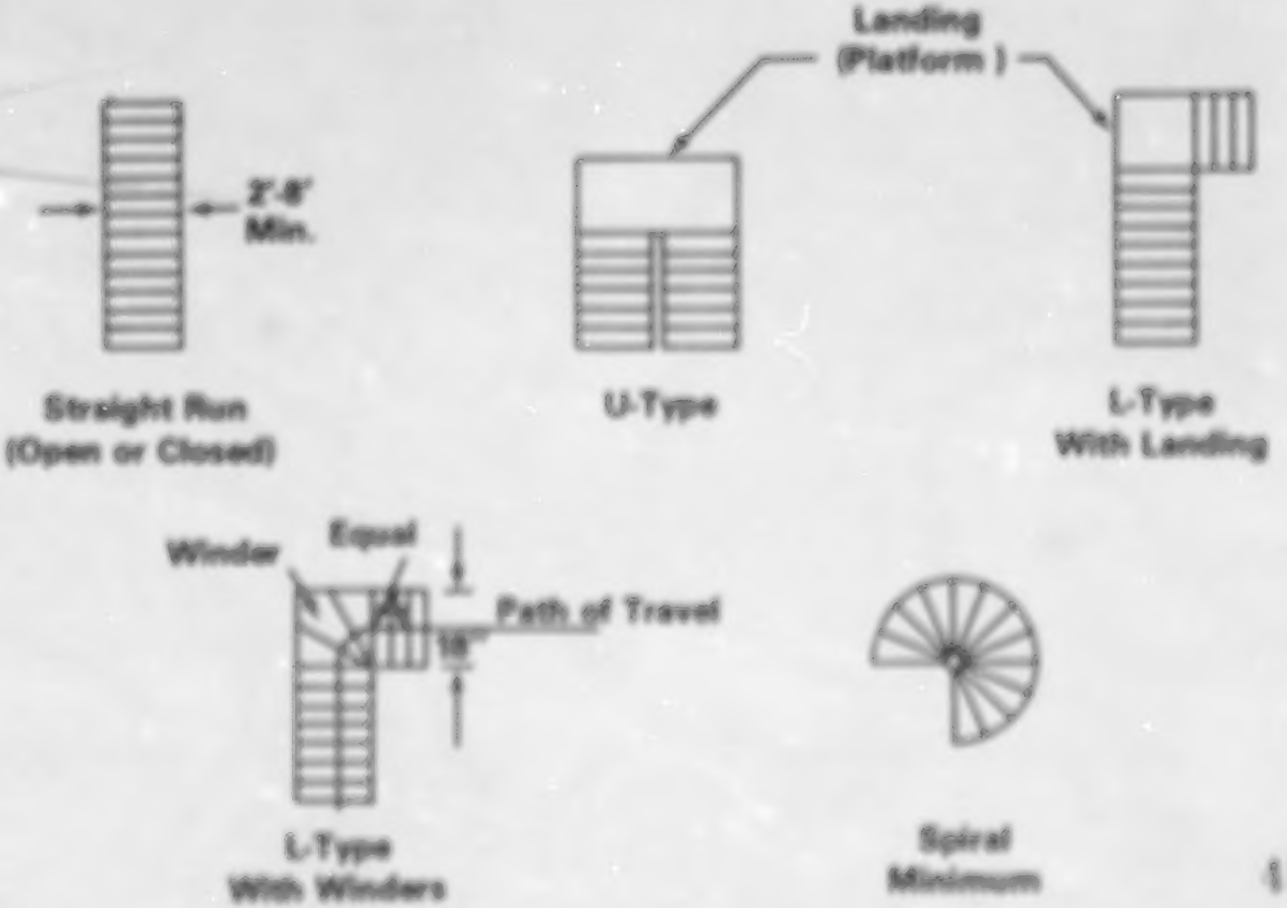
C. Add material thickness and primary detail

D. Add other detail sections

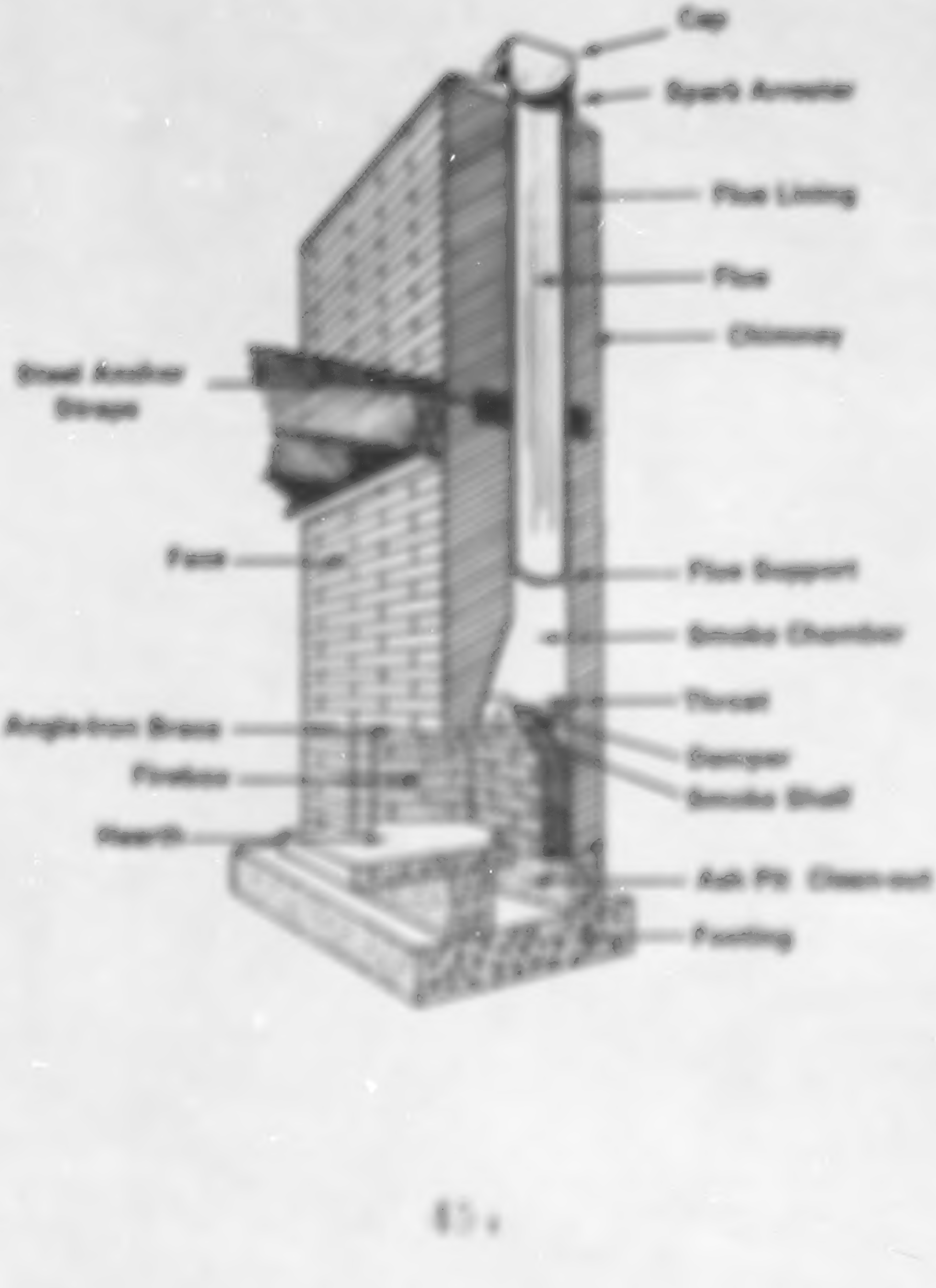
Features of a Stairway


Parallel to Line of Flight
Newall Post
Balustore
34"
Stairwell Opening
Floor Finish
Hand Rail
30"
Clearance
Construction Upper
Line of Headroom
Headroom 6'-8" Min.
Unit Rise
Unit Run
2 x 12 Stringer or Carriage
Basement & Service 6'-4" Min.
Line of Flight
Angle — 30° to 35°
Unit Rise
Riser
Tread
Unit Run
Tread Nosing
Total Rise
Finish Floor
Total Run

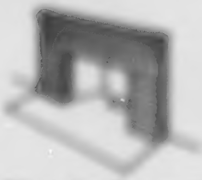
Types of Stairways

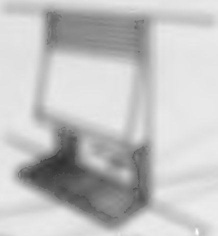

Landing
(Platform)
2'-8"
Min.
Straight Run
(Open or Closed)
U-Type
L-Type
With Landing
Winder
Equal
Path of Travel
18"
L-Type
With Winders
Spiral
Minimum

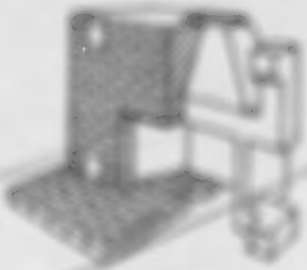
Components of a Fireplace

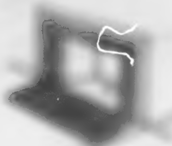

Cap
Spark Arrester
Flue Lining
Flue
Chimney
Steel Anchor Straps
Face
Flue Support
Smoke Chamber
Throat
Angle-Iron Brace
Damper
Firebox
Smoke Shelf
Hearth
Ash Pit Clean-out
Footing

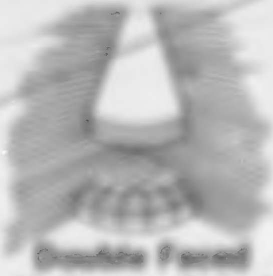
Types of Fireplaces

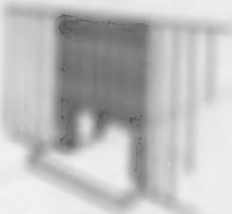

Single Faced

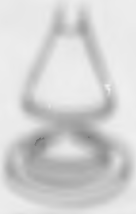

Copper Hood

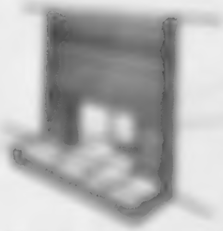

Prefabricated Metal Liner

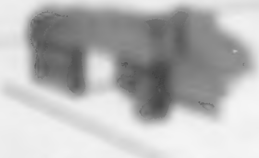

Flush

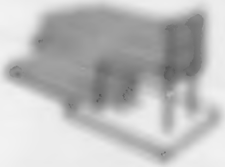

Double Faced (Adjacent Sides)


Double Faced (Opposite Sides)


Prefabricated Free-Standing


Raised Hearth

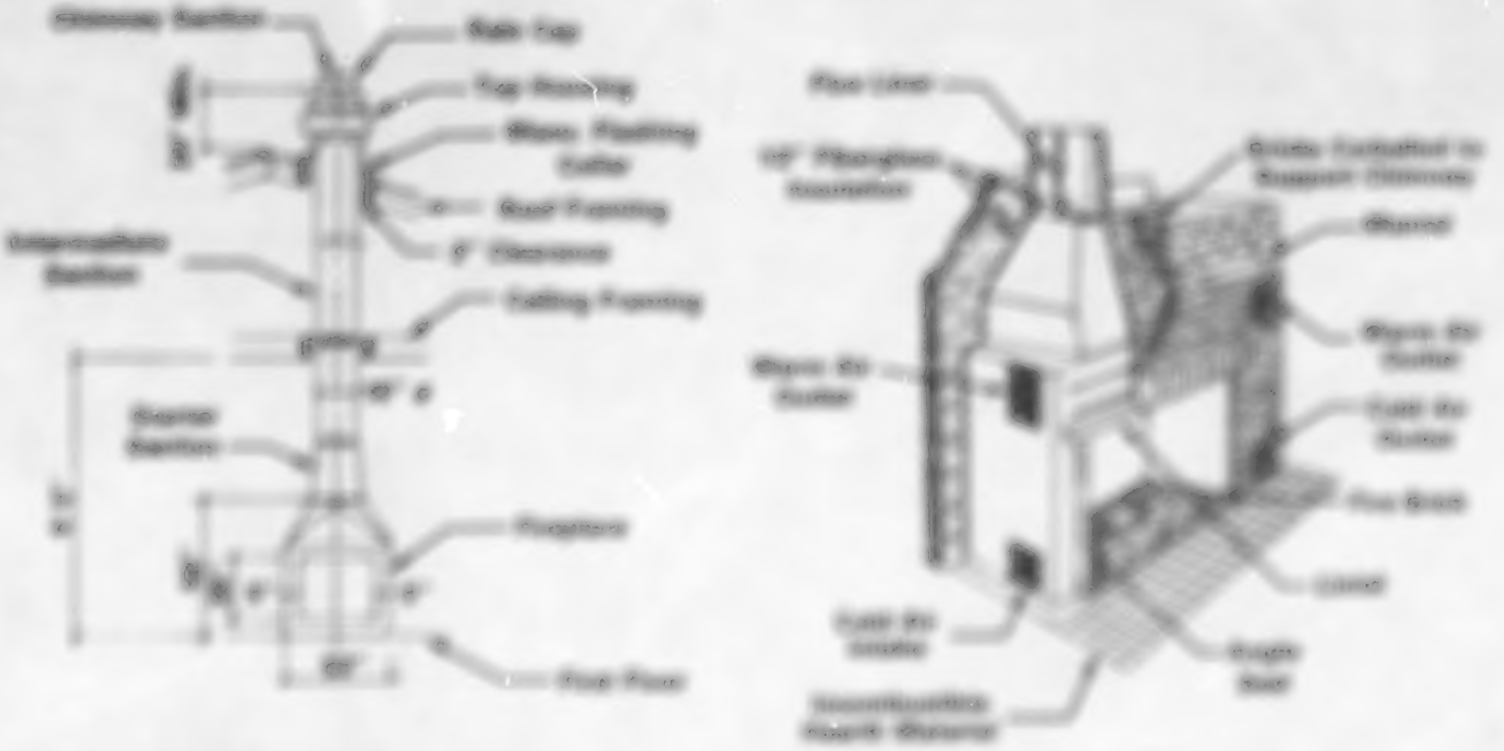

Double Faced (Adjacent Sides)


Three-Faced

8.3a

8.3a

Prefabricated Fireplace



Chimney Section
Rain Cap
Top Housing
Wiper Flashing Collar
Roof Framing
2" Clearance
Intermediate Section
Ceiling Framing
Starter Section
Fireplace
Flue Liner
1/2" Fiberglass Insulation
Bricks Corbelled to Support Chimney
Warm Air Outlet
Warm Air Outlet
Fire Brick
Lintel
Cold Air Intake
Incombustible Hearth Material

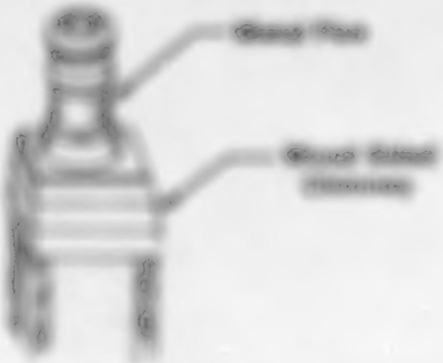
ELEVATION

PICTORIAL

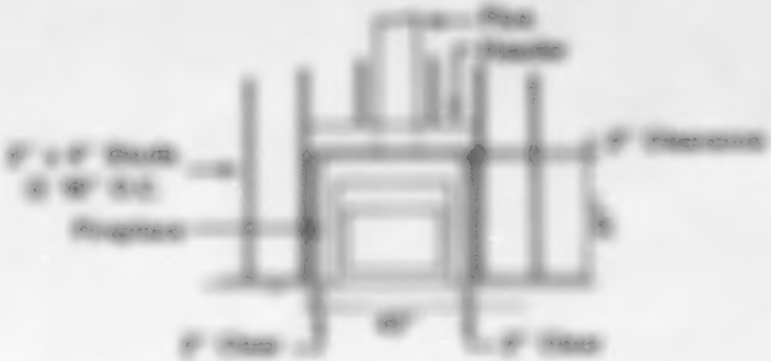
83i

83a

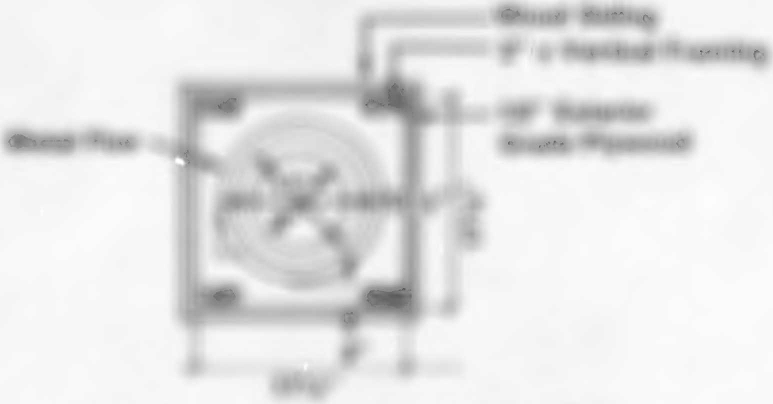
Prefabricated Fireplaces
(Continued)


Wood Sided
Chimney

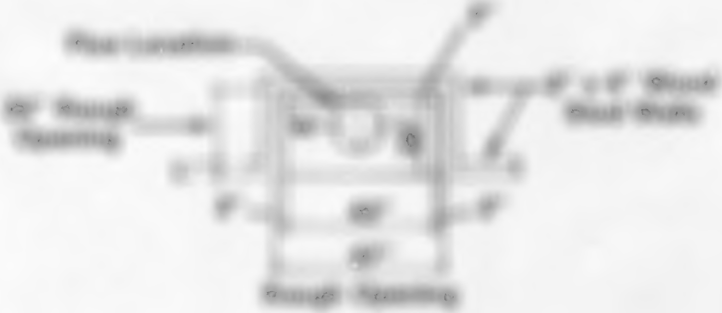
PICTORIAL VIEW OF CHASE


Flue
Fireplace

FRAMING ELEVATION


Wood Siding
Exterior
Grade Plywood

FRAMING PLAN VIEW OF CHASE

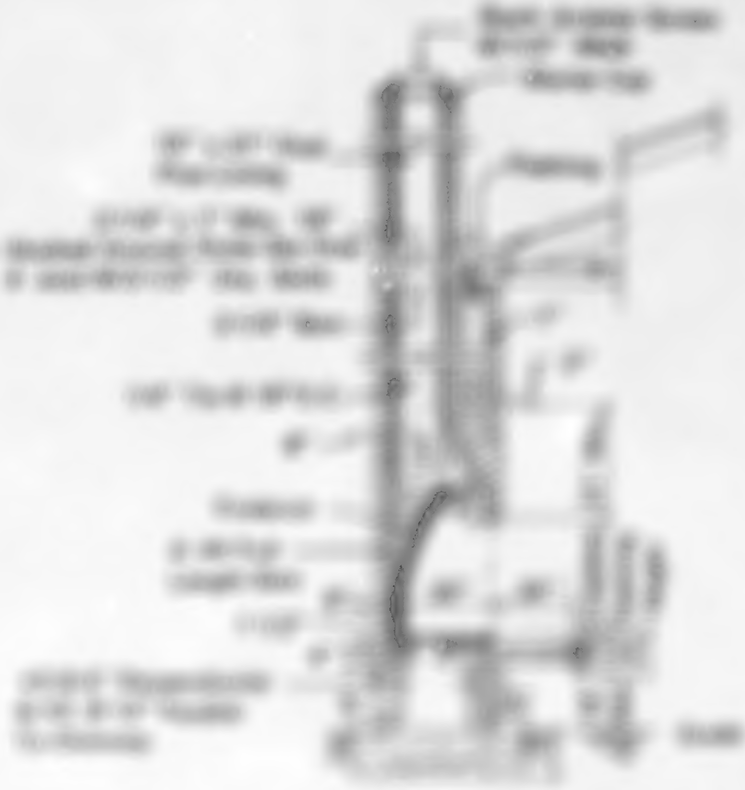

Flue Location
Rough
Opening
Rough Opening

FRAMING PLAN

Fireplace Details

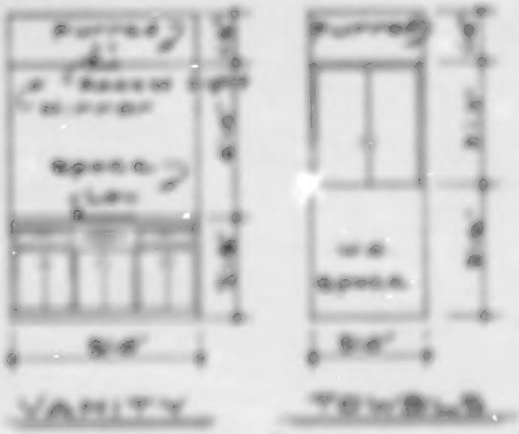
Front Elevation

Plan


Mortar Cap
Flashing
Firebrick

Section

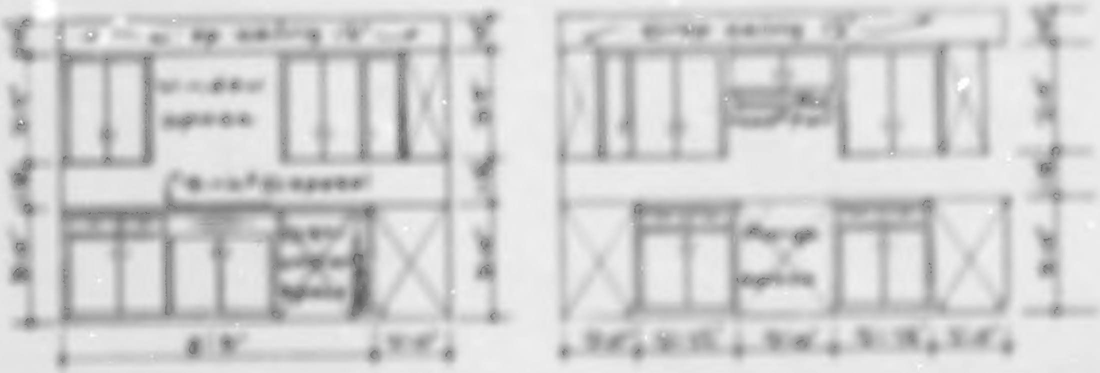
Cabinet Details



VANITY

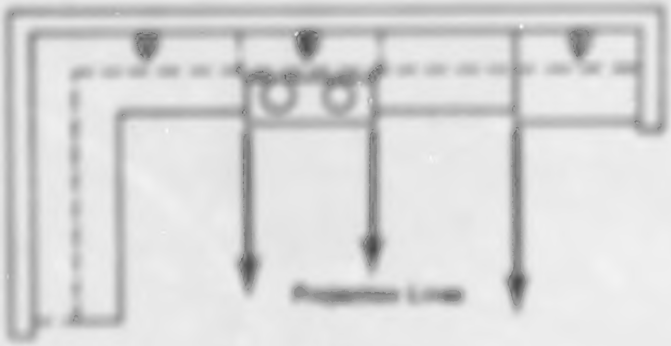
TOWELS

MASTER BATH

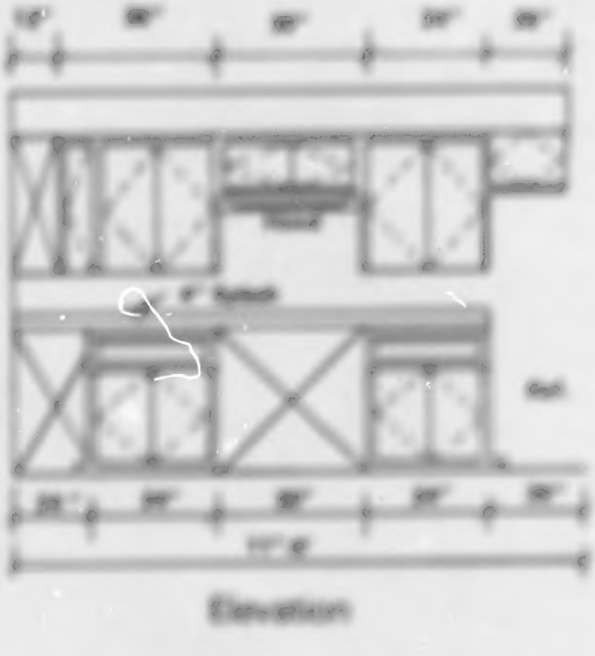


KITCHEN CABINETS

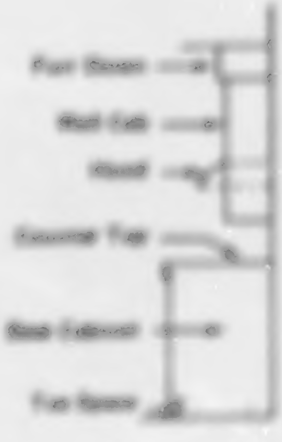
Cabinet Details
(Continued)


Projection Lines

Plan

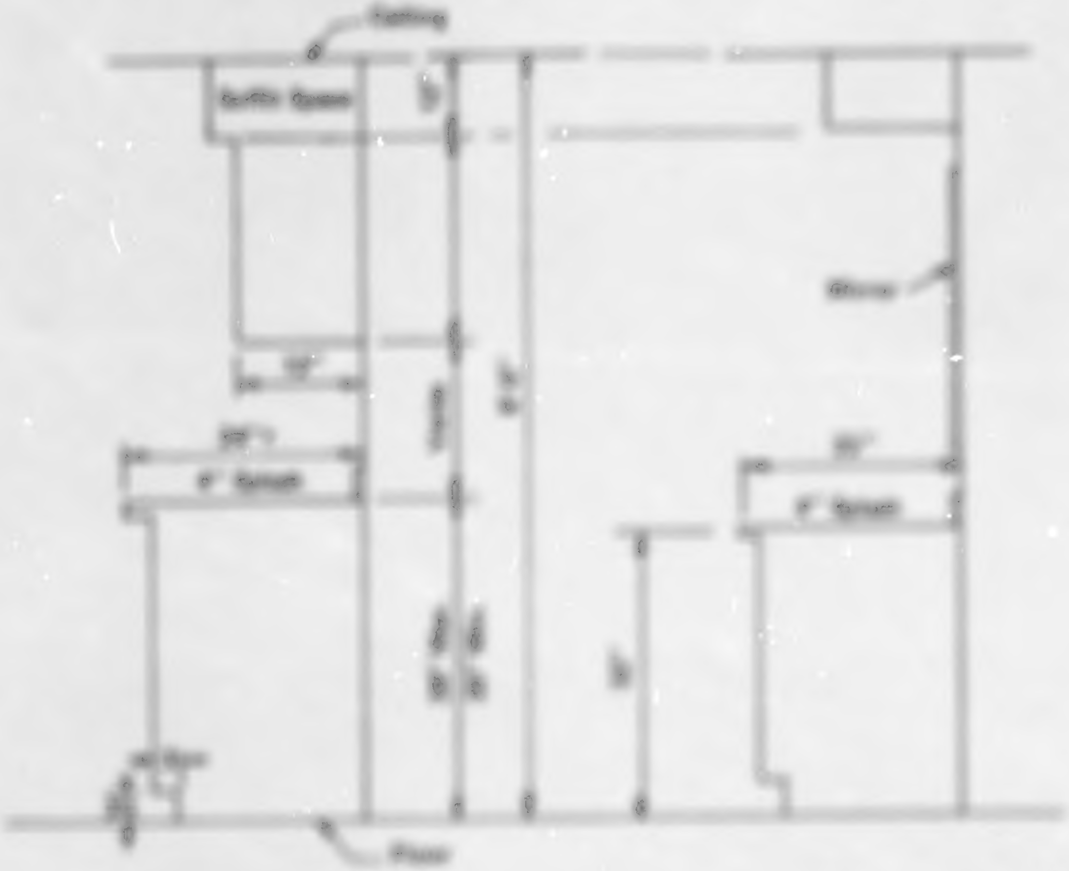

Hood
4" Splash
Ref.

Elevation


Furr Down
Wall Cab
Hood
Counter Top
Base Cabinet
Toe Space

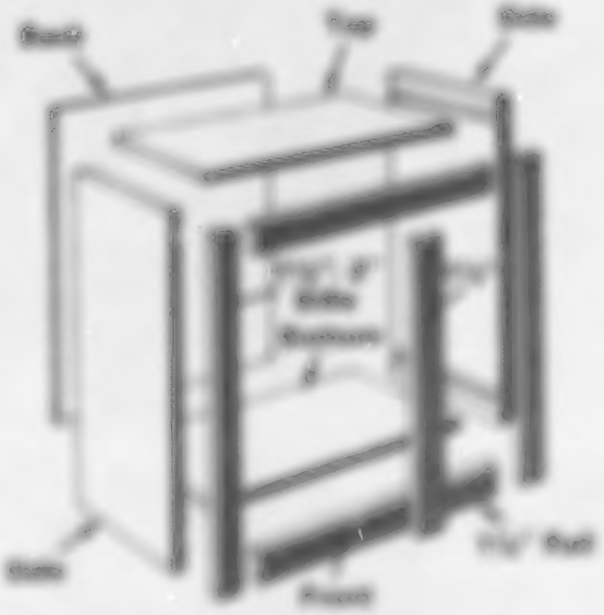
Section

Cabinet Dimensions

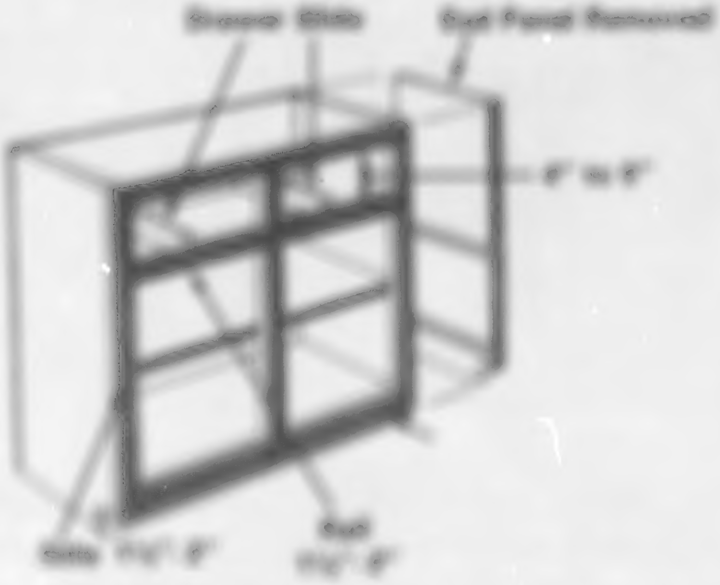

Ceiling
Soffit Space
4" Splash
Mirror
4" Splash
Floor

Kitchen Vanity

Parts of a Cabinet

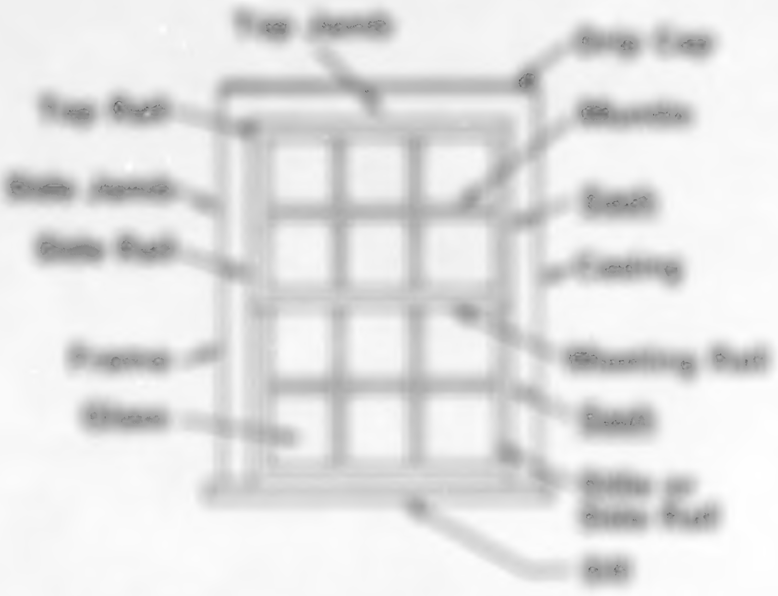

Back
Top
Side
1½"-3"
Stile
Shelves
Side
1½" Rail
Front

WALL CABINET

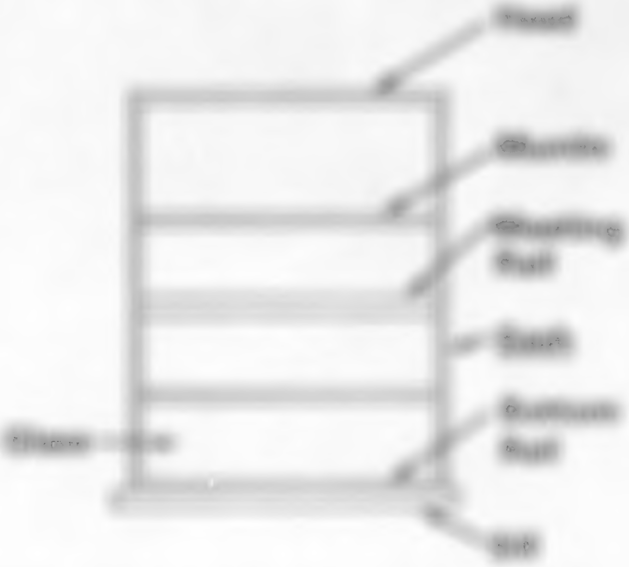

Drawer Slide
End Panel Removed
3" to 4"
Stile 1½"-3"
Rail
1½"-3"

BASE CABINET

Parts of a Window

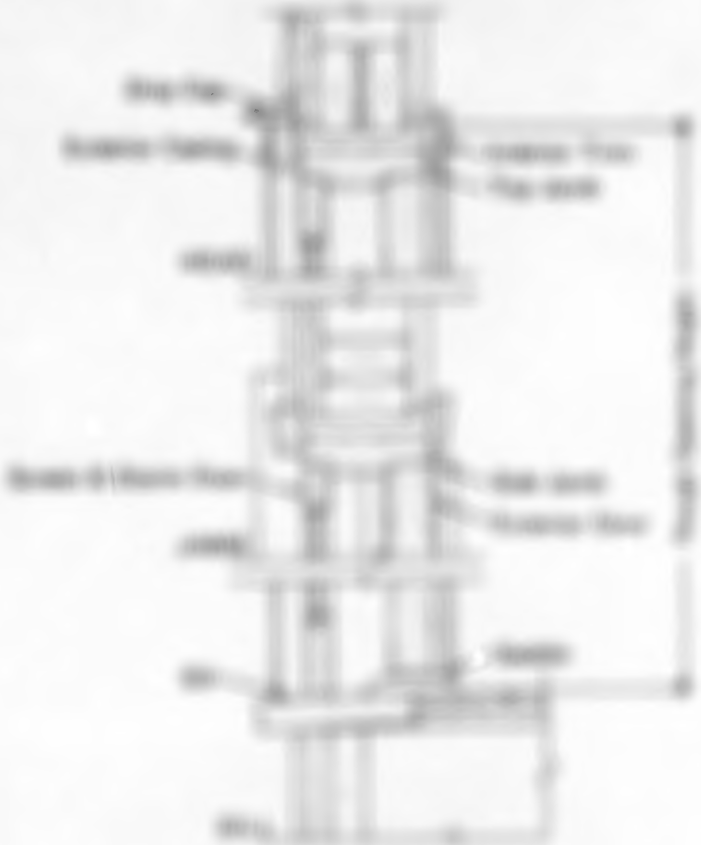

Top Jamb
Drip Cap
Top Rail
Muntin
Side Jamb
Sash
Side Rail
Casing
Frame
Meeting Rail
Glass
Sash
Stile or
Side Rail
Sill

Wood

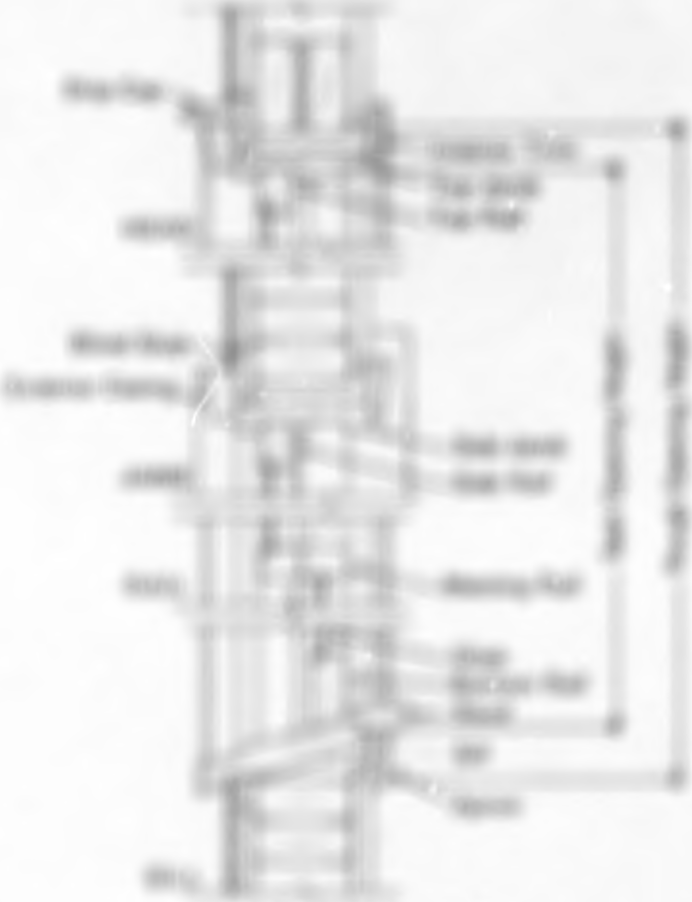

Head
Muntin
Meeting
Rail
Sash
Glass
Bottom
Rail
Sill

Aluminum

Wood Door and Window Sections

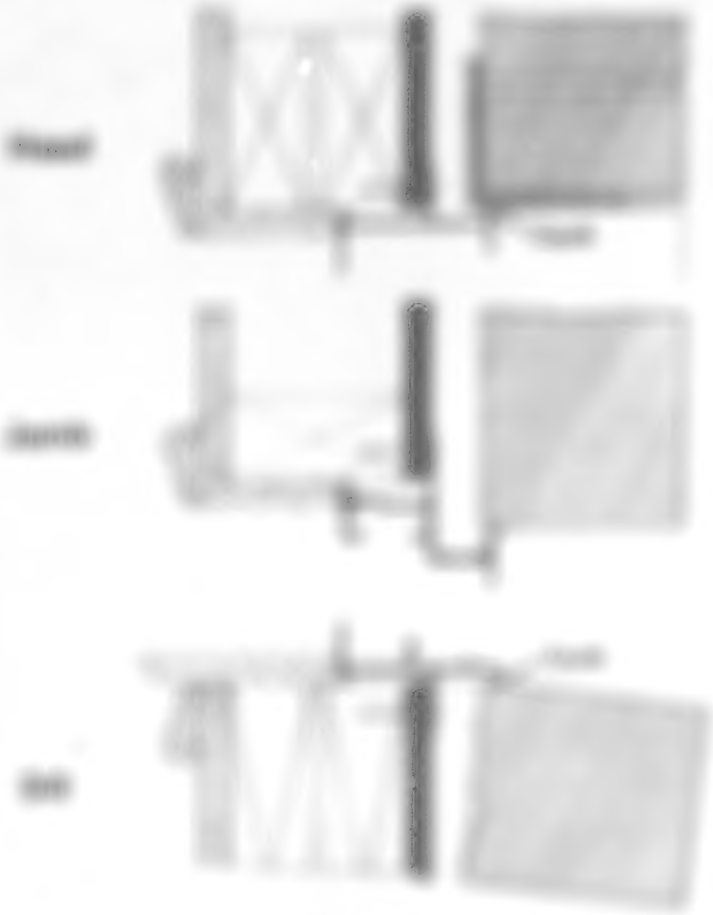


Exterior Wood Door Section
Scale: 3" = 1'-0"

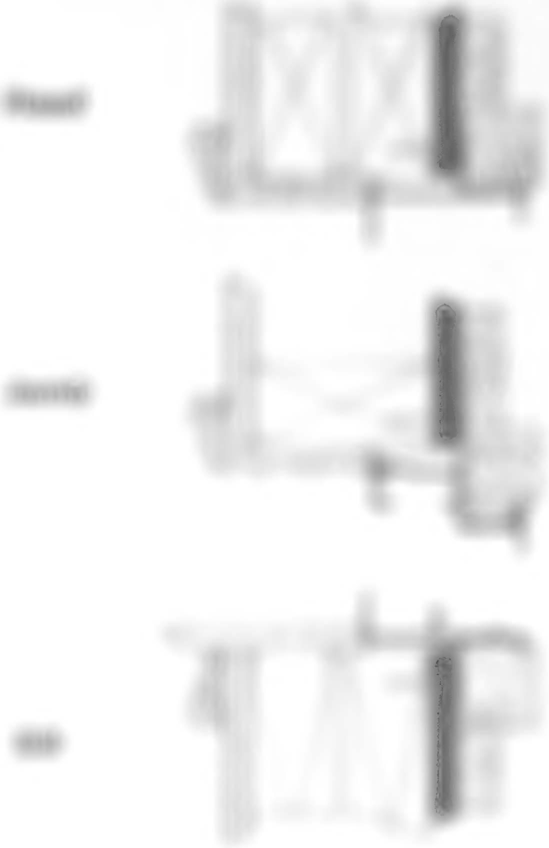


Double Hung Wood Window Section
Scale: 3" = 1'-0"

Aluminum Window Section

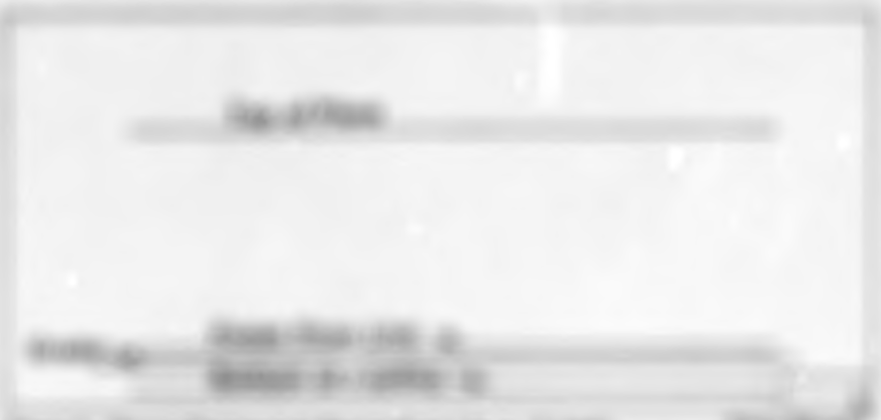

Head
Jamb
Sill

Brick Veneer

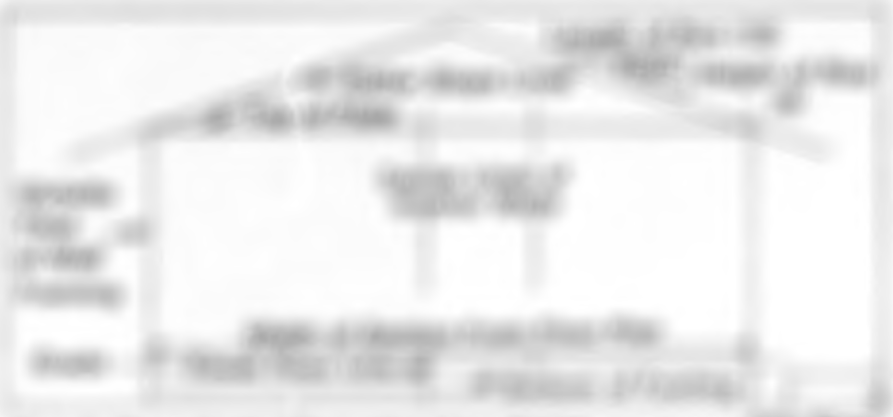

Head
Jamb
Sill

Frame

Drawing a Wall Section Detail



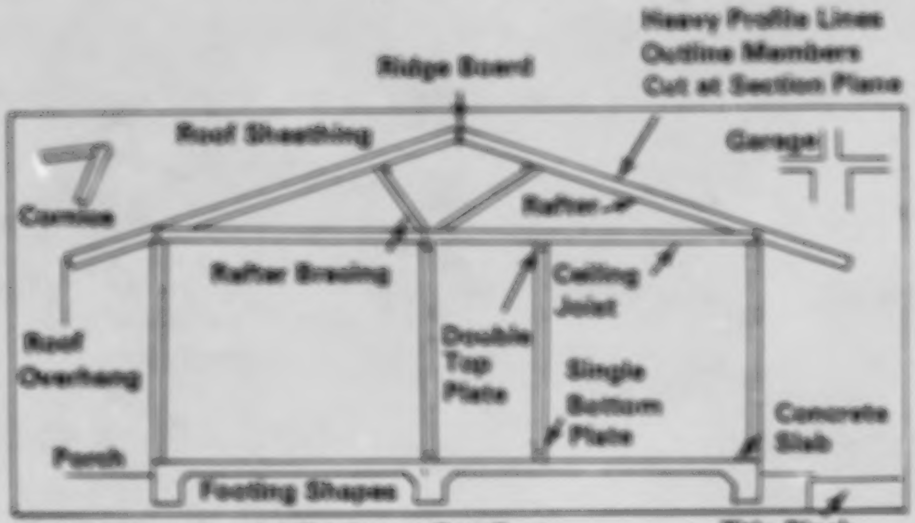
Step 1: Draw Horizontal Projection Lines Lightly



Step 2: Draw Vertical Projection Lines Lightly

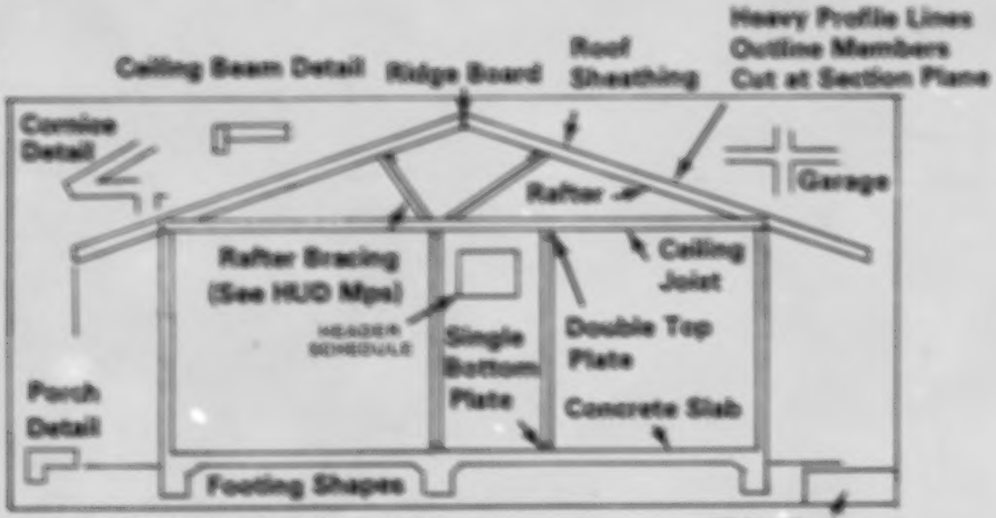
Drawing a Wall Section Detail

(Continued)


Heavy Profile Lines
Outline Members
Cut at Section Plane
Ridge Board
Roof Sheathing
Garage
Cornice
Rafter
Rafter Bracing
Ceiling
Joist
Roof
Overhang
Double
Top
Plate
Single
Bottom
Plate
Concrete
Slab
Porch
Footing Shapes

Step 3 - Add Material Thickness, Detail, etc.

Title Block


Heavy Profile Lines
Outline Members
Cut at Section Plane
Ceiling Beam Detail
Ridge Board
Roof
Sheathing
Cornice
Detail
Garage
Rafter
Rafter Bracing
(See HUD Mps)
Ceiling
Joist
HEADER
SCHEDULE
Single
Bottom
Plate
Double Top
Plate
Porch
Detail
Concrete Slab
Footing Shapes

Step 4 - Add Other Detail Sections

Title Block

DETAILS
UNIT IX

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1–CONSTRUCT A STAIRWAY LAYOUT

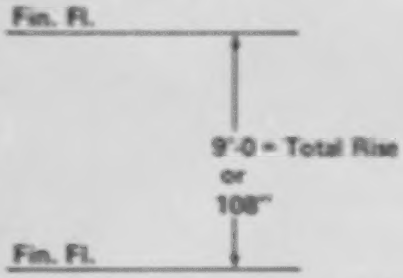
Directions: Construct a stairway layout. The procedure in the following example may be used to determine the number and size of treads and risers for a set of stairs.

Example:

1. Determine the total distance from finished floor to finished floor and construct floor lines (Figure 1)

   (NOTE: This distance is the total rise.)

FIGURE 1



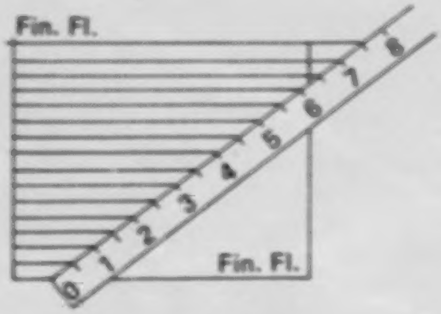
2. Determine number of risers and riser height

   Total rise 108"   7" = 15.43 risers (Must be whole number, so use 15)
   Total rise 108"   15 = 7.2" riser height

   (NOTE: 7" riser was used to fall between 30 and 35 degrees.)

3. Divide the total rise into 15 equal parts using a scale at an angle so that the zero mark is on the other finished floor (Figure 2)

FIGURE 2



ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

4. Determine tread size

Formula B	2 x unit rise + unit run = 24" to 25" 2 x 7.2 + 10.5" = 25.9" (exceeds 25") 2 x 7.2 + 10" = 24.4" (acceptable)
Formula A	Unit rise + unit run = 17" to 18" 7.2" + 10" = 17.2" (acceptable)
Formula C	Unit rise x unit run = 72" to 75" 7.2" x 10" = 72" (acceptable)

(NOTE: 10.5" tread size was used to fall between 30 and 35 degrees.)

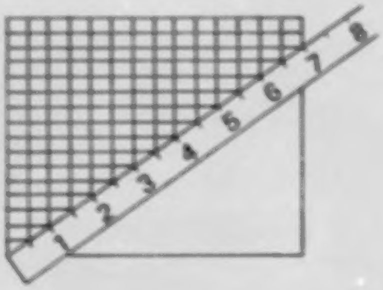
5. Determine total run

Total run = Tread size x number of treads
Total run = 10" x 14" = 140" or 11'-8"

(NOTE: There is one less tread than the number of risers.)

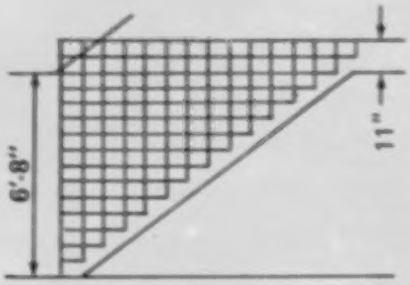
6. Divide the total run into 14 equal parts in the same procedure using the zero mark and 7" mark and construct vertical line to form treads (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



7. Darken in the tread and riser outline, and draw bottom edge of stringer (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

8. Determine stairwell opening length sum of head room and upper construction

   6'-8" + 11" = 91"

   Divide sum by unit rise

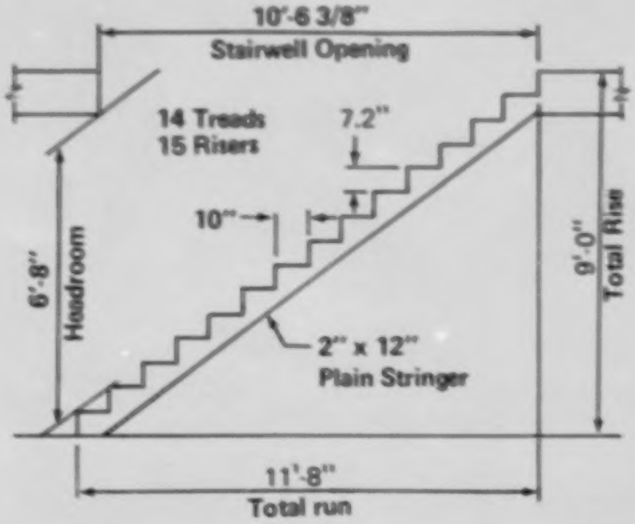
   91" ÷ 7.2 = 12.64 risers

   Length = risers x tread size

   12.64 x 10" = 126.4" = 10'-6 3/8"

9. Remove all construction lines; add dimensions and notes (Figure 5)

FIGURE 5


10'-6 3/8"
Stairwell Opening
14 Treads
15 Risers
7.2"
10"
6'-8"
Headroom
2" x 12"
Plain Stringer
9'-0"
Total Rise
11'-8"
Total run

Problems:

A. Construct a stairway layout on the reverse side of this sheet using scale 1/2" = 1'-0" and the following information: finish floor to finish floor height is 9'-1", stair treads should be 10", and risers between 6 1/2" and 7 1/2". Add all dimensions and notes as shown in Figure 5.

B. Construct a stairway layout for your design project or another problem as assigned by instructor.

DETAILS
UNIT IX

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2–DRAW FIREPLACE CONSTRUCTION DETAILS

Directions: Draw fireplace construction details for the problems which follow using a 1/2" = 1'-0" scale. The main drawings for fireplace details are in the section and plan view. The procedure in the following example is for drawing a fireplace section with a wood floor. Refer to *Residential Fireplace and Chimney Details* or *Architectural Graphic Standards* for fireplaces on concrete slab floors.

Example:

1. Calculate fireplace area (Figure 1)

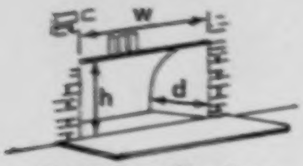
   A = W x H

   A = 36 x 25

   A = 900 sq. inches

   FIGURE 1

   Area = h x w

   Single Face Fireplace

2. Calculate the effective flue area based on local code

   Flue area = 900 sq. inches x 1/10

   Area = 90 sq. inches

3. Select flue liner size from manufacturer's catalog (Figure 2)

   a. Find 36" width at bottom of chart

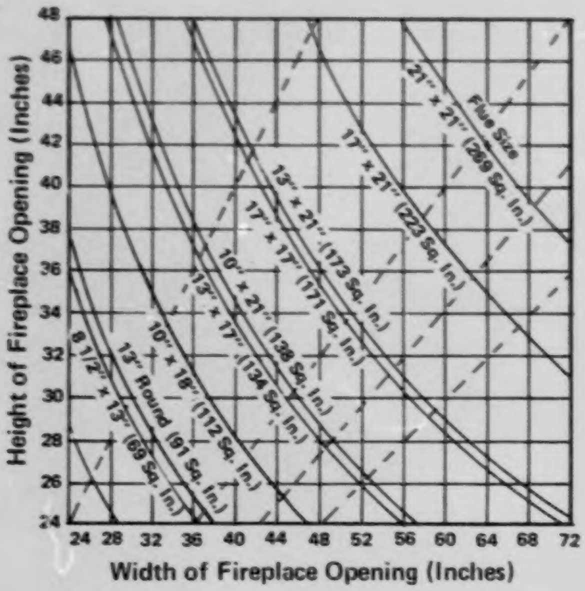
   b. Find 30" height at top left side of chart

   c. Follow height line across and width line up until they intersect

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

d. Flue size will be nearest curve above intersection; therefore, 10" x 18" is nominal flue lining size

FIGURE 2



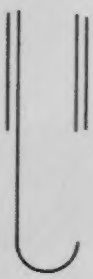
4. Draw the flue

   a. If there are two different dimensions, use the smaller

   b. Construct a circle with a diameter 1/2" or more larger than the inside diameter of the flue starting from the inside face of the flue lining (Figure 3)

   c. At the horizontal diameter of the circle (HDC), draw a line 30° from the horizontal

FIGURE 3

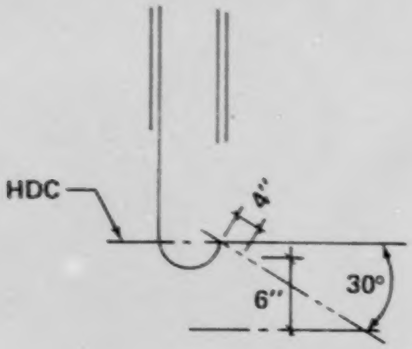


ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

d. On this 30° line, measure 4" to find the throat starting at the intersection of the circle and the 30° line

e. From the lower point of the 4" measurement, measure 6" (8" is recommended) to establish the top of the firebox opening (Figure 4)

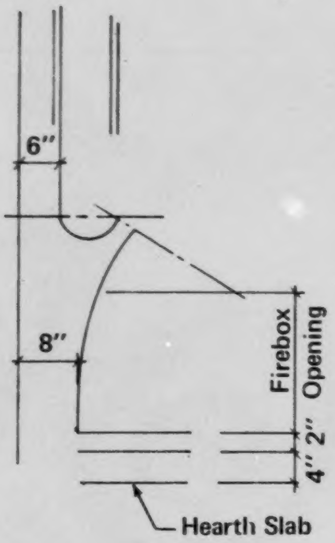
FIGURE 4



5. Establish the outside face of the chimney by measuring 6" from the interior face of the flue and the height of the firebox opening; measure 8" and construct the rear of the firebox with an arc using an irregular curve

6. Establish the hearth below the firebox opening by constructing a line 2" below the firebox opening (Figure 5)

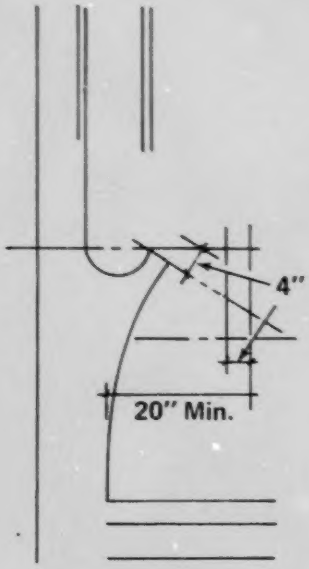
FIGURE 5



ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

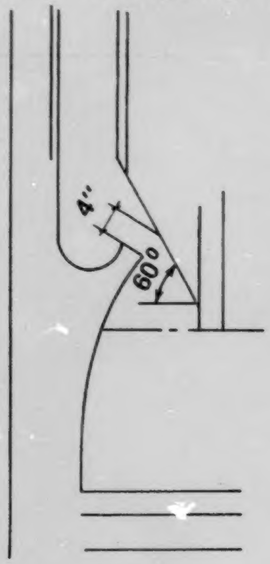
7. From the interior face of the firebox, measure 20" (or more) to establish the exterior face of the firebox, and measure in 4" from the exterior face of the firebox at the top of the firebox opening; establish a vertical line and measure a minimum 4" throat opening (Figure 6)

FIGURE 6



8. Draw a line at 60° minimum, intersecting the interior face of flue and the line established in step 7 to find the top of the throat opening (Figure 7)

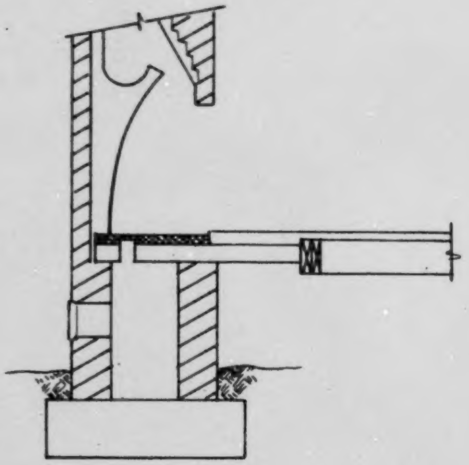
FIGURE 7



ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

9. Draw in desired type of foundation according to local code (Figure 8)

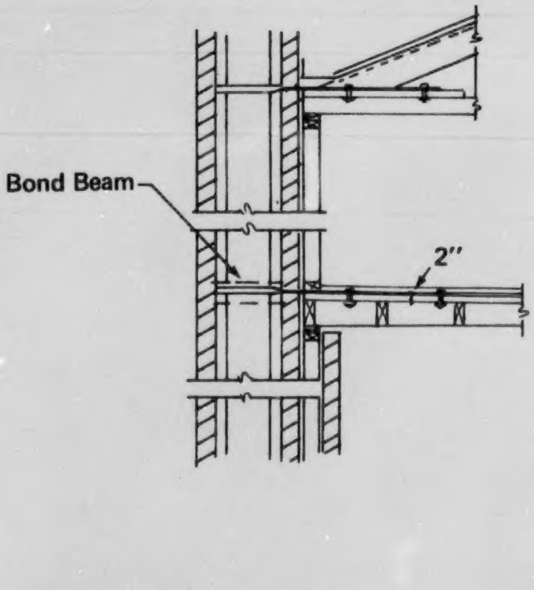
FIGURE 8



10. Establish wall and plate line and superimpose on fireplace in section; draw ceiling joist and allow for 2" air space between joists and brick

(NOTE: Draw a 1" x 6" flat over ceiling joist [for floors, notch floor joist] to support 3/16" x 1" straps if needed for local codes. Some states do not require this bond beam.) (Figure 9)

FIGURE 9



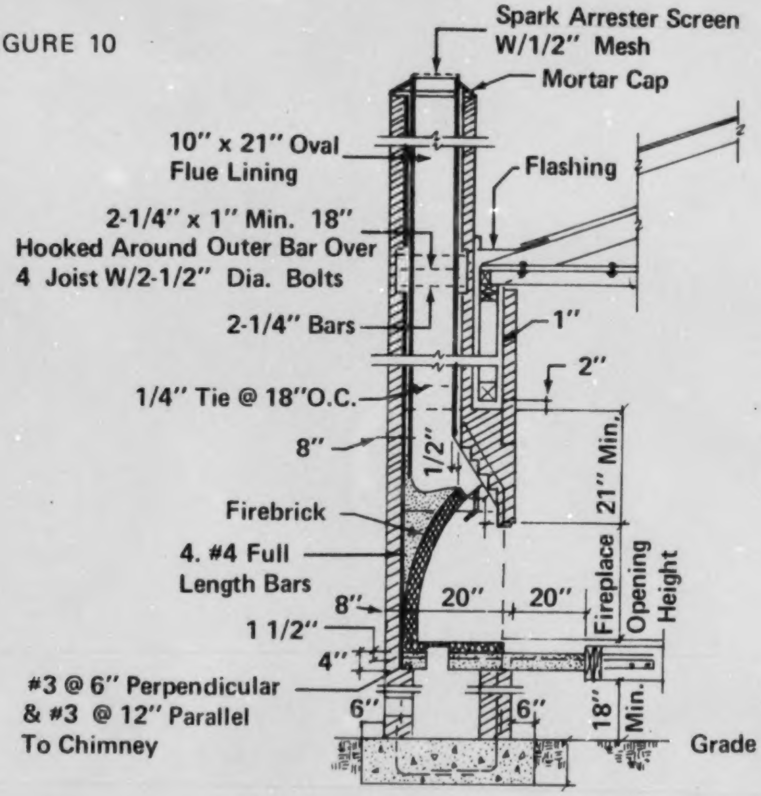
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

11. Locate rafters, place saddle, and complete motor cap and spark arrester

    (NOTE: Be sure chimney extends far enough above roof to meet local codes.)

12. Complete necessary dimensions, call outs, and label details (Figure 10)

FIGURE 10


Spark Arrester Screen W/1/2" Mesh
Mortar Cap
10" x 21" Oval Flue Lining
Flashing
2-1/4" x 1" Min. 18" Hooked Around Outer Bar Over 4 Joist W/2-1/2" Dia. Bolts
2-1/4" Bars
1"
2"
1/4" Tie @ 18"O.C.
8"
1/2"
21" Min.
Firebrick
4. #4 Full Length Bars
Fireplace Opening Height
8"
20"
20"
1 1/2"
4"
#3 @ 6" Perpendicular & #3 @ 12" Parallel To Chimney
6"
6"
18" Min.
Grade

Problems:

A. Draw a 30" wide and 29" high single face fireplace on a wood floor using vellum and a scale of 1/2" = 1'-0". Refer to example for guidelines.

B. Draw a 35 5/16" wide and 39" high single face fireplace on a concrete slab floor using vellum and a scale of 1/2" = 1'-0". Refer to fireplace details in *Architectural Graphic Standards* for additional information.

(NOTE: Your instructor may assign an alternate problem of having you draw fireplace construction details for your design project.)

DETAILS
UNIT IX

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3--DRAW TYPICAL CABINET DETAILS

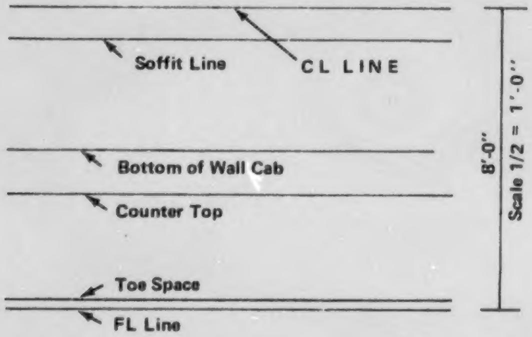
Directions: Draw cabinet details on media with a 1/2" = 1'-0" scale. Because of a wide variety of cabinet constructions and local building practices, the procedure in the following example is given in general terms. The example shown is for a kitchen elevation. Elevation details for utility cabinets, vanity cabinets, wardrobes, and built-in bookcases are similar. Refer to Transparencies 8 and 9 for additional examples.

Example:

1. Using a scale of 1/2" = 1'-0", draw light construction lines for floor, toe space, countertop, bottom of wall cabinet, soffit line, and ceiling (Figure 1)

   (NOTE: Allow space between cabinet elevations for dimensions and reference title.)

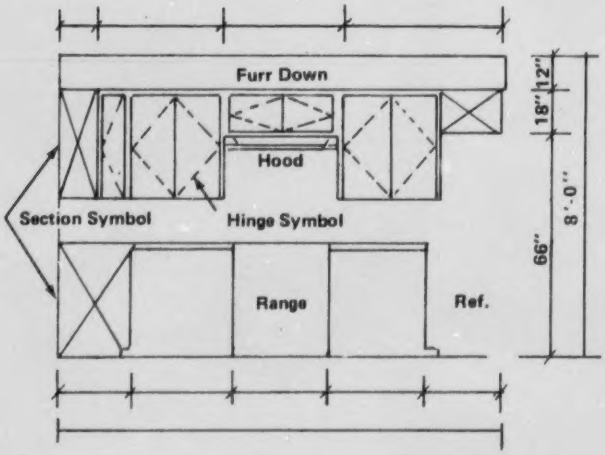
FIGURE 1


Soffit Line
CL LINE
Bottom of Wall Cab
Counter Top
Toe Space
FL Line
8'-0"
Scale 1/2 = 1'-0"

2. Construct vertical lines for ends of total length, thickness of wall, and base cabinets that are in section and space for windows or appliances (Figure 2)

   (NOTE: Refer to appliance manufacturers' catalogs for sizes.)

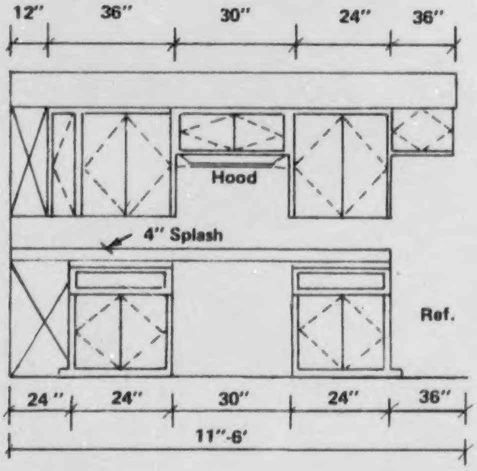
FIGURE 2


Furr Down
Hood
Section Symbol
Hinge Symbol
Range
Ref.
12"
18"
66"
8'-0"

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

3. Construct stiles and rails, drawer shape, door shape, hinge symbol for doors, and complete notes and dimensions (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3



4. Check subtotal to equal overall total dimension
5. Erase construction lines, darken in lines, and place scale and reference symbol under elevation

Problem: Using a scale 1/2" = 1'-0", draw a plan and elevation of the necessary cabinet details for a residential home as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project or another residence.)

DETAILS
UNIT IX

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--DRAW DOOR AND WINDOW SECTION DETAILS

Directions: Draw door and window section details using the procedure in the following example. Refer to Transparencies 13 and 14 for illustrations.

Example:

(NOTE: Consult available manufacturers' catalogs regarding windows, doors, trim, and accessories, and standard window and door detail sheets.)

1. Establish scale, check overall space requirements on drawing for required drawings, and allow for titles and scale

   (NOTE: Use 1 1/2" or 3" = 1'-0".)

2. Make constructions of horizontal and vertical sections through the doors and windows; show these sections with keying symbols on the elevations

   (NOTE: These may not be required for all residential buildings.)

3. Construct the various sections in their proper relationship to the walls; add weatherproofing, flashing, sills, thresholds, mullions, and trim

4. Draw main outlines of window and door parts, dimension as required, place notes, and draw in material texture

5. Complete the title or reference symbol and scale

Problem: Construct window and door details from manufacturer's catalog as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project or another residence.)

DETAILS
UNIT IX

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5--DRAW A WALL SECTION DETAIL

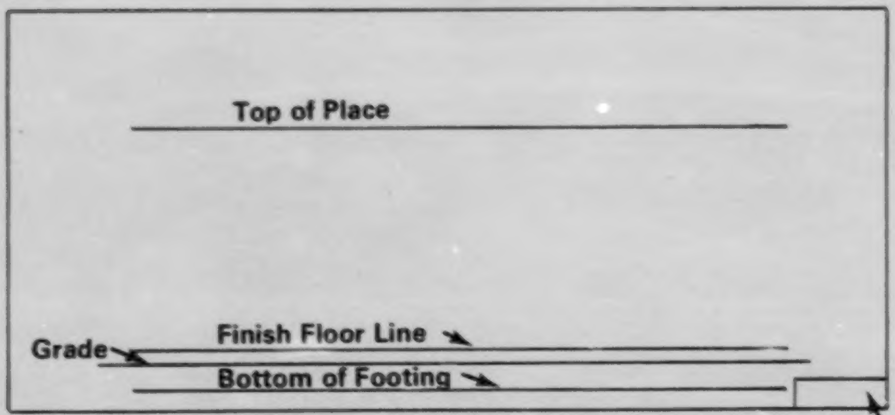
Directions: Draw a wall section detail using the procedure in the following example. Building sections are views taken through the structure at points which will best show the structural parts of the building. Sections are taken vertically, as with a typical wall section, or horizontally, as with a floor plan. Often, when the building is complex, several sections may be needed. The procedure in the example is for drawing a typical transverse section. Several other details are added.

Example:

(NOTE: Consult manufacturers' catalogs for all information concerning the sizing and spacing of all building members, all materials used in structure, design sketches, examples of scale drawings of a typical wall section, and examples of sections of all component parts to be used in the section.)

1. Using scale 3/4" = 1'-0", construct grade, top and bottom of footing, height of plate, and finish floor (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1

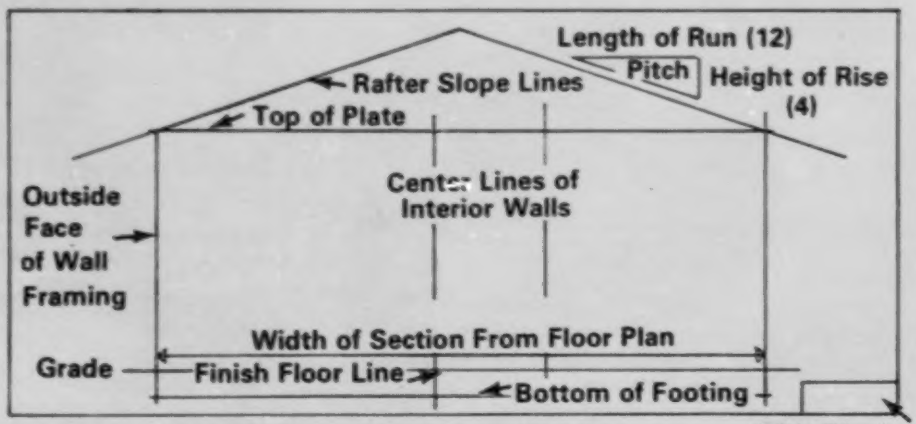


Step 1 - Draw Horizontal Projection Lines (Light)

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5

2. Construct outside walls, width of footings, thickness of walls, slope, and thickness of roof (Figure 2)

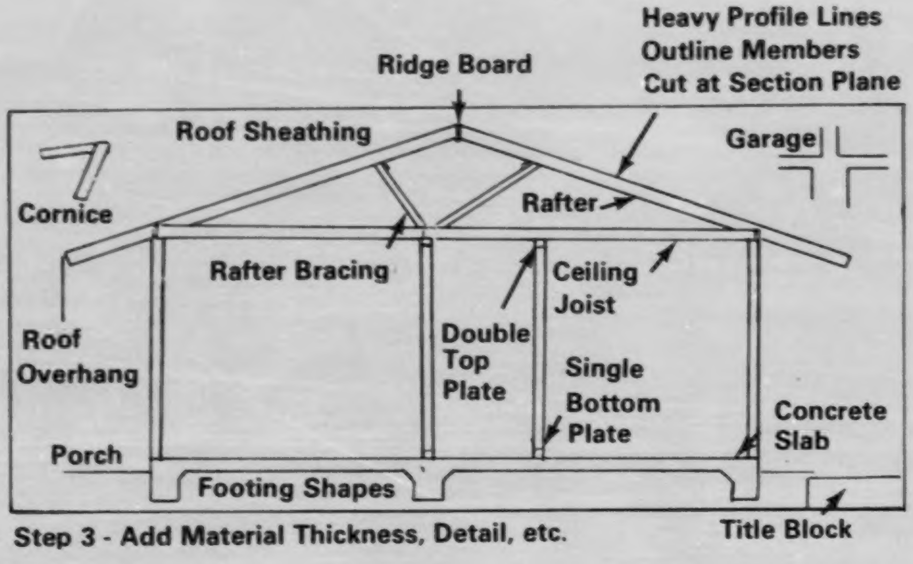
FIGURE 2


Length of Run (12)
Pitch
Height of Rise (4)
Rafter Slope Lines
Top of Plate
Center Lines of Interior Walls
Outside Face of Wall Framing
Width of Section From Floor Plan
Grade
Finish Floor Line
Bottom of Footing
Title Block

Step 2 - Draw Vertical Projection Lines (Light)

3. Construct outlines of footings, walls, joists, rafters, and other related footing, cornice, beams, window, and door details; add material thickness to details (Figure 3)

FIGURE 3

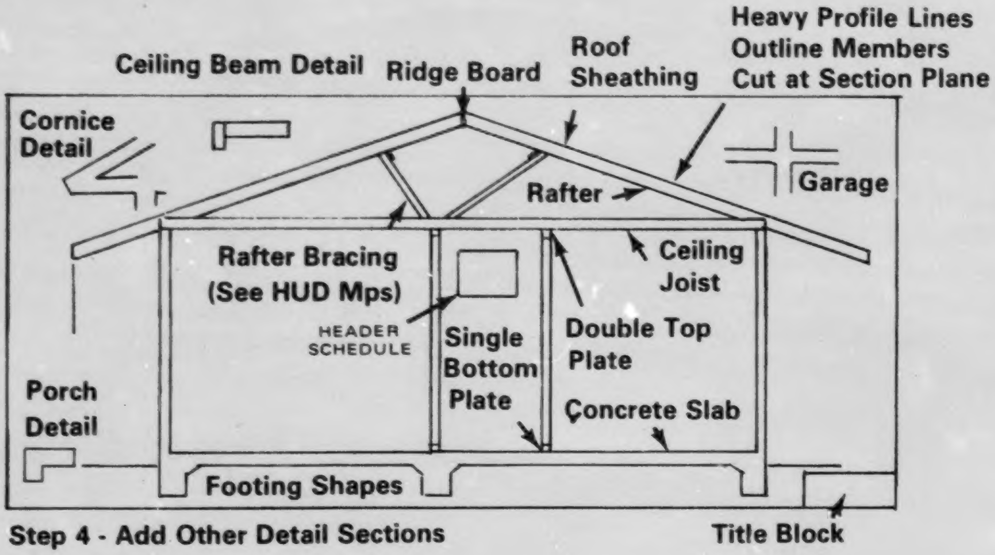

Heavy Profile Lines Outline Members Cut at Section Plane
Ridge Board
Roof Sheathing
Garage
Cornice
Rafter
Rafter Bracing
Ceiling Joist
Double Top Plate
Single Bottom Plate
Roof Overhang
Concrete Slab
Porch
Footing Shapes
Title Block

Step 3 - Add Material Thickness, Detail, etc.

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5

4. Erase construction lines, add dimensions, add notes or call outs for all materials and structural parts, darken in lines, add shading to concrete, and complete titles for all details (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4


Heavy Profile Lines
Outline Members
Cut at Section Plane
Ceiling Beam Detail
Ridge Board
Roof
Sheathing
Cornice
Detail
Garage
Rafter
Rafter Bracing
(See HUD Mps)
Ceiling
Joist
HEADER
SCHEDULE
Single
Bottom
Plate
Double Top
Plate
Porch
Detail
Çoncrete Slab
Footing Shapes
Title Block

Step 4 - Add Other Detail Sections

Problem: Construct a typical wall section detail on C size media using proper scale for a residential home as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project or another residence.)

DETAILS
UNIT IX

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. Vertical member from bottom of one tread to the tread above

_____b. Horizontal member extending from face of one riser to the face of an adjoining one, plus nosing

_____c. Portion of the tread which projects beyond the riser surface

_____d. Vertical distance from the top of one tread to the next tread

_____e. Horizontal distance from the face of one riser to the face of the next riser

_____f. Stairs which have a wall on both sides

_____g. Stairs which have no wall on one or both sides

_____h. Decorative ledge above the fireplace

_____i. Two sloping surfaces meeting in a ridge and used between the back side of chimney and a sloping surface

_____j. Type of hard, heat-resistant masonry which has been fired and kiln dried

_____k. The assembly of materials that encloses the metal flue

_____l. Cement and sand mix placed on top of chimney for weatherproofing

_____m. Opening in a fireplace that is controlled by a damper to provide passage of smoke and hot-air gases up the chimney

_____n. Area in the ash pit used for easier removal of ashes

_____o. A metal cap with screen placed on chimney flue to retain sparks in flue

1. Firebrick
2. Unit rise
3. Transverse wall section
4. Nosing
5. Throat
6. Stile
7. Riser
8. Mantel
9. Soffit
10. Cement wash
11. Unit run
12. Furring
13. Spark arrester
14. Longitudinal wall section
15. Saddle

______p. A vertical face frame member of cabinet trim

______q. A horizontal face frame member of cabinet trim

______r. Wood strips fastened to a wall or ceiling for attaching dry wall above wall cabinet

______s. All storage spaces that are not part of the structure and may be job-built, shop-built, or manufactured

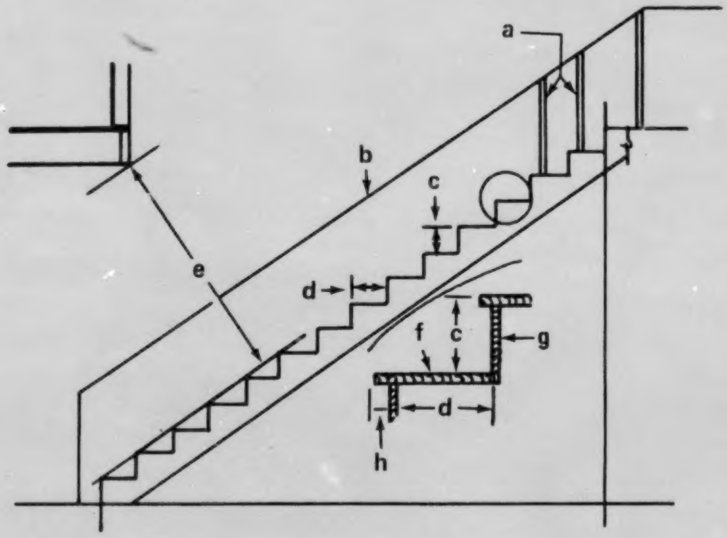
______t. The underside of a furred down area above wall cabinets

______u. A section that runs through the narrow width of a building

______v. A section that runs through the length of a building

16. Clean out
17. Tread
18. Open stairs
19. Cabinet work
20. Closed stairs
21. Chimney chase
22. Rail

2. Identify features of a stairway.



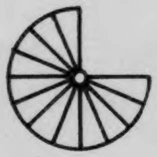
a. ______________________ b. ______________________

c. ______________________ d. ______________________

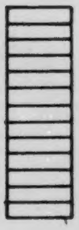
e. ______________________ f. ______________________

g. ______________________ h. ______________________

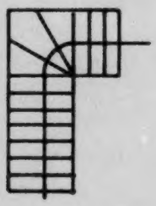
3. Identify types of stairways.



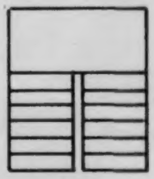
a. ______________________________



b. ______________________________



c. ______________________________



d. ______________________________

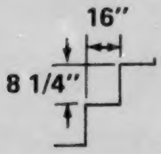
4. Complete the following stairway formulas.

a. ______________________________ = 17" to 18"

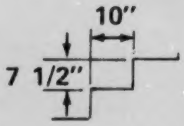
b. __________ x unit rise + unit run = 24" to 25"

c. Unit rise x unit run = ______________________________

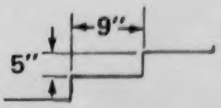
5. Distinguish between stair slopes by placing an "X" next to the recommended stair slope.



a. ______________

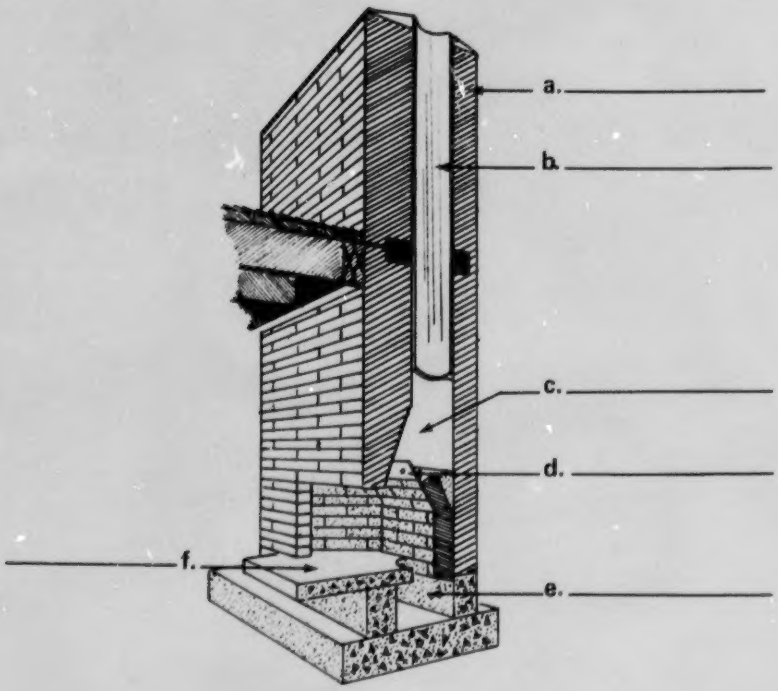


b. ______________

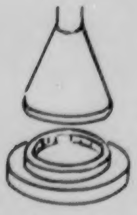


c. ______________

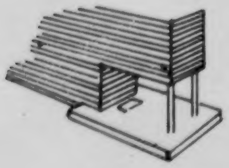
6. Label components of a fireplace.



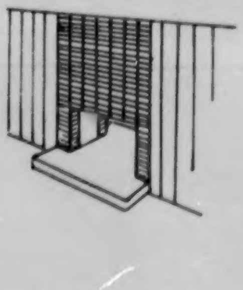
7. Identify types of fireplaces.



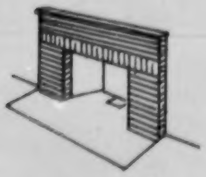
a. ______________________



b. ______________________



c. ______________________



d. ______________________

8. Distinguish between characteristics of masonry fireplaces and metal prefabricated fireplaces by placing an "X" next to the characteristics of masonry fireplaces.

______a. Cost less to install

______b. Sizes of wood used for burning is limited

______c. Last a lifetime

______d. Are expensive to install

______e. Can burn larger sizes of wood

______f. Generally heat up faster and give more heat

9. Select true statements concerning requirements for fireplace sizing and detailing by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

______a. There are no building code requirements for prefabricated fireplaces

______b. Framing lumber should not come closer than 5' from chimney

______c. Extend chimney 2' higher than any portion of a roof located within 10'

______d. Each fireplace does not need a separate flue

______e. For proper draft, the area of the flue should be less than one-fiftieth the area of the fireplace opening

______f. Prefabricated fireplace elevations do not need to be drawn

______g. Design of brick masonry fireplace should be based upon 4" module to reduce the amount of brick cutting

10. Match types of fireplace details drawings on the right with the correct uses.

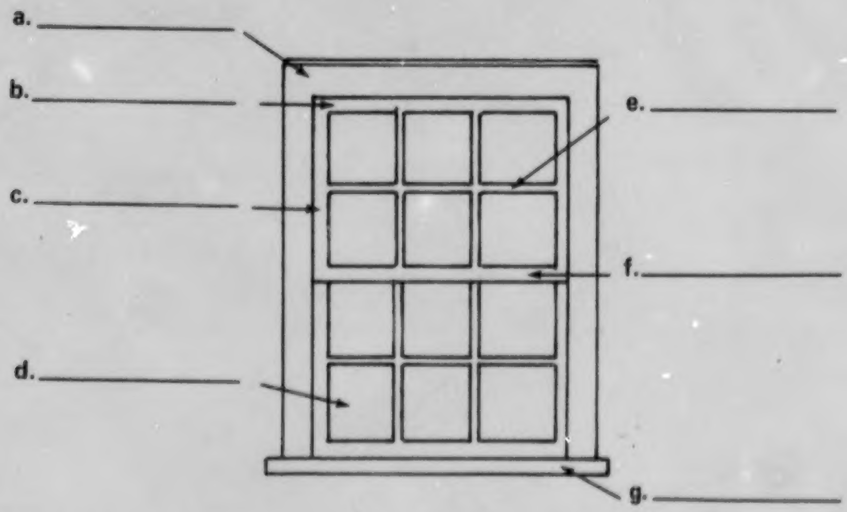
______a. Shows size of fireplace opening, trim, hearth, and mantel dimensions

______b. Shows assembly and details from footing through ceiling to cap height above finished roof level

______c. Commonly shown on floor plan that shows overall size and location dimensions of fireplace

1. Section view
2. Plan view
3. Front elevation view

11. Label parts of a wood window.



12. List the four major parts of a window section drawing.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

c. ______________________________

d. ______________________________

13. List the three major parts of a door section drawing.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

c. ______________________________

14. Arrange in order the steps for drawing a wall section detail by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Add material thickness and primary detail

_____b. Add other detail sections

_____c. Draw vertical projection lines lightly

_____d. Draw horizontal projection lines lightly

15. Demonstrate the ability to:

    a. Construct a stairway layout.

    b. Draw fireplace construction details.

    c. Draw typical cabinet details.

    d. Draw door and window section details.

    e. Draw a wall section detail.

    (NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

DETAILS
UNIT IX

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 7
   b. 17
   c. 4
   d. 2
   e. 11
   f. 20
   g. 18
   h. 8
   i. 15
   j. 1
   k. 21
   l. 10
   m. 5
   n. 16
   o. 13
   p. 6
   q. 22
   r. 12
   s. 19
   t. 9
   u. 3
   v. 14

2. a. Balusters
   b. Hand rail
   c. Unit rise
   d. Unit run
   e. Clearance
   f. Tread
   g. Riser
   h. Tread nosing

3. a. Spiral
   b. Straight run
   c. L-type with winders
   d. U-type

4. a. Unit run + unit run
   b. 2
   c. 72" to 75"

5. b

6. a. Chimney
   b. Flue
   c. Smoke chamber
   d. Damper
   e. Ash pit
   f. Hearth

7. a. Prefabricated
   b. Three face
   c. Double face–opposite sides
   d. Single face

8. c, d, e

9. c, g

10. a. 3
    b. 1
    c. 2

11. a. Top jamb
    b. Top rail
    c. Side rail or sash
    d. Glass
    e. Muntin
    f. Meeting rail
    g. Sill

12. a. Head
    b. Jamb
    c. Rail
    d. Sill

13. a. Head
    b. Jamb
    c. Sill

14. a. 3
    b. 4
    c. 2
    d. 1

15. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

PLUMBING
UNIT X

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to identify parts of a waste disposal system and complete charts of piping, fitting, and fixture symbols. The student should also be able to calculate size of building lines and construct plumbing drawings. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to plumbing with the correct definitions.
2. Complete a list of types of heating used in plumbing systems.
3. Name the major parts of a plumbing system.
4. Identify parts of a waste disposal system.
5. Match types of materials in a waste disposal system with the correct uses.
6. List the classifications of vents.
7. Select true statements concerning waste disposal systems.
8. Name the parts of a water system.
9. Select true statements concerning water systems.
10. Complete a chart of piping symbols and abbreviations.
11. Complete a chart of pipe fitting and valve symbols.
12. Match fixture plan symbols with the correct names.
13. Select true statements concerning plan drawings.
14. Select true statements concerning riser drawings.
15. Select true statements concerning isometric drawings.
16. Demonstrate the ability to:
    a. Calculate the size of a building sewer line.
    b. Construct plumbing drawings of a building drain system.
    c. Construct plumbing drawings for a residential building.
    d. Design a septic system.

PLUMBING
UNIT X

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Using small PVC pipe fittings, construct a three-dimensional scale model of a plumbing system for a residence.

VII. Take students on a field trip to look at a house under construction while the plumbing is being installed.

VIII. Provide samples of plumbing drawings of a residence and small commercial building.

IX. Show samples of types of fittings.

X. Have available for the students *HUD Minimum Property Standards* and *The BOCA Basic Plumbing Code* books for use in Assignment Sheet #4.

XI. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

   A. Objective sheet

   B. Information sheet

   C. Transparency masters

      1. TM 1--Solar Plumbing System
      2. TM 2--Waste Riser Diagram
      3. TM 3--Waste Plumbing Plan
      4. TM 4--Plumbing Location Design
      5. TM 5--Septic System
      6. TM 6--Water Riser Diagram

7. TM 7–Water and Gas Plumbing Plan
8. TM 8–Plumbing Symbols
9. TM 9–Fixture Isometric Plumbing Layout
10. TM 10–Waste Plumbing Isometric Drawing

D. Assignment sheets

1. Assignment Sheet #1–Calculate the Size of a Building Sewer Line
2. Assignment Sheet #2–Construct Plumbing Drawings of a Building Drain System
3. Assignment Sheet #3–Construct Plumbing Drawings for a Residential Building
4. Assignment Sheet #4–Design a Septic System

E. Answers to assignment sheets

F. Test

G. Answers to test

II. References:

A. Brown, Walter C. *Blueprint Reading for Construction Residential and Commercial.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1980.

B. Goodban, William T. and Jack J. Hayslett. *Architectural Drawing and Planning.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

C. Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach, *Architecture Drafting and Design.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1977.

D. *HUD Minimum Property Standards.* Washington, D. C.: U. S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

E. Kicklighter, Clois E. and Ronald J. Baird. *Architecture Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL 60473: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

F. *Manual of Acceptable Practices to the HUD Minimum Property Standards.* Washington, D.C.: U. S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

G. Ramsey, Charles G. and Harold R. Sleeper. *Architectural Graphic Standards.* New York: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1970.

H. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

I. Weidhaas, Ernest R. *Architectural Drafting and Construction.* Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1974.

J. *Southern Standard Building Code.* Birmingham, AL: Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc., 1973.

K. *Uniform Plumbing Code.* Los Angeles: Western Plumbing Officials Association, 1976.

PLUMBING
UNIT X

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

  A. Uniform Plumbing Code--Plumbing design and installation requirements published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials

  B. BOCA Basic Plumbing Code--Plumbing design and installation requirements published by the Building Officials and Code Administrators

  C. Soil pipe--Receives the solid waste from water closets and discharges it to the building drain

  D. Waste pipe--Receives the waste from sinks, lavatories, bathtubs, washers, or other fixtures not receiving solid waste and discharges it in the soil pipe or building drain

  E. Building drain--Receives discharge from soil and waste pipes and carries it to the building sewer

  F. Building sewer--Begins outside of the building and carries the waste to the sewer in the street, alley easement, or septic system

  G. Stack--Any vertical pipe, such as soil pipe, waste pipe, or vent pipe

  H. Vent stack--Vertical vent pipe used primarily to provide air circulation on any part of the building drainage system to eliminate emptying a trap

  I. Trap--Provides a liquid seal to prevent passage of sewer gases in the building

  J. Fixture--Equipment that is attached to plumbing in a building

  K. Fixture unit--Measure of flow rate in a plumbing system

  (NOTE: One fixture unit equals 1 cubic foot of liquid per minute. There are 7 1/2 gallons in a cubic foot.)

  L. Septic tank--Used to retain solids in the sewage flowing through tank long enough for decomposition of settled solids by bacterial action

  M. Drain field--A system of below ground perforated pipe surrounded by coarse aggregate through which septic tank liquid waste seeps into the soil

  (NOTE: This field is also called an absorption field.)

  N. Leader--A pipe draining water from the roof to a storm sewer

  O. Storm sewer--A pipe or conduit used to drain surface water

INFORMATION SHEET

- P. Riser--Vertical pipe that connects from water main within a building to a fixture
- Q. Cleanout--An elbow fitting with a plug that will permit cleaning the sewer system
- R. Fitting--A standardized part that connects pipe and flow in a pipe in a plumbing system
- S. Hose bibb--A threaded faucet

  (NOTE: Freeze-proof hose bibbs are recommended in freezing climates.)
- T. Plastic pipe--Polyvinyl chloride pipe that is perforated and used for drain lines (laterals) in a septic system
- U. Sewage disposal system--All piping and fittings from all fixtures that conduct waste water to a public sewer or septic system
- V. Water system--All supply pipes that conduct water from the water main to lavatories, bathtubs, hot water heaters, or water closets
- W. Air chamber--Provides air space to reduce water hammer
- X. Rough-in--Plumbing work performed before concrete slab is poured and before wall covering materials are placed on wall
- Y. Percolation (perc) test--Test as specified by BOCA code to determine the rate of drop of a water surface in a test hole

II. Types of heating used in plumbing systems

- A. Fuel oil
- B. Total electric
- C. Gas
- D. Solar (Transparency 1)

III. Major parts of a plumbing system

- A. Waste disposal system
- B. Water system

IV. Parts of a waste disposal system (Transparencies 2 and 3)

- A. Building sewer
- B. Building drain
- C. Vent stack

INFORMATION SHEET

D. Stack

E. Trap

F. Waste pipe

G. Soil pipe

H. Fixture

I. Cleanout

V. Types of materials in a waste disposal system and uses

A. Plastic--Used for soil pipe, waste pipe, vents, building sewer, A/C drain, and drain field for a residential house

B. Vitrified clay tile--Used for building sewer, drain field, and public sewer lines

C. Cast iron--Used for all soil lines from within a residence or commercial building to the building drain lines

D. Copper--Used for waste and vent pipes and fresh water

E. Galvanized steel--Used for vent pipes

F. Lead--Used for roof flashing, vent pipes, and industrial waste pipes

VI. Classifications of vents

A. Soil and waste

B. Individual fixture

VII. Waste disposal systems (Transparencies 2, 3, 4, and 5)

A. Use larger than 2 x 4 studs to conceal cast iron soil stack pipes

B. All copper soil and waste piping above ground should be type M

C. Waste pipe is usually smaller in diameter than soil pipe

D. It is economical to locate second floor bathroom above first floor bath

E. It is economical to locate kitchen and bath fixtures back-to-back (Transparency 4)

F. Each fixture should be separately trapped

G. All fixtures that have traps must be vented

H. Individual vents should not be less than 1 1/4" (32 mm) in diameter

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Septic system must be sized according to local or state health code (Transparency 5)

J. The size of drain field must be sized by local or state health department (Transparency 5)

K. A soil or waste stack should not be smaller than the largest building drain connected to it

VIII. Parts of a water system (Transparencies 6 and 7)

A. Hot water

B. Cold water

(NOTE: Fresh water may be treated with a water softener.)

IX. Water systems (Transparencies 6 and 7)

A. Valves should be located in the system so various parts can be shut off without turning off complete system

B. All water heaters must have a pressure relief valve

C. The main water supply line to the building should be buried below the frost line

D. Plastic pipe is not approved for all local codes

E. If plumbing plan can be misinterpreted, an isometric drawing of installation must be made

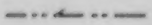
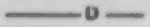
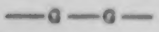
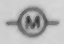
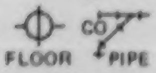
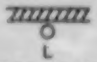
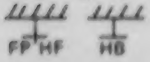
F. Drains must be provided for water softener and hot water relief lines

G. All hot and cold water piping inside the building under concrete floors should be type L copper

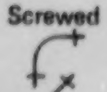
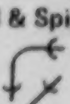
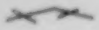
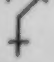
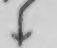
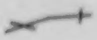
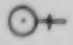
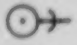
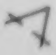
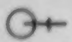
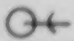
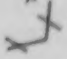
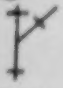
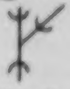
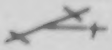
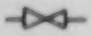
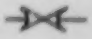
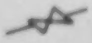
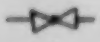
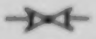
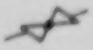
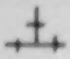
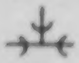
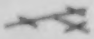
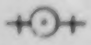
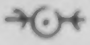
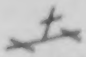
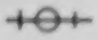
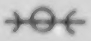
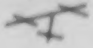
X. Piping symbols and abbreviations

	Abbreviations	Symbols
Soil, waste pipe (above grade)	SW	————————
Soil, waste pipe (below grade)	SW	— — — —
Vent	V	- - - - - - -
Cold water	CW	— - — - — -
Soft water	SW	—— SW ——

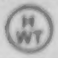
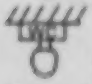
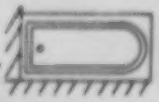
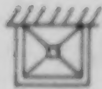
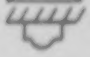
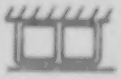
INFORMATION SHEET

Hot water	HW	
Air conditioning drain	ACD	
Gas - low pressure	G	
Meter		
Cleanout	CO	
Leader	L	
Hose bibb or freeze-proof		

XI. Pipe fitting and valve symbols

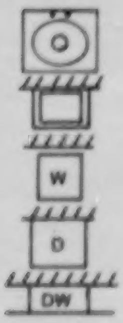
Type of pipe fitting or valve	**Screwed**	**Bell & Spigot**	**Isometric**
Elbow - 90 deg.			
Elbow - 45 deg.			
Elbow - turned up			
Elbow - turned down			
Lateral			
Gate valve			
Globe valve			
Tee straight size			
Tee - outlet up			
Tee - outlet down			

XII. Fixture plan symbols (Transparency 8)

	Abbreviations	Symbols
Hot water tank	HWT	
Water closet	WC	
Bathtub		
Shower stall		
Urinal		
Kitchen sink		

INFORMATION SHEET

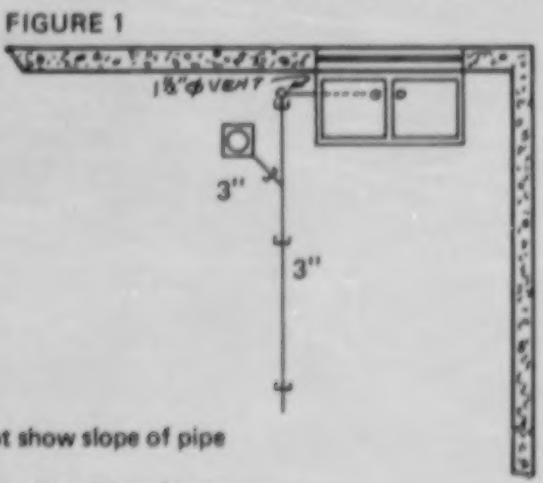
Lavatory	LAV
Vanity	
Washer	W
Dryer	D
Dishwasher	DW



XIII. Plan drawings (Transparencies 3 and 7)

A. Plan view shows drawing as viewed from directly above (Figure 1)

FIGURE 1



B. Plan view does not show slope of pipe

C. Plan view can be used to determine:

1. Length of pipe
2. Location and types of fittings
3. Location of floor drains
4. Location of cleanouts
5. Direction of flow
6. Labor estimates

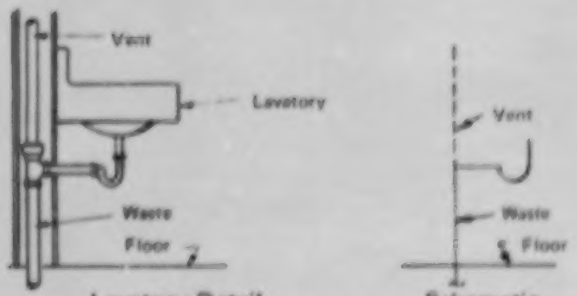
D. The plan drawing can serve as a record after the floor has been poured

XIV. Riser drawings (Transparencies 2 and 6)

A. Riser drawing is a sectional view (schematic) through a building showing the piping system or part of a system

INFORMATION SHEET

B. Riser drawing is not a true picture due to drawing being two dimensional (Figure 2)

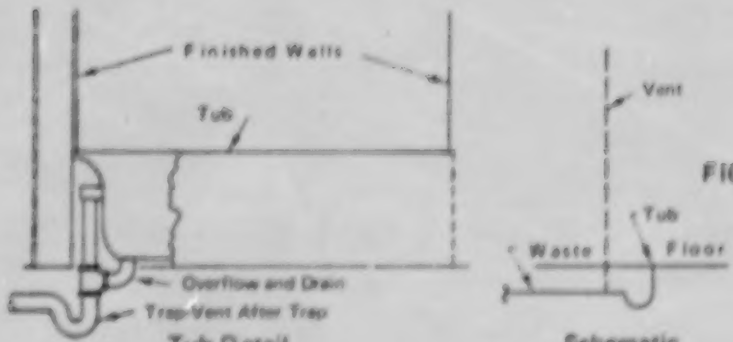

Vent
Lavatory
Waste
Floor
Vent
Waste
Floor

Lavatory Detail

Schematic

FIGURE 2

C. Riser drawing is valuable in determining code and inspection requirements (Figure 3)


Finished Walls
Tub
Overflow and Drain
Trap-Vent After Trap
Vent
Tub
Waste
Floor

Tub Detail

Schematic

FIGURE 3

XV. Isometric drawings (Transparencies 9 and 10)

A. Isometrics are used to show a three dimensional picture in one drawing

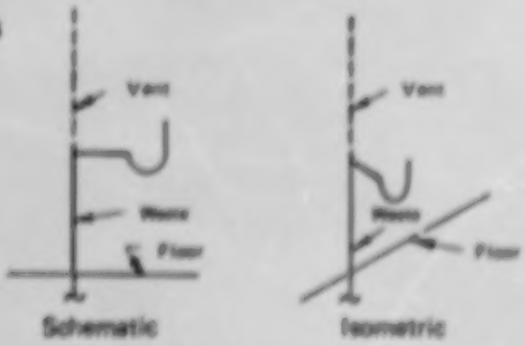
B. Isometrics combine the plan and elevation into one drawing

C. Pipes that are vertical on a plan or elevation, such as soil, water, and vent stacks, remain vertical in the isometric drawing

INFORMATION SHEET

D. Pipes that are horizontal on a plan or elevation are shown at a 30° angle in the isometric drawing (Figure 4)

FIGURE 4



Schematic

Isometric

Example: This house, in outline form, would show the drainage system as horizontal lines, 30°; vertical lines, 90° (Figure 5)

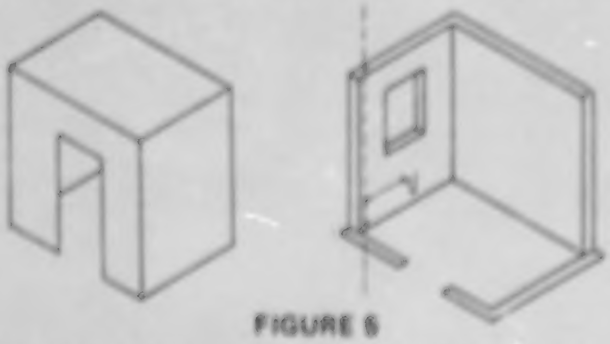
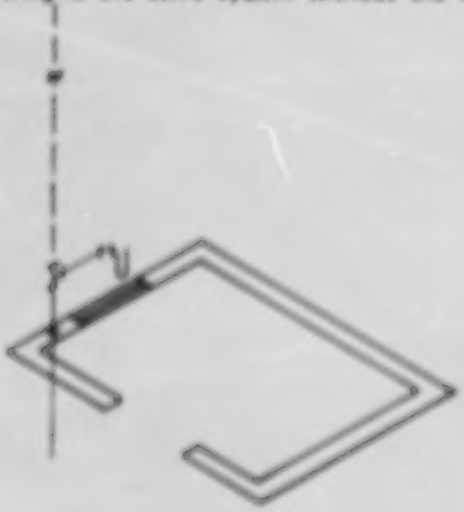


FIGURE 5

(NOTE: The following is the same system without the house lines. See Figure 6.)

FIGURE 6



INFORMATION SHEET

E. Careful consideration to detail can indicate type of fitting and direction of flow (Figure 7)

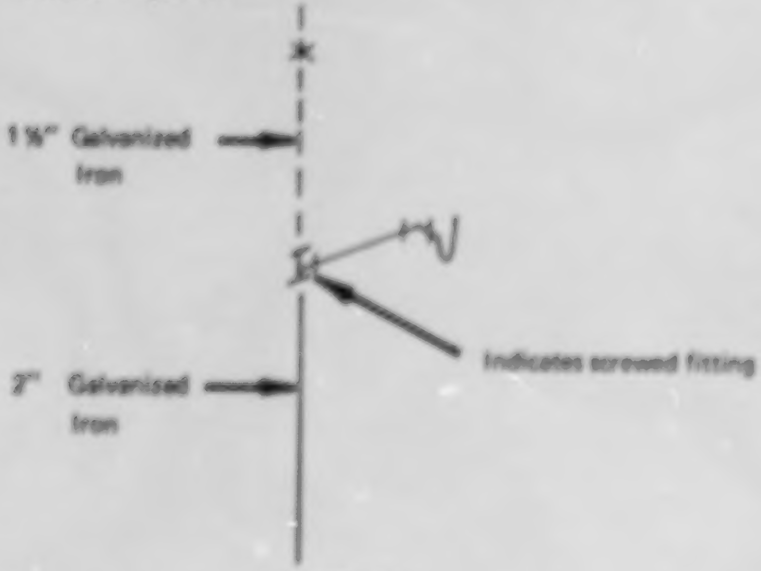
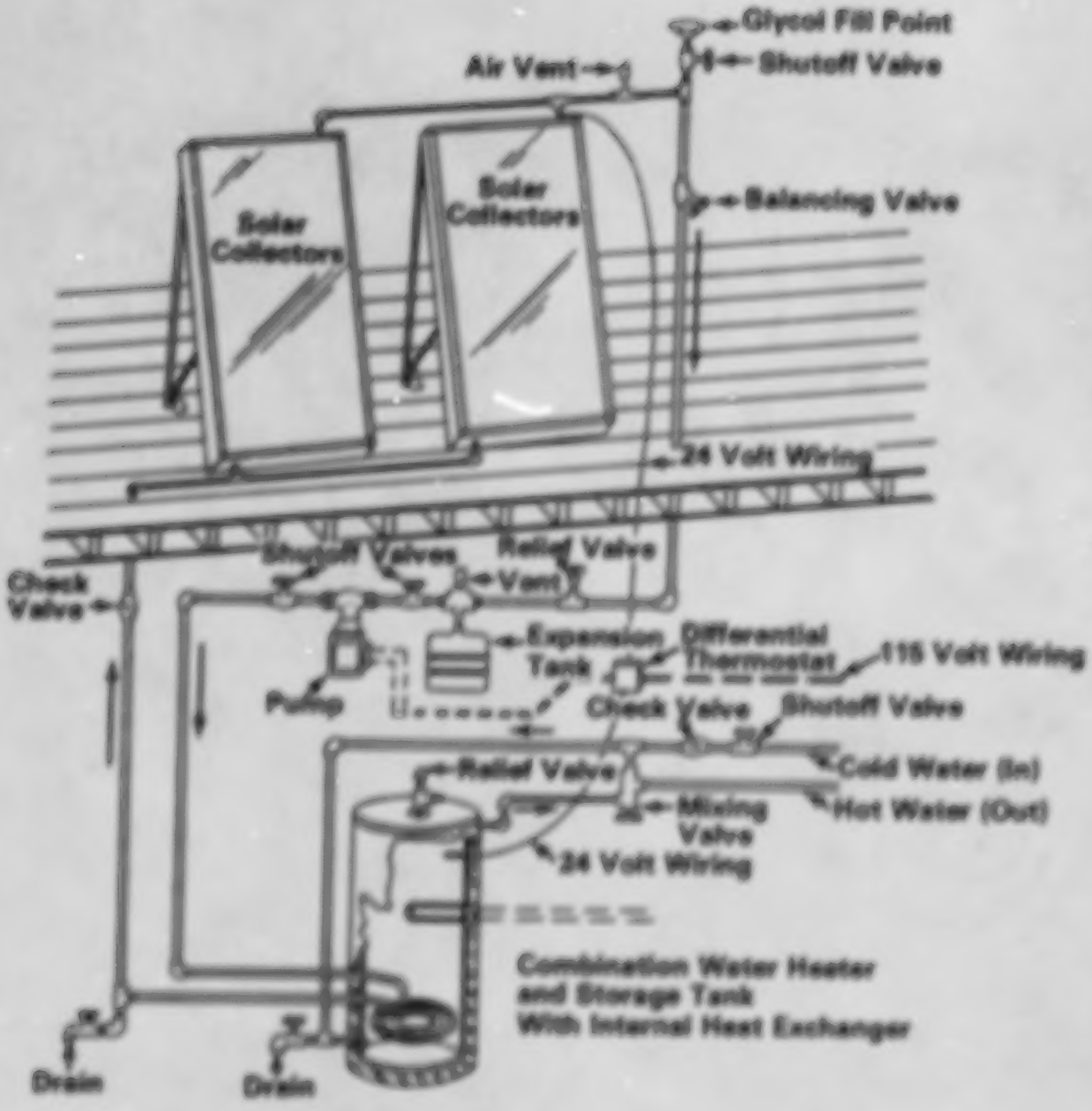

1½" Galvanized Iron
HW
Indicates screwed fitting
2" Galvanized Iron

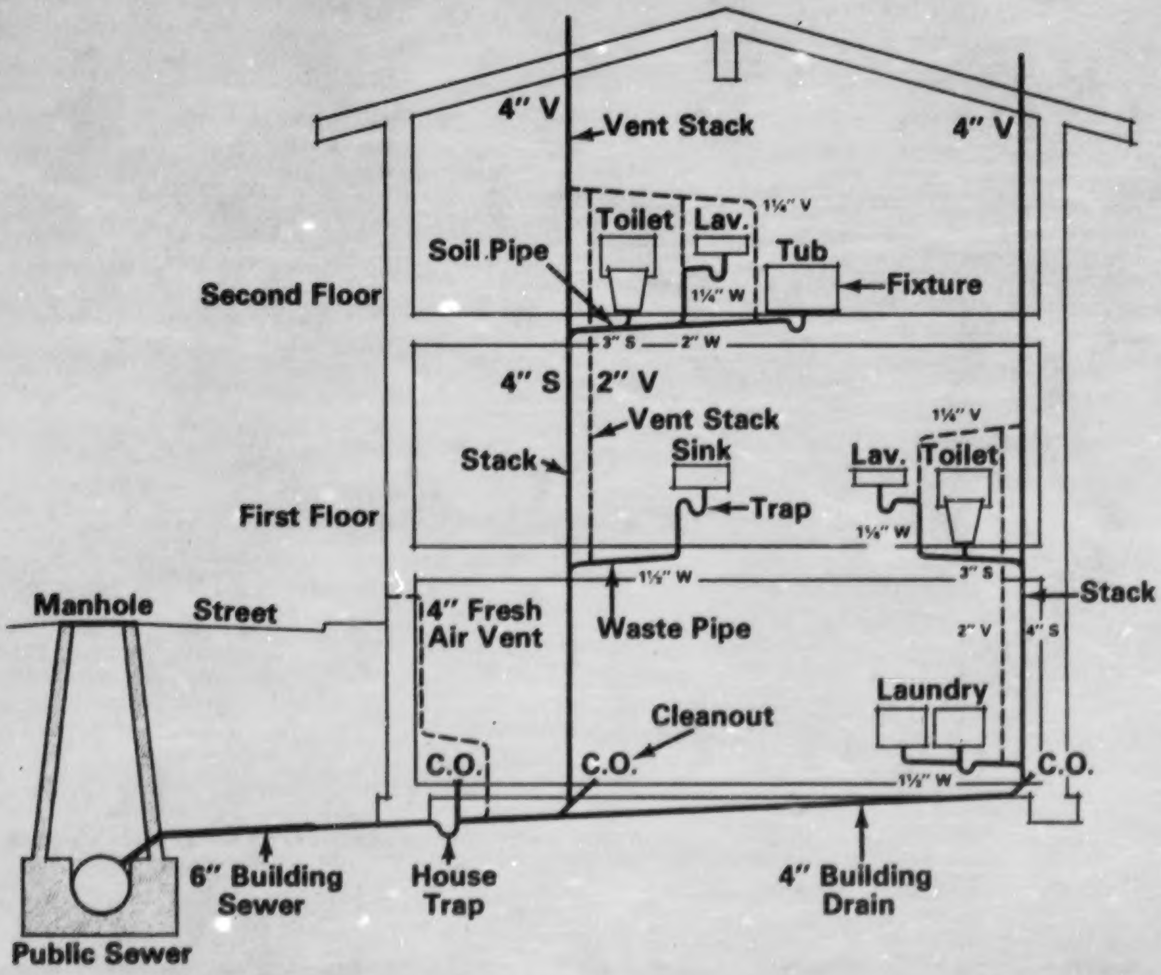
FIGURE 7

Solar Plumbing System


Glycol Fill Point
Shutoff Valve
Air Vent
Balancing Valve
Solar Collectors
Solar Collectors
24 Volt Wiring
Check Valve
Shutoff Valves
Relief Valve
Vent
Expansion Tank
Differential Thermostat
115 Volt Wiring
Pump
Check Valve
Shutoff Valve
Cold Water (In)
Relief Valve
Hot Water (Out)
Mixing Valve
24 Volt Wiring
Combination Water Heater and Storage Tank With Internal Heat Exchanger
Drain
Drain

Domestic Hot Water System

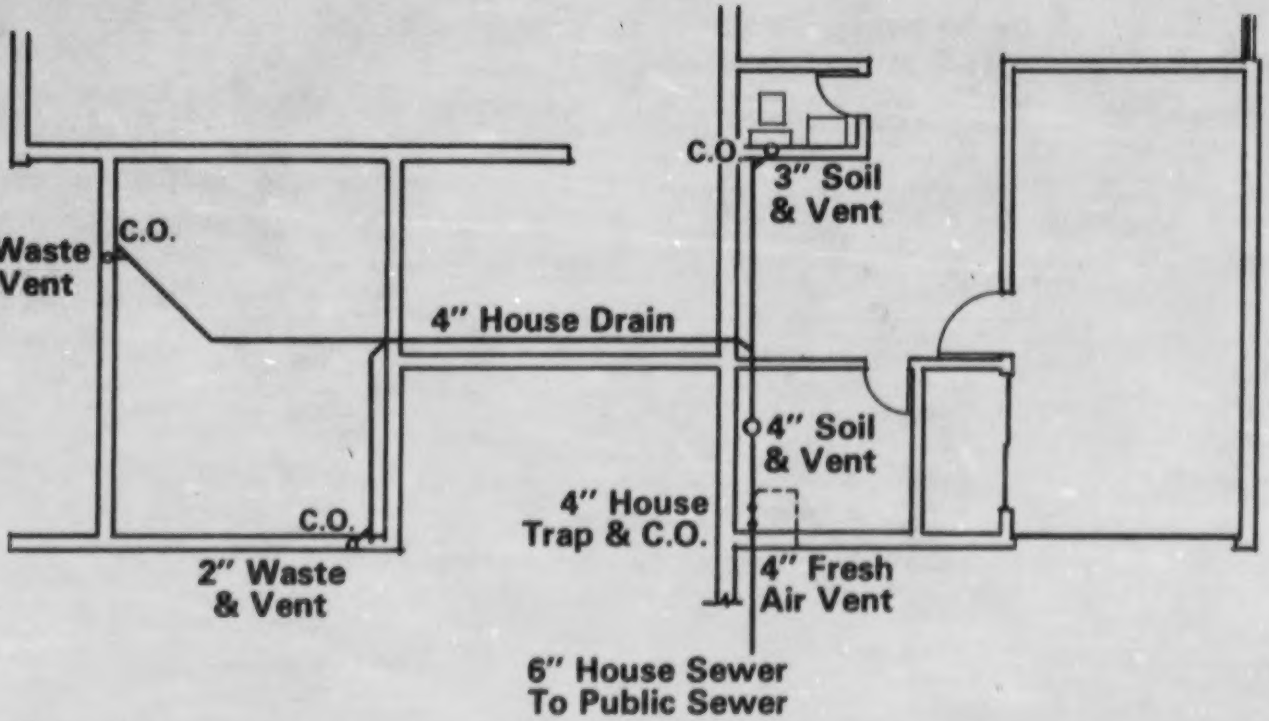
Waste Riser Diagram


4" V
Vent Stack
4" V
1¼" V
Toilet
Lav.
Tub
Soil Pipe
Second Floor
1¼" W
Fixture
3" S
2" W
4" S
2" V
Vent Stack
1¼" V
Sink
Stack
Lav.
Toilet
Trap
First Floor
1¼" W
1½" W
3" S
Stack
Manhole
Street
4" Fresh Air Vent
Waste Pipe
2" V
4" S
Laundry
Cleanout
C.O.
C.O.
C.O.
1½" W
6" Building Sewer
House Trap
4" Building Drain
Public Sewer

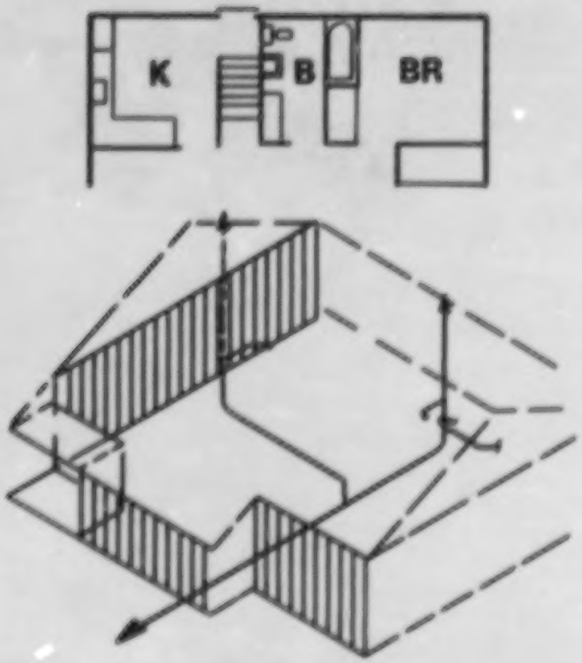
TM 2

AD-633

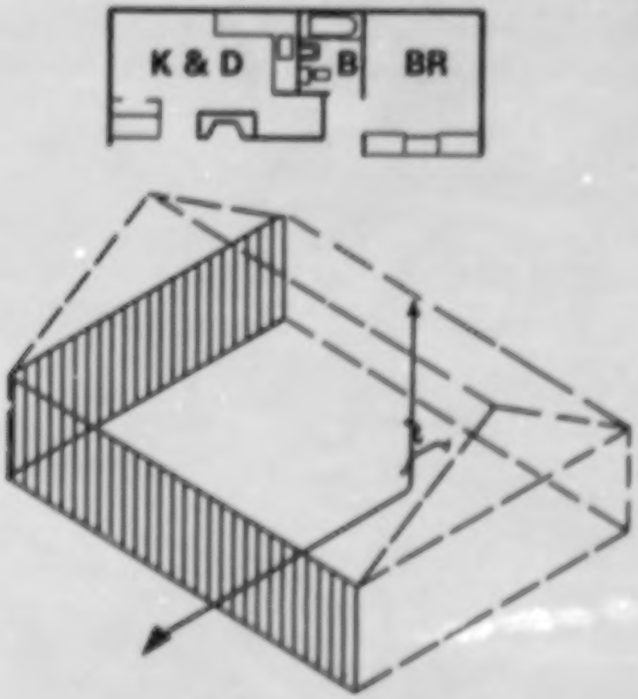
Waste Plumbing Plan


C.O.
3" Soil & Vent
2" Waste & Vent
C.O.
4" House Drain
4" Soil & Vent
4" House Trap & C.O.
C.O.
2" Waste & Vent
4" Fresh Air Vent
6" House Sewer To Public Sewer

Plumbing Location Design

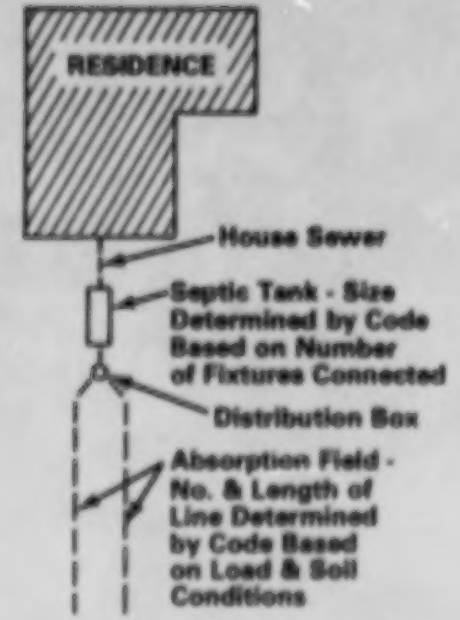


Split Location



Back to Back Location

Septic System


RESIDENCE
House Sewer
Septic Tank - Size Determined by Code Based on Number of Fixtures Connected
Distribution Box
Absorption Field - No. & Length of Line Determined by Code Based on Load & Soil Conditions

PLOT PLAN

MINIMUM SEPTIC TANK CAPACITY

Number of Bedrooms	Minimum Capacity (Gallons)
2 or less	750
3	900
4	1000
each additional Br. add.	250

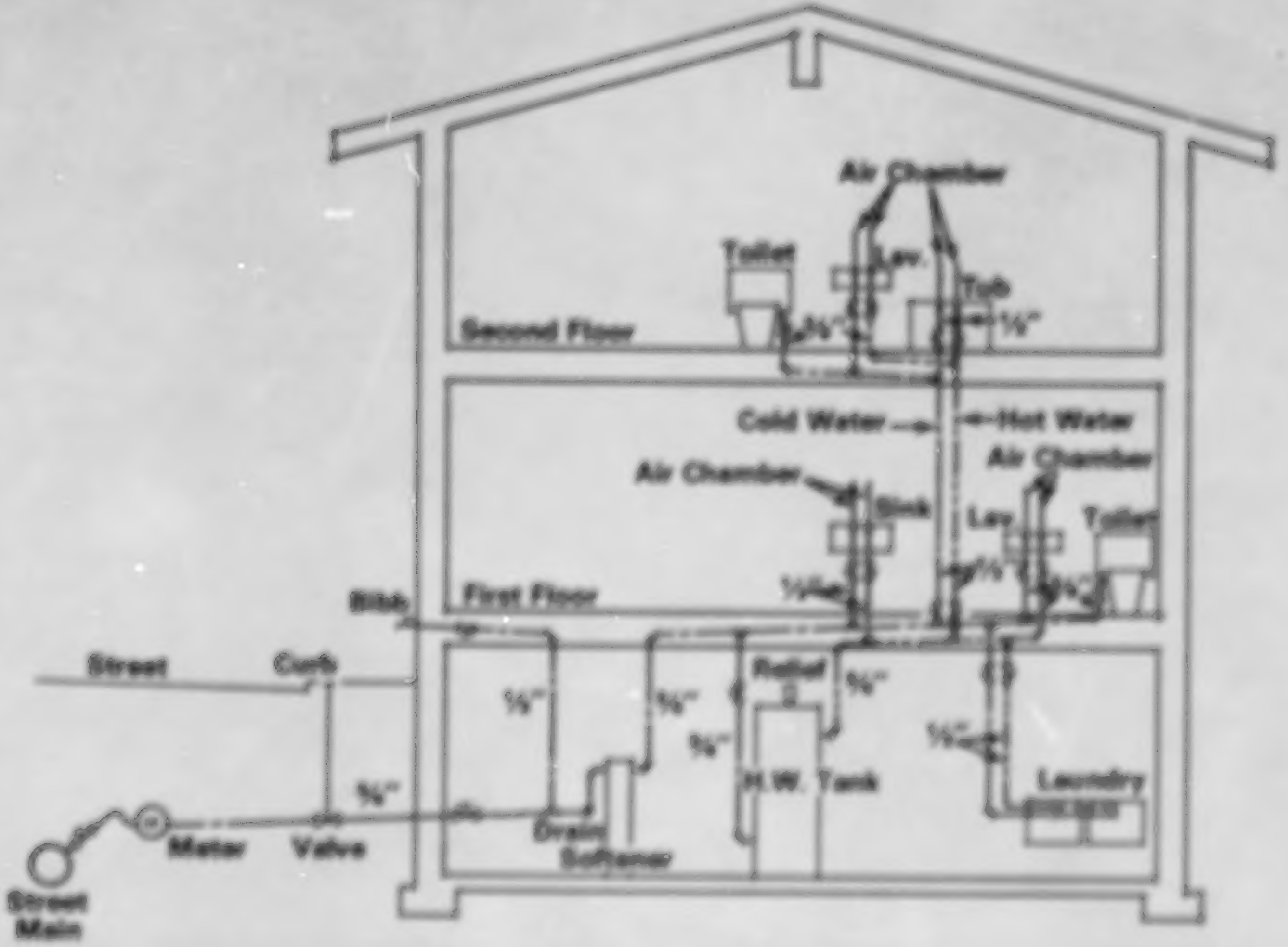
HUD

MINIMUM DISTANCES (FEET)

FROM	TO			
	Septic Tank	Absorption Field	Seepage Pit	Absorption Bed
Well	50	100	100	100
Property line	10	5	10	10
Foundation	5	5	20	5
Water lines	10	10	10	10
Seepage pit	6	6		-
Dry well	6	20	20	20

HUD

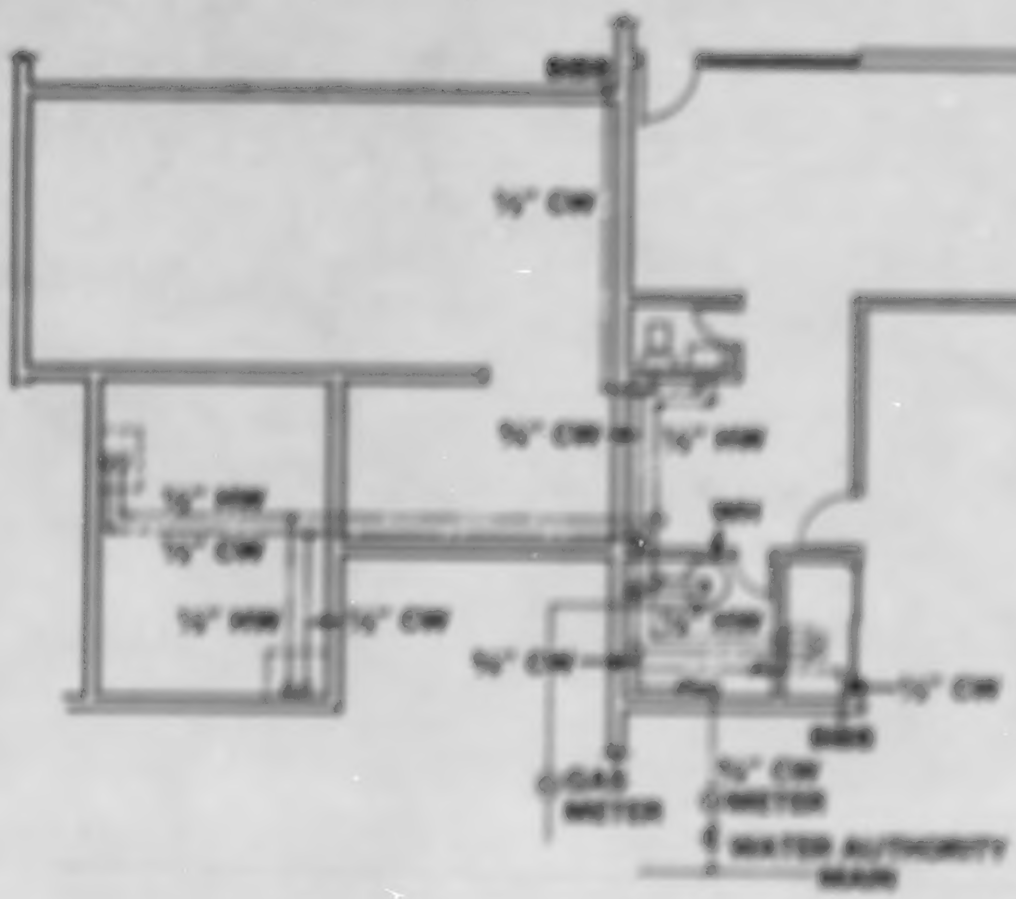
Water Riser Diagram



Air Chamber
Toilet
Lav.
Tub
½"
½"
Second Floor
Cold Water
Hot Water
Air Chamber
Air Chamber
Sink
Lav.
Toilet
½"
½"
½"
Bibb
First Floor
Street
Curb
Relief
¾"
½"
½"
¾"
½"
¾"
H.W. Tank
Laundry
Drain
Softener
Meter
Valve
Street Main

L

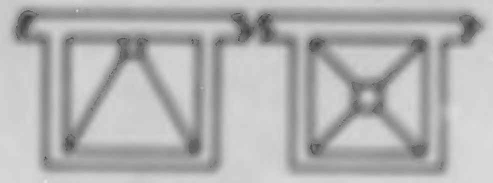
Water And Gas Plumbing Plan


SHH
½" CW
½" CW
½" HW
WH
½" HW
½" CW
½" HW
½" CW
½" CW
½" HW
½" CW
½" CW
SHH
GAS METER
½" CW
METER
WATER AUTHORITY MAIN

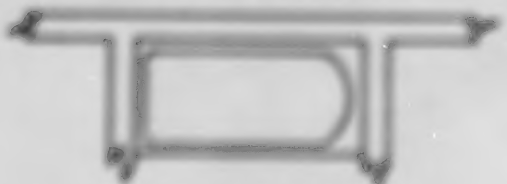
LEGEND

Cold Water Supply	Tee (Turned Up)
Hot Water Supply	Tee (Turned Down)
Gate Valve	Elbow (Turned Up)
Water Meter & Gas	Elbow (Turned Down)

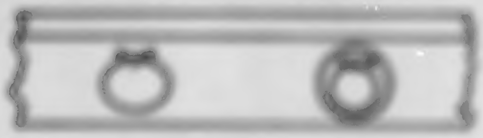
Plumbing Symbols



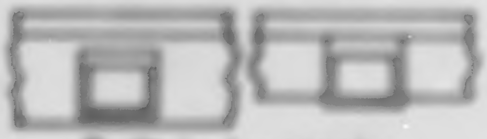
Showers



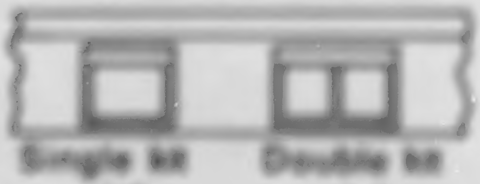
Built-in bathtub
(Recessed)



Built-in lavatories

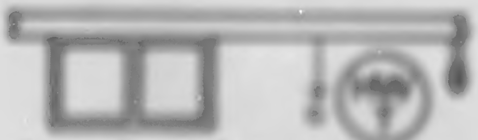


Built-in lavatories



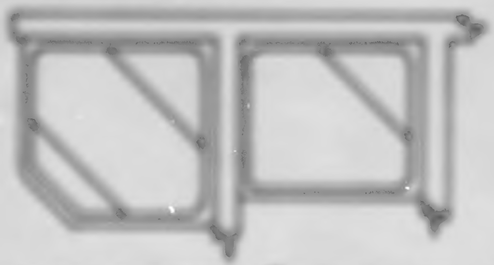
Single kit
sink

Double kit
sink



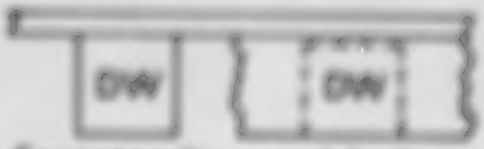
Laundry tubs

Water
heater
(Indicate fuel)

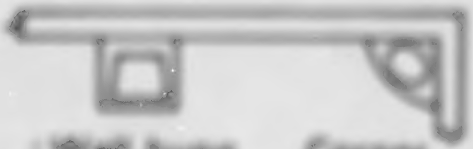


Square corner
bathtub

Built-in square
bathtub

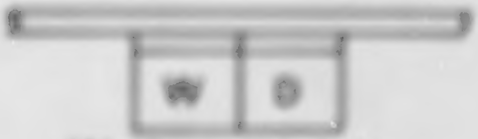


Freestanding and built-in
dishwashers

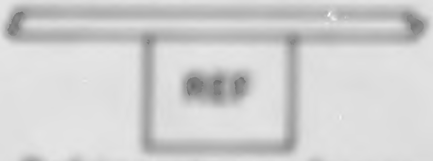


Wall hung
lavatory

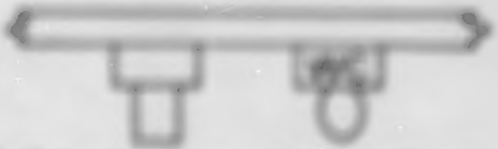
Corner
lavatory



Washer and dryer

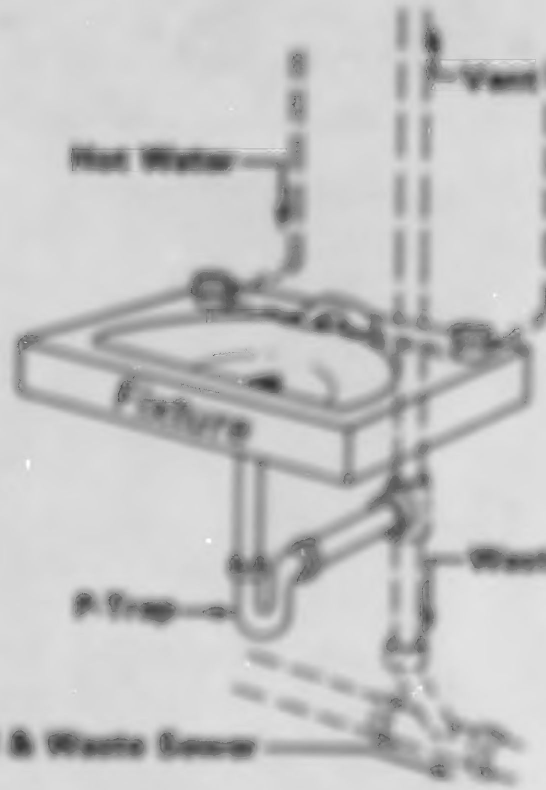


Refrigerator or freezer



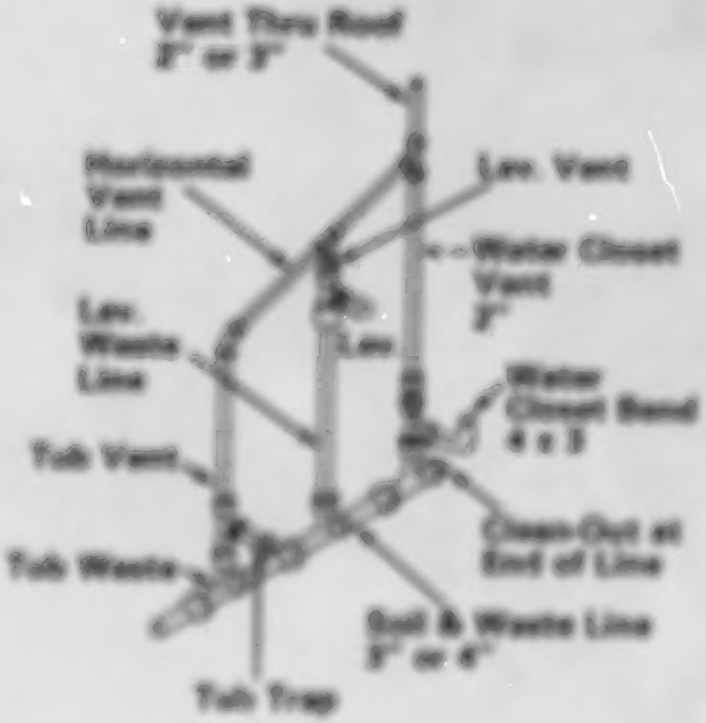
Toilet stools or water closets

Fixture Isometric Plumbing Layout


Vent
Hot Water
Cold Water
Fixture
Waste
P-Trap
Soil & Waste Sewer

Isometric Drawing of Plumbing Fittings

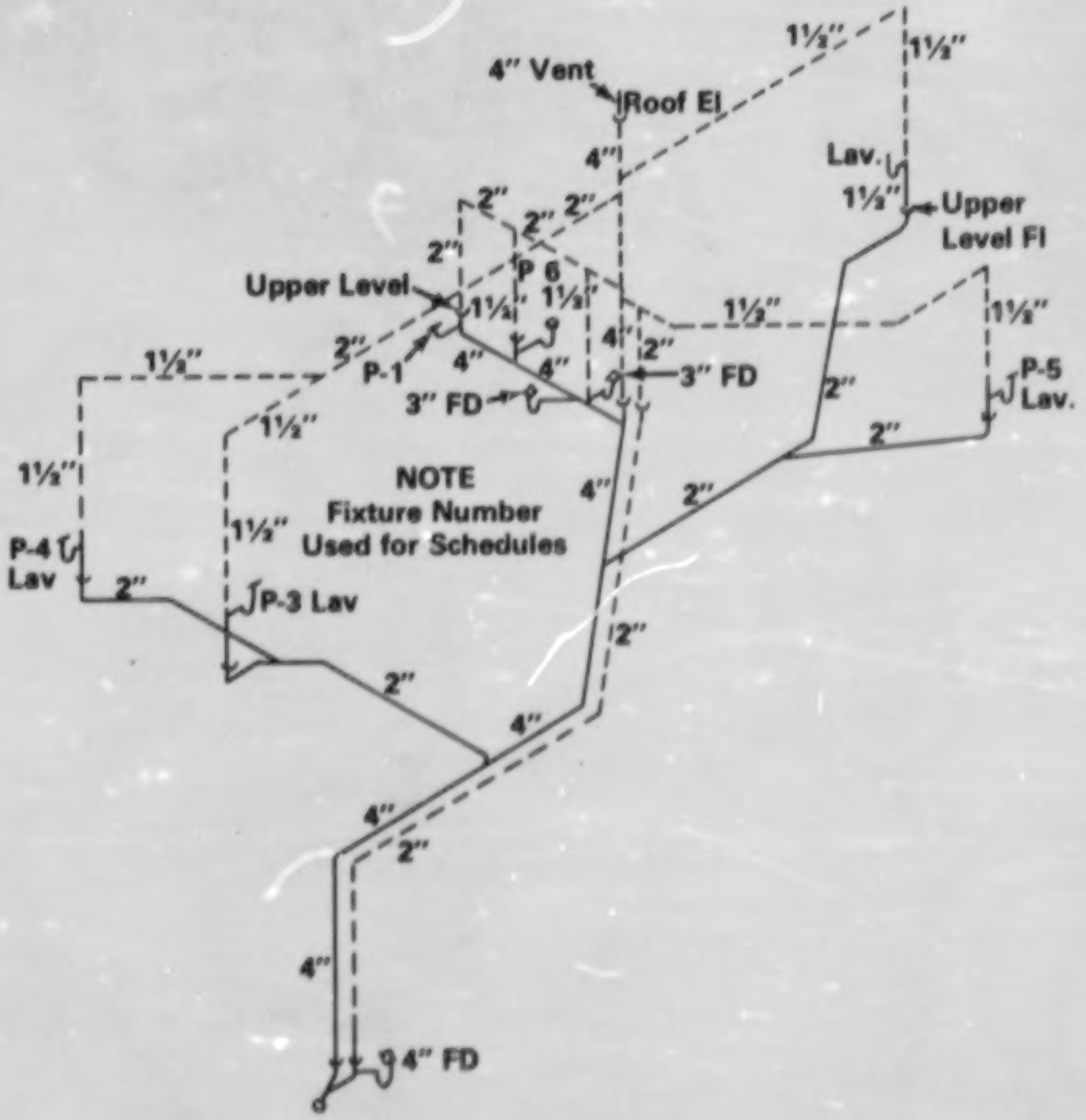
52.


Vent Thru Roof 2" or 3"
Horizontal Vent Line
Lav. Vent
Water Closet Vent 3"
Lav. Waste Line
Lav.
Water Closet Bend 4 x 3
Tub Vent
Clean-Out at End of Line
Tub Waste
Soil & Waste Line 3" or 4"
Tub Trap

Bell & Spigot Fittings

52.

Waste Plumbing Isometric Drawing


1½"
1½"
4" Vent
Roof El
4"
Lav.
1½"
Upper
Level Fl
2"
2"
2"
2"
P 6
1½"
Upper Level
1½"
1½"
1½"
1½"
2"
P-1
4"
4"
4"
2"
3" FD
3" FD
2"
P-5
Lav.
1½"
1½"
2"
1½"
NOTE
Fixture Number
Used for Schedules
4"
2"
1½"
P-4
Lav
2"
P-3 Lav
2"
2"
4"
4"
2"
4"
4" FD

SOIL, WASTE & VENT ISOMETRIC

PLUMBING
UNIT X

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1--CALCULATE THE SIZE OF A BUILDING SEWER LINE

Introduction: Before a plumbing working drawing can be started, sizes of all lines to all fixtures must be calculated. The procedure below is for calculating lines from a fixture unit drain to a public sewer.

(NOTE: Always refer to the National Plumbing Code or local code for exact line sizes.)

Example:

1. Use given 20 room motel with 4 laundry tubs, 5 urinals, and 5 sinks with slope of drain pipe to be 1/8 inch to the foot

2. Calculate the size of building fixture unit group drains (Table 1)

   a. Compute fixture units per motel room

1 water closet	X 3 units	3 units
1 lavatory	X 1 unit	1 unit
1 bathtub	X 2 units	2 units
		6 fixture units total flow

TABLE 1 EQUIVALENT FIXTURE UNITS Fixture	Number of Fixture Units		Minimum Trap Size
	Private Use	Public Use	
Bar Sink	1	2	1½
Bathtub (with or without shower over)	2	4	1½
Dental unit or cuspidor	-	1	1½
Drinking fountain (each head)	-	1	1¼
Hose bibb or sill cock (standard type)	3	5	
House trailer (each)	6	6	3
Laundry tub or clotheswasher (each pair of faucets)	2	4	1½
Lavatory	1	2	1½
Lavatory (dental)	1	1	1½
Lawn sprinklers (standard type, each head)	1	1	
Shower (each head)	2	4	1½
Sink (bar)	1	2	1½
Sink or dishwasher	2	4	1½
Sink (flushing rim, clinic)	-	10	3
Sink (washup, each set of faucets)	-	2	1½
Sink (washup, circular spray)	-	4	1½
Urinal (pedestal or similar type)	-	10	3
Urinal (stall)	-	5	2
Urinal (wall)	-	5	1½
Urinal (flush tank)	-	3	1½
Water closet (flush tank)	3	5	3
Water closet (flushometer valve)	6	10	3

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

b. Compute building group drains

(NOTE: Table 2 shows that a 2" pipe will carry 6 fixture units.)

TABLE 2 CAPACITIES OF BUILDING FIXTURE DRAIN & STACKS

Diameter of Pipe (Inches)	Maximum Number of Fixture Units	
	Any Building Fixture Drain	One Stack Three Stories in Height or Not Over Three Drain Intervals
1¼	1	2
1½	3	4
2	6	10
2½	12	20
3	20	30
4	160	240
5	360	540
6	620	960
8	1400	2200
10	2500	3800
12	3900	6000

From National Plumbing Code
American Society of Mechanical Engineers

3. Calculate the size of building sewer

a. Compute total fixture units

20 bathroom groups	X 6 units =	120 units
5 urinals	X 5 units =	25 units
4 laundry	X 2 units =	8 units
5 sinks	X 2 units =	10 units
		163 fixture units total flow

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

b. Compute building sewer size

(NOTE: Table 3 shows that a 4" pipe will carry 180 fixture units at 1/8 inch fall to the foot from building to public sewer.)

TABLE 3 CAPACITIES OF BUILDING DRAINS & SEWERS

Diameter Of Pipe (Inches)	Maximum Number of Fixture Units that may be Connected to Any Portion of the Building Drain or the Building Sewer		
	Fall per Foot		
	1/16-Inch	1/8-Inch	1/4-Inch
2			21
2½			24
3		20	27
4		180	216
5		390	480
6		700	840
8	1400	1600	1920
10	2500	2900	3500
12	3900	4600	5600

From National Plumbing Code
American Society of Mechanical Engineers

Directions: Using Tables 1, 2, and 3, calculate the size of building sewer line, building drain lines, and stack vent for the following problems.

Problems:

A. Residential house with 2 full baths, washer, dishwasher, and sink in utility room

B. One story motel with 40 rooms with baths back-to-back, 4 laundry tubs, 1 full size bath in manager's area, and 2 urinals in public use with slope of pipe to be 1/8 inch to the foot

PLUMBING
UNIT X

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2–CONSTRUCT PLUMBING DRAWINGS OF A BUILDING DRAIN SYSTEM

Directions: Construct a plan, riser, and isometric drawing of the figure shown below. Show building walls, window openings, and all piping. (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Use Plumbing Code to size lines.)

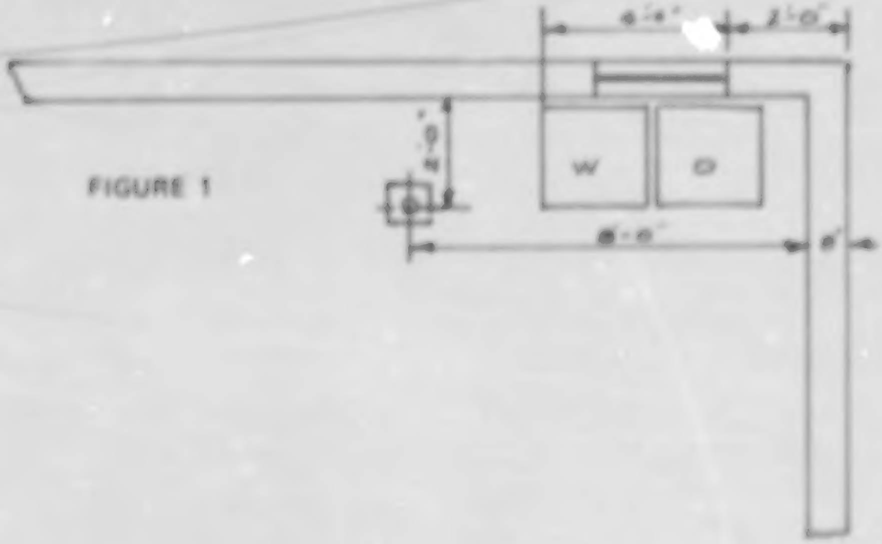


FIGURE 1

Problems:

A. Plan Drawing

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

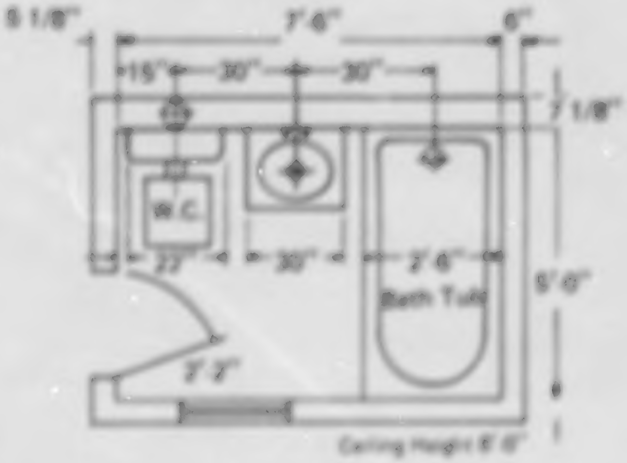
B. Riser drawing

C. Isometric drawing

Directions: Construct the drainage layout on the following plan (Figure 2). Now construct an isometric. Size all piping according to local code or instructor's directions.

D.

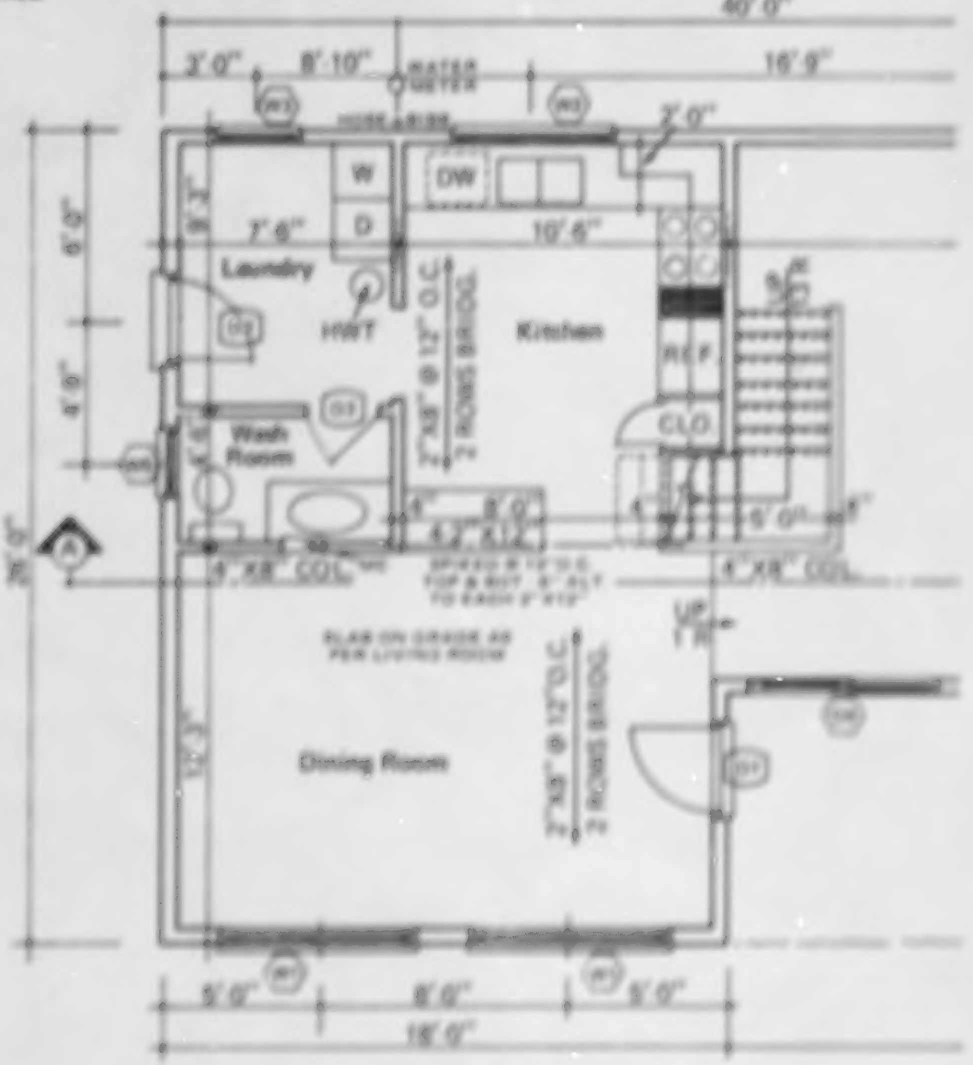
FIGURE 2


5 1/8"
7'6"
6"
15"
30"
30"
7 1/8"
W.C.
27"
30"
2'6"
Bath Tub
5'0"
2'2"
Ceiling Height 8'0"

PLUMBING
UNIT X

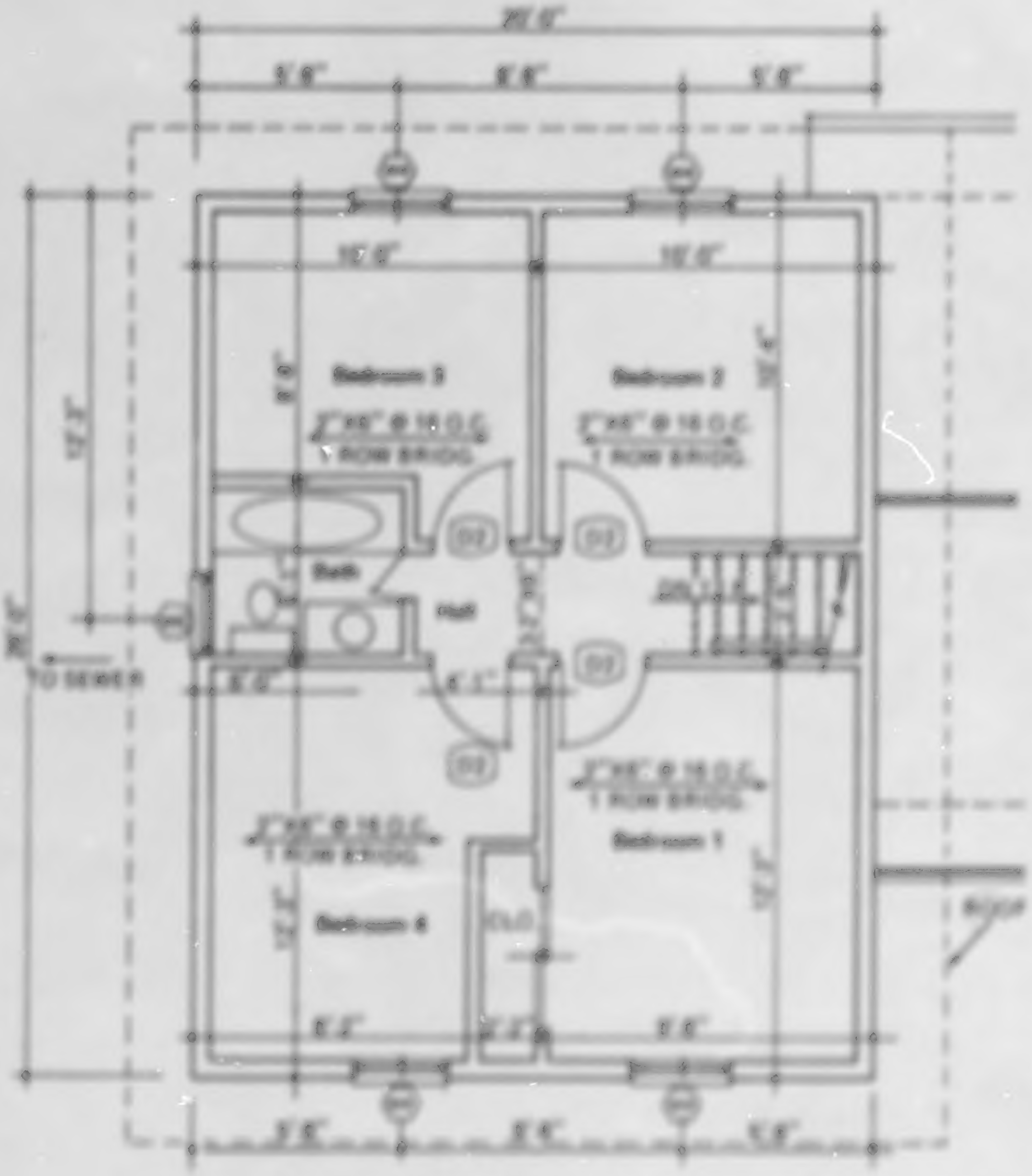
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3-CONSTRUCT PLUMBING DRAWINGS FOR A RESIDENTIAL BUILDING

Directions: Use given ground floor and upper floor plan of plumbing fixtures layout. Construct soil, waste sewer, and water lines on plan view. Construct isometric of plumbing lines on reverse side of sheet. Calculate and label all line sizes. Refer to local codes for sizing of lines.


40' 0"
3' 0"
8'-10"
WATER METER
16' 9"
HOSE BIBB
2' 0"
W
D
DW
7' 6"
10' 6"
Laundry
HWT
Kitchen
2"x8" @ 12" O.C.
2 ROWS BRIDG.
REF.
CLO.
Wash Room
6' 0"
4' 0"
8' 0"
4-2"x12"
6' 0"
4"x8" COL.
4"x8" COL.
UP 1 R
Dining Room
2"x8" @ 12" O.C.
2 ROWS BRIDG.
5' 0"
8' 0"
5' 0"
18' 0"

GROUND FLOOR PLAN

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3


20'-0"
10'-0"
10'-0"
Bedroom 3
Bedroom 2
2"x8" @ 16 O.C.
1 ROW BRIDG.
Bath
Hall
DN
TO SEWER
Bedroom 1
Bedroom 4
CLO
ROOF

UPPER FLOOR PLAN

53.

PLUMBING
UNIT X

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4–DESIGN A SEPTIC SYSTEM

Introduction: In areas where sewers are not available, septic systems are required for the sanitary disposal of waste. The size of the tank and the length of drain lines are controlled by state and local health codes. The septic tank and drain fields are based on the number of fixtures, rate of use, and soil conditions. Use *HUD Minimum Property Standards* 615.6, Appendix D, or *BOCA Basic Plumbing Code*, 1981, Appendix D for designing a septic system.

Example: Design a septic system for a three-bedroom, single-family house located on two acres with soil conditions that are clay sandy and the percolation test absorption rate is 4 minutes/inch.

1. Using Table 1 determine minimum capacity of a septic tank for a three bedroom house

TABLE 1
LIQUID CAPACITY OF SEPTIC TANKS

Number of Bedrooms	Tank Liquid Capacities (Gallons)
2 or less	750
3 or 4	1,000
5 or 6	1,500
7, 8, or 9	2,000

Answer: 1,000 gallons

2. Using Table 2 determine how many square feet of absorption drain area are needed in clay sandy soil with a percolation test absorption rate of 4 minutes/inch for a three bedroom house

TABLE 2
SUBSURFACE DRAIN FIELD OR BED
(Minimum bottom area per bedroom)

Absorption Time (Minutes/Inch)	Minimum Bottom Area (Sq. Ft.)
2 or less	85
3	100
4	115
5	125
10	165
15	190
30	250
45	300
60	330

Over 60 minutes is not acceptable

Answer: 115 sq. ft. area x 3 bedrooms = 345 sq. ft.

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

3. Using Table 3 determine linear feet of drain lines needed

TABLE 3
TRENCH SIZE AND SPACING

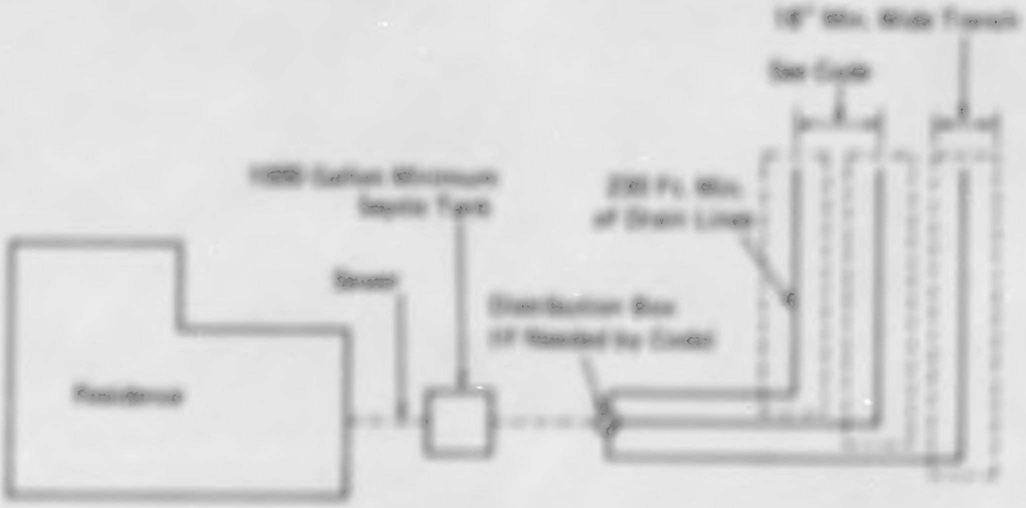
Trench Width at Bottom (in.)	Minimum Trench Spacing (ft.)
12 to 18	6.0
18 to 24	6.5
24 to 30	7.0
30 to 36	7.5

Answer: 345 sq. ft. ÷ 18 inches of trench width = 230 linear feet of drain lines

4. Label on plot plan the correct septic tank capacity and total length of drain lines (Figure 1)

(NOTE: Drain lines are sometimes called laterals.)

FIGURE 1


18" Min. Wide Trench
See Code
1000 Gallon Minimum
Septic Tank
230 Ft. Min.
of Drain Lines
Sewer
Distribution Box
(If Needed by Code)
Residence

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

Problems:

A. Design a septic system for a four-bedroom, single-family house located on 2 1/2 acres with clay soil and an absorption rate of 35 minutes/inch.

B. Design and label on a plot plan a septic system as assigned by instructor.

(NOTE: This may be for your design project.)

PLUMBING
UNIT 8

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

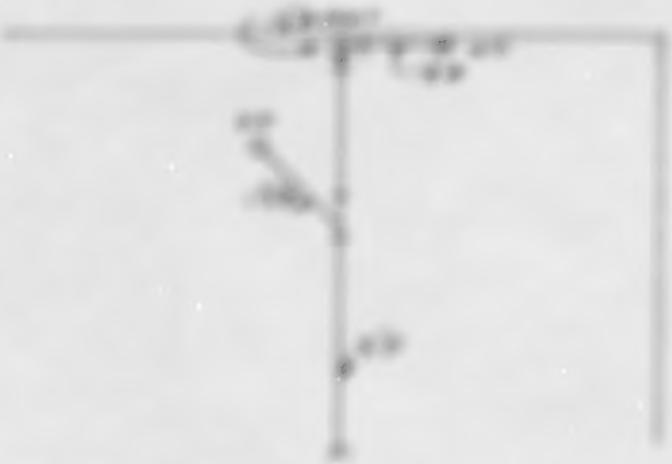
Assignment Sheet #1

A. 17 fixture units, 3" pipe

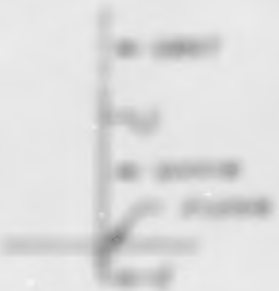
B. 288 fixture units, 6" pipe

Assignment Sheet #2

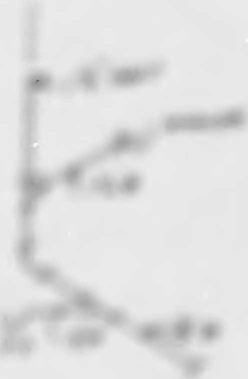
A.



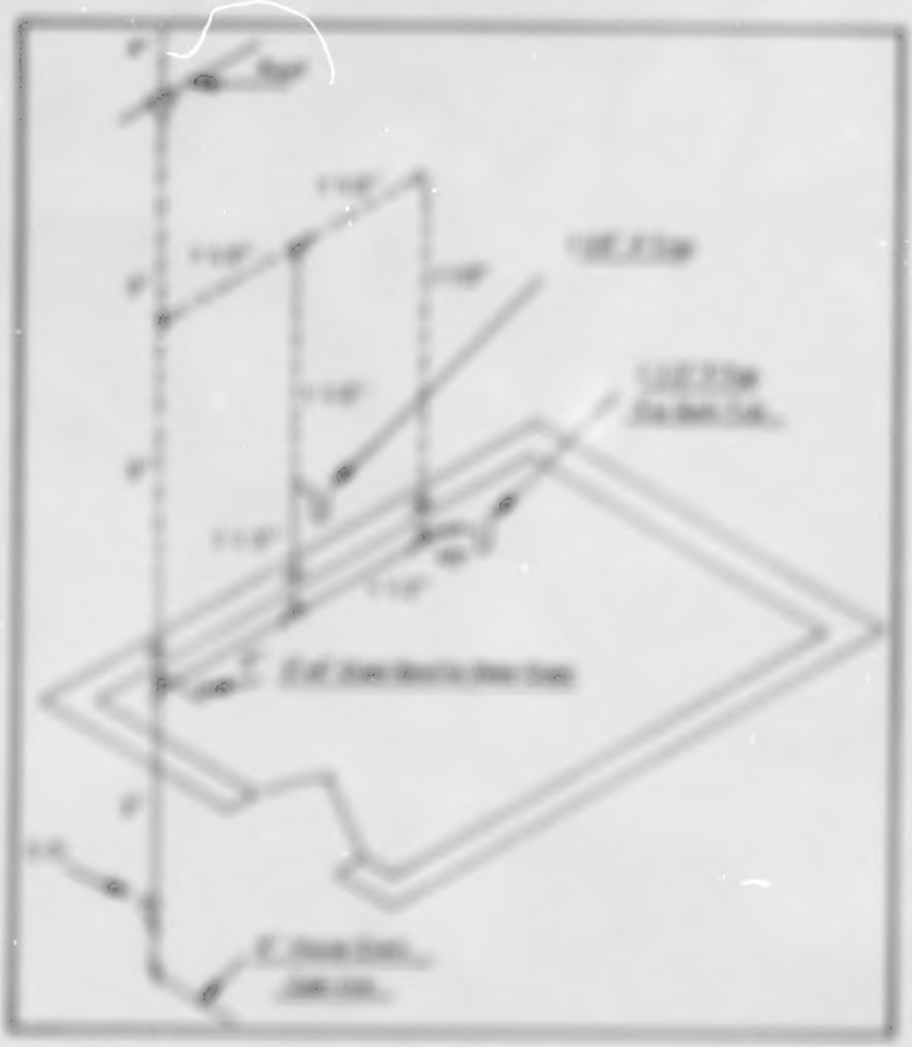
B.



C.



A.



2"
2"
2"
2"
1 1/2"
1 1/2"
1 1/2"
1 1/2"
1 1/2"
1 1/2"
1 1/2"

Assignment Sheet #3: Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

Assignment Sheet #4

A. 1,000 gallon septic tank
18" wide trench
[illegible] feet of drain lines

B. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

PLUMBING
UNIT 8

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. Plumbing design and installation requirements published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials

_____b. Plumbing design and installation requirements published by the Building Officials and Code Administrators

_____c. Receives the solid waste from water closets and discharges it to the building drain

_____d. Receives the waste from sinks, lavatories, bathtubs, washers, or other fixtures not receiving solid waste and discharges it to the soil pipe or building drain

_____e. Receives discharge from soil and waste pipes and carries it to the building sewer

_____f. Begins outside of the building and carries the waste to the sewer in the street, city easement, or septic system

_____g. Any vertical pipe, such as soil pipe, waste pipe, or vent pipe

_____h. Vertical vent pipe used primarily to provide air circulation to any part of the building drainage system to eliminate siphoning a trap

_____i. Provides a liquid seal to prevent passage of sewer gases in the building

_____j. Equipment that is attached to plumbing in a building

_____k. Measure of flow rate in a plumbing system

_____l. Used to retain solids in the sewage flowing through tank long enough for decomposition of settled solids by bacterial action

1. Flow units
2. Waste system
3. Rough-in
4. Soil pipe
5. Stack
6. Fitting
7. Uniform Plumbing Code
8. Vent stack
9. Storm sewer
10. Building drain
11. Fixture
12. BOCA Basic Plumbing Code

_____m. A system of below ground perforated pipe surrounded by coarse aggregate through which septic tank liquid waste seeps into the soil

_____n. A pipe draining water from the roof to a storm sewer

_____o. A pipe or conduit used to drain surface water

_____p. Vertical pipe that connects from water main within a building to a fixture

_____q. An elbow fitting with a plug that will permit cleaning the sewer system

_____r. A standardized part that connects pipe and flow in a pipe in a plumbing system

_____s. A threaded faucet

_____t. Polyvinyl chloride pipe that is perforated and used for drain lines in a septic system

_____u. All piping and fittings from all fixtures that conduct waste water to a public sewer or septic system

_____v. All supply pipes that conduct water from the water main to lavatories, bathtubs, hot water heaters, or water closets

_____w. Provides air space to reduce water hammer

_____x. Plumbing work performed before concrete slab is poured and before wall covering materials are placed on wall

_____y. Test as specified by BOCA code to determine the rate of drop of a water surface in a test hole

13. Cleanout
14. Leader
15. Air chamber
16. Fixture unit
17. Waste pipe
18. Septic tank
19. Plastic pipe
20. Riser
21. Percolation test
22. Sewage disposal system
23. Trap
24. Drain field
25. Building sewer

2. Complete the following list of types of heating used in plumbing systems.

   a. Fuel oil

   b. Total electric

   c. ______________________________

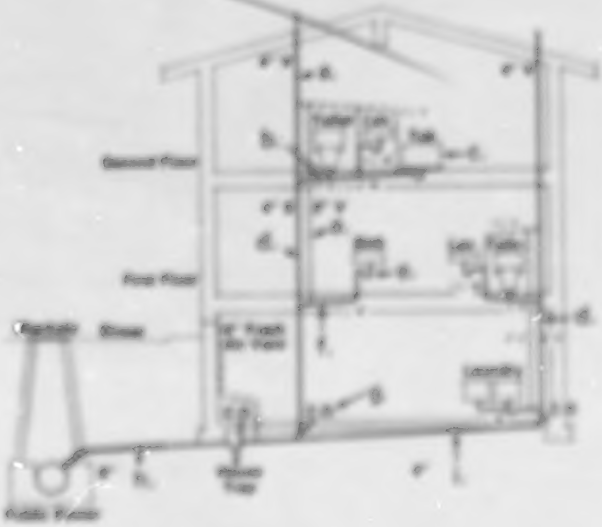
   d. ______________________________

3. Name the major parts of a plumbing system.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

4. Identify parts of a waste disposal system.


a.
b.
c.
Second Floor
Toilet
Lav
Tub
d.
e.
Sink
First Floor
Lav
Toilet
d.
f.
Laundry
g.
h.
House Trap
i.
Public Sewer

a. ____________________ b. ____________________

c. ____________________ d. ____________________

e. ____________________ f. ____________________

g. ____________________ h. ____________________

i. ____________________

5. Match the types of materials in a waste disposal system on the right with the correct uses.

_____a. Used for soil pipe, waste pipe, vents, building sewer, A/C drain, and drain field for a residential house

_____b. Used for building sewer, drain field, and public sewer lines

_____c. Used for all soil lines from within a residence or commercial building to the building drain lines

1. Copper
2. Galvanized steel
3. Plastic

_____d. Used for waste and vent pipes and fresh water	4. Cast iron
_____e. Used for vent pipes	5. Lead
_____f. Used for roof flashing, vent pipes, and industrial waste pipes	6. Vitrified clay tile

6. List the classifications of vents.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

7. Select true statements concerning waste disposal systems by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Use larger than 2 X 4 studs to conceal cast iron soil stack pipes

_____b. All copper soil and waste piping above ground should be type X

_____c. Waste pipe is usually larger in diameter than soil pipe

_____d. It is economical to locate second floor bathroom above living room

_____e. It is economical to locate kitchen and bath fixtures back to back

_____f. Each fixture should be separately trapped

_____g. Individual vents should be less than 1" in diameter

_____h. Septic system must be sized according to local or state health code

_____i. The size of drain field does not need to be sized by local or state health department

_____j. A soil or waste stack should be two times smaller than the largest building drain connected to it

_____k. Fixtures that have traps do not need to be vented

8. Name the parts of a water system.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

9. Select true statements concerning water systems by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Valves should be located in the system so various parts can be shut off without turning off complete system

_____b. All water heaters must have a pressure relief valve

_____c. The main water supply line to the building should be buried above the frost line

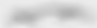
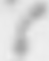
_____d. Isometric drawings of installation must always be made for all plumbing plans _____e. Drains must be provided for water softener and hot water relief lines.

_____f. All hot and cold water piping inside the building under concrete floors should be plastic.

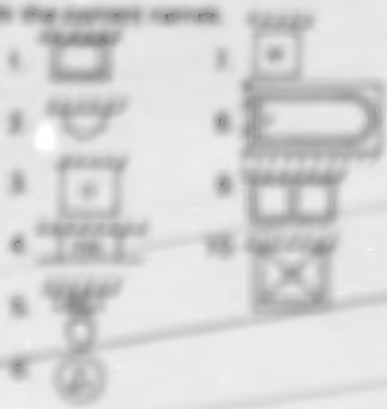
10. Complete the following chart of piping symbols and abbreviations.

	Abbreviations	Symbols
Soil, waste pipe (above grade)	________	____________
Soil, waste pipe (below grade)	SW	________
____________	V	- - - - - - - -
Cold water	CW	________
Soft water	SW	________
Hot water	HW	—— · —— · ——
Air conditioning drain	________	——— ◆ ———
Gas - low pressure	G	________
Meter	(None)	
____________	CO	
Leader	L	
Hose bibb or freeze proof	(None)	

11. Complete the following chart of pipe fitting and valve symbols.

Type of pipe fitting or valve	Screwed	Bell & Spigot	Isometric
____________			
Elbow - 45 deg		________	
Elbow - turned up			
Elbow - turned down		________	________
____________			
Gate valve			
Globe valve	________		
Tee straight size		________	________
Tee - outlet up			
Tee - outlet down			________

12. Match fixture plan symbols on the right with the correct names.



_____a. Hot water tank

_____b. Water closet

_____c. Bathtub

_____d. Shower stall

_____e. Urinal

_____f. Kitchen sink

_____g. Lavatory

_____h. Washer

_____i. Dryer

_____j. Dishwasher

13. Select true statements concerning plan drawings by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Plan view shows drawing as viewed from side

_____b. Plan view always shows slope of pipe

_____c. Plan view can be used to determine:

1) Length of pipe

2) Location and types of fittings

3) Location of floor drains

4) Location of cleanouts

5) Direction of flow

6) Labor estimates

_____d. The plan drawing can serve as a record after the floor has been poured

14. Select true statements concerning riser drawings by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Riser drawing is a plan view

_____b. Riser drawing is a true picture

_____c. Riser drawing is valuable in determining code and inspection requirements

15. Select true statements concerning isometric drawings by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Isometrics are used to show a three dimensional picture in one drawing

_____b. Isometrics combine the plan and section detail into one drawing

_____c. Pipes that are vertical on a plan or elevation, such as soil, water, and vent stacks, are shown at a 60° angle in the isometric drawing

_____d. Pipes that are horizontal on a plan or elevation view remain horizontal in the isometric drawing

_____e. Careful consideration to detail can indicate type of fitting and direction of flow

16. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Calculate the size of a building sewer line.

b. Construct plumbing drawings of a building drain system.

c. Construct plumbing drawings for a residential building.

d. Design a septic system.

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

PLUMBING
UNIT X

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 7 h. 8 o. 9 v. 2
   b. 12 i. 23 p. 20 w. 15
   c. 4 j. 11 q. 13 x. 3
   d. 17 k. 16 r. 6 y. 21
   e. 10 l. 18 s. 1
   f. 25 m. 24 t. 19
   g. 5 n. 14 u. 22

2. c. Gas
   d. Sewer

3. a. Waste disposal system
   b. Water system

4. a. Vent stack
   b. Soil pipe
   c. Fixture
   d. Stack
   e. Trap
   f. Waste pipe
   g. Cleanout
   h. Building sewer
   i. Building drain

5. a. 3
   b. 5
   c. 4
   d. 1
   e. 2
   f. 6

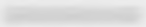
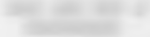
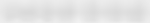
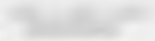
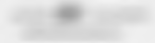
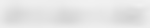
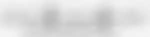
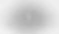
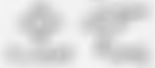
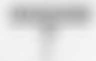
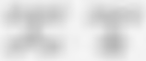
6. a. Soil and waste
   b. Individual fixture

7. a, e, f, h

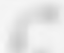
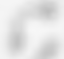
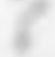
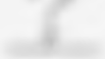
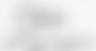
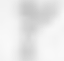
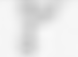
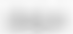
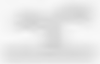
8. a. Hot water
   b. Cold water

9. a, b, e

16.

	Abbreviations	Symbols
Soil, waste pipe (above grade)	SW	
Soil, waste pipe (below grade)	SW	
Vent	V	
Cold water	CW	
Soft water	SW	
Hot water	HW	
Air conditioning drain	ACD	
Gas - low pressure	G	
Meter	(None)	
Cleanout	CO	
Leader	L	
Hose bibb or frostproof	(None)	

17.

Type of pipe fitting or valve	Screwed	Bell & Spigot	Isometric
Elbow - 45 deg			
Elbow - 90 deg			
Elbow - turned up			
Elbow - turned down			
Lateral			
Gate valve			
Globe valve			
Tee straight size			
Tee - outlet up			
Tee - outlet down			

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT [illegible]

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to sequence the steps in HVAC design and identify types of supply duct systems. The student should also be able to make HVAC calculations and draw an HVAC plan. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to HVAC with the correct definitions.
2. Sequence the steps in HVAC design.
3. Identify types of supply duct systems.
4. Match climatic zones with their significance in HVAC design.
5. Match locations of registers and grilles with the correct advantages and disadvantages.
6. Identify symbols for elements of HVAC design.
7. Select true statements concerning rules of thumb for drawing HVAC plans.
8. List rules of thumb for sizing round pipe and rectangular ducts.
9. Solve problems concerning rules of thumb for determining duct size.
10. Differentiate between types of return air duct systems.
11. Match structural designs with their typical return air systems.
12. State the basic rule for return air duct systems.
13. List factors in determining heat loss and heat gain.
14. Match equipment schedules, calculations, and notes with their functions on an HVAC plan.
15. Arrange in order the procedures for drawing an HVAC plan.

[illegible]

- [illegible]
  - [illegible]
  - [illegible]
  - [illegible]
  - [illegible]
  - [illegible]
  - [illegible]
  - [illegible]

[illegible]

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. [illegible]

VII. [illegible]

[illegible]

VIII. [illegible]

IX. [illegible]

X. [illegible]

[illegible]

XI. [illegible]

XII. [illegible]

XIII. [illegible]

XIV. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit

  A. Objective sheet

  B. Information sheet

  C. Transparency masters

    1. TM 1 [illegible]

    2. TM 2 [illegible]

    3. TM 3 [illegible]

    4. TM 4 [illegible]

  D. Assignment sheets

    1. Assignment Sheet #1 [illegible]

    2. Assignment Sheet #2 [illegible]

    3. Assignment Sheet #3 [illegible]

    4. Assignment Sheet #4 [illegible]

    5. Assignment Sheet #5 [illegible]

    6. Assignment Sheet #6 [illegible]

    7. Assignment Sheet #7 [illegible]

  E. Answers to assignment sheets

  F. Test

  G. Answers to test

II. References

  A. Manual [illegible], [illegible]. Washington, D.C. [illegible]: The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, [illegible].

  B. Manual [illegible], [illegible]. Washington, D.C. [illegible]: The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, [illegible].

  C. Manual J, Load Calculation for Residential Winter and Summer Air Conditioning. Washington, D.C. [illegible]: The Air-Conditioning Contractors of America, [illegible].

[illegible]

[illegible]

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

A. HVAC—Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning

B. Btu (British thermal unit)—The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one pound of water one degree Fahrenheit

C. Btuh (British thermal units per hour)—The unit used to express hourly heat flow

D. Heat transfer—The movement of heat from one substance or region to another

E. HTM (Heat Transfer Multiplier)—An index of heat transfer through one square foot of a structural component at specific design conditions

F. R value—The rating given to a material's ability to resist heat transfer

G. U value—One divided by the total R values of a component

H. Psychometrics—The science of measuring and changing the properties of air

(NOTE: For more detailed information on psychometrics, refer to MAVCC's *Air Conditioning and Refrigeration, Book Three*.)

I. Ventilation—Controlled air brought into a structure

J. Infiltration—Uncontrolled air that leaks into a structure

K. Humidity—Water vapor or moisture added to the atmosphere or any material

L. Heat loss—The amount of heat lost to the outdoors from all building surfaces, walls, floors, doors, and windows exposed to outdoors or adjoining spaces with different temperatures

M. Heat gain—The amount of heat gained from the outdoors from all building surfaces, walls, floors, doors, and windows exposed to outdoors or adjoining spaces with different temperatures

N. Hydronics—A system of heating or cooling by a circulating fluid as water or vapor

O. Radiant heating—Heating by radiation from electrical conductors or hot air or hot water pipes

P. Cfm—Cubic feet per minute

Q. Fpm—Feet per minute

INFORMATION SHEET

R. Heat pump—Device which extracts heat from the air

(NOTE: There is always some heat in the air regardless of temperature. In the winter heat is taken from the outside and pumped into the building; in summer the pump is reversed and the heat is pumped outside.)

S. Compressor—Machine that compresses gases

T. Conduction—The direct passage of energy, light, or heat from one object to another through contact

U. Radiation—The process of emitting radiant energy in the form of waves or particles

(NOTE: An object is warmed when the rays strike its surface.)

V. Static pressure—The measure of the resistance of ducts, grilles, filters, and other surfaces to the flow of air

(NOTE: This is the pressure within duct work, which is positive if the duct is a supply duct and negative if the duct is a return duct.)

W. Plenum—A box-like fitting into which an air handler discharges air or from which the air handler receives return air in a duct system

X. Duct—Tube or channel through which air is conveyed or moved

(NOTE: These should be insulated in unconditioned spaces according to local codes.)

Y. Boot—A duct fitting which adapts the duct to a wall stack or to a register or grille

Z. Take-off—The point of departure from a duct to which a duct fitting is attached to accomplish branching of ductwork

AA. Equivalent length—Resistance to air flow created by the structural design of a fitting, indicated by the length of straight duct which would offer the same resistance

BB. Effective length—The sum of the measured length of straight duct plus the equivalent lengths of fittings in the duct

CC. Actual measured length—The physical measurement of a duct

DD. Damper—Device used to control the volume of air flow passing through or out of a duct or register

EE. Vane—A fixed or adjustable device used to direct air flow

FF. Grille—A louvered opening usually found in a return air opening

INFORMATION SHEET

GG. Register: A grille that has a regulating damper device for controlling amount of air flow and vanes to control air direction

HH. Diffuser: A register which delivers fan shaped patterns of air into a room

II. Equal friction method: A method of duct design used to meter air flow so that air is distributed proportionately to all conditioned spaces

(NOTE: This commonly used basis for duct design means areas requiring more air, or distant areas requiring the same air volume, require larger ducts to overcome or "equalize" the increased friction.)

JJ. System pressure: The sum of the negative and positive static pressures being exerted by a blower

KK. Convection currents: Air currents set in motion by cooling or warming of air brought in contact with hot or cold surfaces such as walls or windows

LL. Stratification of air: Condition in which there is little (15 fpm) or no air movement in room; air lies in temperature layers

(NOTE: In the summer this is identified as the region near the ceiling where a layer of smoke will hang for some time; in the winter it is identified as a cold layer of air near the floor.)

MM. Temperature gradient: Temperature change from one level or stratum to the next as in the change from floor to ceiling

NN. Cascade (waterfall) effect: The transfer of large masses of air due to convection currents in a structure often caused by warm air rising and cooler air falling through building accesses such as stairs

OO. Wall stack: A thin, rectangular duct which runs vertically inside a wall

PP. Ceiling or wall effect: A peculiar ability of moving air to cling to a ceiling or a wall

QQ. Terminal velocity: An arbitrary maximum velocity of an air stream which spreads or drops into a living area, usually considered comfortable at 35-50 fpm

RR. Throw: The distance a high sidewall supply outlet delivers air before slowing to terminal velocity

SS. Drop: The distance air falls vertically below a high sidewall supply outlet before slowing to terminal velocity

TT. Spread: The fan-like width of an air stream from a diffusing type supply outlet at the point of terminal velocity

INFORMATION SHEET

UU. Primary air–A mixture of supply air from an outlet and room air at velocities above 150 fpm

VV. Entrained air–Room air which is dragged into the primary air and raised to higher velocities and temperatures inside the primary air envelope

WW. Floor warming–Floor heating by burying ducts in concrete slab floors or by running supply ducts under floors

XX. Pressure drop–The phenomenon of static pressure diminishing from maximum at the blower to zero after passing through an outlet regardless of duct length

YY. WG–Inches water gauge measured with a manometer

(NOTE: Not all terms in the preceding list are used in this unit, but many of the terms will be used in general references to HVAC activities, and you should be familiar with them.)

II. Steps in HVAC design

A. Calculate heating and cooling loads for the structure (expressed in total Btuh's) for the convenience of sizing heating and cooling equipment

(NOTE: There are several acceptable procedures for calculating heating and cooling loads, but the procedures outlined in Manual J and the "Form J-1 Worksheet" will be used in this unit. They are published by the Air-Conditioning Contractors of America.)

B. Size the heating and cooling equipment to afford the customer maximum comfort at minimum expense

(NOTE: Manual P published by the Air Conditioning Contractors of America is recommended for drafters who wish to learn more about this element of HVAC design.)

C. Design an air distribution system so that duct work and grilles can supply designed comfort levels related to seasonal demands in specific geographic locations

(NOTE: Air distribution designs are usually executed by an HVAC contractor, but drafters often have to draw these plans so that they can be incorporated along with plumbing and electrical plans into a set of working drawings.)

III. Types of supply duct systems

A. Radial or spider (Transparency 1)

B. Trunk and branch (Transparency 2)

1. Reducing plenum
2. Extended plenum

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Perimeter loop (Transparency 3)

   1. Trunk duct

   2. Radial duct

III. Climatic zones and their significance in HVAC design (Transparency 4)

   A. Zone A: Cold weather is more severe and prolonged, the summers are relatively mild, and HVAC design must pay particular attention to heating

   B. Zone A-1: Has the same characteristics as Zone A, but the summer temperatures are, on the average, higher than in Zone A, and HVAC design must provide for both heating and cooling

   C. Zone B: Has less severe winters than Zone A, but hotter days for extended periods, and HVAC design must provide a well balanced heating and cooling system

   D. Zone C: Has mild winters and hot summers, and HVAC design must pay particular attention to cooling

IV. Advantages and disadvantages for locations of registers and grilles

   A. Perimeter system

      1. Advantages

         a. Delivers conditioned air at point of greatest heat loss and heat gain, which is the outside of the structure

         b. Allows fewer air returns which are generally located in inner areas of structure

         c. Delivers the highest level of comfort of any system

      2. Disadvantages

         a. More costly than many other systems

         b. May be subject to water problems if ducts are buried under the slab

   B. High inside wall system

      1. Advantages

         a. Supply outlets are located central to main trunk duct, so shorter ducts can be used

         b. Pressure is less so smaller blower may be used

         c. Doesn't interfere with furniture placement

INFORMATION SHEET

- d. Permits longer periods of blower operation
- e. Well suited for cooling in areas where heating is of less importance
- f. Installation is less costly

2. Disadvantages

- a. Heating is more difficult because of stratification
- b. Areas of greatest heat loss and gain such as windows are difficult to condition unless special attention is paid to selection of registers

E. Low inside wall system

1. Advantages

- a. Supply outlets are located close to the blower
- b. Installation is less costly

2. Disadvantages

- a. Proper air distribution is difficult
- b. High air velocities must be avoided
- c. Furniture placement is difficult
- d. Difficult to use as a cooling system
- e. Diffuser vanes must be adjusted seasonally

F. Ceiling

1. Advantages

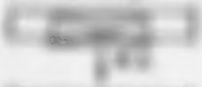
- a. Doesn't interfere with furniture placement
- b. Can be located in center of room or near outside wall
- c. Well suited for summer cooling
- d. Return air can be located on either inside or outside wall, near the floor

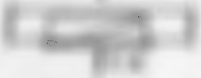
2. Disadvantages

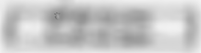
- a. Proper selection of supply registers is critical
- b. Doesn't heat floors directly
- c. Can cause room air stratification and large air temperature gradients

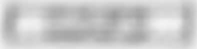
INFORMATION SHEET

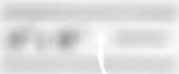
VI. Symbols for elements of HVAC design

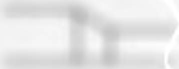
A. Warm air supply 

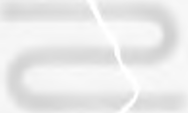
B. Cold air return 

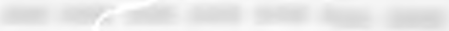
C. Second floor supply 

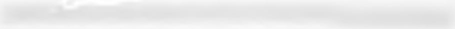
D. Second floor return 

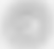
E. Duct size and air flow 

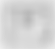
F. Change in duct size 

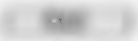
G. Hydronic radiant panel coil 

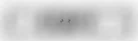
H. Hot water heating return 

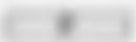
I. Hot water heating supply 

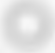
J. Thermostat 

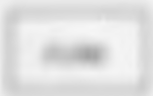
K. Humidistat 

L. Radiator 

M. Convector 

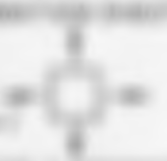
N. Register 

O. Round ceiling diffuser 

P. Furnace 

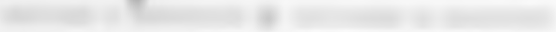
INFORMATION SHEET

C. Square ceiling diffuser



(NOTE: Arrows indicate flow.)

D. Humidification line



E. Medium pressure steam

(NOTE: For other symbols, refer to appropriate manuals.)

(11) Rules of thumb for drawing HVAC plans

A. Proper symbols must be used

B. Ducts should be drawn as close to scale as possible

(NOTE: 1/4" = 1'0" is the preferred scale.)

C. Pipes are not drawn to scale; they are indicated by a single line

D. Grills should be shown on the plan

E. There should be at least one register or baseboard unit in each large area to be heated or cooled

(NOTE: This includes halls and stairways.)

F. Large areas should be counted as two or more rooms

G. Any area with more than 10' of exterior wall should have two or more outlets

H. Each heating zone needs an individual thermostat

I. Thermostats should be on an inside partition where the temperature will be representative of the area as a whole

(NOTE: [illegible])

J. [illegible]

(NOTE: [illegible])

(12) Rules of thumb for sizing round pipe and rectangular ducts

A. Pipe should be either 6" or 8" in diameter

B. When the system is used for cooling only, or for both heating and cooling, 8" diameter pipe should be used

INFORMATION SHEET

C. All rectangular ducts are 8" deep and vary in width from 10" to 30"

D. The sectional area of a supply duct should equal the total area of all the branch supply ducts

IV. Rules of thumb for determining duct size

A. To obtain the size of the plenum duct when 6" pipes are used, multiply the number of supply runs and add 2 to that number

Example: If a duct is to serve [illegible] 6" pipes, multiply [illegible] [illegible] since many rectangular ducts are 8" deep, the size of the plenum duct should be 8" x [illegible]

(NOTE: The standardized 8" depth of rectangular ducts and the standard width [illegible] of 10" to 30" is [illegible] [illegible] for [illegible] [illegible] plenum systems which are preferred systems for many [illegible])

B. To obtain the size of the plenum duct when 8" pipes are used, multiply the number of supply runs and add 2

Example: If a duct is to serve [illegible] 8" pipes, multiply [illegible] [illegible] and the size of the plenum duct should be 8" x [illegible]

(NOTE: These rules of thumb are handy for [illegible] situations, but the [illegible] [illegible] are recommended for determining duct sizes)

V. Types of return air duct systems and their characteristics

A. Single return air duct system: A system that provides from one to three centrally located return air grilles for the entire structure

B. Multiple return air duct system: A system that provides a return air grille for each conditioned room, except that return air is not normally taken directly from [illegible] or bathrooms

VI. Structural designs and their typical return air systems

A. Slab floor structures: Frequently have simple return air duct systems

(NOTE: This is a general rule and there are, naturally, exceptions)

B. Crawl space structures: May have single or multiple return air duct systems

(NOTE: A minimum of one return air duct should be provided for the lower level when it is heated and the furnace is not installed in the lower level)

INFORMATION SHEET

C. Basement structures normally require multiple return air duct systems

(NOTE: Finished basement rooms to be occupied or used for recreation should have a return air system installed; [illegible])

VII. The basic rule for return air duct systems: must be designed for a specific air volume equal to, or greater than, the design air volume of the supply duct system

VIII. Factors in determining heat loss and heat gain

A. Size of structure and the insulating qualities of its components

(NOTE: Floor plans and specifications usually provide this information.)

B. Outside design temperature for heat loss

C. Daily temperature range for heat gain

D. Inside design temperature

E. Design temperature difference for heat loss

F. CFM heating or CFM cooling

IX. Reference calculations and data and their functions in an HVAC plan

A. Equipment schedule—[illegible] arrangement of components of the HVAC system provides a convenient means of [illegible] equipment and [illegible] information on the HVAC plan itself

Example:

SPECIFICATIONS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

Model Number	[illegible]
Heating Capacity	[illegible]
Cooling Capacity	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
Blower Motor	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

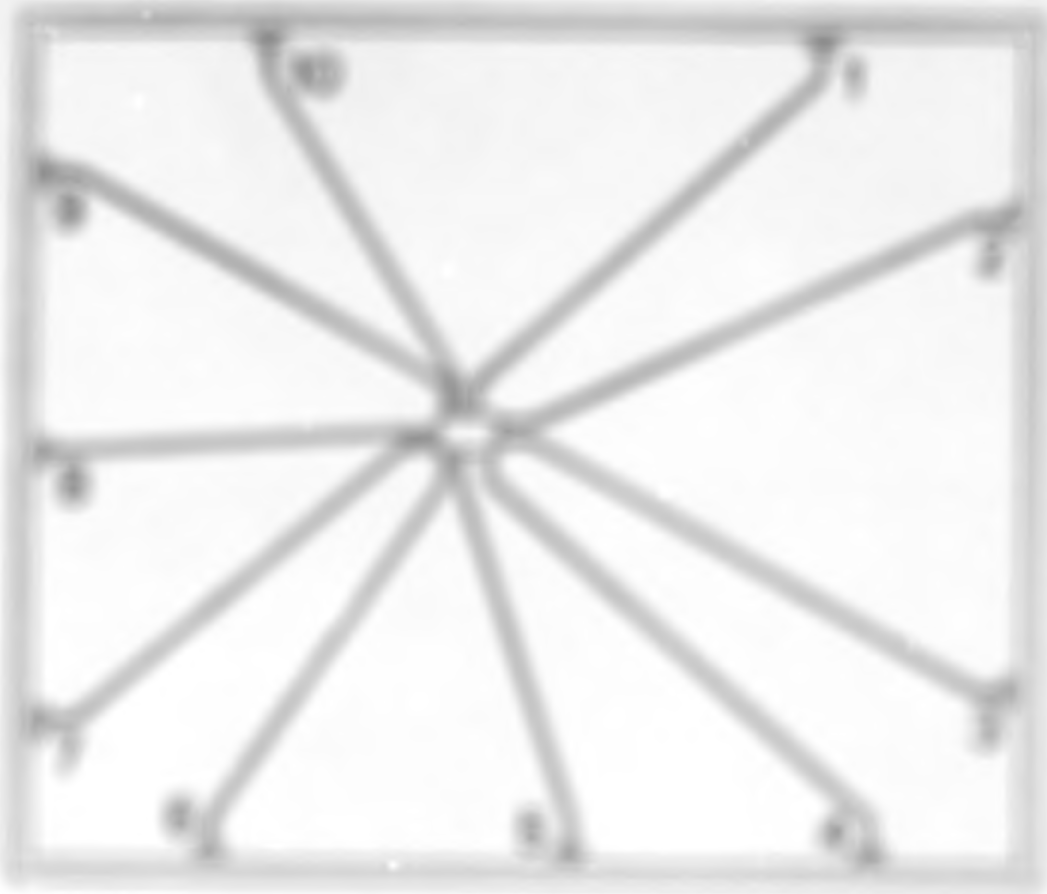
INFORMATION SHEET

[illegible]

[illegible]

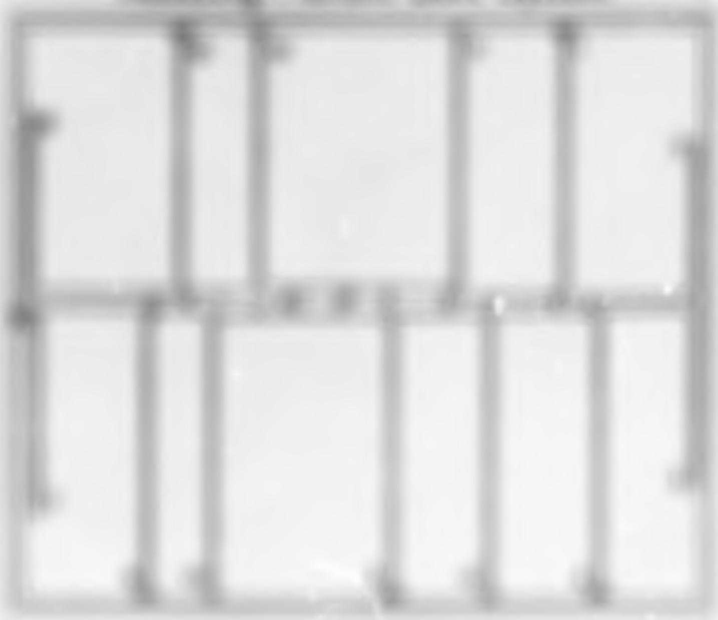
[illegible]

Radial Duct System

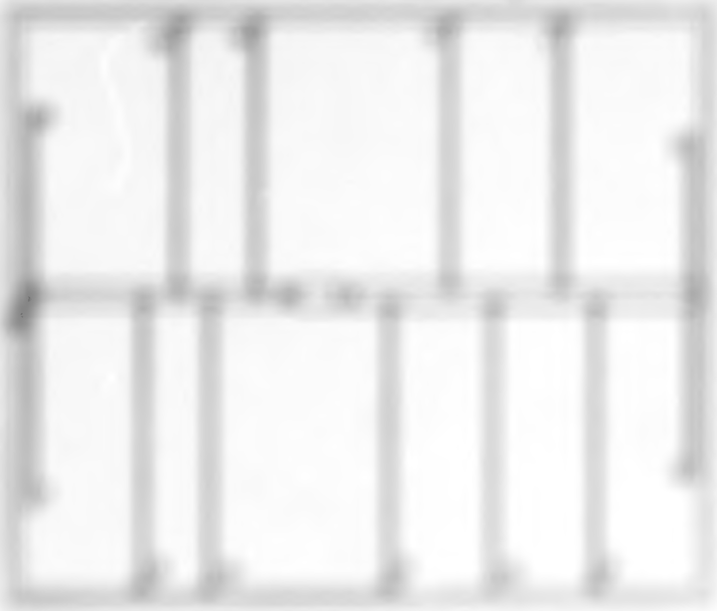

10
1
9
2
8
3
7
6
5
4

Trunk and Branch Systems

Reducing Plenum Duct System

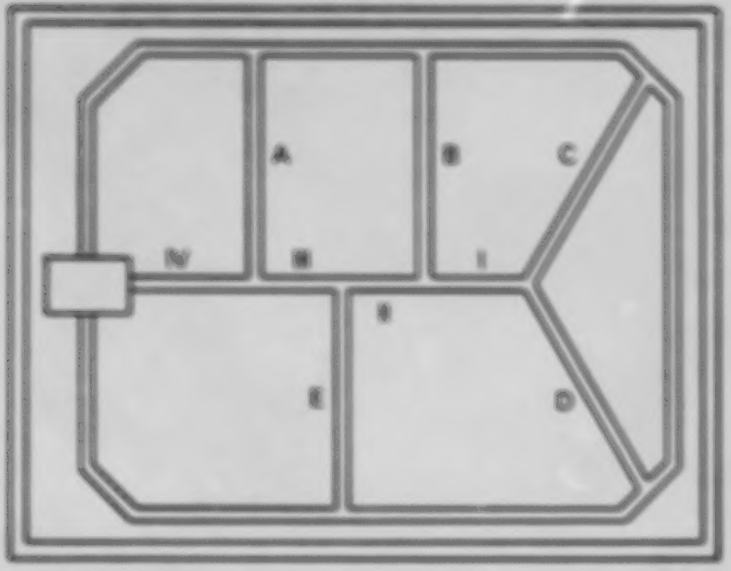


Extended Plenum Duct System

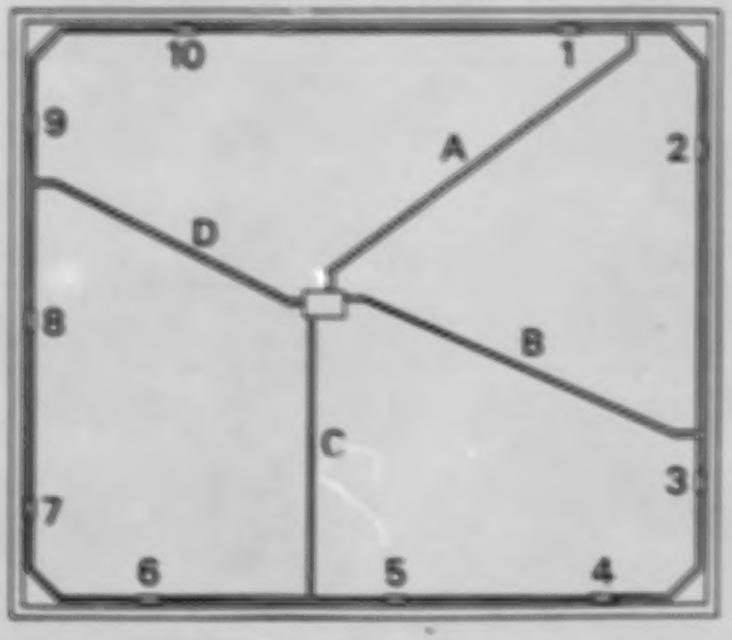


Perimeter Loop Systems

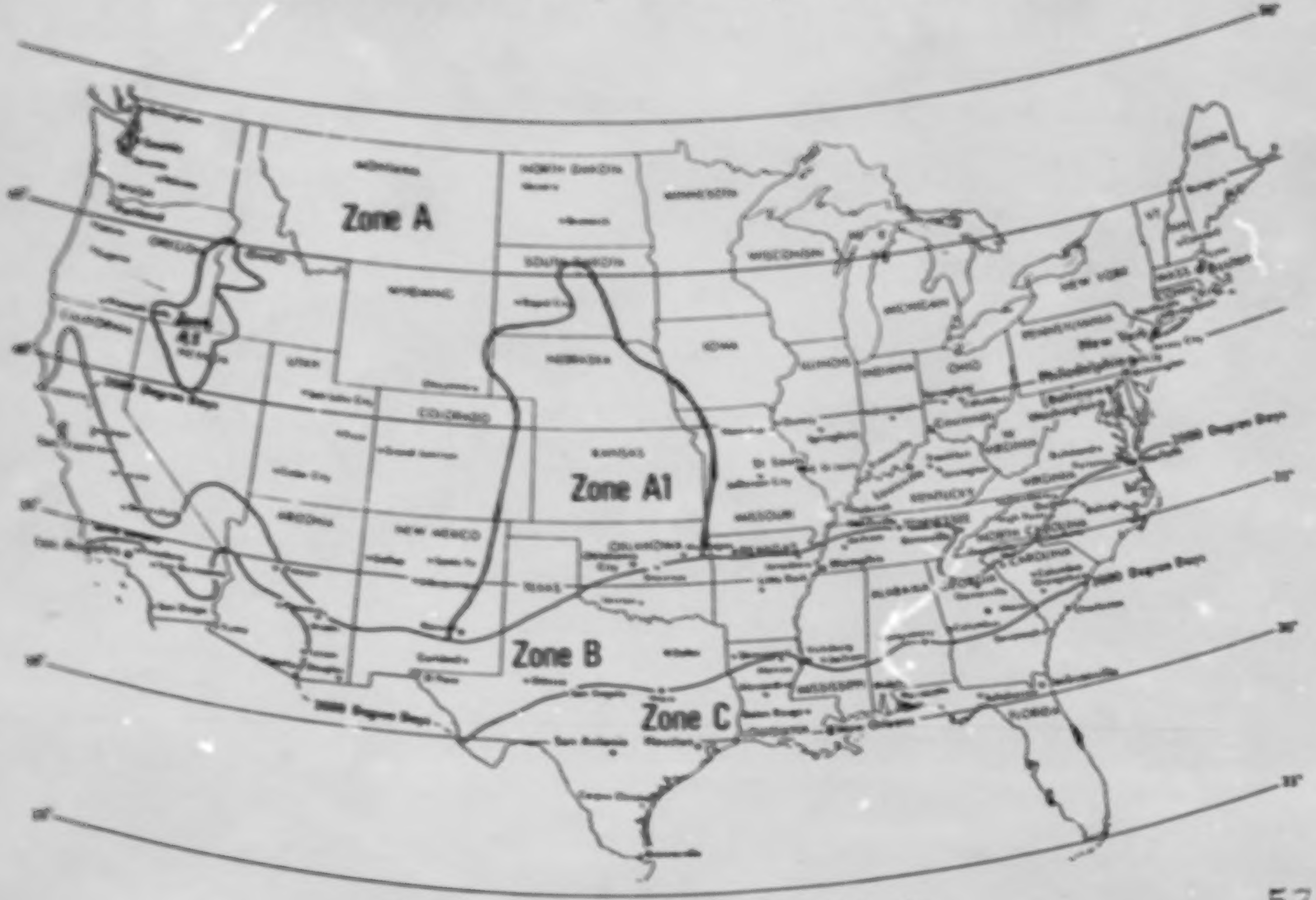
Perimeter Loop Radial Duct System


A
B
C
IV
III
I
II
E
D

Perimeter Loop Trunk Duct System


10
1
9
A
2
D
8
B
C
3
7
6
5
4

Climatic Zone Map for System Selection


Zone A
A1
Zone A1
Zone B
Zone C
NEW YORK
OHIO
New York
Philadelphia

Courtesy of Air-Conditioning Contractors of America

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1–ESTIMATE HEAT LOSS FOR A TEMPORARY RESIDENCE

Directions: A company that manufactures windmills needs to house employees who will be involved in a three-year experimental project. The company will use a prefabricated temporary residence constructed to provide an office for five employees and a crew area for six employees. The floor plan and specifications are shown in Figure 1. Using tables in *Manual J* and a "Form J-1 Worksheet," estimate the heat loss for the residence.

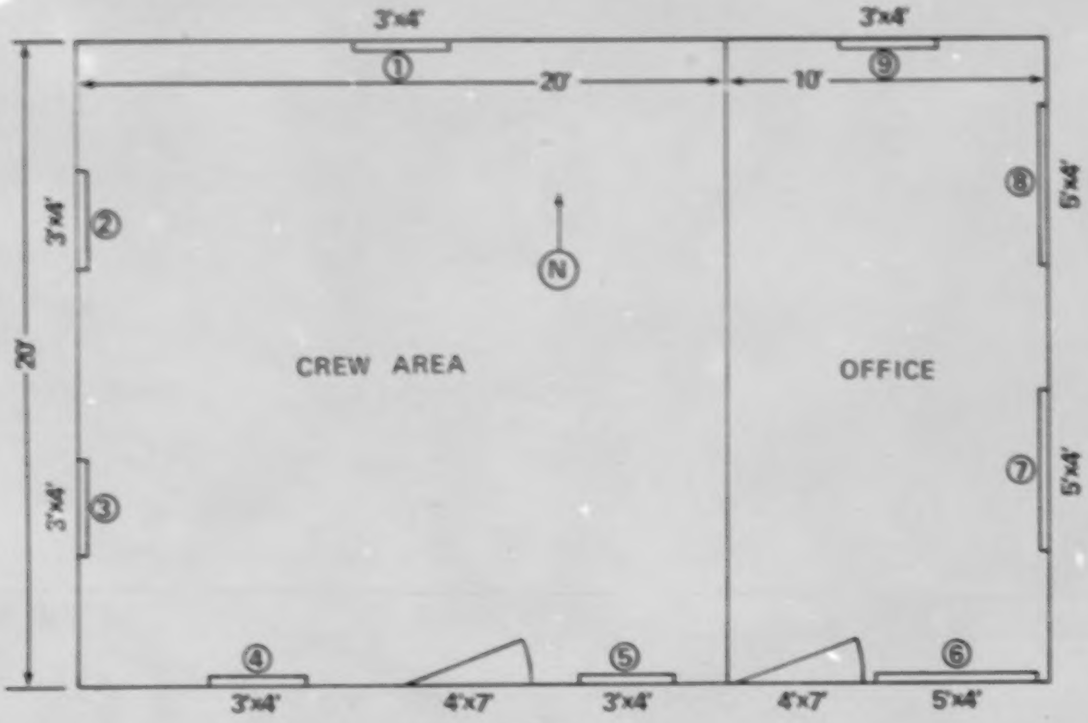


FIGURE 1

Construction specifications:

Walls–Wood frame with no insulation
Wall height–8' on the north, 10' on the south to facilitate a shed roof
Windows–Jalousie with storm sash; windows #7 and #8 have awnings that provide a 1' overhang
Doors–Wood with weatherstripping
Roof-ceiling combination–Wood with no insulation covered with asphalt roll roofing
Floors–Wood over supporting skids that form a vented area
Ducts–All will be in conditioned space
Location–Five miles west of Russell, Kansas
Inside design temperature: Winter-65, Summer-75

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

Procedure for heat loss calculation on Form J-1:

1. Complete winter design conditions on the front of Form J-1 to include outside temperature, inside temperature, and the design temperature difference for a geographical point five miles west of Russell, Kansas

2. List "Crew Area" as the name of room in column 1, and complete items 2 through 4 from construction specifications

   (NOTE: Since the construction building has a shed roof, the height of exposed walls north and south will be different and should be averaged as indicated in item 2-5 of *Manual J.*)

3. List "Office" as name of room in column 2 and complete items 2 through 4 from construction specifications

   (NOTE: Be sure to average height of exposed walls.)

4. Enter on line 5a, information column,the construction number for the type of exposed walls for both rooms

   (NOTE: For convenience, the column to the left of the "Entire House" column will be referred to as the "information" column.)

5. Enter in column 1, line 5a, the square footage of exposed walls in the crew area

6. Enter in column 2, line 5a, the square footage of exposed walls in the office

7. Enter on line 6a, information column, the construction number for the type of windows in both rooms

8. Enter on line 6a, information column, the correct HTM heating in the Htg block

9. Enter the total square footage of windows in the crew area on line 6a, column 1, in area block

10. Multiply the window HTM on line 6a by the square footage for windows in the crew area and enter in the Htg block on line 6a, column 1

11. Enter the total square footage of windows in the office on line 6a, column 2, in area block

12. Multiply the window HTM on line 6a by the square footage for windows in the office and enter in the Htg block on line 6a, column 2

13. Add the window Btuh heat loss figures for both rooms and enter the total in the Htg block on line 6a under "Entire House" column

14. Enter on line 8, information column, the construction number for the doors in both rooms

15. Enter on line 8, information column, Htg block, the correct HTM heating for the doors in both rooms

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

16. Enter on line 8, column 1, area block, the square footage of the door in the crew area
17. Multiply the door HTM Htg on line 8 by the square footage of the door in the crew area and enter on line 8, column 1, Htg block
18. Enter on line 8, column 2, area block, the square footage of the door in the office
19. Multiply the door HTM Htg on line 8 by the square footage of the door in the office and enter on line 8, column 2, Htg block
20. Add the door Btuh heat loss for both rooms and enter the total in the Htg block on line 8 under "Entire House" column
21. Enter on line 9a, information column, the construction number for the net exposed walls in both rooms
22. Enter on line 9a, information column, Htg block, the HTM Htg for the net exposed walls in both rooms
23. Subtract from line 5a, area, column 1, the total of lines 6a and 8, area, column 1, and enter on line 9a, area, column 1
24. Mutliply the net square footage of exposed walls in column 1 by the HTM Htg for net exposed walls, and enter on line 9a, Htg block, column 1
25. Subtract from line 5a, area, column 2, the total of lines 6a and 8, area, column 2, and enter on line 9a, area, column 2
26. Multiply the net square footage of exposed walls in column 2 by the HTM Htg for net exposed walls, and enter on line 9a, Htg block, column 2
27. Add the net exposed walls Btuh heat loss for both rooms and enter the total in the Htg block on line 9a, "Entire House" column
28. Enter on line 10a, information column, the construction number for the type of roofs over both rooms
29. Enter on line 10a, information column, the correct HTM Htg for the roof over both rooms
30. Enter on line 10a, area, column 1, the total square footage of the roof over the crew area
31. Multiply the roof HTM on line 10a by the total square footage of the roof over the crew area, and enter on line 10a, Htg block, column 1
32. Enter on line 10a, area, column 2, the total square footage of the roof over the office
33. Multiply the roof HTM on line 10a by the total square footage of the roof over the office, and enter on line 10a, Htg block, column 2

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

34. Add the roof Btuh heat loss for both rooms, and enter the total in the Htg block on line 10a, "Entire House" column

35. Enter on line 11a, information column, the construction number for the type of floor in both rooms

36. Enter on line 11a, information column, the correct HTM Htg for the floor in both rooms

37. Enter on line 11a, area, column 1, the total square footage of the floor in the crew area

38. Multiply the total square footage of the floor in the crew area by the HTM Htg for floors and enter on line 11a, Htg, column 1

39. Enter on line 11a, area, column 2, the total square footage of the floor in the office

40. Multiply the total square footage of the floor in the office by the HTM Htg for floors and enter on line 11a, Htg, column 2

41. Add the floor Btuh heat loss for both rooms, and enter the total in the Htg block on line 11a, "Entire House" column

42. Total all entries in the Htg blocks under "Entire House" column and enter on line 13, Htg block, "Entire House" column

43. Retain your completed heat loss estimate for use in a related assignment

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2--CALCULATE SHADED AND UNSHADED GLASS AREAS FOR USE IN HEAT GAIN ESTIMATES

Directions: Using Table A from the Form J-1 Worksheet and Table B-1 in *Manual J*, complete a table that will show the correct shaded and unshaded glass area for the temporary residence in Assignment Sheet #1

Procedure for completing Table A:

1. Enter in order the direction each window in the structure faces on line 1 of Table A

   (NOTE: To avoid confusion, number each window as it appears on the floor plan.)

   Example: 1. Direction which window faces N-1, W-2, W-3, S-4, S-5, etc.

2. Enter in order the total square footage of each window area on line 2 of Table A
3. Enter in order the width of each window on line 3 of Table A
4. Determine the shaded area per foot of overhang only for windows that are shaded by referring to Table B-1 and enter the figures beneath the windows they apply to on line 4 of Table A
5. Enter the width of the overhang for the windows that have overhang on line 5 of Table A
6. Enter the total square footage of shaded glass by multiplying the individual entries on line 4 by the appropriate individual entries on line 5, and enter on line 6 of Table A
7. Enter the total square footage of unshaded glass by subtracting the individual entries on line 6 from the appropriate individual entries on line 2, and enter on line 7 of Table A
8. Retain your completed Table A for use in a related assignment

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3--ESTIMATE HEAT GAIN FOR A TEMPORARY RESIDENCE

Directions: Using the floor plan and construction specifications outlined in Assignment Sheet #1, complete a Form J-1 Worksheet estimating heat gain for the residence.

Procedure for completing Form J-1:

1. Complete summer design conditions on the front of Form J-1 for Russell, Kansas, assuming an inside design temperature of 75°F

   (NOTE: For heat gain calculations, use the same Form J-1 Worksheet used for Assignment Sheet #1.)

2. Use the completed Table A on the back of Form J-1 Worksheet from Assignment Sheet #2
3. Enter on line 7, the HTM Clg for all windows facing north
4. Enter on line 7, the HTM Clg for all windows facing east and west
5. Enter on line 7, the HTM Clg for all windows facing south
6. Calculate the square footage for all north facing windows in the crew area and enter the figure on line 7, area, column 1
7. Calculate the square footage for all west facing windows in the crew area and enter the figure on line 7, area, column 1
8. Calculate the square footage for all south facing windows in the crew area and enter the figure on line 7, area, column 1
9. Multiply the HTM Clg on line 7 north by the square footage in column 1, area, and enter in the Clg block under column 1 opposite line 7 north
10. Multiply the HTM Clg on line 7 east and west by the square footage in column 1, area, and enter in the Clg block under column 1 opposite line 7 east and west
11. Multiply the HTM Clg on line 7 south by the square footage in column 1, area, and enter in clg block under column 1 opposite line 7 south
12. Calculate the square footage for all north facing windows in the office and enter the figure on line 7, area, column 2
13. Calculate the square footage for all east facing windows in the office with adjustments made from Table A and enter the figure on line 7, area, column 2
14. Calculate the square footage for all south facing windows in the office with adjustments made from Table A and enter the figure on line 7, area, column 2
15. Multiply the HTM Clg on line 7 north by the square footage in column 2, area, and enter in the Clg block under column 2 opposite line 7 north

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

16. Multiply the HTM Clg on line 7 east by the square footage in column 2, area, and enter in the Clg block under column 2 opposite line 7 east

17. Multiply the HTM Clg on line 7 south by the square footage in column 2, area, and enter in the Clg block under column 2 opposite line 7 south

18. Add the totals in columns 1 and 2 under the Clg block on line 7 north, and enter this total under Clg block in "Entire House" column on line 7 north

19. Add the totals in columns 1 and 2 under the Clg block on line 7 east and west, and enter this total under Clg block in "Entire House" column on line 7 east and west

20. Add the totals in columns 1 and 2 under the Clg block on line 7 south, and enter this total under Clg block in "Entire House" column on line 7 south

21. Select the proper HTM (cooling) for doors from Table 5, and enter it in the Clg block in the information column

22. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for doors by the square footage already entered in column 1, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 1

23. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for doors by the square footage already entered in column 2, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 2

24. Add the totals in the Clg blocks in columns 1 and 2 on line 8, and enter the figure on line 8 in the Clg block under "Entire House" column

25. Select the correct HTM (cooling) for net exposed walls and enter on line 9a under the Clg block in the information column

26. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for net exposed walls by the square footage already entered in column 1, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 1 on line 9a

27. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for net exposed walls by the square footage already entered in column 2, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 2 on line 9a

28. Add the totals in the Clg blocks, line 9a, in columns 1 and 2, and enter the figure in the "Entire House" column in the Clg block on line 9a

29. Select the correct HTM (cooling) for roofs and enter in the Clg block in the information column on line 10a

    (NOTE: Remember that the roof is covered with a dark material.)

30. Multiply the HTM (cooling)for roofs by the square footage already entered in column 1, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 1 on line 10a

31. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for roofs by the square footage already entered in column 2, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 2 on line 10a

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

32. Add the totals in the Clg blocks in columns 1 and 2 on line 10a, and enter the figure on line 10a in the Clg block under the "Entire House" column

33. Select the correct HTM (cooling) for floors and enter in the Clg block in the information column on line 11a

34. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for floors by the square footage already entered in column 1, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 1 on line 11a

35. Multiply the HTM (cooling) for floors by the square footage already entered in column 2, area, and put the total under the Clg block in column 2 on line 11a

36. Add the totals in the Clg blocks on line 11a in columns 1 and 2, and enter the figure on line 11a in the Clg block under "Entire House" column

37. Compute the heat gain from people for the crew area and enter on line 16 in the Clg block under column 1

38. Compute the heat gain from people for the office and enter on line 16 in the Clg block under column 2

39. Add the totals for heat gain from people and enter the figure on line 16 in the Clg block under the "Entire House" column

40. Total all entries in the Clg blocks under column 1 and enter on line 17 column 1

41. Total all entries in the Clg blocks under column 2 and enter on line 17 column 2

42. Add the totals on line 17, Clg blocks, columns 1 and 2, and enter the figure on line 17 in the "Entire House" column

    (NOTE: Since there is no duct Btuh gain, line 18 will have no entries.)

43. Transfer all subtotals to the correct places on line 19

44. Check the total on line 19 under the "Entire House" column by adding all figures in the Clg blocks under "Entire House" column

45. Multiply by 1.3 the figure in the Clg block, "Entire House" column, on line 19

46. Enter the total Btuh gain for the structure in the Clg block under the "Entire House" column on line 20

47. Retain your assignment sheet for use in a related assignment

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--EVALUATE THE ADDITION OF INSULATION IN RELATION TO HEAT LOSS AND HEAT GAIN

Directions: Using the Form J-1 Worksheet from Assignment Sheets #1, #2, and #3, enter "Entire House" in column number 3, add all square footage totals from columns 1 and 2, and place these totals in the appropriate blocks under the new "Entire House" column

Procedure for completing Form J-1:

1. Assume the residence has double-hung windows with double glass and the HTM (heating) is 65
2. Enter on line 6a Htg under the new "Entire House" column, the correct Btuh figure assuming the residence has double-hung windows with double glass and the HTM (heating) is 65
3. Enter on line 8 Htg under the new "Entire House" column, the correct Btuh figure assuming the residence has wood doors weatherstripped and with storm doors and the HTM (heating) is 85
4. Enter on line 9a Htg under the new "Entire House" column, the correct Btuh figure assuming the residence has wood walls with batt insulation 3-1/2" thick and an HTM (heating) of 4
5. Enter on line 10a Htg under the new "Entire House" column the correct Btuh figure assuming the residence has roof-ceiling combination with 6" of insulation and an HTM (heating) of 3
6. Enter on line 11a Htg under the new "Entire House" column the correct Btuh figure assuming the residence has a floor with 3" of insulation and an HTM (heating) of 5
7. Enter on line 13 Htg under the new "Entire House" column the subtotal Btuh loss
8. Divide the subtotal on line 13 under the new "Entire House" column by the subtotal on line 13 under the original "Entire House" column, convert the figure to a percentage, and enter it on line 13 next to the listing of Sub Total Btuh Loss (round the figure off to the nearest percentage)
9. Determine the actual dollar amount that could be saved in heating costs over a 3-year period if the temporary residence were insulated as outlined in this assignment sheet, that the average annual cost of heating the uninsulated structure were $1,200, and that Btuh heat loss is directly proportional to the cost of operating heating equipment
10. Enter the actual dollar amount determined in procedure 8 on line 15 next to Total Btuh Loss
11. Assume the actual dollar amount saved for operating cooling equipment would be equal to 70% of the savings realized for operating heating equipment if the building were insulated

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

12. Enter the actual dollar amount determined in procedure 10 on line 18 next to Duct Btuh Gain

13. Total the entries made in procedures 9 and 11 and enter the actual dollar amount just below line 21, Btuh for Air Quantities

14. Evaluate the addition of insulating factors in relation to the cost of operating heating and cooling as:

    a. Significant

    b. Moderate

    c. Insignificant

15. Evaluate the addition of insulating factors in a situation where the additional cost of insulation would exactly equal the amount of savings over a 36-month period by classifying them as:

    a. Insignificant because insulation materials are in short supply

    b. Significant because even if the two costs balance out, there is still an appreciable savings of vital energy

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5--ESTIMATE HEAT LOSS AND HEAT GAIN FOR YOUR DESIGN PROJECT

Directions: Using *Manual J* and "Form J-1 Worksheet," estimate the heat loss and heat gain for your design project. Refer to Assignment Sheets #1 and #3 for guidelines.

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #6--DRAW AN HVAC PLAN FOR YOUR DESIGN PROJECT

Directions: Draw an HVAC plan for the house plan that you drew in Unit VI, "Working Drawings." Be sure to include both supply-air ducts and return-air ducts and use correct symbols for all items. Your instructor should approve the type of system that you select.

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #7--PREPARE EQUIPMENT SCHEDULES

Directions: Prepare equipment schedules for the problems below. Title your schedules "Specifications for HVAC Equipment."

Problem A: Prepare an equipment schedule using the following list. Select **only** those items that should appear in an equipment schedule.

1. Manufacturer is Lennox
2. Model number is CBP 10-51
3. Heating capacity is 61,400 Btuh
4. Cooling capacity is 48,900 Btuh
5. Compressor is painted black
6. Total air volume for cooling is 1600 cfm
7. Total air volume for heating is 1600 cfm
8. System is a heat pump
9. Cooling compressor watts input is 3960
10. Heating compressor watts input is 4495
11. Line voltage data is 230v/60hz/lph
12. Energy efficiency rating (EER) is 8.2
13. Coefficient of performance (COP) is 2.9
14. Unit is easy to service

Problem B: Prepare an equipment schedule for your design project. Use *Sweet's Catalog File* or *Architectural Graphic Standards* for your equipment information. This should correspond to equipment used in Assignment Sheet #6.

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ANSWERS TO ASSIGNMENT SHEETS

Assignment Sheet #1

1. Outside temperature: 0°F
   Inside temperature: 65°F
   Design temperature difference: 65 degrees
2. Name of room: Crew Area
   Running Ft. Exposed Wall: 60
   Room Dimensions, ft: 20 x 20
   Ceiling Ht, Ft: 9 (averaged)
   Directions Room Faces: N, W, S
3. Name of room: Office
   Running Ft Exposed Wall: 40
   Room Dimensions, ft: 10 x 20
   Ceiling Ht, Ft: 9 (averaged)
   Directions Room Faces: N, E, S
4. 10 (a)
5. 540
6. 360
7. 5 (b)
8. 75
9. 60
10. 4500
11. 72
12. 5400
13. 9900
14. 9 (b)
15. 155
16. 28
17. 4340
18. 28
19. 4340
20. 8680
21. 10 (a)
22. 16
23. 452
24. 7232
25. 260
26. 4160
27. 11392
28. 16 (a)
29. 20
30. 400
31. 8000
32. 200
33. 4000
34. 12000
35. 17 (b)
36. 18
37. 400
38. 7200
39. 200
40. 3600
41. 10800
42. 52772
43. 52772
44. N/A

Assignment Sheet #2

1. N-1, W-2, W-3, S-4, S-5, S-6, E-7, E-8, N-9
2. 12, 12, 12, 12, 12, 20, 20, 20, 12
3. 3, 3, 3, 3, 3, 5, 5, 5, 3
4. 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0
5. 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 2, 2, 0
6. 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 2, 2, 0
7. 12, 12, 12, 12, 12, 20, 18, 18, 12
8. N/A

Assignment Sheet #3

1. Outside: 100°F
   Inside: 75°F
   North Latitude: 40 degrees
   Daily Range: H
2. As recorded in Assignment Sheet #2
3. 35
4. 95
5. 55
6. 12
7. 24
8. 24
9. 420
10. 2280
11. 1320
12. 12
13. 36
14. 20
15. 420
16. 3420
17. 1100
18. 840
19. 5700
20. 2420
21. 13.5
22. 756
23. 378
24. 5340
25. 7.5
26. 3390
27. 1950
28. 5340
29. 13
30. 5200
31. 2600
32. 7800
33. 5
34. 2000
35. 1000
36. 1000
37. 1800
38. 1500
39. 3300
40. 16788
41. 12368
42. 29156
43. 29156
44. 29156
45. 37903
46. 37903
47. N/A

Assignment Sheet #4

2. 8580
3. 4760
4. 2848
5. 1800
6. 3000
7. 20988
8. 40% (39.7 rounded off)
9. $1,440
10. $1,440
11. N/A
12. $1,008
13. $2,448
14. a
15. b

(NOTE: Answers should be modified as changes are made in *Manual J*.)

Assignment Sheet #5--Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

Assignment Sheet #6--Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

Assignment Sheet #7

A. Schedule should include, at a minimum, the following items:

Specifications for HVAC Equipment

Lennox heat pump	
Model Number	CBP 10-51
Heating Capacity	61,400 Btuh
Cooling Capacity	48,900 Btuh
Cooling Air Volume	1,600 cfm
Heating Air Volume	1,600 cfm
Watts Input Cooling Compressor	3,960
Watts Input Heating Compressor	4,495
Line Voltage	230v/60hz/lph
EER	8.2
COP	2.9

B. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

(NOTE: The terms on this page should be matched to the definitions on this page; the same procedure applies on the next page.)

_____a. Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning

_____b. The amount of heat required to raise the temperature of one pound of water one degree Fahrenheit

_____c. The unit used to express hourly heat flow

_____d. The movement of heat from one substance or region to another

_____e. An index of heat transfer through one square foot of a structural component at specific design conditions

_____f. The rating given to a material's ability to resist heat transfer

_____g. One divided by the total R-values of a component

_____h. The science of measuring and changing the properties of air

_____i. Controlled air brought into a structure

_____j. Uncontrolled air that leaks into a structure

_____k. Water vapor or moisture added to the atmosphere or any material

_____l. The amount of heat lost to the outdoors from all building surfaces, walls, floors, doors, and windows exposed to outdoors or adjoining spaces with different temperatures

_____m. The amount of heat gained from the outdoors from all building surfaces, walls, floors, doors, windows exposed to outdoors or adjoining spaces with different temperatures

1. Infiltration
2. HTM
3. R-value
4. Heat loss
5. Btu
6. Heat gain
7. Heat transfer
8. U-value
9. Humidity
10. Psychometrics
11. HVAC
12. Ventilation
13. Btuh

_____n. A system of heating or cooling by a circulating fluid as water or vapor

_____o. Heating by radiation from electrical conductors or hot air or hot water pipes

_____p. Cubic feet per minute

_____q. Feet per minute

_____r. Device which extracts heat from the air

_____s. Machine that compresses gases

_____t. The direct passage of energy, light, or heat from one object to another through contact

_____u. The process of emitting radiant energy in the form of waves or particles

_____v. The measure of the resistance of ducts, grilles, filters, and other surfaces to the flow of air

_____w. A box-like fitting into which an air handler discharges air or from which the air handler receives return air in a duct system

_____x. Tube or channel through which air is conveyed or moved

_____y. A duct fitting which adapts the duct to a wall stack or to a register or grille

_____z. The point of departure from a duct to which a duct fitting is attached to accomplish branching of ductwork

____aa. Resistance to air flow created by the structural design of a fitting, indicated by the length of straight duct which would offer the same resistance

____bb. The sum of the measured length of straight duct plus the equivalent lengths of fittings in the duct

____cc. The physical measurement of a duct

____dd. Device used to control the volume of air flow passing through or out of a duct or register

14. Radiant heating
15. Boot
16. Cfm
17. Take-off
18. Static pressure
19. Effective length
20. Radiation
21. Plenum
22. Damper
23. Fpm
24. Hydronics
25. Heat pump
26. Conduction
27. Actual measured length
28. Equivalent length
29. Compressor
30. Duct

____ee. A fixed or adjustable device used to direct air flow

____ff. A louvered opening usually found in a return air opening

____gg. A grille that has a regulating damper device for controlling amount of air flow and vanes to control air direction

____hh. A register which delivers fan shaped patterns of air into a room

____ii. A method of duct design used to meter air flow so that air is distributed proportionately to all conditioned spaces

____jj. The sum of the negative and positive static pressures being exerted by a blower

____kk. Air currents set in motion by cooling or warming of air brought in contact with hot or cold surfaces such as walls or windows

____ll. Condition in which there is little or no air movement in room; air lies in temperature layers

____mm. Temperature change from one level or stratum to the next as in the change from floor to ceiling

____nn. The transfer of large masses of air due to convection currents in a structure often caused by warm air rising and cooler air falling through building accesses such as stairs

____oo. A thin, rectangular duct which runs vertically inside a wall

____pp. A peculiar ability of moving air to cling to a ceiling or a wall

____qq. An arbitrary maximum velocity of an air stream which spreads or drops into a living area, usually considered comfortable at 35-50 fpm

____rr. The distance a high sidewall supply outlet delivers air before slowing to terminal velocity

31. Convection currents
32. Register
33. Wall stack
34. Temperature gradient
35. Grille
36. Ceiling or wall effect
37. Cascade (water-fall) effect
38. Vane
39. Terminal velocity
40. System pressure
41. Diffuser
42. Throw
43. Equal friction method
44. Stratification of air

____ss. The distance air falls vertically below a high sidewall supply outlet before slowing to terminal velocity

____tt. The fan-like width of an air stream from a diffusing type supply outlet at the point of terminal velocity

____uu. A mixture of supply air from an outlet and room air at velocities above 150 fpm

____vv. Room air which is dragged into the primary air and raised to higher velocities and temperatures inside the primary air envelope

____ww. Floor heating by burying ducts in concrete slab floors or by running supply ducts under floors

____xx. The phenomenon of static pressure diminishing from maximum at the blower to zero after passing through an outlet regardless of duct length

____yy. Inches water gauge measured with a monometer

45. Primary air
46. IWG
47. Drop
48. Pressure drop
49. Entrained air
50. Floor warming
51. Spread

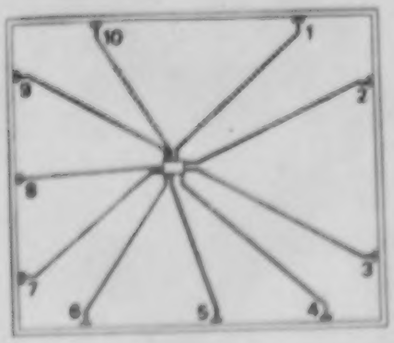
2. Sequence the steps in HVAC design by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Design an air distribution system so that duct work and grilles can supply designed comfort levels related to seasonal demands in specific geographic locations

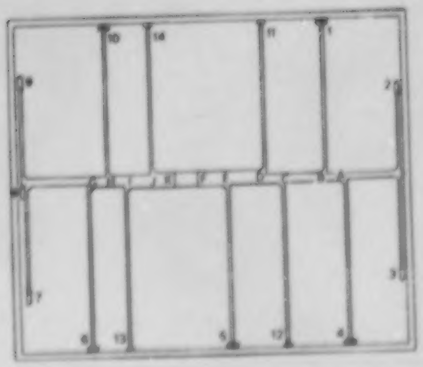
_____b. Calculate heating and cooling loads for the structure; express in total Btuh's for the convenience of sizing heating and cooling equipment

_____c. Size the heating and cooling equipment to afford the customer maximum comfort and minimum expense

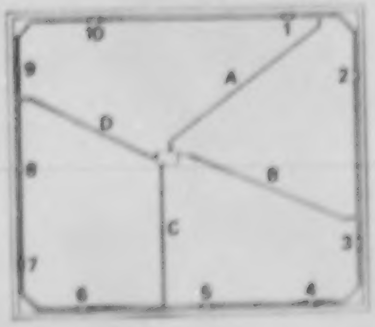
3. Identify the types of supply duct systems.


10
1
9
2
8
3
7
6
5
4

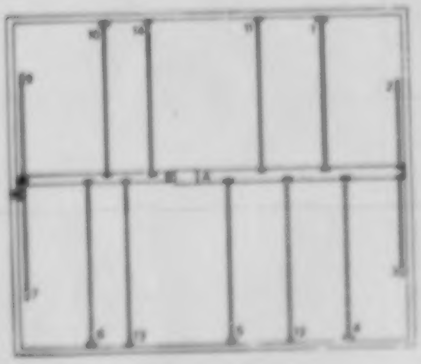
a. ______________________________


10
14
11
1
9
2
7
3
6
13
5
12
4

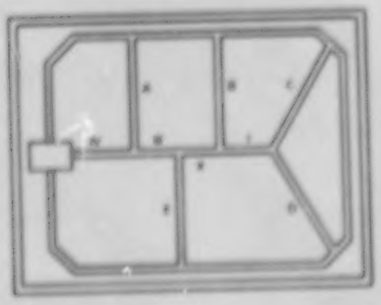
b. ______________________________


10
1
9
A
2
D
8
B
C
3
7
6
5
4

c. ______________________________



d. ______________________________



e. ______________________________

4. Match the climatic zones on the right with their significance in HVAC design.

_____a. Cold weather is more severe and prolonged, the summers are relatively mild, and HVAC design must pay particular attention to heating

_____b. Has the same characteristics as Zone A, but the summer temperatures are, on the average, higher than in Zone A, and HVAC design must provide for both heating and cooling

_____c. Has less severe winters than Zone A, but hotter days for extended periods, and HVAC design must provide a wall balanced heating and cooling system

_____d. Has mild winters and hot summers, and HVAC design must pay particular attention to cooling

1. Zone B
2. Zone A-1
3. Zone C
4. Zone A

5. Match locations of registers and grilles on the right with the correct advantages and disadvantages.

(NOTE: Locations on the right may be used more than once.)

_____a. Advantage-Installation is less costly

_____b. Disadvantage-Furniture placement is difficult

_____c. Disadvantage-Doesn't heat floors directly

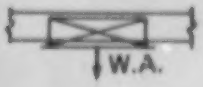
_____d. Advantage-Delivers conditioned air at point of greatest heat loss and heat gain, which is the outside of the structure

_____e. Disadvantage-Areas of greatest heat loss and gain such as windows are difficult to condition unless special attention is paid to selection of registers

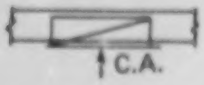
_____f. Advantage-Can be located in center of room or near outside wall

1. High inside wall
2. Ceiling
3. Perimeter system
4. Low inside wall

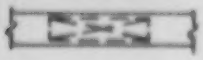
6. Identify the following symbols for elements of HVAC design.

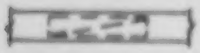
a. 

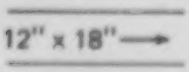
____

b. 

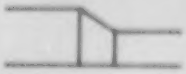
____

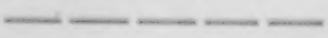
c. 
____

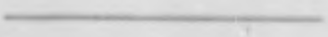
d. 
____

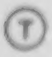
e. 

____

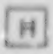
f. 
____

g. 
____

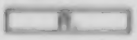
h. 
____

i. 

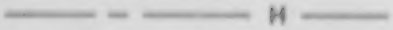
____

j. 

____

k. 

____

l. 

____

7. Select true statements concerning rules of thumb for drawing HVAC plans by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Proper symbols must be used

_____b. Ducts do not have to be drawn to scale

_____c. Pipes are not drawn to scale; they are indicated by a single line

_____d. Sizes should be shown on the plan

_____e. There should be at least 5 registers in each large area to be heated or cooled _____f. Large areas should only be counted as one room

_____g. Any area with more than 15' of exterior wall should have two or more outlets

_____h. Every room needs an individual thermostat

_____i. Thermostats should not be on an inside partition

_____j. Special considerations should be made for the proposed number of occupants and in-dwelling activities

8. List two rules of thumb for sizing round pipe and rectangular ducts.

a. ____

b. ____

9. Solve the following problems concerning rules of thumb for determining duct size.

a. If a duct is to serve five 6" pipes, what should be the size of the plenum duct?

____

b. If a duct is to serve eight 8" pipes, what should be the size of the plenum duct?

____

10. Differentiate between types of return-air duct systems by placing an "X" next to the description of a simple return-air duct system.

_____a. A system that provides a return-air grille for each conditioned room, except that the return air is not normally taken directly from kitchens or bathrooms

_____b. A system that provides from one to three centrally located return-air grilles for the entire structure

11. Match the structural designs on the right with their typical return-air systems.

_____a. Frequently have simple return-air duct systems	1. Basement structures
_____b. May have simple or multiple return-air duct systems	2. Crawl space structures
_____c. Normally require multiple return-air duct systems	3. Slab floor structures

12. State the basic rule for return-air duct systems.

____

____

13. List four factors in determining heat loss and heat gain.

    a. ____________________

    b. ____________________

    c. ____________________

    d. ____________________

14. Match equipment schedules, calculations, and notes on the right with their functions on an HVAC plan.

    _____a. Orderly arrangement of components of the HVAC system provides a convenient means of specifying equipment and eliminates excessive information on the HVAC plan itself

    _____b. Heat loss and heat gain calculations by room are important because they are the basis for equipment selection

    _____c. Should provide sub-contractors or the builder with helpful or desirable information; they should be brief and to the point

    1. Notes
    2. Calculations
    3. Equipment schedules

15. Arrange in order the procedure for drawing an HVAC plan by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

    _____a. Insert proper symbols for location of registers, coils, or baseboard units

    _____b. Use a hidden line to draw air return ducts and cold air return grilles

    _____c. Draw the supply ducts and connect them to registers, diffusers, etc.

    _____d. Indicate location of thermostats and other controls

    _____e. Trace the basic HVAC plan from the floor plan; show exterior and interior walls, windows, doors, and all features related to the system

    _____f. Locate heating and cooling equipment on the floor plan and indicate complementary systems for humidification, dehumidification, or air cleaning

    _____g. Indicate the size of ducts or pipes and all attachments

    _____h. Include required schedules

    _____i. Complete title block, dimensions, and notes as necessary

16. Demonstrate the ability to:
    - a. Estimate heat loss for a temporary residence.
    - b. Calculate shaded and unshaded glass areas for use in heat gain estimates.
    - c. Estimate heat gain for a temporary residence.
    - d. Evaluate the addition of insulation in relation to heat loss and heat gain.
    - e. Estimate heat loss and heat gain for your design project.
    - f. Draw an HVAC plan for your design project.
    - g. Prepare equipment schedules.

    (NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

FORCED AIR HVAC SYSTEMS
UNIT XI

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 11
   b. 5
   c. 13
   d. 7
   e. 2
   f. 3
   g. 8
   h. 10
   i. 12
   j. 1
   k. 9
   l. 4
   m. 6
   n. 24
   o. 14
   p. 16
   q. 23
   r. 25
   s. 29
   t. 26
   u. 20
   v. 18
   w. 21
   x. 30
   y. 15
   z. 17
   aa. 28
   bb. 19
   cc. 27
   dd. 22
   ee. 38
   ff. 35
   gg. 32
   hh. 41
   ii. 43
   jj. 40
   kk. 31
   ll. 44
   mm. 34
   nn. 37
   oo. 33
   pp. 36
   qq. 39
   rr. 42
   ss. 47
   tt. 51
   uu. 45
   vv. 49
   ww. 50
   xx. 48
   yy. 46

2. a. 3
   b. 1
   c. 2

3. a. Radial or spider
   b. Trunk and branch reducing plenum
   c. Perimeter loop trunk duct
   d. Trunk and branch extended plenum
   e. Perimeter loop radial duct

4. a. 4
   b. 2
   c. 1
   d. 3

5. a. 1 or 4
   b. 4
   c. 2
   d. 3
   e. 1
   f. 2

6. a. Warm air supply
   b. Cold air return
   c. Second floor supply
   d. Second floor return
   e. Duct size and air flow
   f. Change in duct size
   g. Hot water heating return
   h. Hot water heating supply
   i. Thermostat
   j. Humidistat
   k. Register
   l. Humidification line

7. a, c, d, g, j

8. Any two of the following:
   a. Pipe should be either 6" or 8" in diameter
   b. When the system is used for cooling only or for both heating and cooling, 8" diameter pipe should be used
   c. All rectangular ducts are 8" deep and vary in width from 10" to 28"
   d. The sectional area of a supply duct should equal the total area of all the round register pipes

9. a. 8" x 12"
   b. 8" x 26"

10. b

11. a. 3
    b. 2
    c. 1

12. Must be designed for a specific air volume equal to, or greater than, the design air volume of the supply duct system

13. Any four of the following:
    a. Size of structure and the insulating qualities of its components
    b. Outside design temperature for heat loss
    c. Daily temperature range for heat gain
    d. Inside design temperature
    e. Design temperature difference for heat loss
    f. HTM heating or HTM cooling

14. a. 3
    b. 2
    c. 1

15. a. 3
    b. 4
    c. 5
    d. 6
    e. 1
    f. 2
    g. 7
    h. 8
    i. 9

16. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to name parts of an electrical service entrance installation and match wiring devices and cables with their applications. The student should also be able to answer questions using the National Electric Code and locate electrical symbols on a floor plan. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to electrical with the correct definitions.
2. Distinguish between types of lighting dispersement.
3. Name parts of electrical service entrance installation.
4. Distinguish between types of residential branch circuits.
5. Match wiring devices with common residential applications.
6. Match types of cables with common applications.
7. State conductor letter designations for installation conditions.
8. Select true statements concerning designing an electrical system for a residence.
9. Match electrical floor plan symbols with the correct names.
10. Name overcurrent circuit safety devices.
11. Demonstrate the ability to:
    a. Answer questions related to residential wiring practices using the NEC.
    b. Interpret conduit fill tables using the NEC.
    c. Locate allowable ampacities for various conductors using the NEC.
    d. Calculate service size and minimum number of circuits.
    e. Locate receptacle, switch, and lighting outlets.

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. Provide examples of residential and commercial electrical floor plans.

VII. Provide electrical supply catalogs and the current *National Electric Code* for use in the assignment sheets. The NEC may be obtained in soft or hardbound copies from the following: National Fire Protection Association, Battery March, Quincy, Mass. 02269.

(NOTE: The Code is revised every three years.)

VIII. Demonstrate the use of floor plan templates or electrical utility company's advertising type templates for drawing electrical symbols.

IX. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

- A. Objective sheet
- B. Information sheet
- C. Transparency masters
  1. TM 1--Three Formulas from Ohm's Law
  2. TM 2--Service Entrance Installation
  3. TM 3--Typical Service Panel Arrangement
  4. TM 4--Typical Distribution Panel Schematic
  5. TM 5--Wiring Devices
  6. TM 6--Wiring Devices (Continued)

7. TM 7--Wiring Devices (Continued)

8. TM 8--Wiring Devices (Continued)

9. TM 9--Wiring Devices (Continued)

10. TM 10--Low Voltage System

11. TM 11--Electrical Floor Plan

D. Assignment sheets

1. Assignment Sheet #1--Answer Questions Related to Residential Wiring Practices Using the NEC

2. Assignment Sheet #2--Interpret Conduit Fill Tables Using the NEC

3. Assignment Sheet #3--Locate Allowable Ampacities for Various Conductors Using the NEC

4. Assignment Sheet #4--Calculate Service Size and Minimum Number of Circuits

5. Assignment Sheet #5--Locate Receptacle, Switch, and Lighting Outlets

E. Test

F. Answers to test

II. References:

A. *National Electrical Code*, Boston: National Fire Protection Association, 1975.

B. Gebert, Kenenth L. *National Electrical Code Blueprint Reading.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1977.

C. *HUD Minimum Property Standards.* Washington, D. C.: U. S. Department of Housing and Urban Development, 1973.

D. Spence, William P. *Architecture Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

E. Stegman, George K. and Harry J. Stegman. *Architectural Drafting.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1974.

F. Willis, Charles D. *Blueprint Reading for Commercial Construction.* Albany, NY: 12205: Delmar Publishers/Litton Educational Publishing, Inc., 1979.

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Terms and definitions

A. National Electric Code (NEC)--A basic minimum standard covering the installation of electrical equipment to safeguard persons and property

(NOTE: Hereafter in this unit, this will be referred to as the NEC or the Code.)

B. Watt (W)--Unit of measure of electrical power

C. Kilowatt--One thousand watts

D. Volt (E)--Unit of measure of electrical pressure

E. Ampere (I)--Unit of measure of the intensity of the flow or current of electricity

F. Ohm (R)--Unit of measure of the resistance to the flow of electricity

G. Ohm's Law--A law which can be used for calculating wattage, voltage, and amperage for circuits (Transparency 1)

H. Ampacity--Current-carrying capacity of electric conductors expressed in amperes

I. Insulator--Material which does not permit the free flow of electrons

J. Conductor--Material which permits the free flow of electrons

K. Bare conductor--A conductor having no covering or electrical insulation

L. Covered conductor--A conductor encased with a material not recognized by the NEC as insulation

M. Insulated conductor--A conductor encased with a material recognized by the NEC as insulation

N. Grounded conductor--A circuit conductor that is intentionally connected to the earth or some conductor that serves in place of the earth

O. Grounding conductor--Connects equipment or wiring circuit grounded conductor to a grounding electrode

P. Circuit--A complete path for current to flow from the source through the load and back to the source

Q. Branch circuit--The circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s)

R. Circuit breaker--A switching device that automatically opens a circuit when the circuit has been overloaded

INFORMATION SHEET

S. Ground wire--A wire connecting the circuit or equipment to the earth or water pipes to minimize injuries from shock

T. Ground-fault circuit interrupter--A device that is sensitive to very low levels of current leakage to ground

(NOTE: This is commonly installed in the bath or kitchen, or outside near the swimming pool.)

U. Fuse--Overcurrent protective device with a circuit opening fusible part that is heated and severed by the passage of overcurrent through it

V. Receptacle--Contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of a single attachment plug

W. Outlet--A point on the wiring system at which current is taken to supply utilization equipment

X. Receptacle outlet--An outlet where one or more receptacles are installed

Y. Distribution panel--The electrical enclosure that contains the overcurrent protection for circuits and connects to the service conductor

(NOTE: This is sometimes called a load center.)

Z. Service entrance--The conductors from utility pole and service head which bring the current to the building through the meter to the distribution panel (Transparency 2)

AA. Service drop--The overhead service conductors from the last pole or other aerial support to and including the splices, if any, connecting to the service entrance conductors at the building or other structure

BB. Low voltage (residential remote control and signal circuits)--Wiring of less than 50 volts originating at a transformer

CC. Raceway--A metal-enclosed box that is placed on the floor prior to placement of concrete floor to allow for various outlets

DD. Busway--A preassembled metal box system used to distribute high-current loads

EE. Conduit--A channel or pipe, made of metal or plastic, in which conductors are run

FF. Electrical metal tubing (EMT)--Thin wall metal raceway of circular cross sections with integral or associated couplings, connectors, and fittings approved for the installation of electrical conductors

(NOTE: This is sometimes caled thin wall conduit.)

INFORMATION SHEET

GG. Flexible metal conduit–Spiral metal raceway designed for flexible installation with a circular cross section and integral or associated couplings, connectors, and fittings approved for the installation of electrical conductors

HH. Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit–Flexible metal conduit with an outer liquid-tight, nonmetallic, sunlight-resistant jacket

II. Rigid conduit–Similar to electrical metal tubing except that the pipe is heavier and is threaded

JJ. Nonmetallic sheathed cable–Two or more wires enclosed in a flexible plastic case

(NOTE: This is sometimes called Romex.)

KK. Interlocked armor cable (BX)–A flexible armor-shielded cable that has two or more conductors within the casing

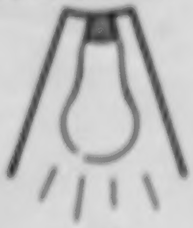
LL. Knob and tube wiring–Wiring method using knobs, tubes, and flexible nonmetallic tubing for protection and support of single insulated conductors in walls and ceilings of buildings

MM. American wire gauge (AWG)–A standard size classification for copper and aluminum wires up to 0000

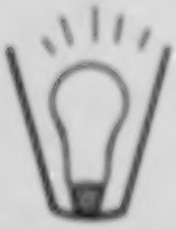
NN. Thousand circular mils (MCM)–The standard size classification for conductors larger than 0000

II. Types of lighting dispersement

A. Direct–

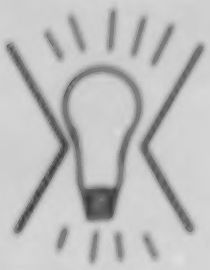


B. Indirect–

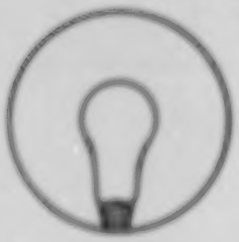


INFORMATION SHEET

C. Combination--



D. Diffused--



III. Parts of electrical service entrance installation (Transparencies 2, 3, and 4)

A. Electrical service line

(NOTE: This is the service drop.)

B. Meter socket trough

(NOTE: Meter is usually supplied by the utility company.)

C. Main disconnect switch (circuit breaker or fused)

D. Distribution panel

E. Weatherhead assembly

(NOTE: This is only for above ground service.)

IV. Types of residential branch circuits

A. General purpose circuit-15 or 20 amp circuit used for lighting and small appliances

B. Appliance circuit-20 amp circuit used for one or more outlets to which appliances are to be connected

C. Special purpose individual circuit-115/120 volt or 208/240 volt circuit used for one single outlet

Examples: Dryer, range-oven

INFORMATION SHEET

V. Wiring devices and common residential applications (Transparencies 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10)

A. Cable

1. Nonmetallic sheathed cable

(NOTE: This is commonly called Romex.)

a. General residential rough-in

b. Circuit extensions in existing building

(NOTE: Nearly all the premises wiring in most new residential homes is done with NM cable.)

2. Underground feeder and branch circuit cable (UF)--Direct burial for yard lights or extensions

(NOTE: Check local code for depth.)

B. Concealed knob and tube wiring

1. Extensions of existing installations

2. Elsewhere by special permission

C. Rigid metal conduit

1. Through eave service masts to weatherhead

2. Underground circuit extension

3. In concrete walls, floors, or ceilings

4. Underground service riser

D. Electrical metallic tubing

1. Service raceway

(NOTE: EMT is not suitable for installations going through an eave.)

2. Protecting grounding conductor

E. Flexible metal conduit

(NOTE: This is commonly called Greenfield.)

1. Connecting recessed lighting fixtures

2. Enclosing motor leads

INFORMATION SHEET

F. Liquid tight flexible metal conduit

   1. Connecting air conditioning condensers to disconnects

   2. Enclosing motor leads needing protection from liquids and vapors

G. Raceways

   1. Interior circuit extensions where concealed work is not necessary or is not possible

   2. On interior concrete surfaces

H. Low voltage (Less than 50V)

   1. Chime circuits

   2. Intercom wiring

   3. Thermostat circuits

   4. Lighting remote control

   5. Smoke detectors

   6. Burglar alarms

I. Rigid nonmetallic conduit or PVC (polyvinyl chloride)

   1. In locations subject to severe corrosive conditions

   2. In portions of dairies, laundries, canneries, or other wet locations

VI. Types of cables and common applications

A. Nonmetallic sheathed cable (NM)

   1. Residential rough-in wiring in new construction

   2. Extensions of existing residential wiring and new remodel

   3. Feeders for sub-panels

B. Service entrance cable (SE)

   1. Service entrance conductors if used with rain tight head

   2. Branch circuit for ranges, cook tops, or clothes dryers

C. Low voltage cable

   1. Thermostat control circuits

INFORMATION SHEET

2. Bell or chime control circuits
3. Low voltage lighting control circuits

D. Underground cable (UF)

1. Underground circuits to remote lighting such as yard lights
2. Branch circuits to out buildings such as garages

E. Underground service entrance cable (USE)--Underground service supply

VII. Conductor letter designations for installation conditions

A. T (Thermoplastic)--Dry locations

B. TW (Thermoplastic moisture resistant)--Dry and wet locations

C. THW (Thermoplastic moisture and heat resistant)--Dry and wet locations where more heat resistant qualities are needed

D. MTW (Moisture, heat, and oil-resistant thermoplastic)--Dry and wet locations where oil may be present or where more heat resistant qualities are needed

(NOTE: Refer to Code Table 310-13 for more applications.)

VIII. Designing an electrical system for a residence (Transparency 11)

A. A single pole switch controls a light or outlet from one location

B. A three-way switch is used to control a light from two locations

C. A four-way switch is used to control a light from three or more locations

D. Wall switches should be located on the door knob side of doors and on traffic side of arches

E. Switch locations should be placed so that a person can enter the house from any door and progress to any other part without being in the dark

F. Receptacle shall be placed so that no point on any usable wall space along the floor line is more than 6' from an outlet

G. Split-receptable outlets should be used in living and dining areas in order not to limit the use of radios, clocks, or appliances

H. Master selector control for low voltage line control system should be in master bedroom

INFORMATION SHEET

I. The dashed lines on electrical plans indicate which fixtures or outlets are controlled by switches; these lines do not indicate the actual wiring

(NOTE: The center line symbol can also be used. It is best to use an irregular curve when drawing these lines.)

J. Circuit wires, conduit, or cable runs are normally not indicated on residential electrical plans, but are used on commercial structures

K. Receptacle shall be placed on each side and within 3 to 4' from the center line of probable bed locations

L. One heavy duty, special purpose receptacle should be in each room if room air conditioners are recommended

M. A vapor proof luminaire should be installed in an enclosed shower stall

N. No cables other than low voltage shall have conductors smaller than #14 copper or #12 aluminum when used in residential wiring

O. Provide ceiling outlet in line with front edge of bath lavatory

P. Provide one receptacle near mirror in bath a minimum of 2' from water

Q. Provide one receptacle for each 4 linear feet of work surface frontage in kitchen

R. Place each receptacle on separate circuits in kitchen

S. Lighting fixtures below wall cabinets may have local switch control

T. Special purpose receptacles must be provided for dining, utility, and kitchen areas

U. Provide one lighting outlet for each closet where conditions make lighting necessary

V. Provide one receptacle for each 15 linear feet of hallway

W. Wall or ceiling outlets shall be installed to provide illumination of each stair flight

X. Provide lighting with wall switch for attic space

Y. Provide one receptacle in garage ceiling for door opener

IX. Electrical floor plan symbols (Transparency 11)

A. Single pole switch-- S

B. Three way switch-- S_3

C. Four way switch-- S_4

INFORMATION SHEET

D. Automatic door jamb switch-- S_J

E. Dimmer switch-- S_D

F. Switch with pilot light-- Sp

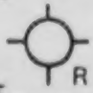
G. Weatherproof switch-- Swp

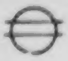
H. Double pole switch-- S_2

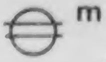
I. Switch for low voltage system-- $\underline{S}$

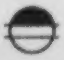
J. Low voltage wire-- ——— — — ——— — — ———

K. Low voltage master switch-- Ms

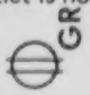
L. Relay equipped lighting outlet-- 

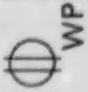
M. Duplex receptacle outlet-- 

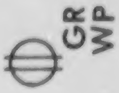
N. Receptacle outlet other than duplex-- 

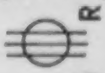
O. Split wired receptacle outlet-- 

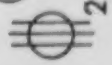
(NOTE: Black indicates top receptacle outlet is hot at all times.)

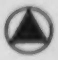
P. Grounding type duplex receptacle outlet-- 

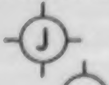
Q. Weatherproof duplex outlet-- 

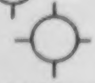
R. Weatherproof grounding type duplex receptacle outlet-- 

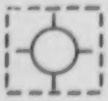
S. Range outlet-- 

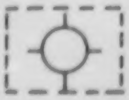
T. 220 volt outlet-- 

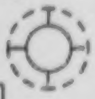
U. Special--Must be explained in the key to the symbols-- 

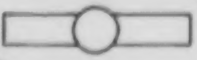
V. Junction box-- 

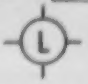
W. Lighting outlet-- 

X. Square recessed light (size varies)-- 

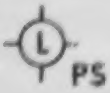
Y. Rectangular recessed light (size varies)-- 

Z. Round recessed light (size varies)-- 

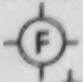
AA. Fluorescent light-- 

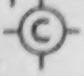
BB. Lampholder-- 

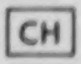
INFORMATION SHEET

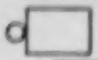
CC. Lampholder with pull switch-- 

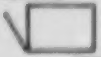
(NOTE: Check local code.)

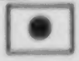
DD. Fan outlet-- 

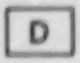
EE. Clock outlet-- 

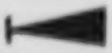
FF. Chime-- 

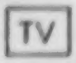
GG. Bell-- 

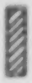
HH. Buzzer-- 

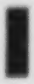
II. Push button-- 

JJ. Electric door opener-- 

KK. Telephone-- 

LL. T.V. antenna outlet-- 

MM. Master power service panel-- 

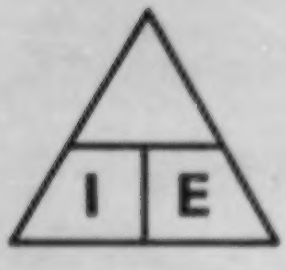
NN. Lighting distribution panel-- 

X. Overcurrent circuit safety devices

- A. Fuse
- B. Circuit breaker
- C. Ground-fault circuit interrupter

Three Formulas from Ohm's Law

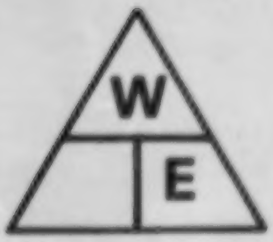
W =



or W = I x E

or Watts = Amps x Volts

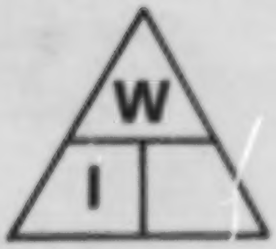
I =



or I = W/E

or Amps = Watts ÷ Volts

E =

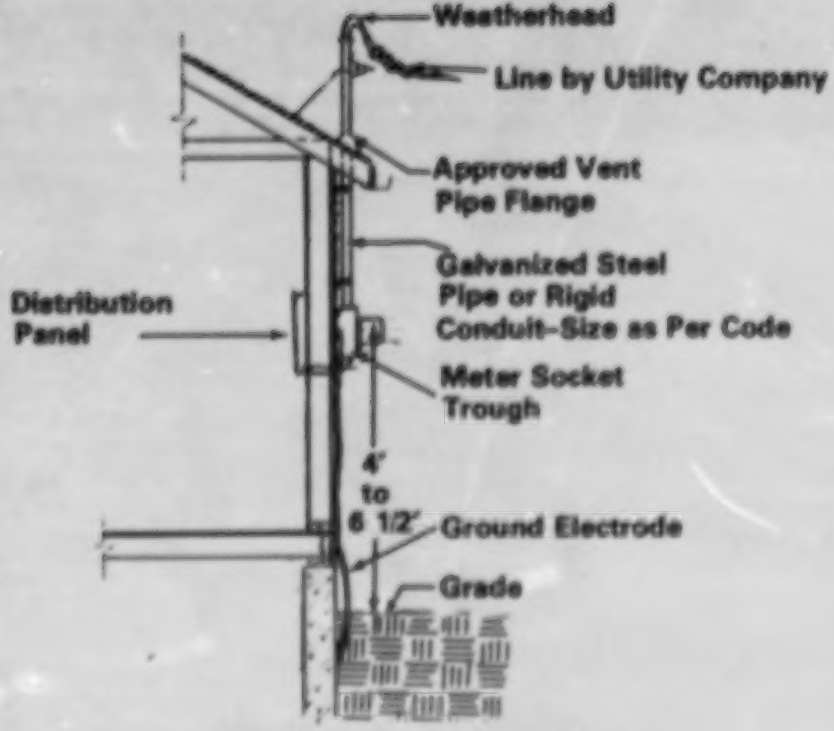


or E = W/I

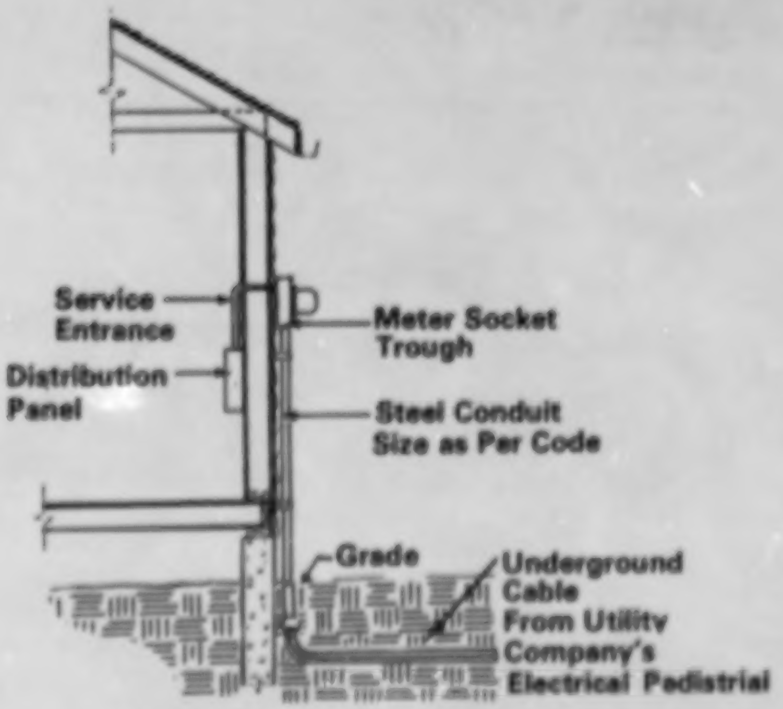
or Volts = Watts ÷ Amps

Service Entrance Installation

According to NEC

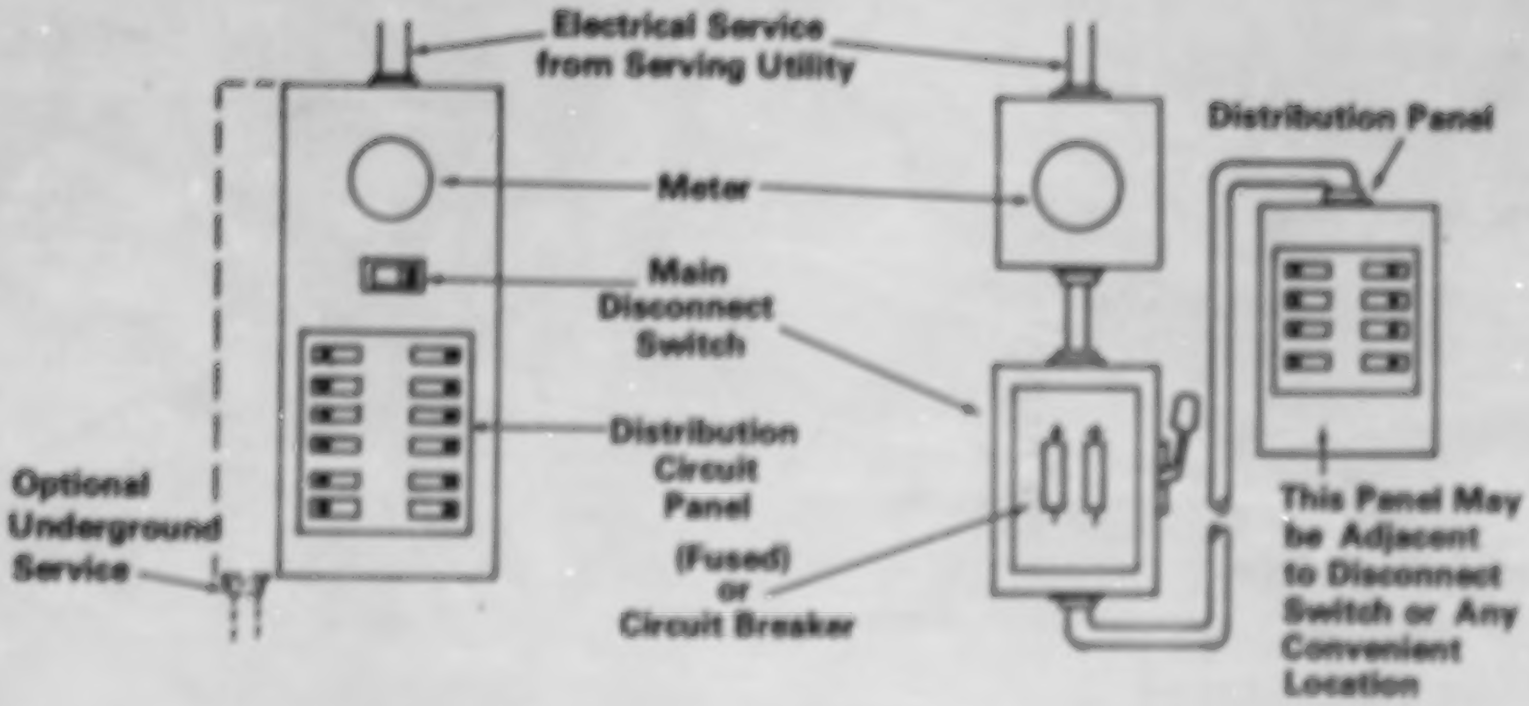

Weatherhead
Line by Utility Company
Approved Vent Pipe Flange
Galvanized Steel Pipe or Rigid Conduit-Size as Per Code
Distribution Panel
Meter Socket Trough
4' to 6 1/2'
Ground Electrode
Grade

Above Ground Service


Service Entrance
Distribution Panel
Meter Socket Trough
Steel Conduit Size as Per Code
Grade
Underground Cable From Utility Company's Electrical Padistrial

Underground Service

Typical Service Panel Arrangement


Electrical Service from Serving Utility
Meter
Main Disconnect Switch
Distribution Circuit Panel
Optional Underground Service
(Fused) or Circuit Breaker
Distribution Panel
This Panel May be Adjacent to Disconnect Switch or Any Convenient Location

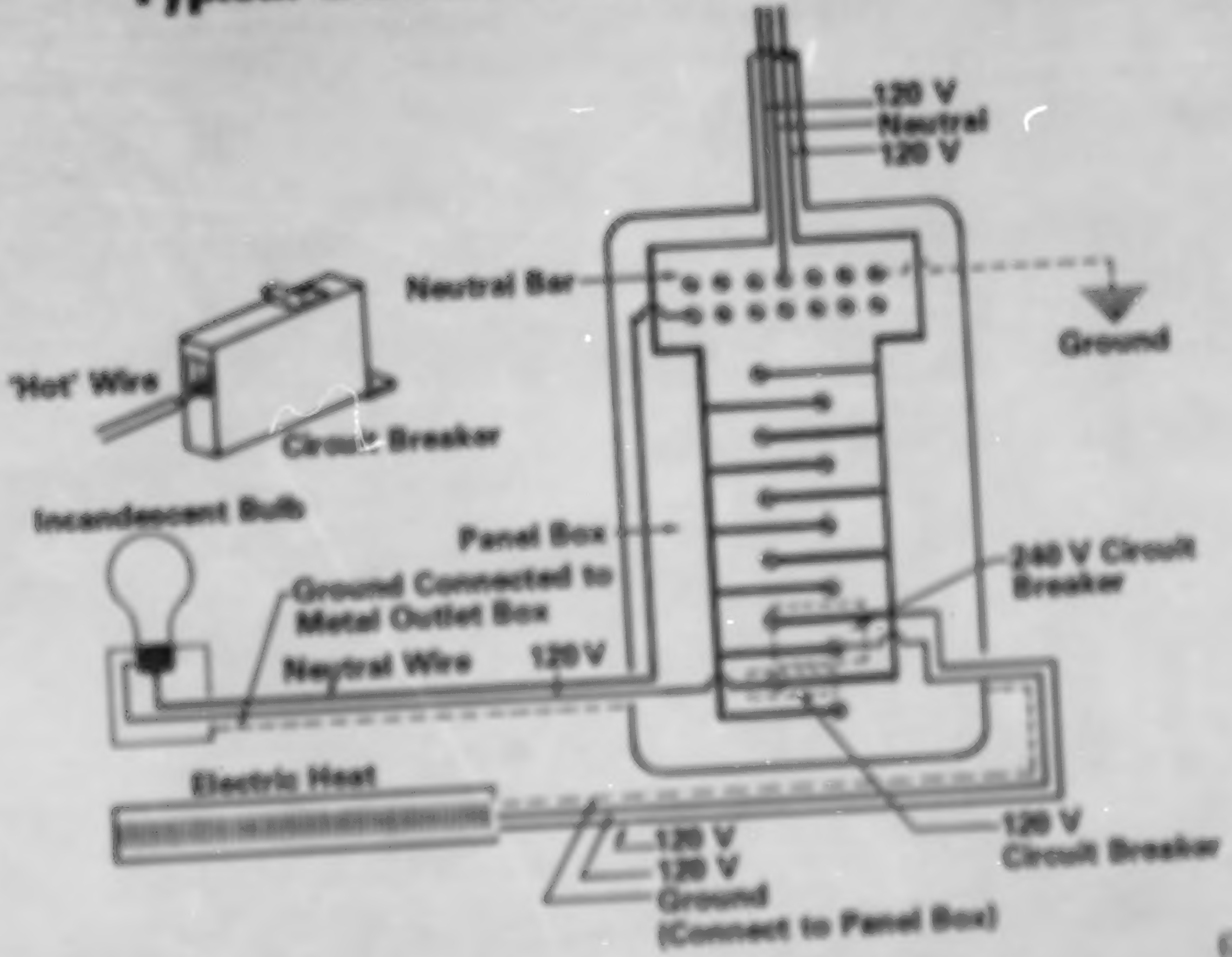
One-Piece

NOTE: This is commonly used in light commercial.

Built-Up System

NOTE: This is used for rural, mobile homes, or older residential buildings.

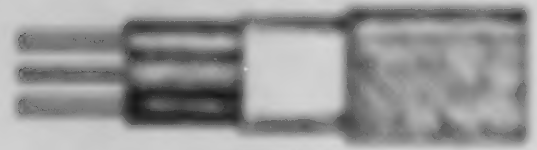
Typical Distribution Panel Schematic


120 V
Neutral
120 V
Neutral Bar
Ground
'Hot' Wire
Circuit Breaker
Incandescent Bulb
Panel Box
240 V Circuit Breaker
Ground Connected to Metal Outlet Box
Neutral Wire
120 V
Electric Heat
120 V
120 V
Ground (Connect to Panel Box)
120 V Circuit Breaker

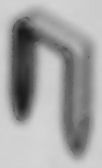
Wiring Devices

Nonmetallic Sheathed Cable

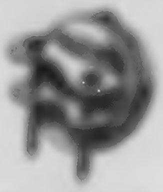
NOTE: This is commonly called romex.



NM Cable

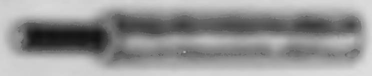


Staple

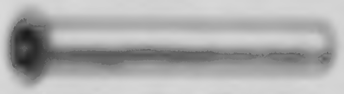


Connector

Concealed Knob and Tube

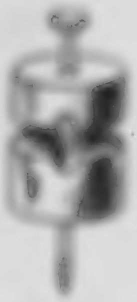


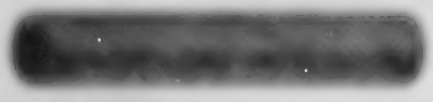
Insulated Conductor



Porcelain Tube

Knob





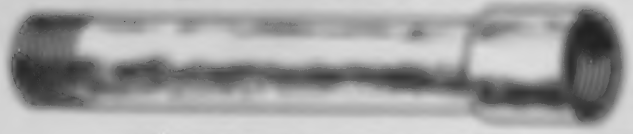
Braided Loom

622

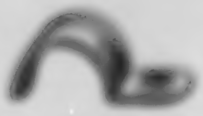
Wiring Devices

(Continued)

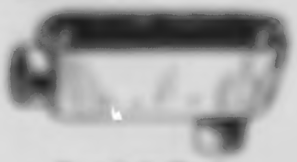
Rigid Metal Conduit



Metal Conduit and Coupling

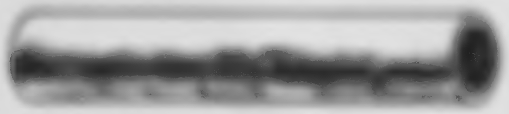


One-Hole Strap

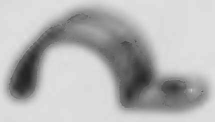


Conduit Body

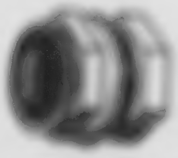
Electrical Metallic Conduit



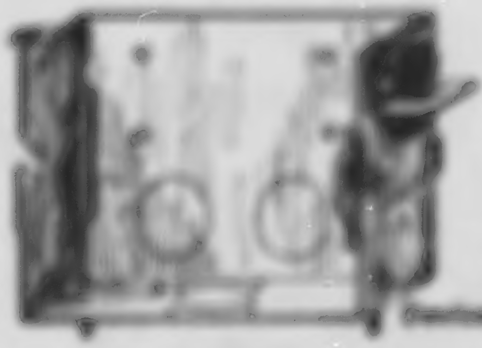
Electrical Metallic Conduit



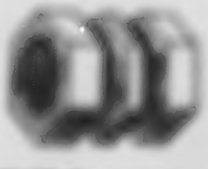
One-Hole Strap



EMT Coupling



Device Box for Conduit



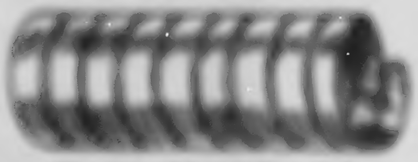
EMT Connector

Wiring Devices

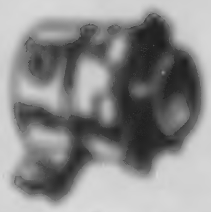
(Continued)

Flexible Metal Conduit

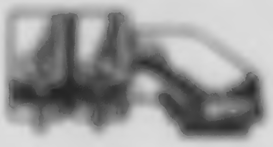
NOTE: This is commonly called greenfield.



Flexible Metal Conduit

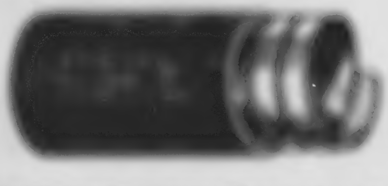


Straight Connector

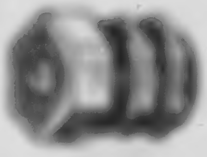


90° Connector

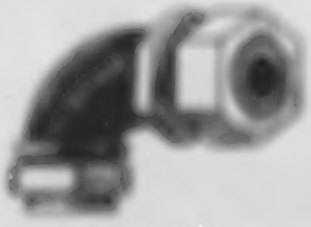
Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit



Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit



Liquid Tight Connector



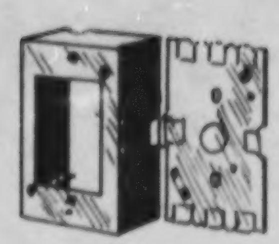
90° Liquid Tight Connector

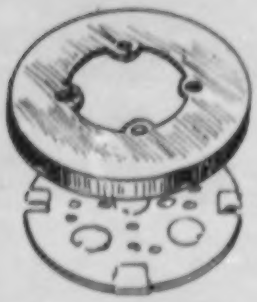
[illegible]

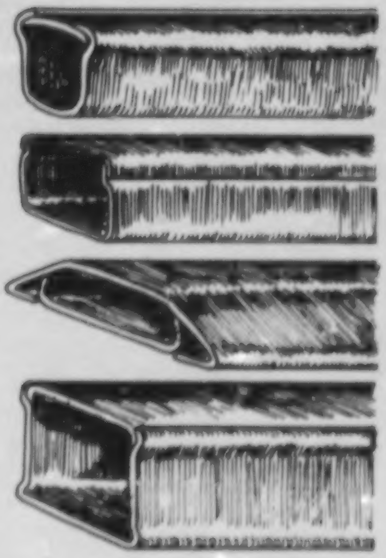
Wiring Devices

(Continued)

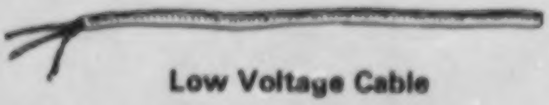
Surface Raceways

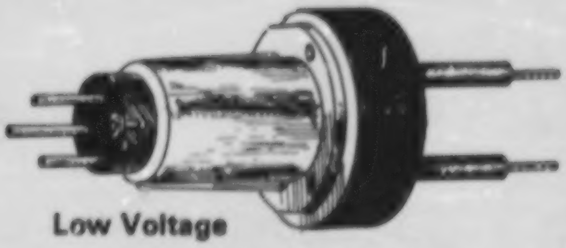

Surface Device Box

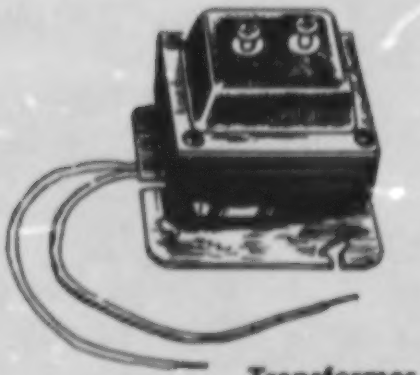

Surface Lighting Outlet

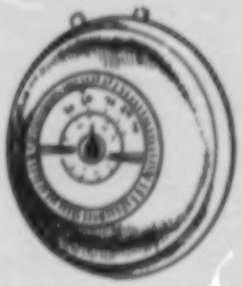

Surface Raceways

Low Voltage


Low Voltage Cable


Low Voltage
Controlled Lighting Relay

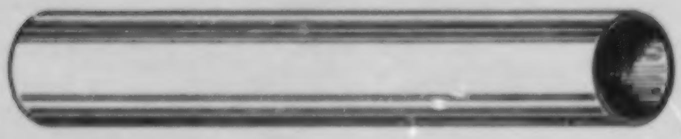

Transformer

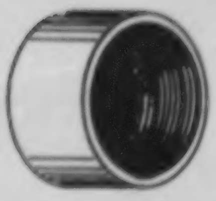

Thermostat

Wiring Devices

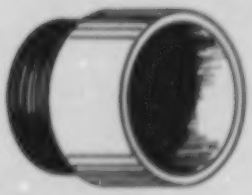
(Continued)

PVC (Polyvinyl Chloride)

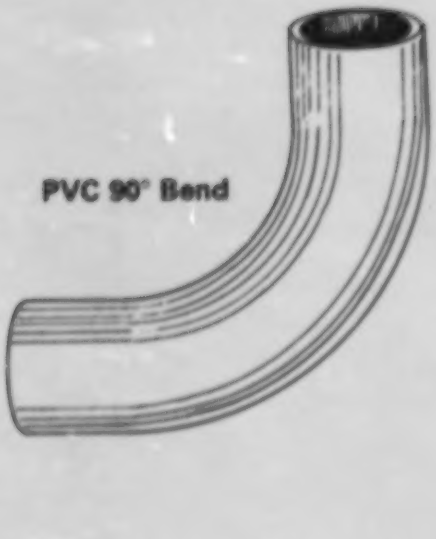




PVC to Threaded Adapter
(Female)



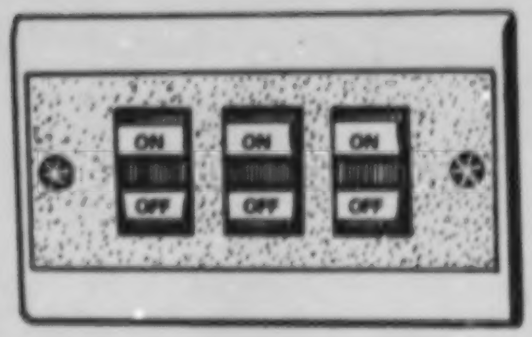
PVC to Threaded Adapter
(Male)



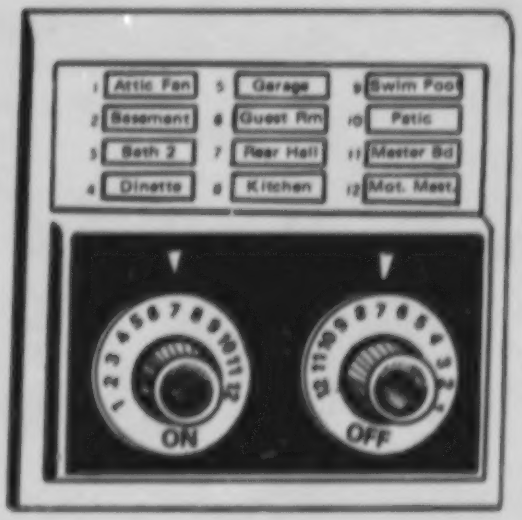
PVC 90° Bend

Low Voltage System

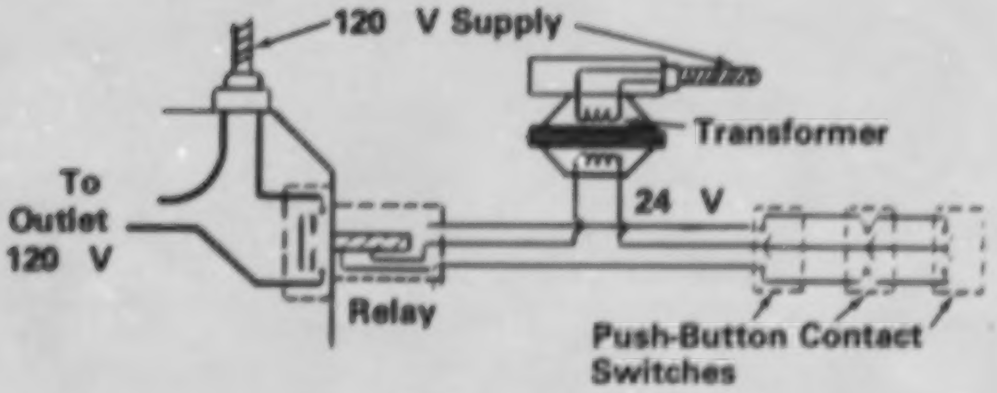
Remote Control for Line Voltage


ON
OFF
ON
OFF
ON
OFF

Push-Button Switch

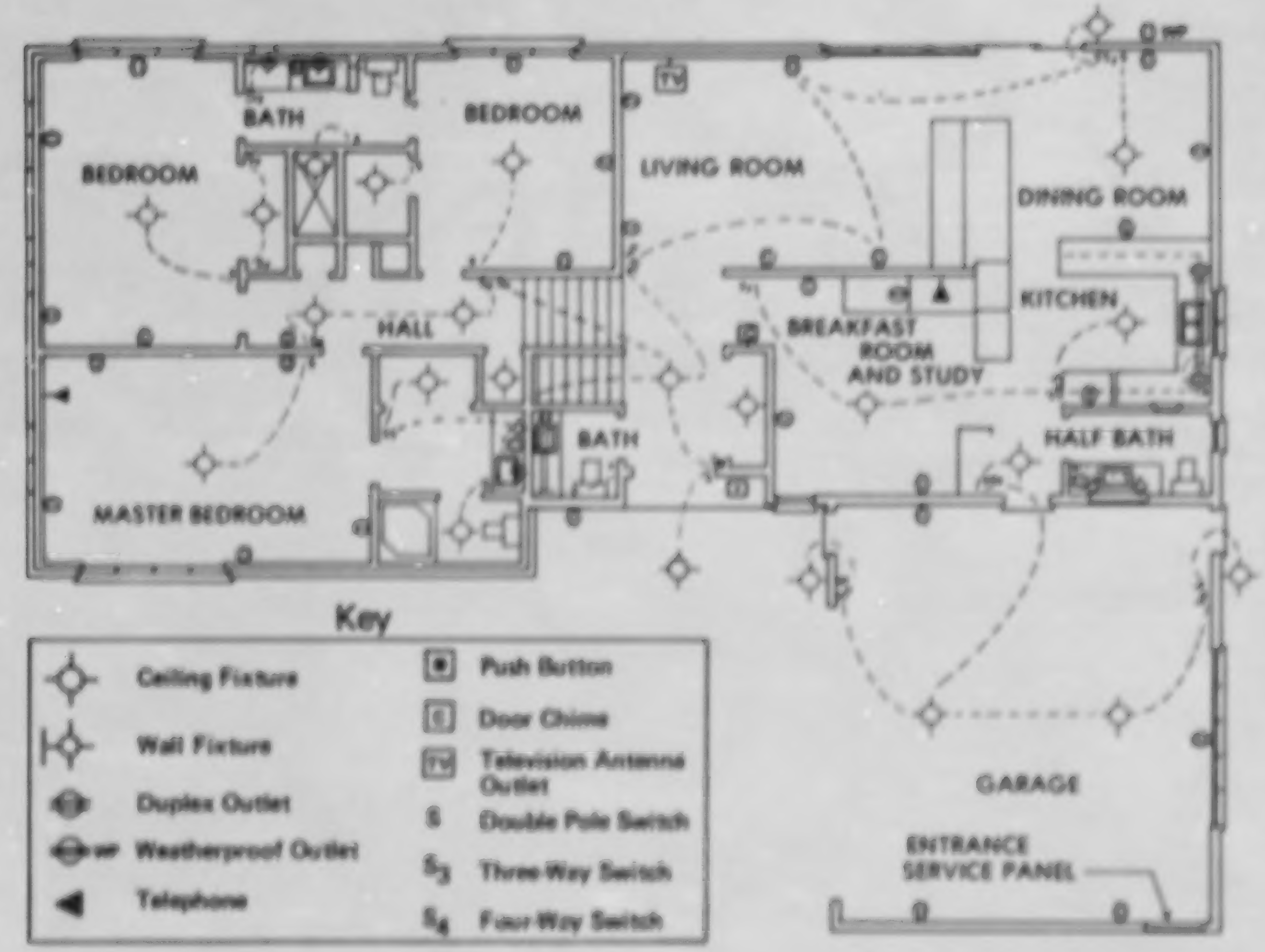

1 Attic Fan
2 Basement
3 Bath 2
4 Dinette
5 Garage
6 Guest Rm
7 Rear Hall
8 Kitchen
9 Swim Pool
10 Patio
11 Master Bd
12 Mot. Mast.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
ON
12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
OFF

Master Selector Switch


120 V Supply
Transformer
24 V
To Outlet 120 V
Relay
Push-Button Contact Switches

Control Circuit

Electrical Floor Plan


WP
TV
BATH
BEDROOM
BEDROOM
LIVING ROOM
DINING ROOM
HALL
KITCHEN
BREAKFAST ROOM AND STUDY
BATH
HALF BATH
MASTER BEDROOM
GARAGE
ENTRANCE SERVICE PANEL
Key
Ceiling Fixture
Wall Fixture
Duplex Outlet
WP Weatherproof Outlet
Telephone
Push Button
C Door Chime
TV Television Antenna Outlet
S Double Pole Switch
S3 Three-Way Switch
S4 Four-Way Switch

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1--ANSWER QUESTIONS RELATED TO RESIDENTIAL WIRING PRACTICES USING THE NEC

Directions: Give article number and answer to the following problems. Steps used in the cross reference system are listed in the procedure below.

Procedure:

1. Locate topics in the index

   (NOTE: The index is in the back of the Code just before the appendix and is alphabetically arranged.)

2. Note article and section of topic
3. Find article listed in numerical order in the table of contents in the front of the Code
4. Locate appropriate article and read across to find page number

   (NOTE: Page numbers do not appear with the number "70" in them in the table of contents, but they will in the book proper.)

5. Turn to page listed as chapter beginning
6. Find section number needed in article

Example: Are ground-fault circuit interrupters required on 20 amp construction receptacles?

Step 1. Refer to index--"Ground-Fault Interrupters" is located and "Construction Sites" is listed

Step 2. Note listing of article

Step 3. Turn to table of contents and locate article number

Step 4. Read across to page number

Step 5. Find the page number for the article on branch circuits; turn to it

Step 6. Find section number by turning pages in article

Answer: From the article on branch circuits, 20 amp receptacles on temporary poles do require ground-fault circuit interrupters.

Problems:

A. Do boxes made of metal need to be corrosion resistant?

Answer:

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1

B. What is the definition of "weatherproof"?

Answer:

C. Can a branch circuit used for lighting purposes and rated at 20 amps have a 12 amp dishwasher or other fixed appliance connected to it?

Answer:

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3–INTERPRET CONDUIT FILL TABLES USING THE NEC

Directions: List the maximum number of conductors allowed in the following conduits. Use same procedure as listed on Assignment Sheet #1 to locate answers.

Problems:

A. 1/2" conduit

1. 14 TW _____
2. 10 TW _____
3. 6 TW _____

B. 3/4" conduit

1. 10 THWN _____
2. 4 THWN _____

C. 1" conduit

1. 8 TW _____
2. 2 TW _____
3. 8 THWN _____

D. 2" conduit

1. 4/0 THWN _____
2. 4/0 TW _____

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3–LOCATE ALLOWABLE AMPACITIES FOR VARIOUS CONDUCTORS USING THE NEC

Directions: List the various ampacities for the conductors as listed.

Example: List the ampacities for the following conductors when used in a 3 conductor cable.

1. #12 TW copper _____
2. #6 TW copper _____

Answers: 1. 20 amps

2. 55 amps

Problems:

A. What is the allowable ampacity for the following single insulate copper conductors used in free air?

1. 14 TW _____
2. 1 TW _____
3. 1 THHN _____
4. 10 THW _____

B. What is the allowable ampacity for the following aluminum conductors when used in a 3 wire cable?

1. 10 TW _____
2. 12 TW _____
3. 1/0 TW _____
4. 6 TW _____

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4—CALCULATE SERVICE SIZE AND MINIMUM NUMBER OF CIRCUITS

Directions: Using the standard code procedure listed below, calculate service size and minimum number of circuits on the following dwelling by filling in the blanks.

(NOTE: The NEC gives an example of this problem in the chapter entitled "Tables and Examples.")

Problem: Dwelling has a floor space of 2,100 square feet. It also has an 11 kw electric range.

Computed Load

General lighting load
1. ____________ sq. ft. X 3 watts per sq. ft. = 2. ____________ watts

Minimum Number of Branch Circuits

General lighting load: 3. ____________ ÷ 115 = 4. ____________ amperes ÷ 20 = 5. ____________ or number of general lighting circuits

(NOTE: This number always rounds to next whole number if a fraction appears.)

Small appliance load: Two 2-wire 20 ampere circuits
Laundry load: One 2-wire 20 ampere circuit

(NOTE: See Code for wattage.)

Minimum Size Feeders Required

Computed load
General lighting .... 6. ____________ watts
Small appliance .... +3,000 watts
Laundry .... +1,500 watts
Total (without range) .... 7. ____________ watts

3,000 watts at 100% .... 3,000 watts
8. ____________ − 3,000 = ________ watts X 35% = 9. ____________ watts
(Total w/o range)
Net computed load (without range) .... 10. ____________ watts

Range load .... +8,000 watts
Net computed load (with range) .... 11. ____________ watts

For 115/230 volt 3-wire system feeders, net computed load (with range) 12. ____________ ÷ 230 = 13. ____________ amperes

Net computed load exceeds 10 kw so service conductors shall be 100 amperes.

Reduced size neutral shall be permitted, usually two trade sizes smaller than the ungrounded conductors.

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4

Feeder and Service Neutral

Lighting and small appliance load (net without range) .... 15. ____________ watts

Range load 8,000 watts at 70% .... [illegible] watts

Total .... 16. ____________ watts

Total 16. ____________ ÷ 230 = 17. ____________ amperes

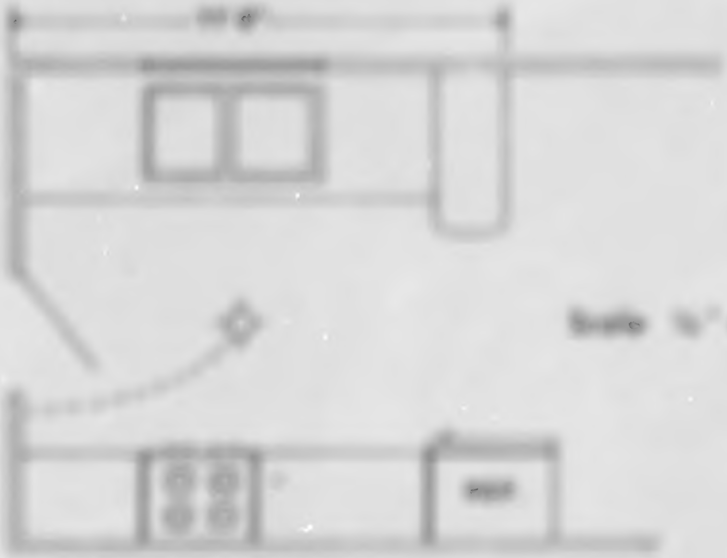
(Same as 15)

6.36

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5 LOCATE RECEPTACLE, SWITCH, AND LIGHTING OUTLETS

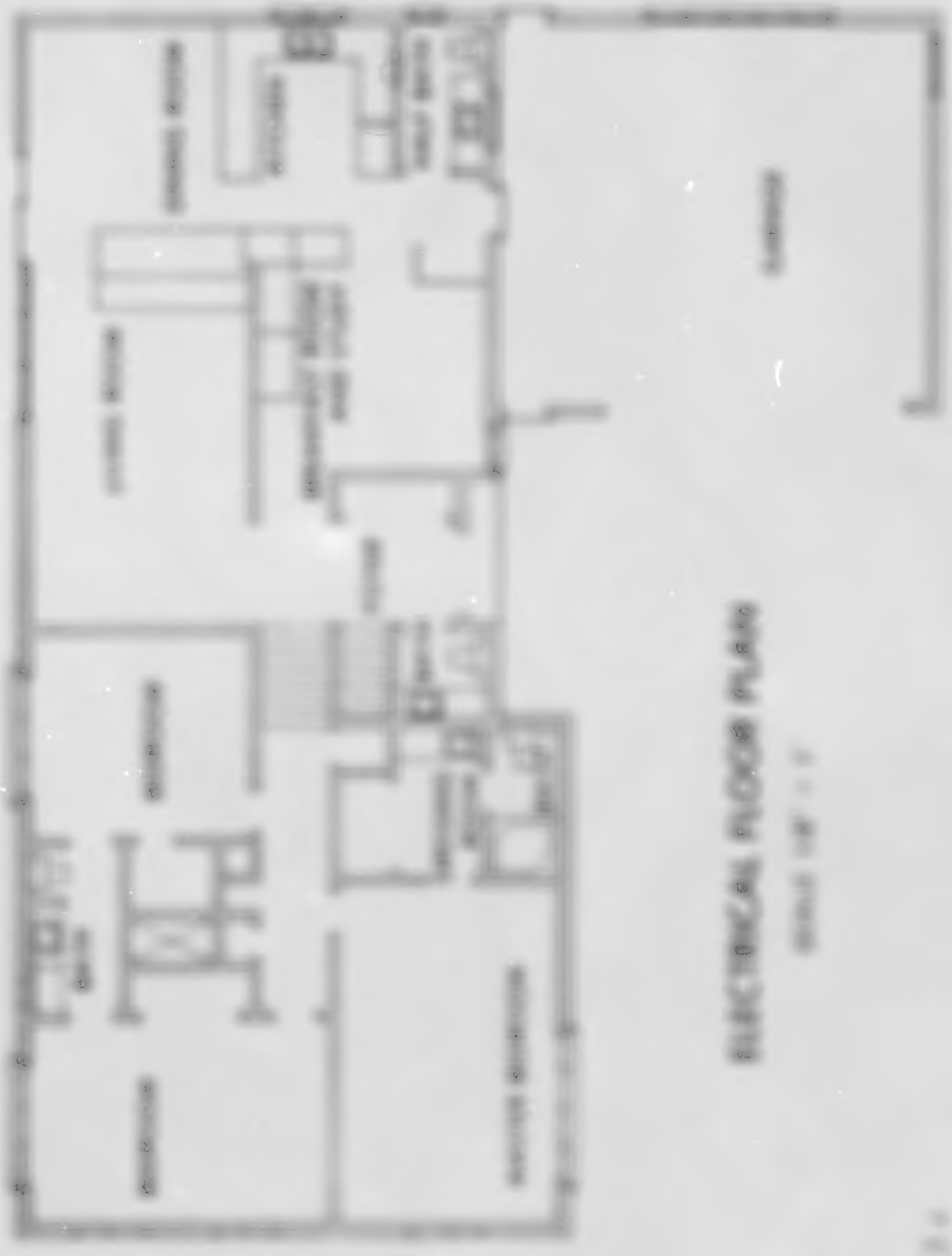
Problem B: Using appropriate electrical symbols, locate the minimum required receptacle outlets along the cabinet space on the print below.



Scale 1/4" = 1'

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #[illegible]

Problem B: Using appropriate electrical symbols, locate the minimum required premise wiring system, receptacles, switches, lighting outlets, telephone outlets, and bell/buzzer outlets along the floor and ceiling on the following floor plan.


BEDROOM
BATH
BEDROOM
LIVING ROOM
DINING ROOM
KITCHEN
BREAKFAST ROOM AND STUDY
FOYER
BATH
DRESSING ROOM
BATH
MASTER BEDROOM
HALF BATH
GARAGE

ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN

SCALE 1/8" = 1'

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

NAME ______________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

   (NOTE: The terms on this page should be matched to the definitions on this page; the same procedure applies on the next page.)

   _____a. A basic minimum standard covering the installation of electrical equipment to safeguard persons and property

   _____b. Unit of measure of electrical power

   _____c. One thousand watts

   _____d. Unit of measure of electrical pressure

   _____e. Unit of measure of the intensity of the flow or current of electricity

   _____f. Unit of measure of the resistance to the flow of electricity

   _____g. A law which can be used for calculating wattage, voltage, and amperage for circuits

   _____h. Current-carrying capacity of electric conductors expressed in amperes

   _____i. Material which does not permit the free flow of electrons

   _____j. Material which permits the free flow of electrons

   _____k. A conductor having no covering or electrical insulation

   _____l. A conductor encased with a material not recognized by the NEC as insulation

   _____m. A conductor encased with a material recognized by the NEC as insulation

   _____n. A circuit conductor that is intentionally connected to the earth or some conductor that serves in place of the earth

   _____o. Connects equipment or wiring circuit grounded conductor to a grounding electrode

   1. Ohm
   2. Insulator
   3. Conductor
   4. Ampere
   5. Insulated conductor
   6. Ampacity
   7. Grounded conductor
   8. Ohm's Law
   9. National Electric Code
   10. Grounding conductor
   11. Covered conductor
   12. Watt
   13. Kilowatt
   14. Volt
   15. Bare conductor

_____p. A complete path for current to flow from the source through the load and back to the source

_____q. The circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s)

_____r. A switching device that automatically opens a circuit when the circuit has been overloaded

_____s. A wire connecting the circuit or equipment to the earth or water pipes to minimize injuries from shock

_____t. A device that is sensitive to very low levels of current leakage to ground

_____u. Overcurrent protective device with a circuit opening fusible part that is heated and severed by the passage of overcurrent through it

_____v. Contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of a single attachment plug

_____w. A point on the wiring system at which current is taken to supply utilization equipment

_____x. An outlet where one or more receptacles are installed

_____y. The electrical enclosure that contains the overcurrent protection for circuits and connects to the service conductor

_____z. The conductors from utility pole and service head which bring the current to the building through the meter to the distribution panel

_____aa. The overhead service conductors from the last pole or other aerial support to and including the splices, if any, connecting to the service entrance conductors at the building or other structure

_____bb. Wiring of less than 50 volts originating at a transformer

_____cc. A metal-encased box that is placed on the floor prior to placement of concrete floor to allow for various outlets

16. Distribution panel
17. Raceway
18. Circuit breaker
19. Outlet
20. Receptacle outlet
21. Ground wire
22. Service drop
23. Low voltage
24. Fuse
25. Branch circuit
26. Circuit
27. Ground fault circuit interrupter
28. Receptacle
29. Service entrance

_____dd. A preassembled metal box system used to distribute high-current loads

_____ee. A channel or pipe, made of metal or plastic, in which conductors are run

_____ff. Thin wall metal raceway of circular cross sections with integral or associated couplings, connectors, and fittings approved for the installation of electrical conductors

_____gg. Spiral metal raceway designed for flexible installation with a circular cross section and integral or associated couplings, connectors, and fittings approved for the installation of electrical conductors

_____hh. Flexible metal conduit with an outer liquid-tight, nonmetallic, sunlight-resistant jacket

_____ii. Similar to electrical metal tubing except that the pipe is heavier and is threaded

_____jj. Two or more wires enclosed in a flexible plastic case

_____kk. A flexible armor-shielded cable that has two or more conductors within the casing

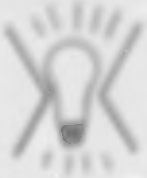
_____ll. Wiring method using knobs, tubes, and flexible nonmetallic tubing for protection and support of single insulated conductors in walls and ceilings of buildings

_____mm. A standard size classification for copper and aluminum wires up to 0000

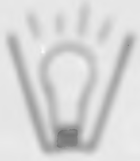
_____nn. The standard size classification for conductors larger than 0000

30. Busway
31. Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit
32. Thousand circular mils
33. Knob and tube wiring
34. Electrical metal tubing
35. Rigid conduit
36. Nonmetallic sheathed cable
37. Interlocked armor cable
38. Flexible metal conduit
39. Conduit
40. American wire gauge

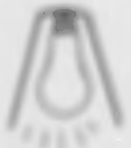
2. Distinguish between types of lighting dispersement by placing an "X" next to the illustration of indirect lighting dispersement.



a. _____________



b. _____________



c. _____________

3. Name four parts of electrical service entrance installation.

   a. ______________________________

   b. ______________________________

   c. ______________________________

   d. ______________________________

4. Distinguish between types of residential branch circuits by placing an "X" next to the description of a special purpose individual circuit.

   _____a. 15 or 20 amp circuit used for lighting and small appliances

   _____b. 20 amp circuit used for one or more outlets to which appliances are to be connected

   _____c. 115/120 volt or 208/240 volt circuit used for one single outlet

5. Match the wiring devices on the right with common residential applications.

   _____a. General residential rough-in; circuit extensions in existing building; direct burial for yard lights or extensions

   _____b. Extensions of existing installations; elsewhere by special permission

   _____c. Through eave service masts to weatherhead; underground circuit extension; in concrete walls, floors, or ceilings; underground service riser

   _____d. Service raceway; protecting grounding conductor

   _____e. Connecting recessed lighting fixtures; enclosing motor leads

   _____f. Connecting air conditioning condensers to disconnects; enclosing motor leads needing protection from liquids and vapors

   _____g. Interior circuit extensions where concealed work is not necessary or is not possible; on interior concrete surfaces

   _____h. Chime circuits; intercom wiring; thermostat circuits; lighting remote control; smoke detectors; burglar alarms

   _____i. In locations subject to severe corrosive conditions; in portions of dairies, laundries, canneries, or other wet locations

   1. Rigid metal conduit
   2. Low voltage
   3. Cable
   4. Concealed knob and tube wiring
   5. Electrical metallic tubing
   6. Raceways
   7. Flexible metal conduit
   8. Liquid-tight flexible metal conduit
   9. Rigid nonmetallic conduit or PVC

6. Match the types of cables on the right with common applications.

_____a. Residential rough-in wiring in new construction; extensions of existing residential wiring and new remodel; feeders for sub-panels

_____b. Service entrance conductors if used with rain tight head; branch circuits for ranges, cook tops, or clothes dryers

_____c. Thermostat control circuits; bell or chime control circuits; low voltage lighting control circuits

_____d. Underground circuits to remote lighting such as yard lights; branch circuits to out buildings such as garages

_____e. Underground service supply

1. Underground cable
2. Service entrance cable
3. Nonmetallic sheathed cable
4. Underground service entrance cable
5. Low voltage cable

7. State the conductor letter designations for the following installation conditions.

_____a. Dry locations

_____b. Dry and wet locations

_____c. Dry and wet locations where more heat resistant qualities are needed

_____d. Dry and wet locations where oil may be present or where more heat resistant qualities are needed

8. Select true statements concerning designing an electrical system for a residence by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. A three-way switch is used to control a light from three locations

_____b. Switch locations should be placed so that a person can enter the house from any door and progress to any other part without being in the dark

_____c. Receptacle shall be placed so that no point on any usable wall space along the floor line is more 12' from an outlet

_____d. Split-receptacle outlets should be used in living and dining areas in order not to limit the use of radios, clocks, or appliances

_____e. Provide one receptacle near mirror in bath a minimum of 3' from water

_____f. Provide one receptacle for each 10 linear feet of work surface frontage in kitchen

_____g. Provide lighting with wall switch for attic space

9. Match electrical floor plan symbols on the right with the correct names.

_____a. Single pole switch

_____b. Three way switch

_____c. Weatherproof switch

_____d. Low voltage wire

_____e. Duplex receptacle outlet

_____f. Split wired receptacle outlet

_____g. Range outlet

_____h. 220 volt outlet

_____i. Junction box

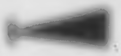
_____j. Lighting outlet

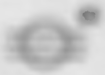
_____k. Round recessed light

_____l. Fluorescent light

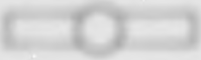
_____m. Telephone

_____n. T.V. antenna outlet

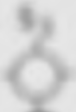
1. 

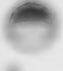
2. 

3. S_{WP}

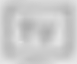
4. 

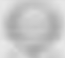
5. S_3

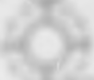
6. 

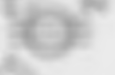
7. 

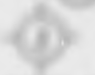
8. S

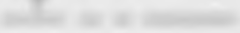
9. 

10. 

11. 

12. 

13. 

14. 

10. Name two overcurrent circuit safety devices.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

11. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Answer questions related to residential wiring practices using the NEC.

b. Interpret conduit fill tables using the NEC.

c. Locate allowable ampacities for various conductors using the NEC.

d. Calculate service size and minimum number of circuits.

e. Locate receptacle, switch, and lighting outlets.

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

ELECTRICAL
UNIT XII

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. [illegible]

2. b

3. Any four of the following:
   a. Electrical service line
   b. Meter socket trough
   c. Main disconnect switch
   d. Distribution panel
   e. Weatherhead assembly

4. c

5. [illegible]

6. [illegible]

7. a. T
   b. TW
   c. THW
   d. MTW

8. b, d, e, g

9. [illegible]

10. Any one of the following:
    a. Fuse
    b. Circuit breaker
    c. Ground fault circuit interrupter

11. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

SPECIFICATIONS
UNIT [illegible]

UNIT OBJECTIVE

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to state purposes of specifications and fill in a VA-FHA "Description of Materials" form. This knowledge will be evidenced by correctly performing the procedures outlined in the assignment sheets and by scoring 85 percent on the unit test.

SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES

After completion of this unit, the student should be able to:

1. Match terms related to specifications with the correct definitions.
2. State two purposes of specifications.
3. Complete statements concerning information included in specifications.
4. Select true statements concerning characteristics of specifications.
5. List errors to be aware of in specifications.
6. Demonstrate the ability to:
   a. Answer questions related to materials used in residential construction using Sweet's Catalog File.
   b. Fill in a VA-FHA "Description of Materials" form.

SPECIFICATIONS
UNIT [illegible]

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

IV. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

V. Obtain copies of different types of specifications and discuss each.

VI. Discuss specification forms which are used locally.

VII. Have Sweet's Catalog File available for students to use in Assignment Sheet #1.

VIII. Obtain copies of the "Description of Materials" form from a VA, FHA, or Farmers Home Administration office for use in Assignment Sheet #2.

IX. Have students fill out a specifications form other than the one in Assignment Sheet #2 as an optional activity.

X. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

  A. Objective sheet

  B. Information sheet

  C. Assignment sheets

    1. Assignment Sheet #1 Answer Questions Related to Materials Used in Residential Construction Using Sweet's Catalog File

    2. Assignment Sheet #2 Fill in a VA/FHA "Description of Materials" Form

  D. Test

  E. Answers to test

[illegible] References

A. Hepler, Donald E. and Paul I. Wallach. *Architectural Drafting and Design.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1977.

B. Hornung, William J. *Architectural Drafting.* Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1986.

C. [illegible], Thomas. *Architectural Technology.* St. Louis: Gregg Division/McGraw-Hill Book Co., 1979.

D. Spence, William P. *Architecture: Design - Engineering - Drawing.* Bloomington, IL: McKnight Publishing Co., 1979.

E. [illegible], George K. and Harry J. [illegible]. *Architectural Drafting.* Chicago 60637: American Technical Society, 1974.

F. *Sweet's Catalog File.* New York 10020: McGraw-Hill Information Systems, 1977.

G. Kicklighter, Clois E. *Architecture: Residential Drawing and Design.* South Holland, IL: Goodheart-Willcox Co., Inc., 1973.

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

I. [illegible]

A. [illegible]

[illegible]

B. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

D. [illegible]

E. [illegible]

F. [illegible]

[illegible]

G. [illegible]

H. [illegible]

I. [illegible]

J. [illegible]

K. [illegible]

L. [illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

I. Purposes of specifications

A. [illegible]

(NOTE: [illegible])

B. [illegible]

II. Information included in specifications

A. Description of materials to be used

Example: [illegible]

B. [illegible]

(NOTE: [illegible])

C. [illegible]

(NOTE: [illegible])

D. [illegible]

E. [illegible]

(NOTE: [illegible])

F. [illegible]

III. Characteristics of specifications

A. [illegible]

B. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

D. [illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

Example: [illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

B. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

C. [illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

D. [illegible]

E. [illegible]

Examples:

[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]

F. [illegible]

G. [illegible]

II. [illegible]

A. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

B. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

D. [illegible]

NOTE: [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

1. [illegible]

2. [illegible]

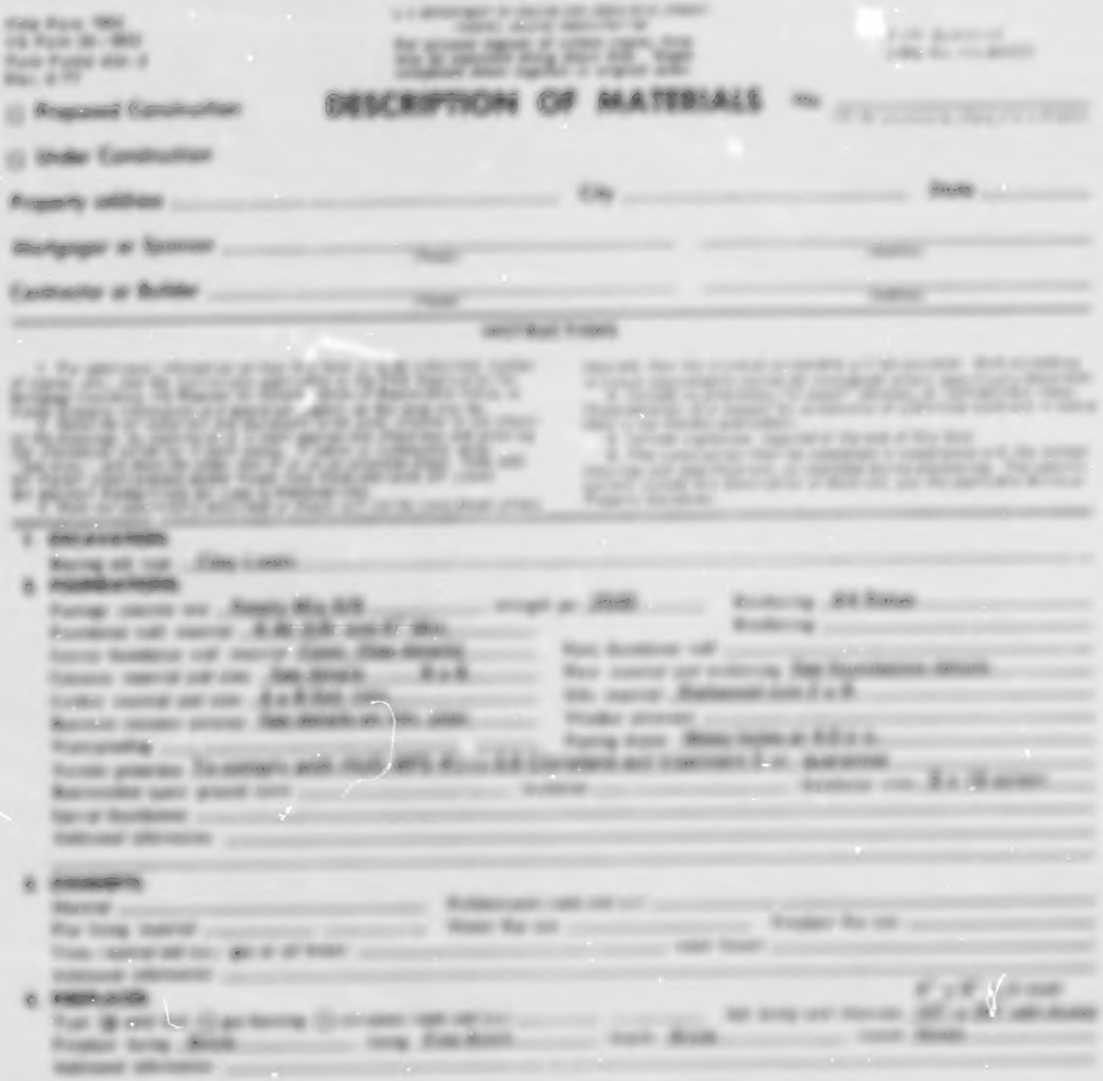
3. [illegible]

SPECIFICATIONS
UNIT XIII

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2: FILL IN A VA-FHA "DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS" FORM

Directions: Fill in a VA-FHA "Description of Materials" form for a set of drawings provided by instructor or for your design project set of drawings. The following example is to be used as a guideline for filling in this form.

Example:



☐ Proposed Construction

DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS

☐ Under Construction

Property address ______ City ______ State ______

Mortgagor or Sponsor ______

Contractor or Builder ______

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

[illegible]

DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS

DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS

[illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

[illegible]

Paint all walls, ceilings, and furr downs

[illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2

[illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

DESCRIPTION OF MATERIALS

[illegible]

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3

[illegible]

SPECIFICATIONS
UNIT [illegible]

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. Written instructions describing the basic requirements for constructing a building	1. Punch list
_____b. Drawings made by the manufacturer of an item which show how the product is to be installed	2. General contractor
_____c. Document signed by the architect, owner, and contractor which legally changes the contract documents in areas of time, work, and/or cost	3. Shall
_____d. List of items to be completed or repaired by the contractor before the owner takes control of the building	4. Change order
_____e. Term used in writing specifications to indicate what is mandatory	5. Subcontractor
_____f. Term applied when a substitute can be used	6. Fill-in form
_____g. To carry on a legal contest through judicial process	7. Shop drawings
_____h. Independent contractor who signs a contract to perform more than [illegible] of the work with his own work force	8. Litigation
_____i. An individual or business firm contracting to perform part of another contract	9. Specifications
_____j. Document which contains signed agreement between owner and contractor, specifications, and drawings	10. Equal
_____k. Usually first section in specs which defines the relationships and responsibilities among the agreeing parties	11. General conditions
_____l. Form used for residences which follows a format of blanks to be completed	12. Construction contract

2. State two purposes of specifications.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

3. Complete the following statements concerning information included in specifications.

a. Description of materials to be used

b. Required building operations

c. ______________ sums for such items as lighting fixtures and hardware which are to be selected by the ______________

d. An indication that all specifications refer to the detailed plans of the

____

e. Statement or agreement on ______________ of workmanship

f. Liability assumed by the contractor during construction

4. Select true statements concerning characteristics of specifications by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. On drawings indicate quantity; specifications indicate quality

_____b. Specifications take the place of the drawings

_____c. When the house is to be constructed for sale, the client supplies the specifications

_____d. When the house is being constructed for a particular client, the architect and client usually develop a "specification outline" together

_____e. There is only one form for developing specifications

_____f. Specifications can only be written by a drafter

_____g. Brand names should always be used for large projects because they encourage competitive bidding

_____h. Italics indicate items which have not been decided upon yet

5. List two errors to be aware of in specifications.

a. ______________________________

b. ______________________________

8. Demonstrate the ability to:

   a. Answer questions related to materials used in residential construction using Sweet's Catalog File.

   b. Fill in a VA/FHA "Description of Materials" form.

   (NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

SPECIFICATIONS
UNIT XIV

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 8   g. 6
   b. 7   h. 2
   c. 9   i. 5
   d. 1   j. 12
   e. 4   k. 11
   f. 10   l. 3

2. a. Act as a legal document when used in conjunction with the set of drawings
   b. Communicate to contractor (or owner)

3. a. Cash allowances: owner
   b. Working drawings
   c. Models

4. a, d

5. Any two of the following:
   a. Differences between drawings and specifications
   b. Specification of materials is unclear
   c. Disagreement with other trades
   d. [illegible]

6. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor

811

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]

1. [illegible]
2. [illegible]
3. [illegible]
4. [illegible]
5. [illegible]
6. [illegible]
7. [illegible]
8. [illegible]
9. [illegible]
10. [illegible]
11. [illegible]
    a. [illegible]
    b. [illegible]
    c. [illegible]
    d. [illegible]
    e. [illegible]
    f. [illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

SUGGESTED ACTIVITIES

I. Provide student with objective sheet.

II. Provide student with information and assignment sheets.

III. Make transparencies.

IV. Discuss unit and specific objectives.

V. Discuss information and assignment sheets.

VI. [illegible]

VII. [illegible]

VIII. [illegible]

IX. [illegible]

X. [illegible]

XI. [illegible]

XII. [illegible]

XIII. Give test.

INSTRUCTIONAL MATERIALS

I. Included in this unit:

  A. Objective sheet

  B. Information sheet

  C. Transparency masters

    1. TM 1 [illegible]

    2. TM 2 [illegible]

    3. TM 3 [illegible]

[illegible] TM [illegible] Shadowing One-Point Perspective

#1 Display

#2 Display

[illegible] TM [illegible] Shadowing Two-Point Perspective

#1 Display

#2 Display

#3 Display

#4 Display

[illegible] TM [illegible] Shade, Shadow, and Texture

[illegible] TM [illegible] Shade, Shadow, and Texture [illegible]

[illegible] TM [illegible] Preparing Renderings

[illegible] Assignment Sheets

1. Assignment Sheet #1 Locate Vanishing Points
2. Assignment Sheet #2 Draw a One-Point Perspective
3. Assignment Sheet #3 Draw Two-Point Perspectives
4. Assignment Sheet #4 Shade and Shadow Various Objects
5. Assignment Sheet #5 Render an Elevation
6. Assignment Sheet #6 Render Perspective

[illegible] Test

[illegible] Answers to test

[illegible] References

A. [illegible]

B. [illegible]

C. [illegible]

D. [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible]
[illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

[illegible] [illegible]

INFORMATION SHEET

P. Shadow–A surface from which light is excluded by the shaded surface

Q. Render–The addition of texture, shade, and shadow, and sometimes colors to a drawing in order to make a building and its surroundings look more realistic

II. Types of perspectives (Transparency 1)

A. One point

B. Two point

C. Three point

III. Perspective views (Transparency 2)

A. Above horizon (Worm's eye view)

B. Horizon (Person's eye view)

C. Below horizon (Bird's eye view)

IV. Characteristics of perspectives and presentation drawings

A. A two-point perspective is the most common type of presentation drawing used in architecture

B. A one-point perspective is well suited for interior drawings

C. Perspectives eliminate distortion of drawn objects

D. Perspectives should resemble a photograph

E. Receding lines on a perspective create the illusion of depth

F. Perspective drawings do not reveal the true size and shape of the building

(NOTE: If you draw a perspective looking at a building from one end, the far end looks smaller. Of course, the height is equal on both sides of the actual building, but this true size is not represented on the drawing.)

G. Perspective drawings are not used for working designs

H. On a one-point perspective, the front view is drawn to the exact scale of the building

I. On a two-point perspective, no sides are drawn exactly to scale; the only true length line is the corner of the building from which the sides are projected

J. Dimensions and heating and plumbing details are omitted from presentation drawings

INFORMATION SHEET

K. Presentation drawings should be drawn on heavy, high-quality stock that will take pencil, ink, or watercolors

L. Uniform lettering is vital to an attractive presentation drawing

V. Methods for drawing perspectives (Transparency 3)

A. Perspective drawing boards

Example: KLOK Board

(NOTE: These devices are used to rapidly draw one-point or two-point perspectives.)

B. Perspective charts and grids

(NOTE: These are ordered according to scale of drawing desired and the distance of the station point from the object.)

C. Manually drawn

D. Machines

Example: Tektronix 4051 Graphics System

VI. Drawing one-point perspectives (Transparency 4 and Overlays 4A and 4B)

A. Draw picture plane line, plan view, elevation, and floor line

(NOTE: The plan view is usually drawn so it touches the picture plane line.)

B. Locate the station point on the center of vision below the plan

(NOTE: This is usually located about the width of the plan away from the picture plane or a 60° cone of vision.)

C. Project the perspective frame representing the picture plane in elevation, and locate the vanishing point

(NOTE: The vanishing point is located in the frame at the desired distance above the floor line or bottom of frame. No horizon line is needed.)

D. Project interior walls toward the vanishing point

1. Project all features from the plan to the station point to determine horizontal spacing

2. At the intersection of the projector and the picture plane, drop verticals

INFORMATION SHEET

3. Project the height from the elevation to the frame (true height line)

   (NOTE: Observe how the heights are carried along the walls, ceiling, and floor to where they are needed.)

E. Determine the height of objects located away from walls

Example: Tables

1. Establish their heights on the nearest wall
2. Project horizontally to the same wall on the plan
3. Now the location and height can be brought down to the perspective

   (NOTE: Detail is now added, but it is difficult to show all detail on the accompanying transparency.)

VII. Drawing two-point perspectives (Transparency 5 and Overlays 5A, 5B, 5C, and 5D)

A. Draw a horizontal line across the entire width of the paper; this is the picture plane line

B. Draw the plan view at the desired angle

1. The plan view is usually drawn behind the picture plane (above the picture plane line) with one corner touching the picture plane
2. The plan view is usually drawn with the front face inclined 30°

C. Locate station point, line from corner of plan view to station point, ground line, and horizon line

1. Locate the station point (representing the eye of the observer) directly in front of the plan view with a 45° maximum cone of vision

   (NOTE: Occasionally a greater cone of vision is used. The station point should not be moved sideways because it will give a distorted perspective.)

2. Draw a line from the intersection of the plan view and the picture plane to the station point
3. Draw the ground line parallel to the picture plane line near the bottom of the page
4. Draw the horizon line parallel to the ground line
   a. This is usually drawn 6' to scale above the ground line for a person's eye view

INFORMATION SHEET

b. The horizon line may be placed in other locations if you want a bird's eye or worm's eye view, but the person's eye view is the most common (Transparency 2)

D. Locate vanishing points

1. From the station point, draw lines parallel to the sides of the plan view until they cross the picture plane line

2. From these intersections, drop lines perpendicular to picture plane until they cross the horizon line

3. This establishes the two vanishing points (VPL and VPR)

E. Draw elevation view on ground line to the side of the area where you are drawing the perspective view

F. Project the front corner which touches the picture plane to the perspective view

1. Since this corner touches the picture plane, it is a true length line in the perspective

2. Lay off its true height by projecting from the elevation

G. Find the perspective of horizontal lines by projecting from the true height line to the vanishing points

H. Draw other corners

1. Draw projection lines from the other corners (those which will show in perspective view) to the station point

2. Where these projections cut the picture plane, drop perpendiculars

I. Draw all doors, windows, and special features

1. Draw projection lines from these features to the station point

2. Where these projections cut the picture plane, drop perpendiculars

(NOTE: There are many projection lines and the drawing can become crowded. Therefore, erase projectors after they have served their purpose. Details such as mullions are usually just estimated.)

J. Draw the roof

1. Project the ridge until it cuts the picture plane; drop perpendicular from intersection to ground line

(NOTE: This projection becomes a true length line.)

2. Measure actual height of ridge on true length line and project to vanishing point

INFORMATION SHEET

   3. Find the length of the ridge in the manner used for the corners of the building

   4. Project the overhang

K. Erase projection lines and darken in visible lines

(NOTE: The perspective is now drawn, but it is usually not considered complete until it has been rendered.)

VIII. Characteristics of shade, shadow, and texture (Transparencies 6 and 7)

A. When an object is subjected to rays of light, that portion receiving the light is rendered light, while the portion not receiving the light is darker

B. Details such as shrubs and windows should be highlighted to give a natural appearance

C. Techniques of shading include lines, dots, and grey tones

D. After the angle of the sun is established, all shading should be consistent with direction and angle of the shadow

E. The intensity of a shadow varies from black to a very light tone which shows the difference in the amount of light reflected

F. Texture of rough surfaces such as shrubs or building materials can be shown by shading

IX. Rendering techniques and characteristics

A. Pencil--Popular and easy to do especially for sketches

(NOTE: Colored pencils also are easy to use and add color for interest and contrast.)

B. Pen and ink--Allows sharp details, and reproduces well

C. Felt tip markers--Distinctive look, but difficult to add fine details with broad tip

D. Tempera--Opaque, water-based paint frequently used for monotone renderings

E. Watercolor--Transparent, water-based paint which allows a wide use of light and dark

F. Air brush--Miniature paint gun using small dots to form subtle shades and shadows

(NOTE: This can be very difficult to master.)

G. Appliques--Pressure-sensitive transparent film of lines, symbols, dots, or colors

INFORMATION SHEET

X. Preparing renderings (Transparency 8)

   A. Block in with single lines the projection of the perspective

   B. Sketch the outline of building materials

   C. Establish angle of sun and sketch shadows and shading

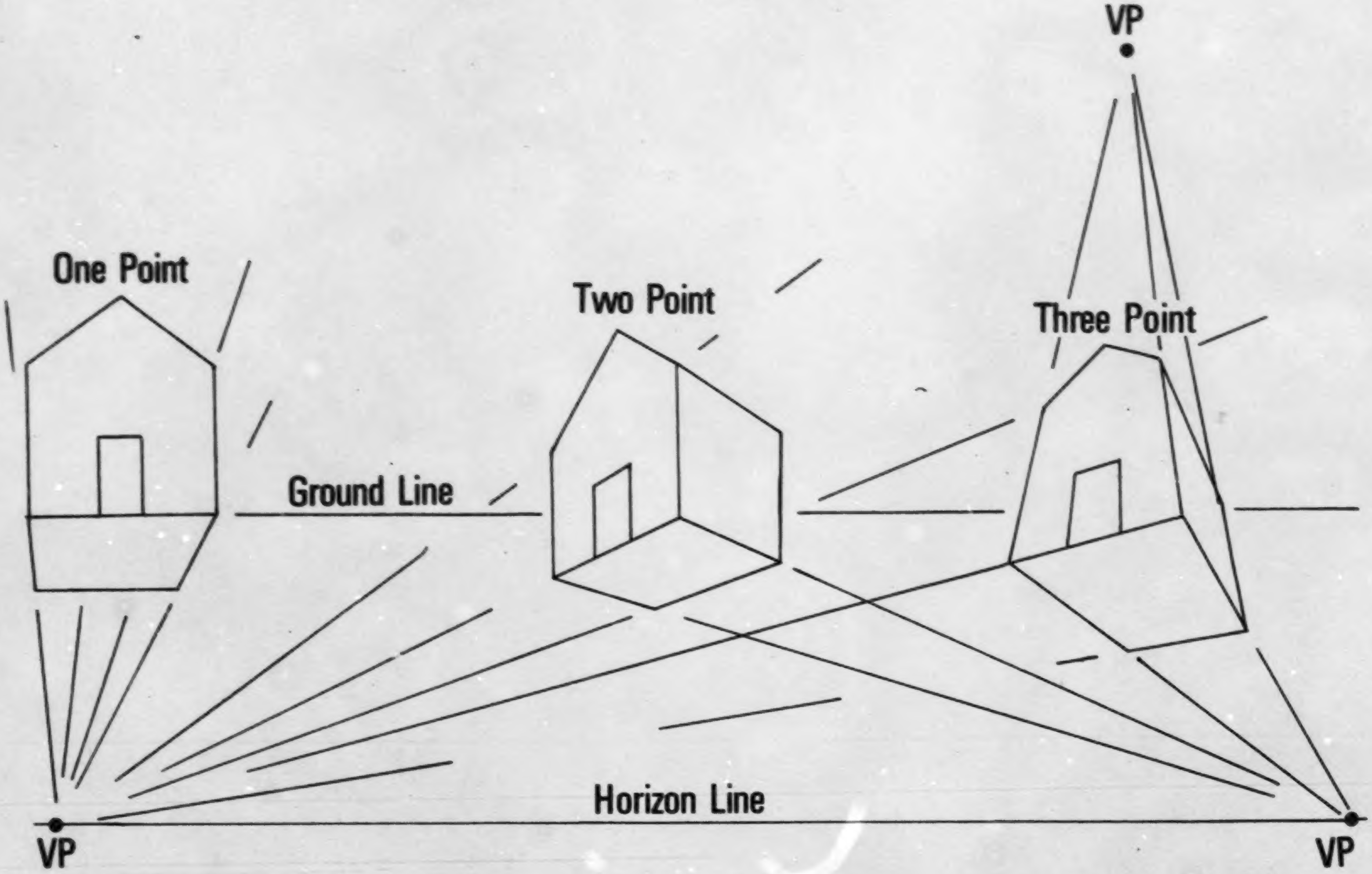
   D. Darken windows, door areas, and areas under the roof overhangs

   E. Add texture to the outline of building materials using light pressure on areas that are in direct sunlight

   F. Complete the rendering by emphasizing light and dark areas and establishing more visible contrasts of light and dark shadow patterns

   (NOTE: Sometimes sketches of people or automobiles are added to show the relative size of a building.)

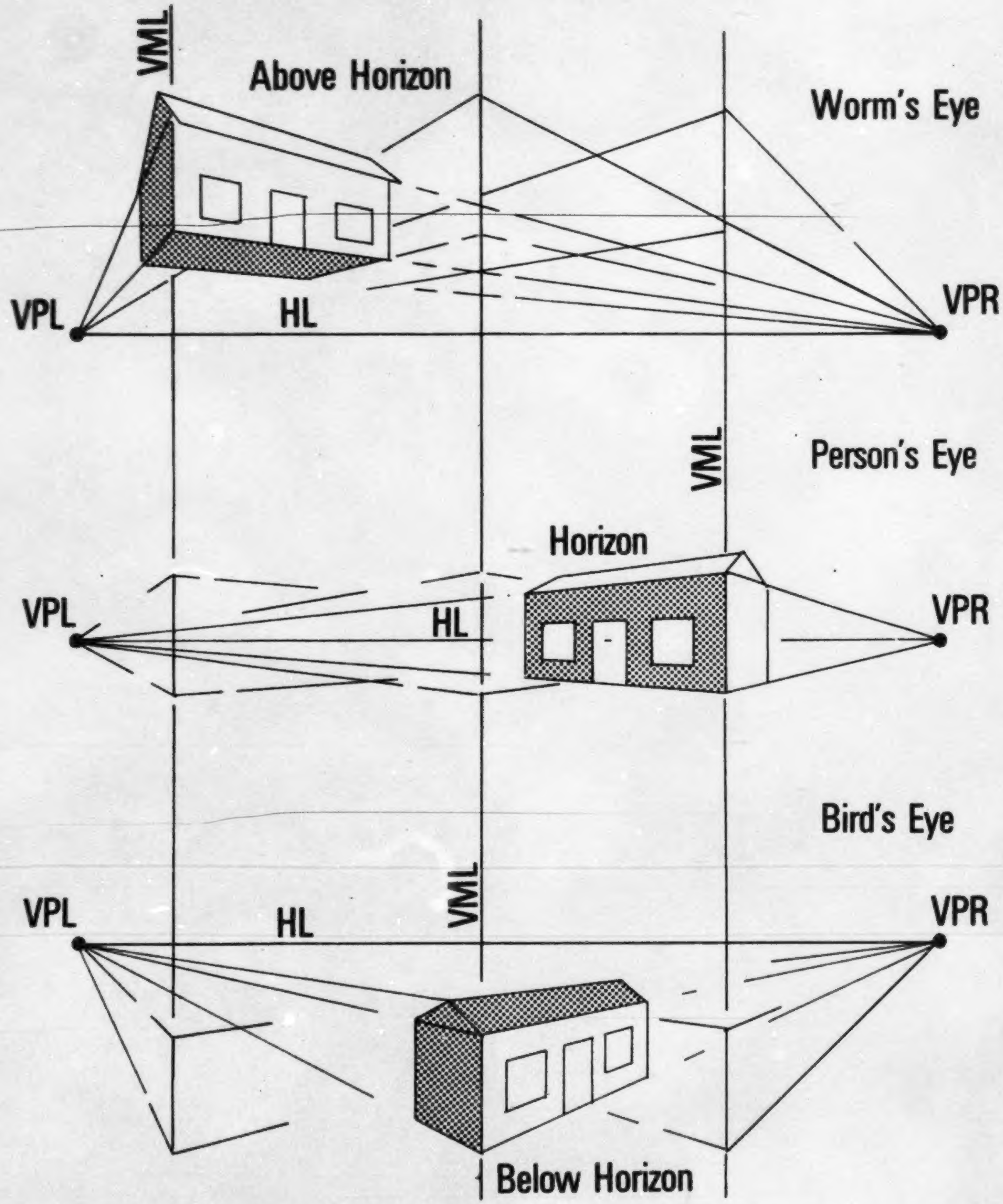
Types of Perspectives


VP
One Point
Two Point
Three Point
Ground Line
Horizon Line
VP
VP

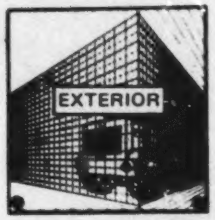
TM 1

AD-825

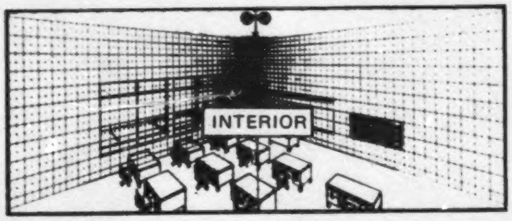
Perspective Views

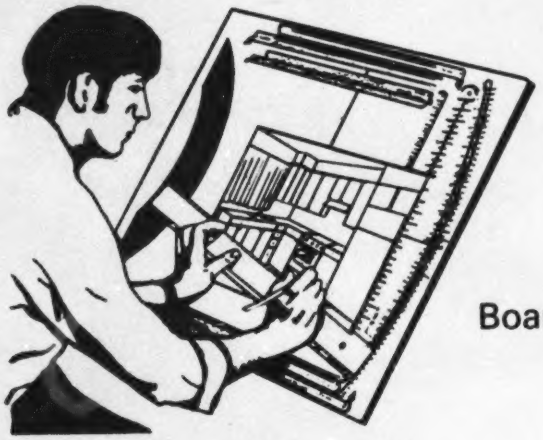

VML
Above Horizon
Worm's Eye
VPL
HL
VPR
VML
Person's Eye
Horizon
VPL
HL
VPR
Bird's Eye
VPL
HL
VML
VPR
Below Horizon

Perspective Equipment



Grids

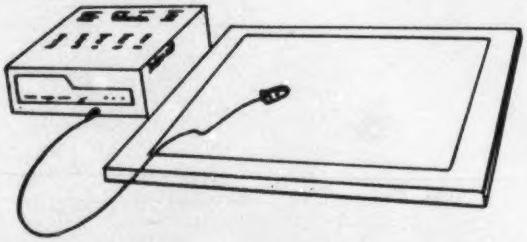




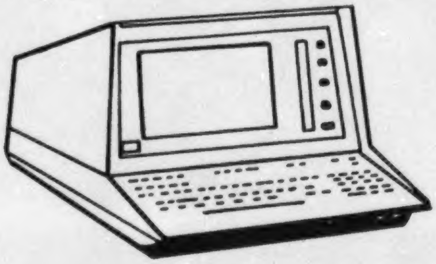
Board

Machines

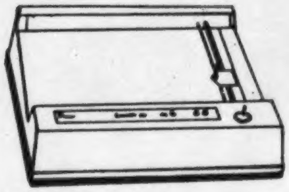
Tektronix 4956 Digitizer



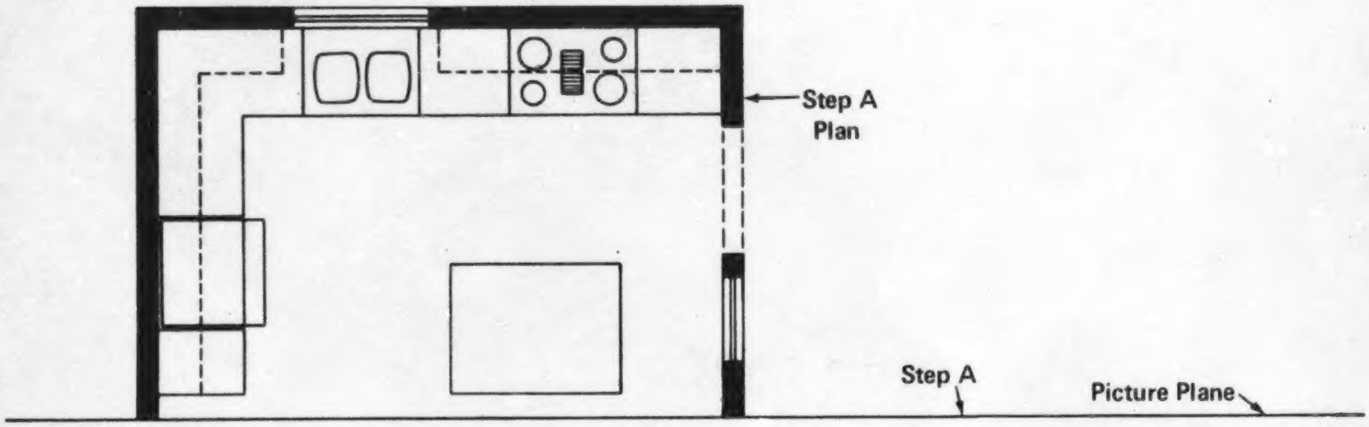
Tektronix 4051 Graphics System

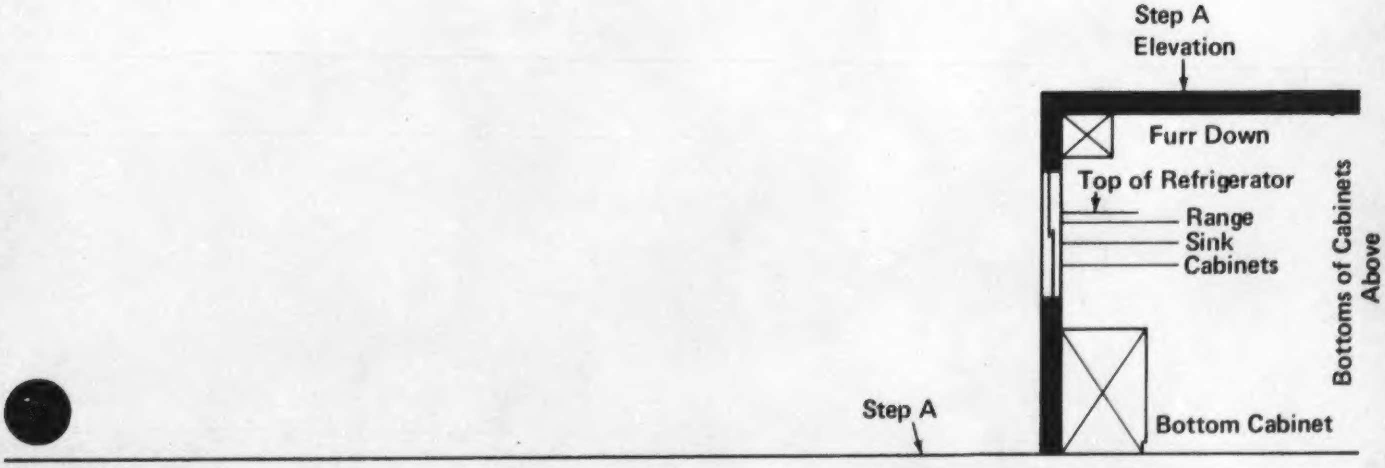


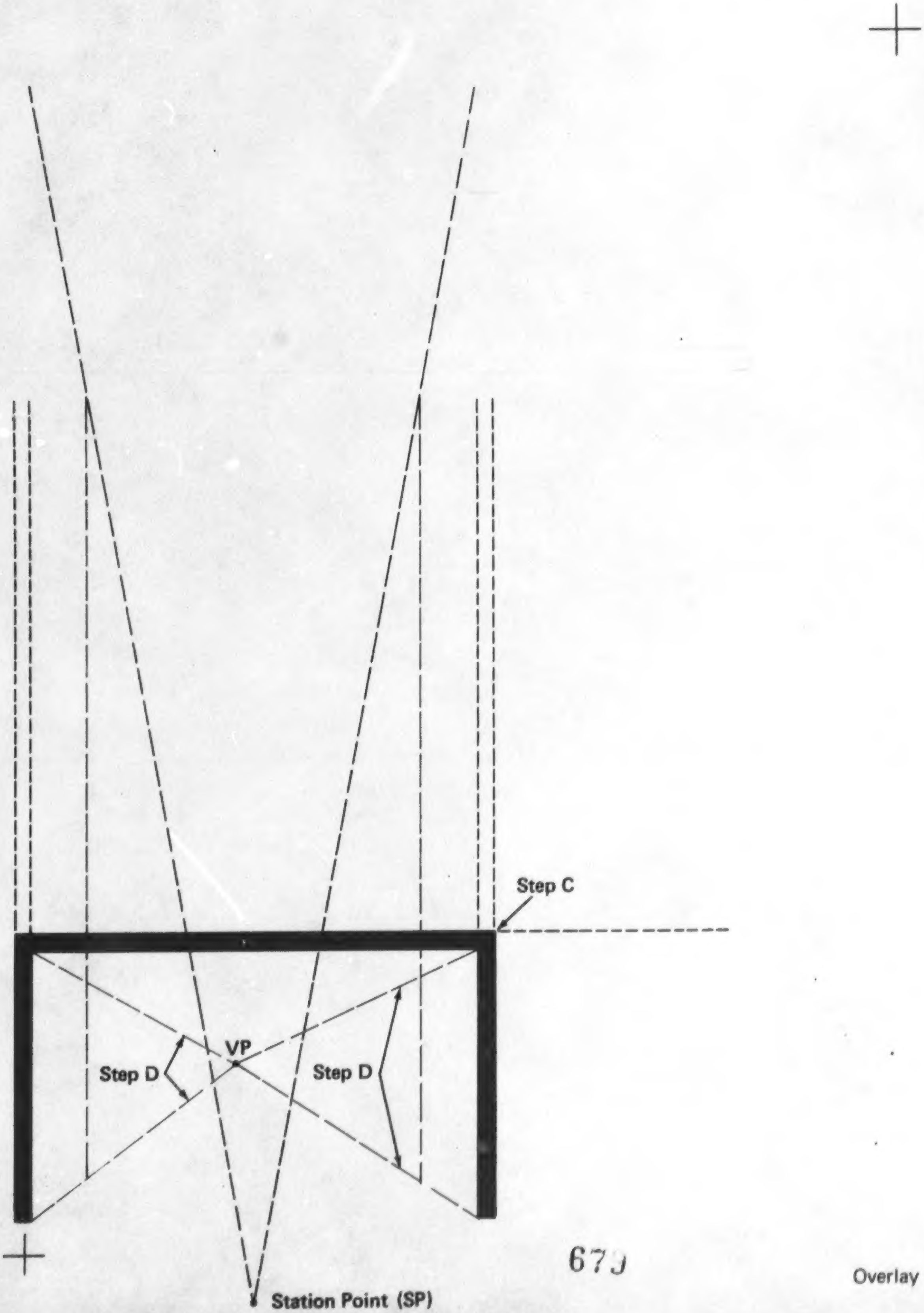
Tektronix 4662 Plotter



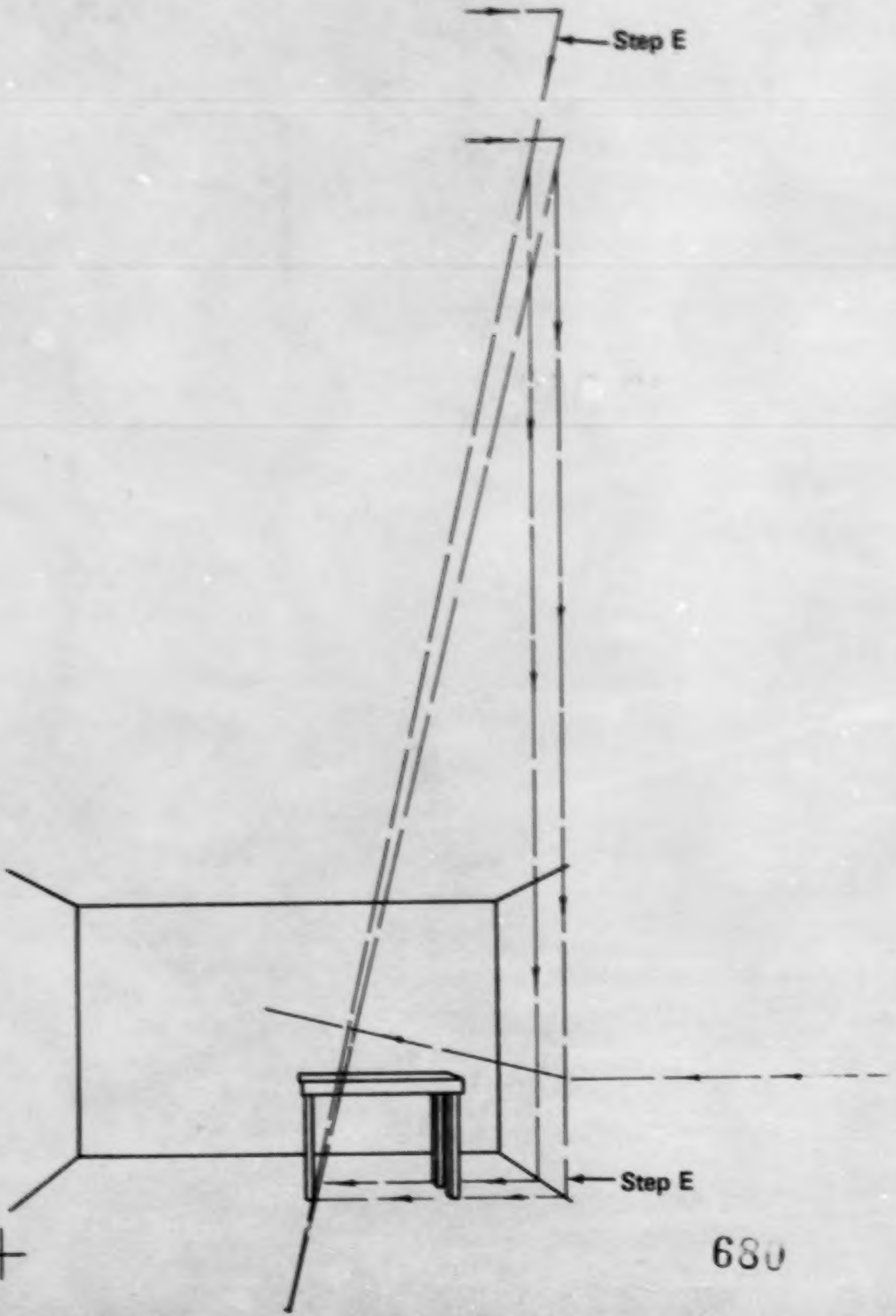
Drawing a One-Point Perspective


Step A
Plan
Step A
Picture Plane


Step A
Elevation
Furr Down
Top of Refrigerator
Range
Sink
Cabinets
Bottoms of Cabinets Above
Step A
Bottom Cabinet

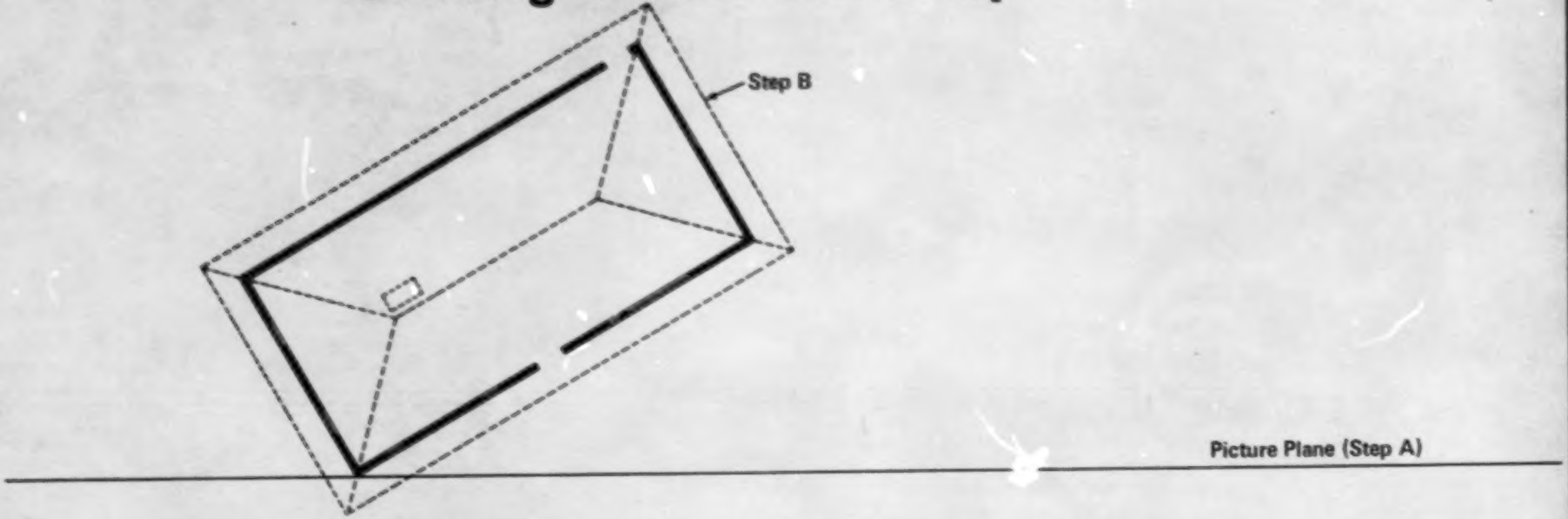

Step C
VP
Step D
Step D
Station Point (SP)

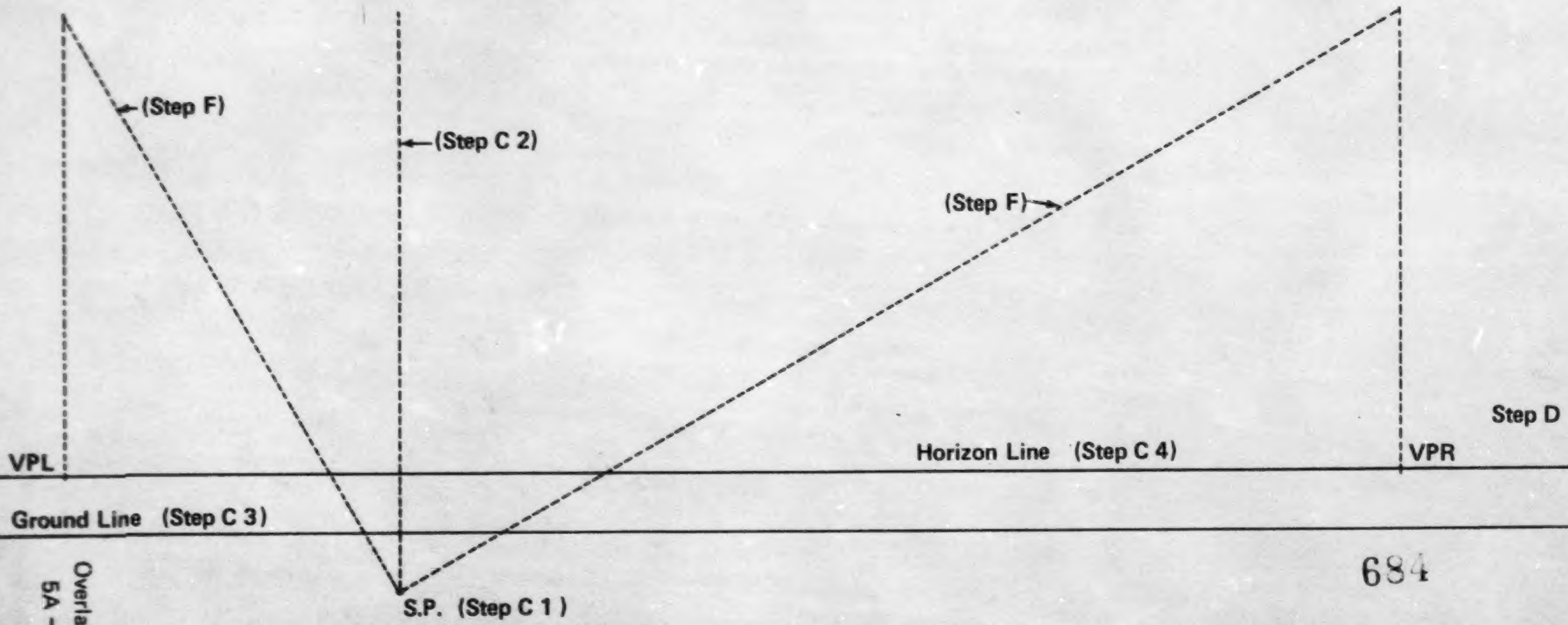
Overlay 4B


Step E
Step E

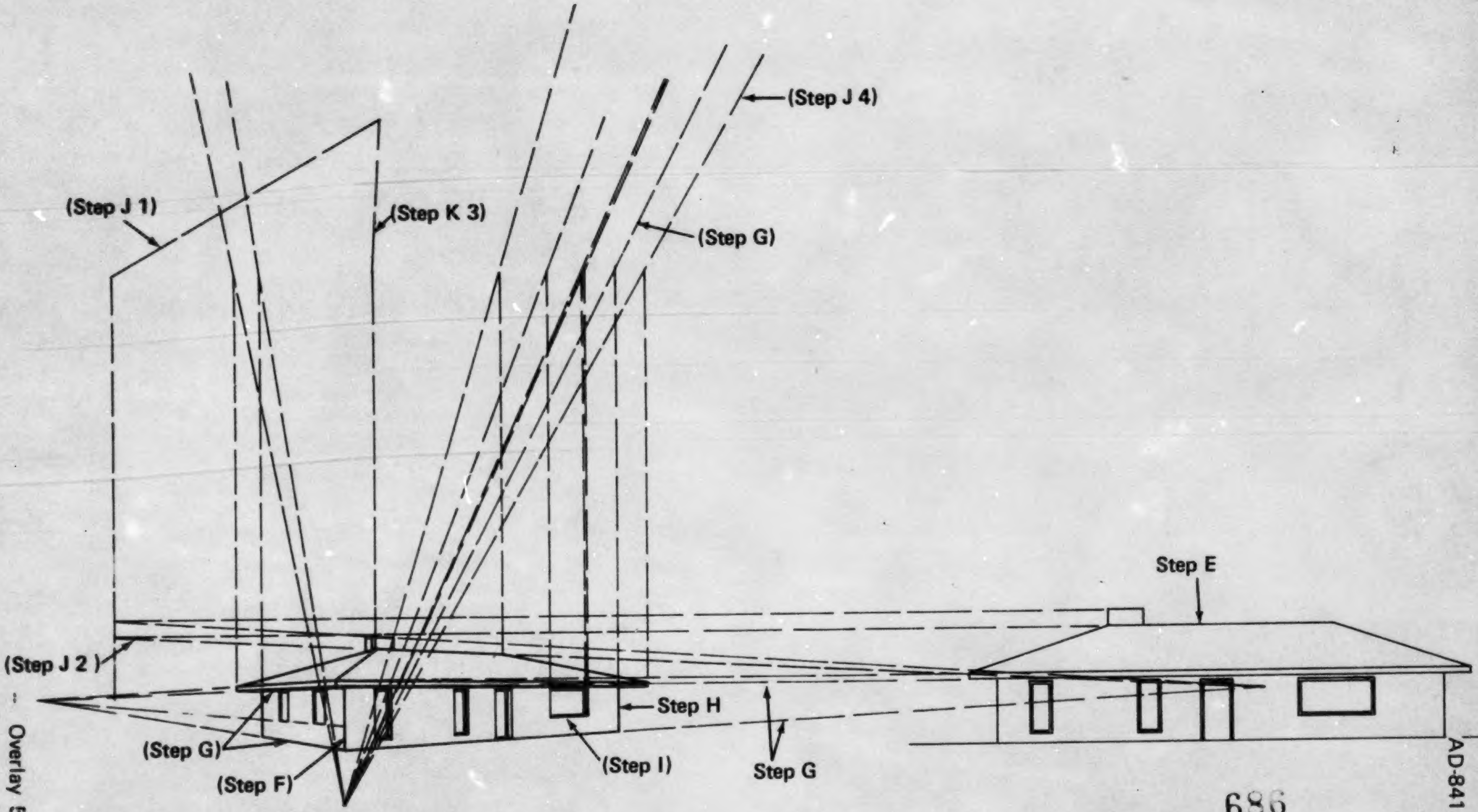
Overlay 4A

Drawing a Two-Point Perspective


Step B
Picture Plane (Step A)

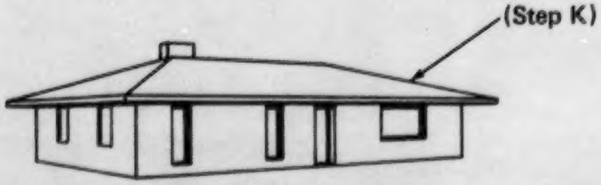

(Step F)
(Step C 2)
(Step F)
Step D
VPL
Horizon Line (Step C 4)
VPR
Ground Line (Step C 3)
S.P. (Step C 1)

Overlay 5A


(Step J 4)
(Step J 1)
(Step K 3)
(Step G)
Step E
(Step J 2)
Step H
(Step G)
(Step F)
(Step I)
Step G

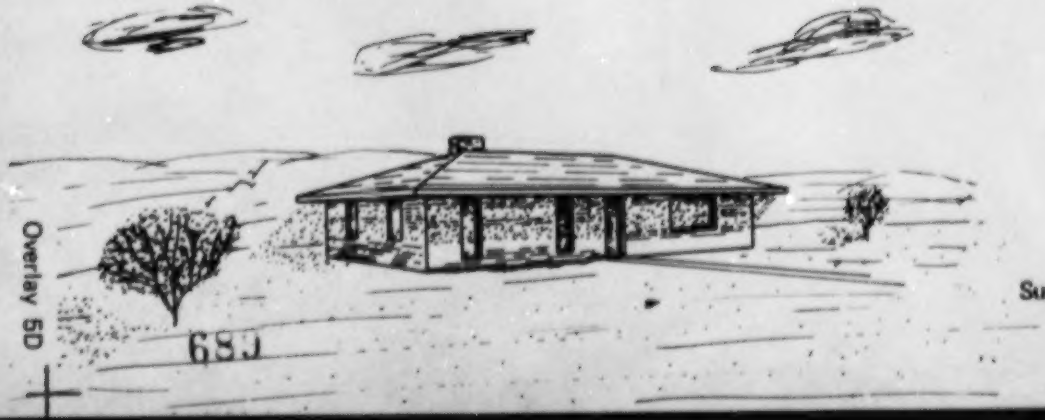
Overlay 5B

AD-841



Overlay 5C

AD-843



Overlay 5D

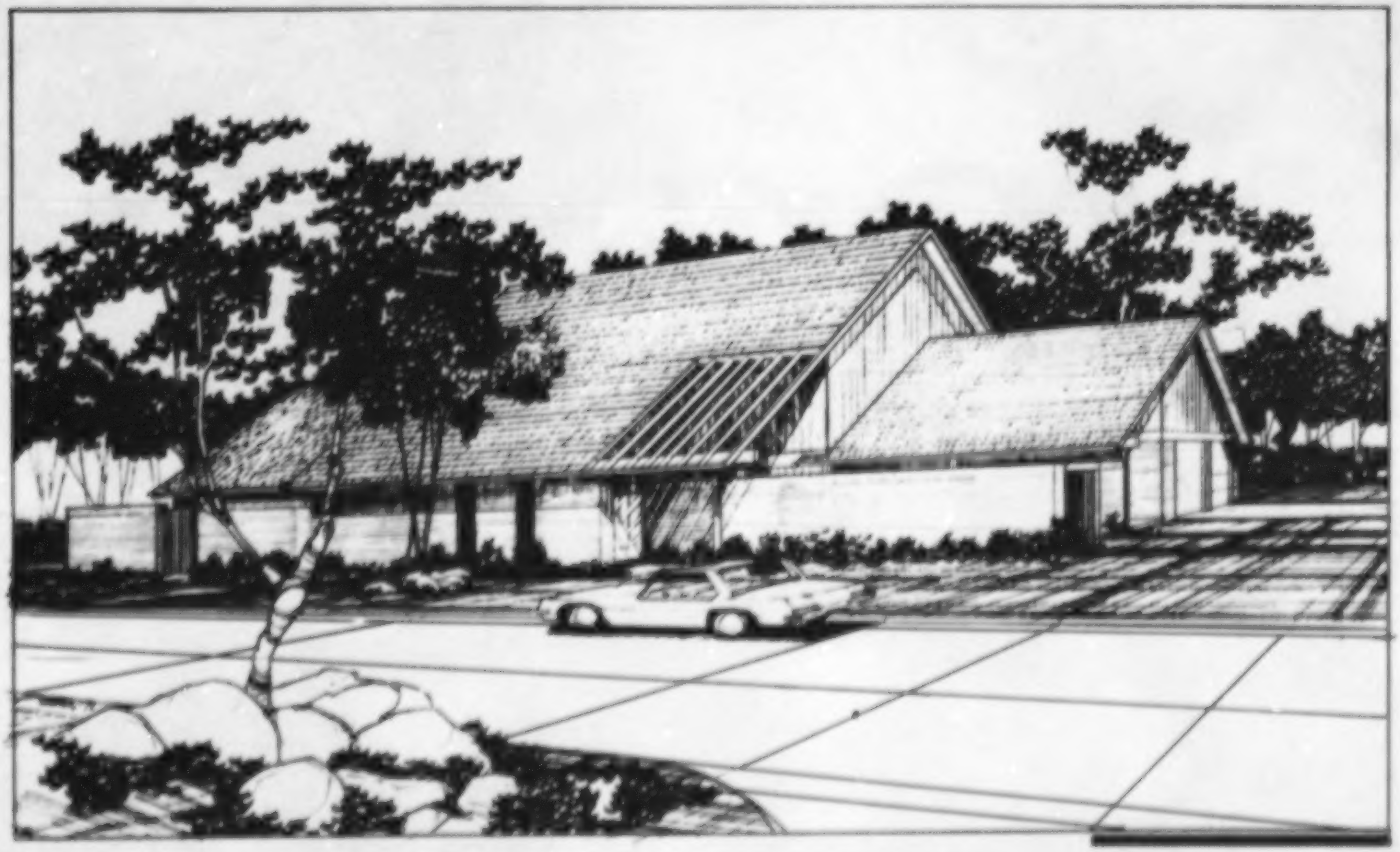
689

Surrounding Area Detail Added

690

AD-845

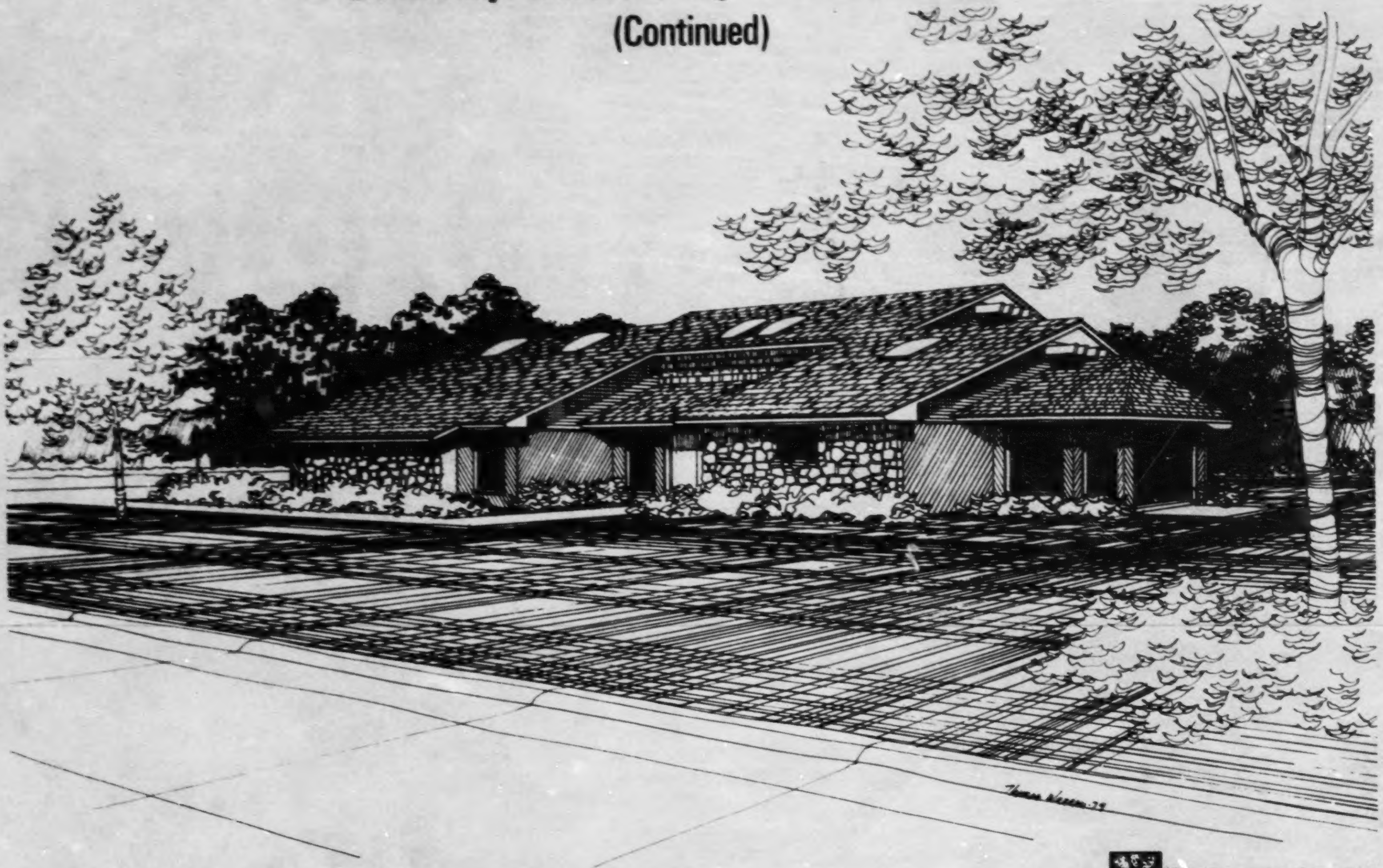
Shade, Shadow, and Texture



glen a summers and associates
architects stillwater oklahoma

Shade, Shadow, and Texture

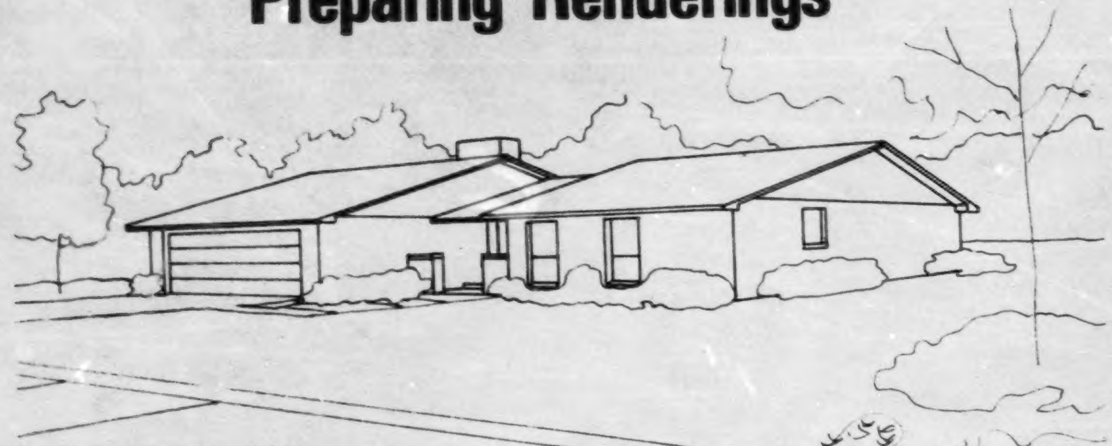
(Continued)



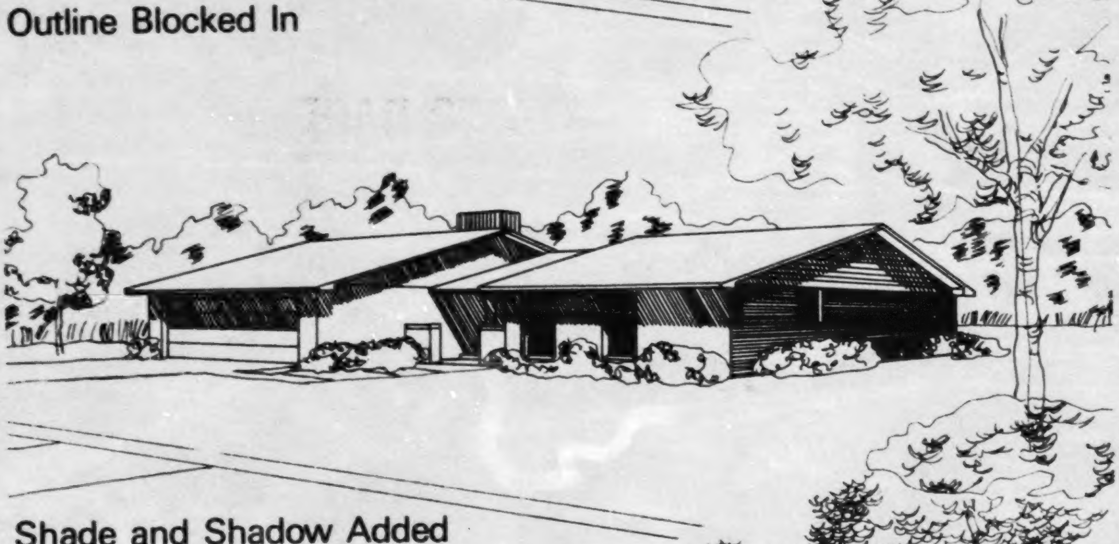
glen a summers and associates
architects stillwater oklahoma

AD-849

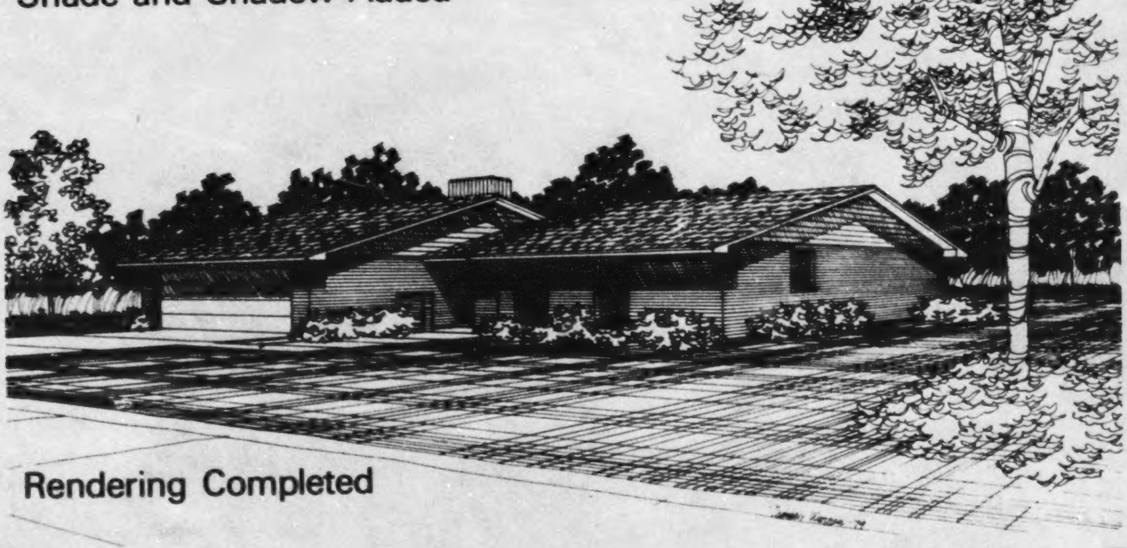
Preparing Renderings



Outline Blocked In



Shade and Shadow Added



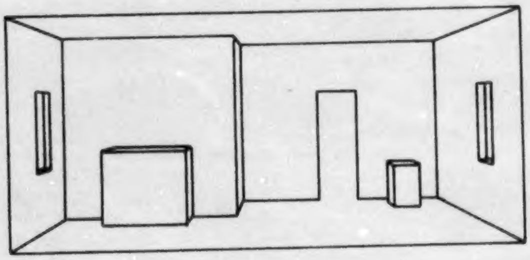
Rendering Completed

PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

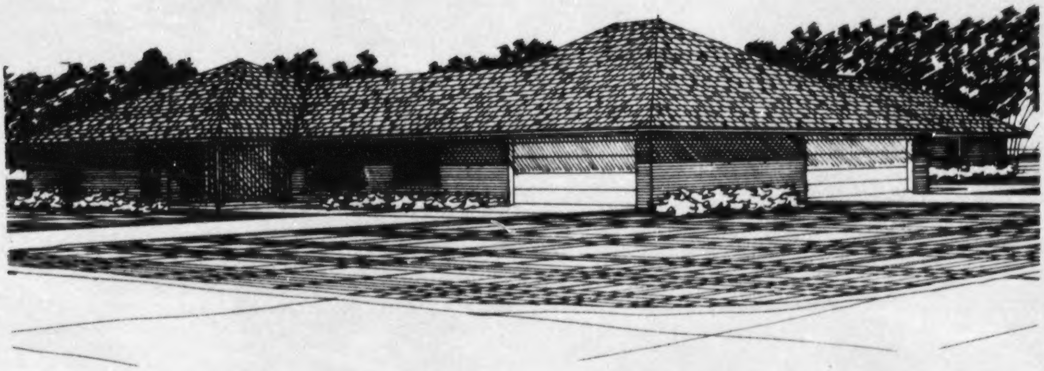
ASSIGNMENT SHEET #1--LOCATE VANISHING POINTS

Directions: Locate the vanishing points and horizon lines in the following perspectives.

Problem A:



Problem B:



PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #2--DRAW A ONE-POINT PERSPECTIVE

Directions: Draw a one-point perspective of the kitchen in your design project. Use the plan and elevations you drew in Unit VI "Working Drawings" and Unit IX "Details."

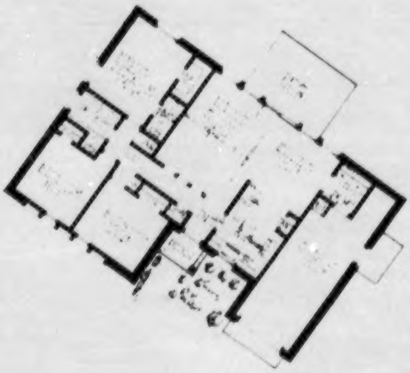
(NOTE: Your instructor may wish to provide other plan and elevation drawings to use for this assignment.)

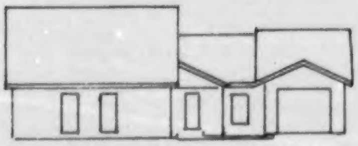
PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #3--DRAW TWO-POINT PERSPECTIVES

Directions: Draw two-point perspectives for the following problems.

Problem A: Use the plan and elevation included below.



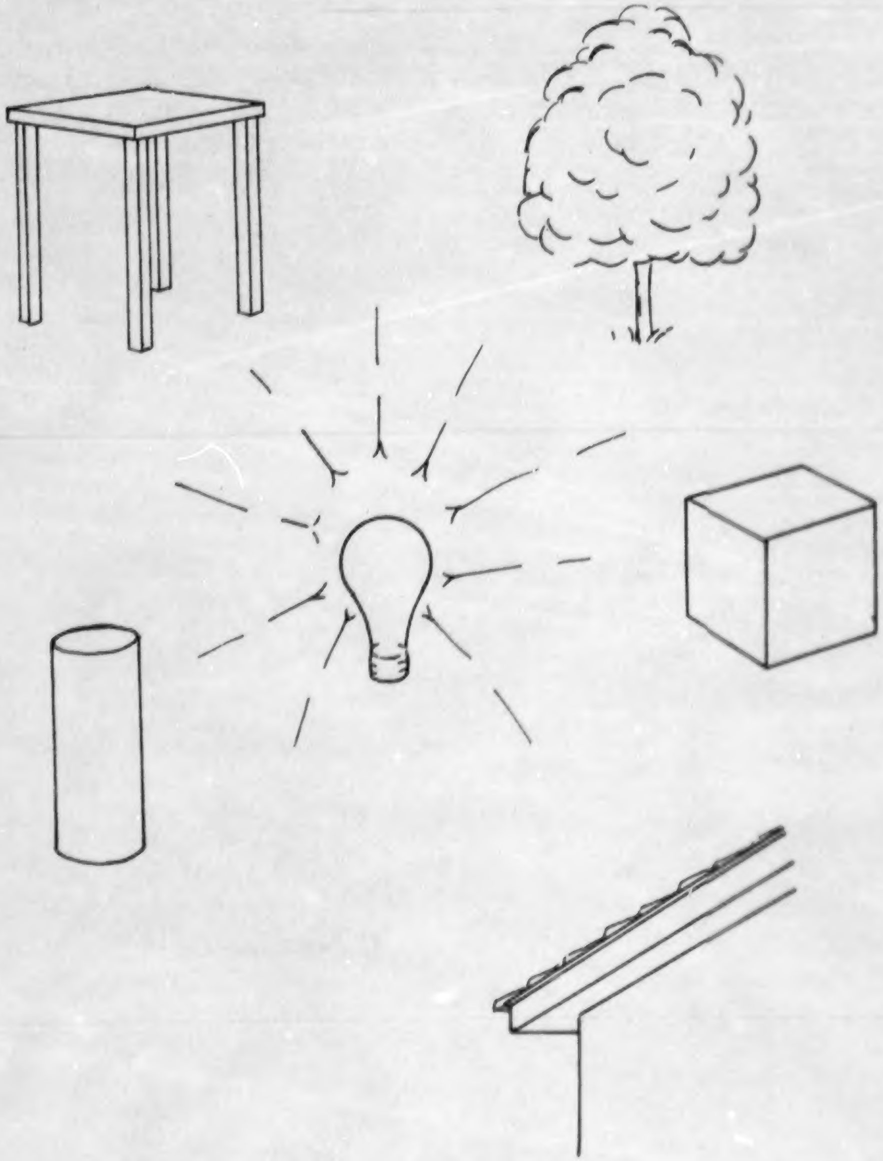


Problem B: Use the plan and elevation you drew for your design project in Unit VI, "Working Drawings."

PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #4--SHADE AND SHADOW VARIOUS OBJECTS

Directions: Shade and shadow the following objects taking into consideration the direction of the source of light.



PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #5--RENDER AN ELEVATION

Directions: Render the elevation you drew in Unit VI, "Working Drawings." You may use one technique of your choice such as pencil, ink, watercolors, or markers, or you may combine techniques. Check with instructor before combining techniques because some can be used effectively together, while others detract when used in combinations.

PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

ASSIGNMENT SHEET #6--RENDER PERSPECTIVES

Directions: Render perspectives for the following problems using different rendering techniques.

Problem A: Two-point perspective you drew in Assignment Sheet #3-A.

Problem B: Two-point perspective you drew in Assignment Sheet #3-B.

PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

NAME ______________________________

TEST

1. Match the terms on the right with the correct definitions.

_____a. Isometric, oblique, or perspective drawing with rendering usually added so others can visualize the finished structure

_____b. Pictorial drawing made by the intersection of the picture plane with lines of sight meeting from points on the object to the point of sight

_____c. Process of drawing pictures for display as opposed to making detailed working drawings

_____d. Eye level of the person viewing the drawing and the line on which the vanishing points are located

_____e. Line on which the bottom of the object being drawn rests

_____f. Projection plane of the plan view of the object being drawn

_____g. Assumed point representing the observer's eye

_____h. A point on the horizon at which receding lines seem to meet

_____i. Lines of the object which meet on the vanishing points

_____j. Has only one vanishing point and the frontal plane of the object is parallel to the picture plane

_____k. Has two vanishing points

_____l. Has three vanishing points

_____m. Scope of what the observer sees without moving his eyes

_____n. Surface characteristics and appearance of an object

1. Three-point perspective
2. Render
3. Vanishing point
4. Two-point perspective
5. Texture
6. Presentation drawing
7. One-point perspective
8. Shade
9. Shadow
10. Horizon line
11. Delineation
12. Vanishing lines
13. Station point
14. Perspective

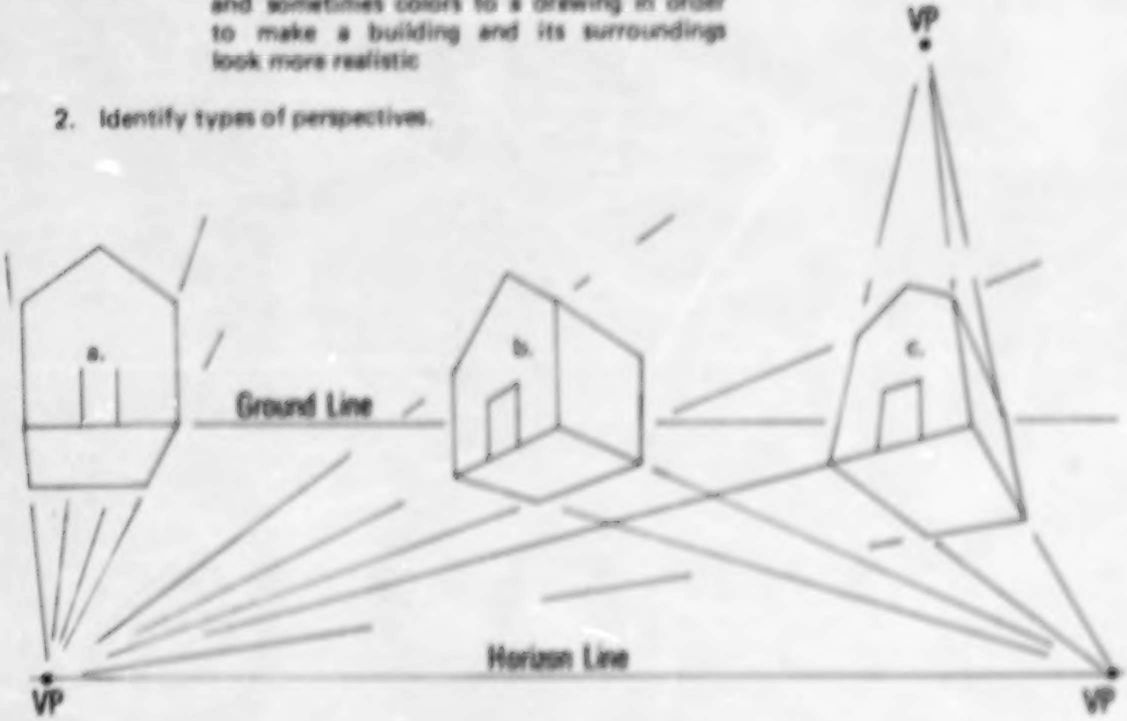
_____o. A surface turned away from light

_____p. A surface from which light is excluded by the shaded surface

_____q. The addition of texture, shade, and shadow, and sometimes colors to a drawing in order to make a building and its surroundings look more realistic

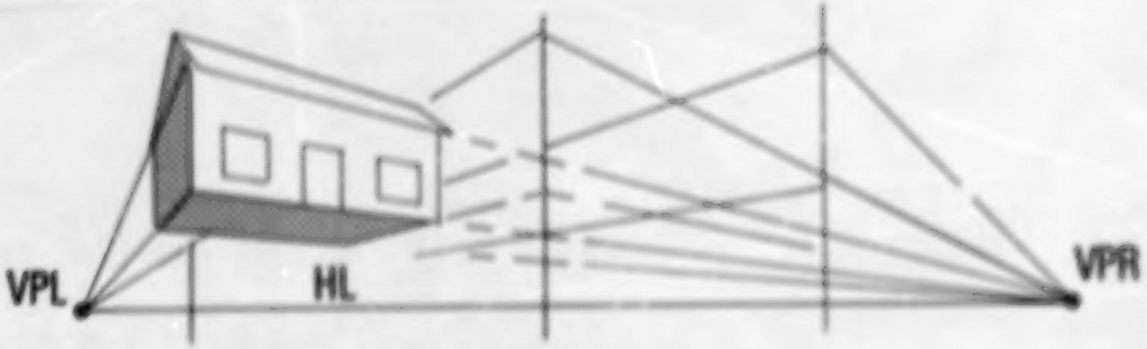
15. Picture plane
16. Cone of vision
17. Ground line

2. Identify types of perspectives.

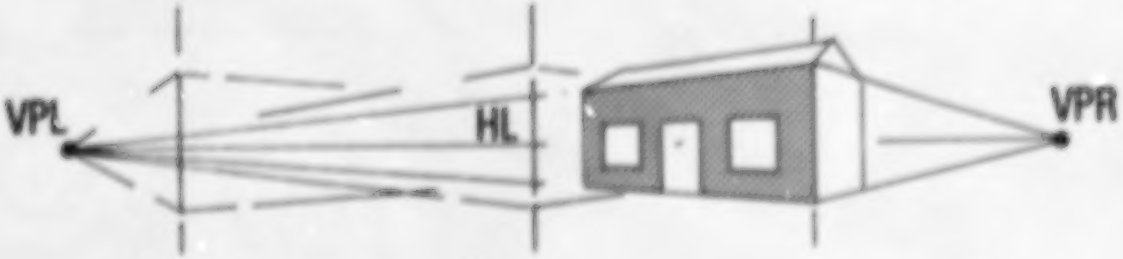

VP
a.
b.
c.
Ground Line
Horizon Line
VP
VP

a. ______________ b. ______________ c. ______________

3. Identify perspective views.



a. ____



b. ______________________________

4. Select characteristics of perspectives and presentation drawings by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

   _____a. A one-point perspective is the most common type of presentation drawing used in architecture

   _____b. Perspectives eliminate distortion of drawn objects

   _____c. Perspectives should resemble a photograph

   _____d. Receding lines on a perspective create the illusion of depth

   _____e. Perspective drawings reveal the true size and shape of the building

   _____f. Perspective drawings are always used for working designs

   _____g. On a three-point perspective, the front view is drawn to the exact scale of the building

   _____h. On a one-point perspective, no sides are drawn exactly to scale

   _____i. Dimensions and heating and plumbing details are always included on a presentation drawing

5. List three methods for drawing perspectives.

   a. ______________________________

   b. ______________________________

   c. ______________________________

6. Sequence the steps for drawing one-point perspectives by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

   _____a. Project the perspective frame representing the picture plane in elevation, and locate the vanishing point

   _____b. Draw picture plane line, plan view, elevation, and floor line

   _____c. Project interior walls toward the vanishing point

   _____d. Locate the station pointon the center of vision below the plan

   _____e. Determine the height of objects located away from walls

7. Sequence the steps for drawing two-point perspectives by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

______a. Draw the roof

______b. Locate station point, line from corner of plan view to station point, ground line, and horizon line

______c. Draw other corners

______d. Project the front corner which touches the picture plane to the perspective view

______e. Find the perspective of horizontal lines by projecting from the true height line to the vanishing points

______f. Draw a horizontal line across the entire width of the paper; this is the picture plane line

______g. Erase projection lines and darken in visible lines

______h. Locate vanishing points

__5__i. Draw elevation view on ground line to the side of the area where you are drawing the perspective view

______j. Draw the plan view at the desired angle

______k. Draw all doors, windows, and special features

8. Select characteristics of shade, shadow, and texture by placing an "X" in the appropriate blanks.

______a. When an object is subjected to rays of light, that portion receiving the light is rendered dark, while the portion not receiving the light is lighter

______b. Details such as shrubs and windows should not be highlighted

______c. Techniques of shading include lines, dots, and grey tones

______d. Shading should be drawn before the angle of the sun is established

______e. Texture of rough surfaces such as shrubs or building materials can be shown by shading

9. Match rendering techniques on the right with the correct characteristics.

______a. Popular and easy to do especially for sketches	1. Tempera
______b. Allows sharp details, and reproduces well	2. Appliques
______c. Distinctive look, but difficult to add fine details with broad tip	3. Watercolor
______d. Opaque, water-based paint frequently used for monotone renderings	4. Felt tip markers

_____e. Transparent, water-based paint which allows a wide use of light and dark

_____f. Miniature paint gun using small dots to form subtle shades and shadows

_____g. Pressure-sensitive transparent film of lines, symbols, dots, or colors

5. Pencil
6. Air brush
7. Pen and ink

10. Sequence the steps for preparing renderings by placing the correct sequence numbers in the appropriate blanks.

_____a. Add texture to the outline of building materials using light pressure on areas that are in direct sunlight

_____b. Establish angle of sun and sketch shadows and shading

_____c. Sketch the outline of building materials

_____d. Block in with single lines the projection of the perspective

_____e. Complete the rendering by emphasizing light and dark areas and establishing more visible contrasts of light and dark shadow patterns

_____f. Darken windows, door areas, and areas under the roof overhangs

11. Demonstrate the ability to:

a. Locate vanishing points.

b. Draw a one-point perspective.

c. Draw two-point perspectives.

d. Shade and shadow various objects.

e. Render an elevation.

f. Render perspectives.

(NOTE: If these activities have not been accomplished prior to the test, ask your instructor when they should be completed.)

PRESENTATION DRAWINGS
UNIT XIV

ANSWERS TO TEST

1. a. 6
   b. 14
   c. 11
   d. 10
   e. 17
   f. 15
   g. 13
   h. 3
   i. 12
   j. 7
   k. 4
   l. 1
   m. 16
   n. 5
   o. 8
   p. 9
   q. 2

2. a. One-point
   b. Two-point
   c. Three-point

3. a. Above horizon (Worm's eye view)
   b. Horizon (Person's eye view)

4. b, c, d

5. Any three of the following:
   a. Perspective drawing boards
   b. Perspective charts and grids
   c. Manually drawn
   d. Machines

6. a. 3
   b. 1
   c. 4
   d. 2
   e. 5

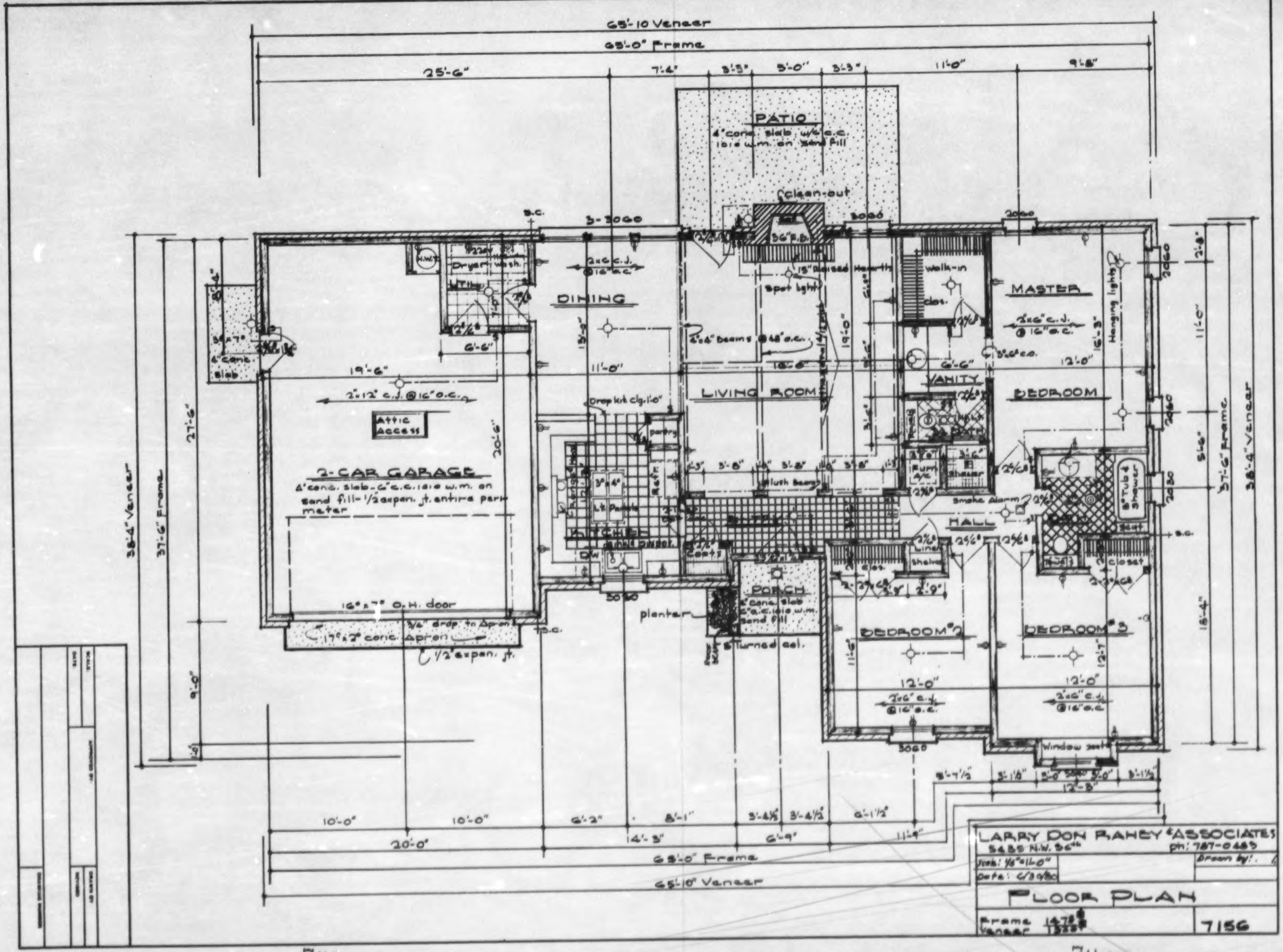
7. a. 10
   b. 3
   c. 8
   d. 6
   e. 7
   f. 1
   g. 11
   h. 4
   i. 5
   j. 2
   k. 9

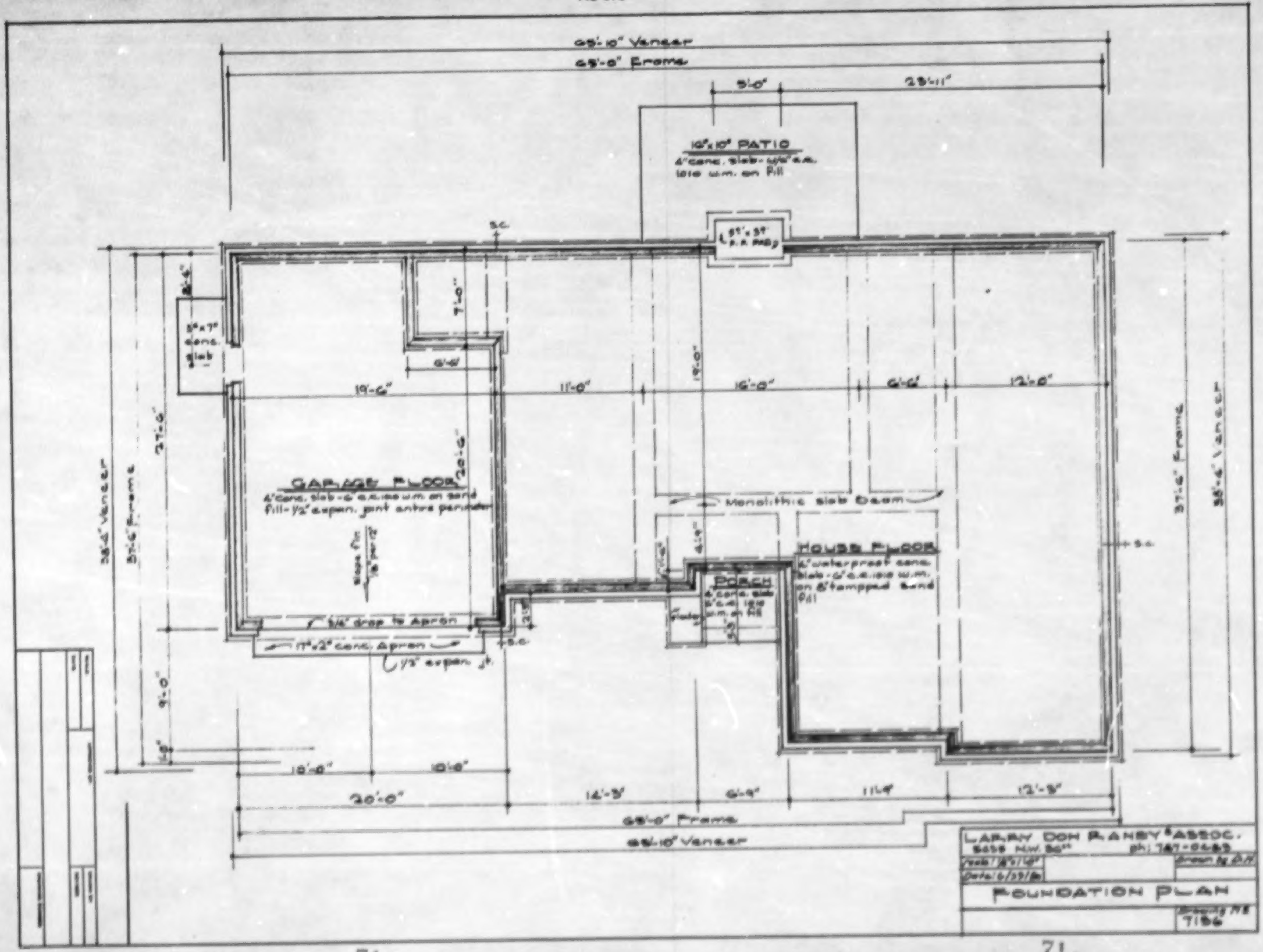
8. c, e

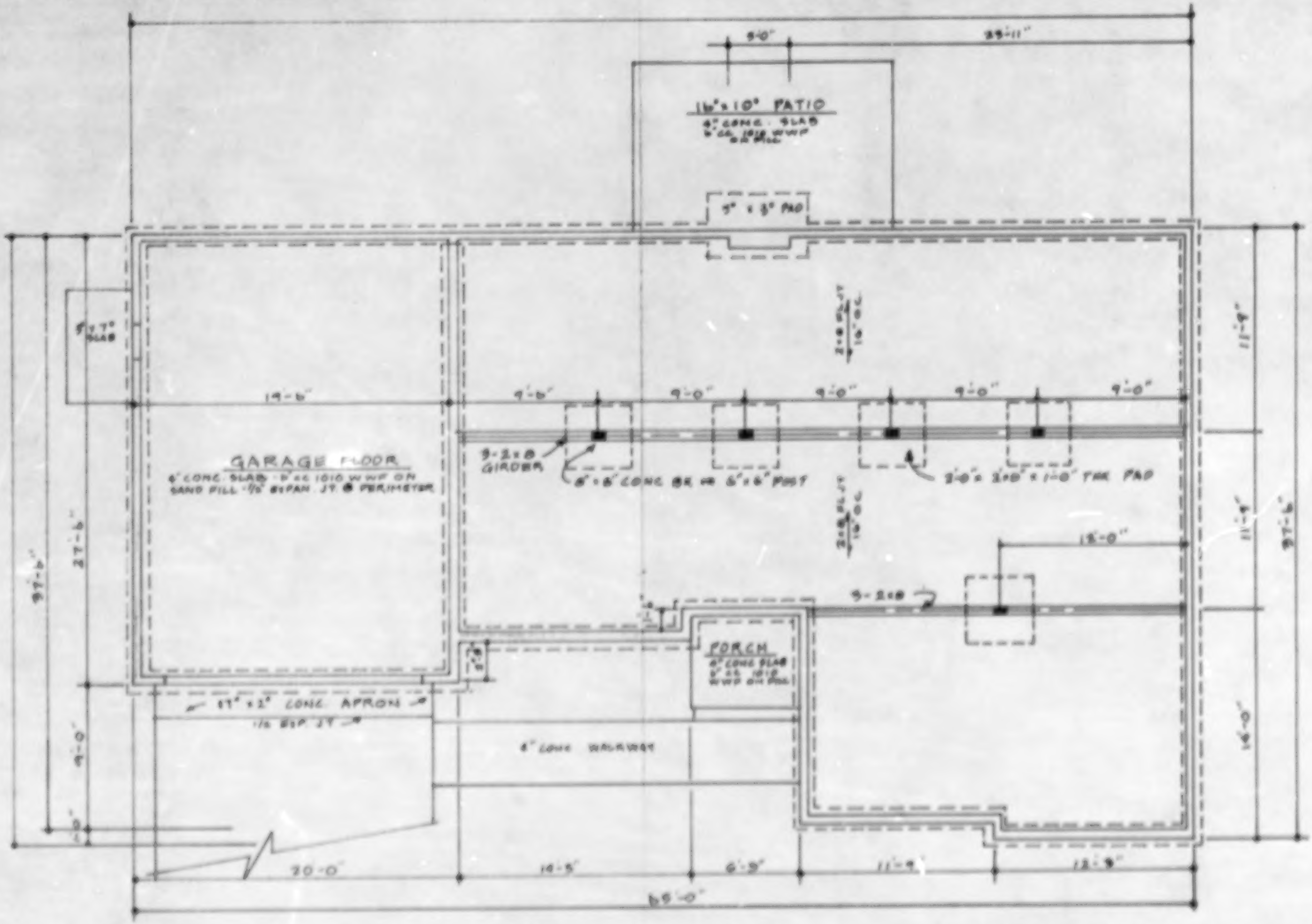
9. a. 5
   b. 7
   c. 4
   d. 1
   e. 3
   f. 6
   g. 2

10. a. 5
    b. 3
    c. 2
    d. 1
    e. 6
    f. 4

11. Evaluated to the satisfaction of the instructor


65'-10 Veneer
65'-0" Frame
25'-6"
7'-4"
3'-5"
5'-0"
3'-3"
11'-0"
9'-8"
PATIO
4" conc. slab w/6x6 c.c. 10x10 w.m. on sand fill
clean-out
36" F.B.
15" Raised Hearth
Spot light
3-3060
3060
2060
S.C.
Dryer
wash.
Utility
DINING
2x6 c.j. @16" o.c.
4x4 Beams @48" o.c.
walk-in clos.
MASTER
2x6" c.j. @16" o.c.
Hanging lights
6'-6"
VANITY
BEDROOM
12'-0"
11'-0"
19'-6"
2x12 c.j. @16" o.c.
Attic Access
2-CAR GARAGE
4" conc. slab-6x6 c.c. 10x10 w.m. on sand fill-1/2 expan. jt. entire perimeter
Drop kit clg.-1'-0"
pantry
LIVING ROOM
18'-6"
KITCHEN
Refr.
Lt. Pedals
Furn. a/c
Shower
Bath
Smoke Alarm
HALL
Linen
Shelves
5' Tub & Shower
Seat
closet
clos.
Coats
DW
PORCH
4" conc. slab 6x6 c.c. 10x10 w.m. sand fill
planter
S Turned col.
16'x7' O.H. door
3/4" drop to Apron
17'x2' conc. Apron
1/2" expan. jt.
BEDROOM #2
BEDROOM #3
12'-0"
2x6" c.j. @16" o.c.
window seat
3060
5050
2460
2860
2880
38'-4" Veneer
37'-6" Frame
27'-6"
20'-6"
9'-0"
18'-4"
3'-7 1/2"
3'-1 1/2"
3'-0"
12'-8"
10'-0"
10'-0"
20'-0"
6'-2"
8'-1"
14'-3"
3'-4 1/2"
3'-4 1/2"
6'-9"
6'-1 1/2"
11'-9"
65'-0" Frame
65'-10" Veneer
LARRY DON RAHEY & ASSOCIATES
5455 N.W. 56th
ph: 787-0453
Scale: 1/8"=1'-0"
Date: 6/30/80
Drawn by:
FLOOR PLAN
Frame 1472 sq ft
Veneer 1325 sq ft
7156


65'-10" Veneer
65'-0" Frame
5'-0"
23'-11"
10'x10' PATIO
4" conc. slab-w/6"o.c. 1010 w.m. on fill
S.C.
3'x3' P.P. PAD
5'x7' conc. slab
2'-6"
7'-0"
6'-0"
19'-6"
11'-0"
19'-0"
16'-0"
6'-0"
12'-0"
27'-6"
20'-6"
38'-4" Veneer
37'-6" Frame
37'-6" Frame
38'-4" Veneer
GARAGE FLOOR
4" conc. slab-6"o.c.1010 w.m. on sand fill-1/2" expan. joint entire perimeter
Slope 1" in 10' per 12'
3/4" drop to Apron
17'x2' conc. Apron
1/2" expan. jt.
S.C.
Monolithic slab beam
4'-9"
1'-6"
2'-3"
PORCH
4" conc. slab 6"o.c. 1010 w.m. on fill
HOUSE FLOOR
4" waterproof conc. slab-6"o.c.1010 w.m. on 8" tamped sand fill
S.C.
9'-0"
1'-0"
10'-0"
10'-0"
20'-0"
14'-3"
6'-9"
11'-4"
12'-3"
65'-0" Frame
65'-10" Veneer
LARRY DON RANEY & ASSOC.
5455 N.W. 36th
ph: 787-0489
Scale 1/8"=1'-0"
Date 6/29/81
Drawn by D.R.
FOUNDATION PLAN
Drawing No.
7186

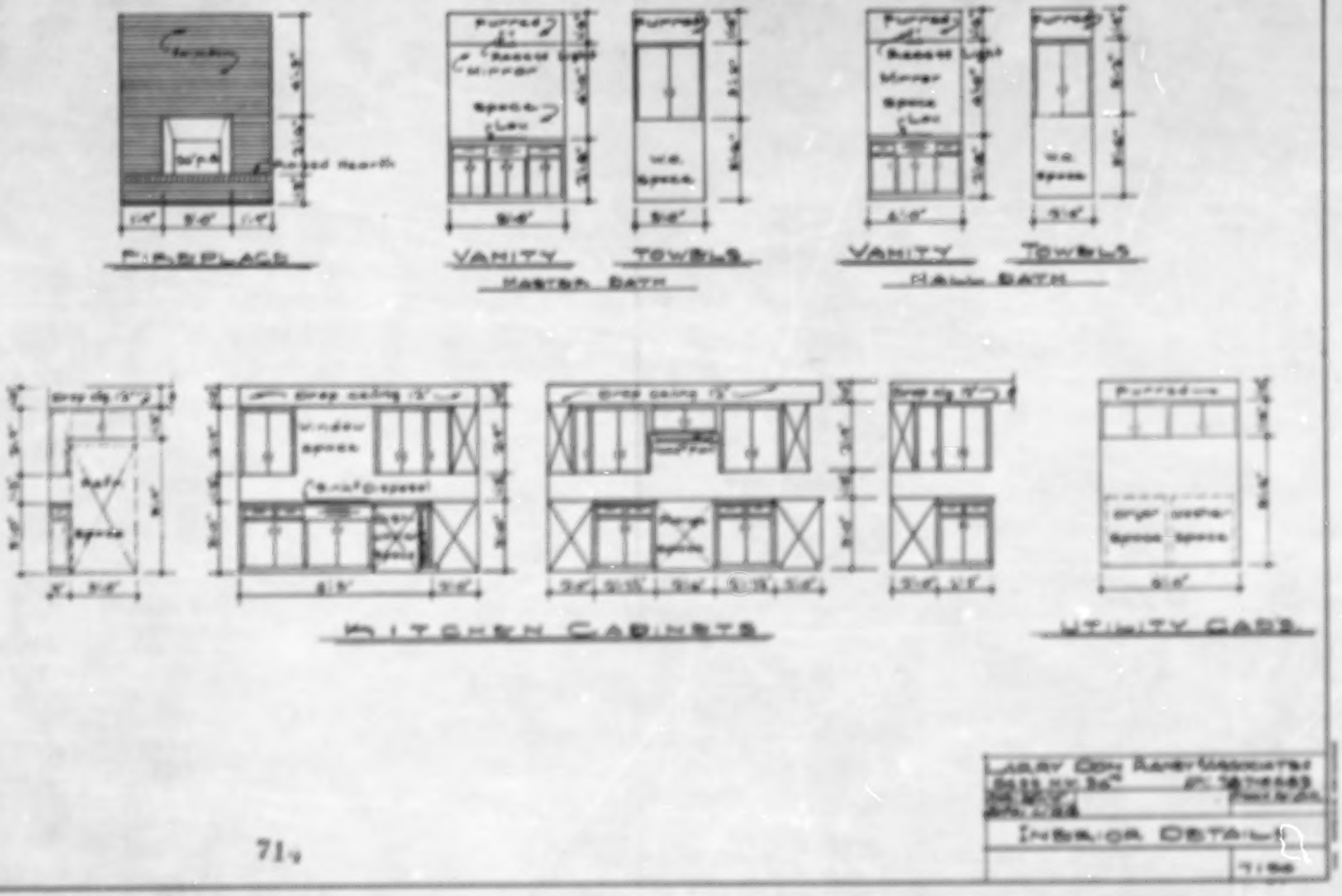

5'-0"
33'-11"
16'x10' PATIO
4" CONC. SLAB
6"x6" 10/10 WWF
ON FILL
5' x 3' PAD
5'x7' SLAB
19'-6"
9'-6"
9'-0"
9'-0"
9'-0"
9'-0"
2x8 FL. JT. 16" O.C.
3-2x8 GIRDER
8"x8" CONC. BR. w/ 6"x6" POST
2'-0" x 2'-0" x 1'-0" FTG. PAD
2x8 FL. JT. 16" O.C.
15'-0"
3-2x8
GARAGE FLOOR
4" CONC. SLAB - 6"x6" 10/10 WWF ON SAND FILL - 1/2" EXPAN. JT. @ PERIMETER
PORCH
4" CONC. SLAB
6"x6" 10/10
WWF ON FILL
17' x 2' CONC. APRON
1/2 EXP. JT.
4" CONC. WALKWAY
27'-6"
37'-6"
9'-0"
11'-9"
11'-9"
37'-6"
14'-0"
20'-0"
14'-5"
6'-9"
11'-9"
12'-9"
65'-0"

DR BY RD

FOUNDATION PLAN - WOOD

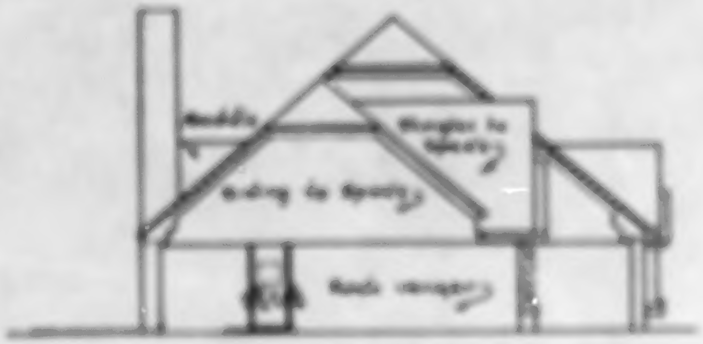
715b

AD 879

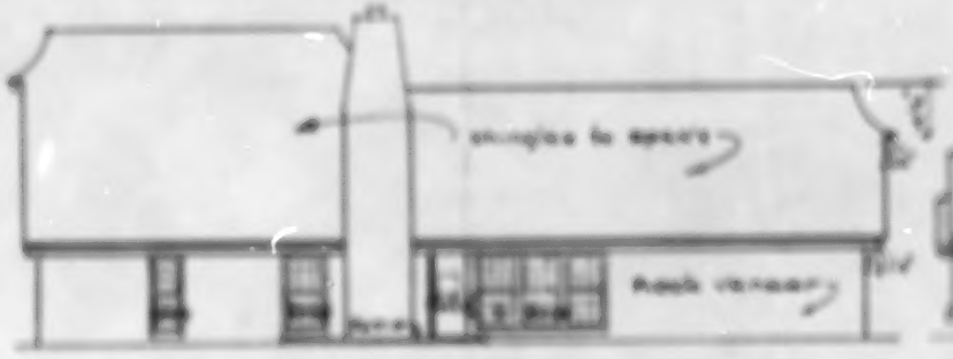

Furred
Recess Light
Mirror
Space
Lav
W.C. Space
Raised Hearth
FIREPLACE
VANITY
TOWELS
MASTER BATH
VANITY
TOWELS
HALL BATH
Drop ceiling
Window space
Sink/Disposal
Range space
Dryer space
Washer space
KITCHEN CABINETS
UTILITY CABS
INTERIOR DETAILS

71

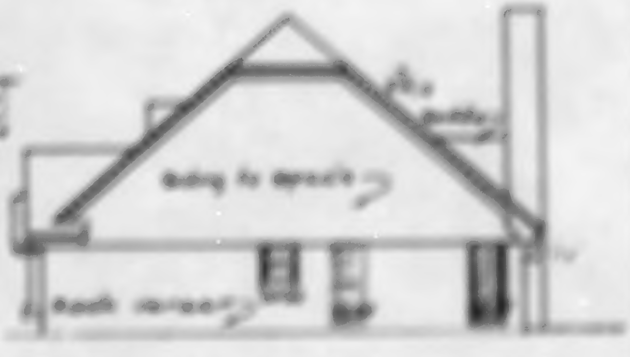
71


shingles to specs
siding to specs
rock veneer

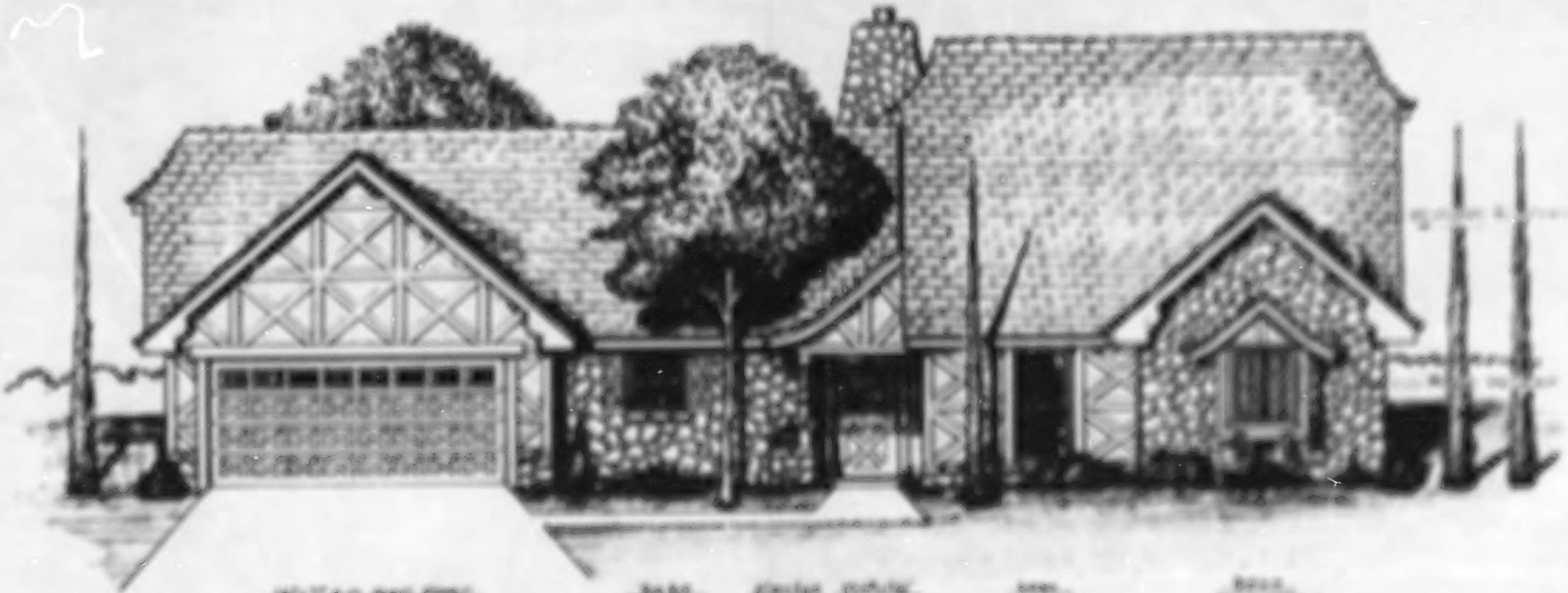
LEFT SIDE


shingles to specs
rock veneer

REAR

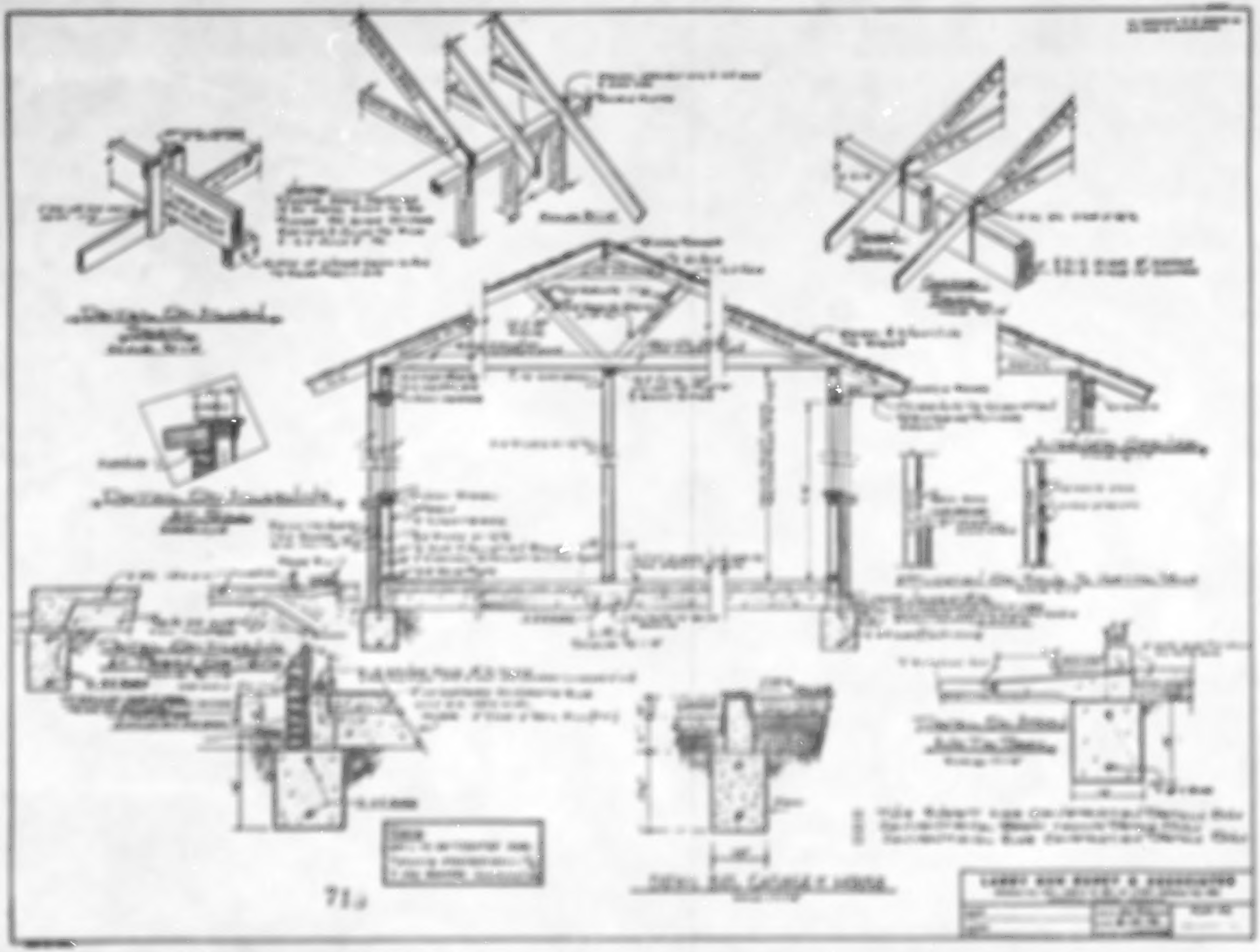

siding to specs
rock veneer

RIGHT SIDE

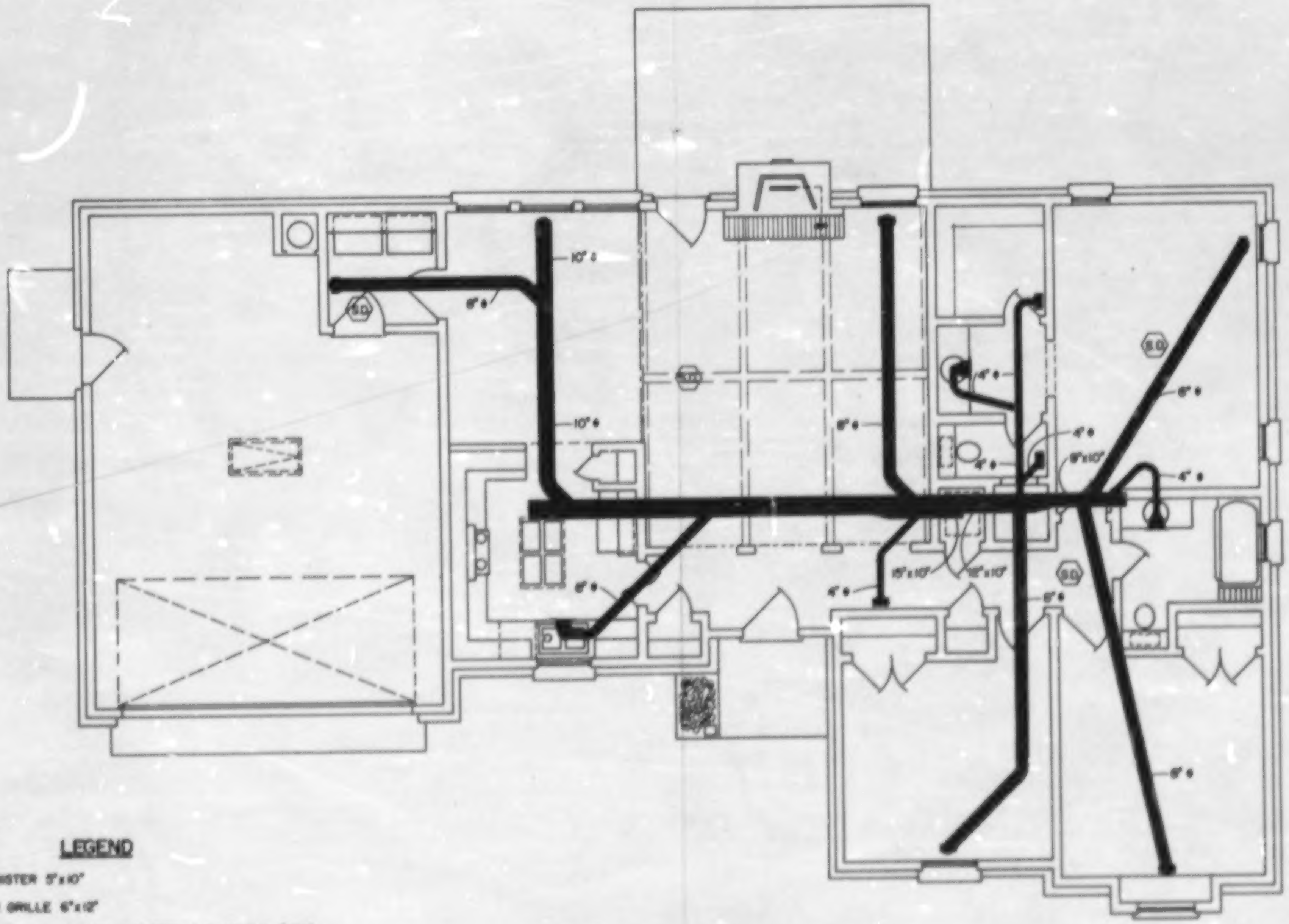


FRONT ELEVATION

[illegible]	
	[illegible]
71	[illegible]



NOTE: FLOOR SUPPLY REGISTERS TO BE
PLACED TO ALLOW SPACE FOR
DRAPES & CURTAINS



LEGEND

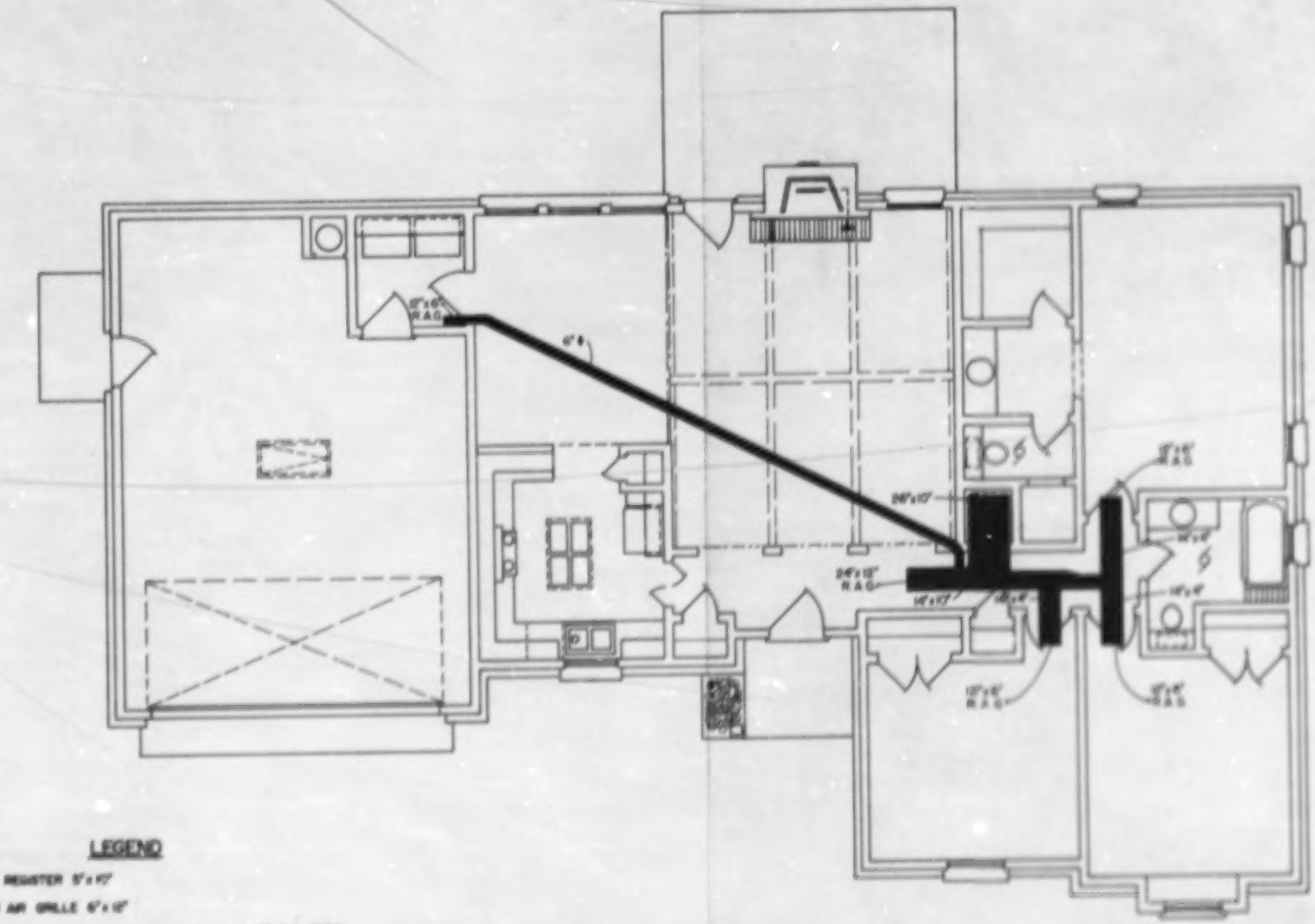
▭ SUPPLY REGISTER 5"x10"
RETURN AIR GRILLE 6"x12"
(S.D.) SMOKE DETECTOR (PRISM OR IONIZATION, A.C. OR D.C. TYPE WITH EMERGENCY LIGHT)
EXHAUST FAN
■ DUCT SUPPLY
▭ DUCT RETURN

P.O. BOX [illegible]	B. J. YANCEY ENTERPRISES PHONE (405) 684-7826	HUNTER, OKLA 74640
SCALE 1/4" = 1'-0"	DRAWN BY: MARALENE G. NORRIS	
DATE 29 MARCH 82	CK. BY [illegible]	APP. BY

SUPPLY AIR FLOOR PLAN

FRAME 1473 ⓑ
VENEER 1523 ⓑ

7156-1776



LEGEND

▭ SUPPLY REGISTER 5"x 12"
RETURN AIR GRILLE 6"x 12"
SMOKE DETECTOR (PHOTO OR IONIZATION, A.C. OR D.C. TYPE WITH EMERGENCY LIGHT)
EXHAUST FAN
▬ DUCT SUPPLY
▭ DUCT RETURN

B. J. [illegible] ENTERPRISES
PHONE [illegible]
SCALE 1/4"=1'-0"
DRAWN BY [illegible]
DATE [illegible]
CK BY [illegible]
APP BY [illegible]

RETURN AIR FLOOR PLAN

FRAME [illegible]
VENEER [illegible]
[illegible]